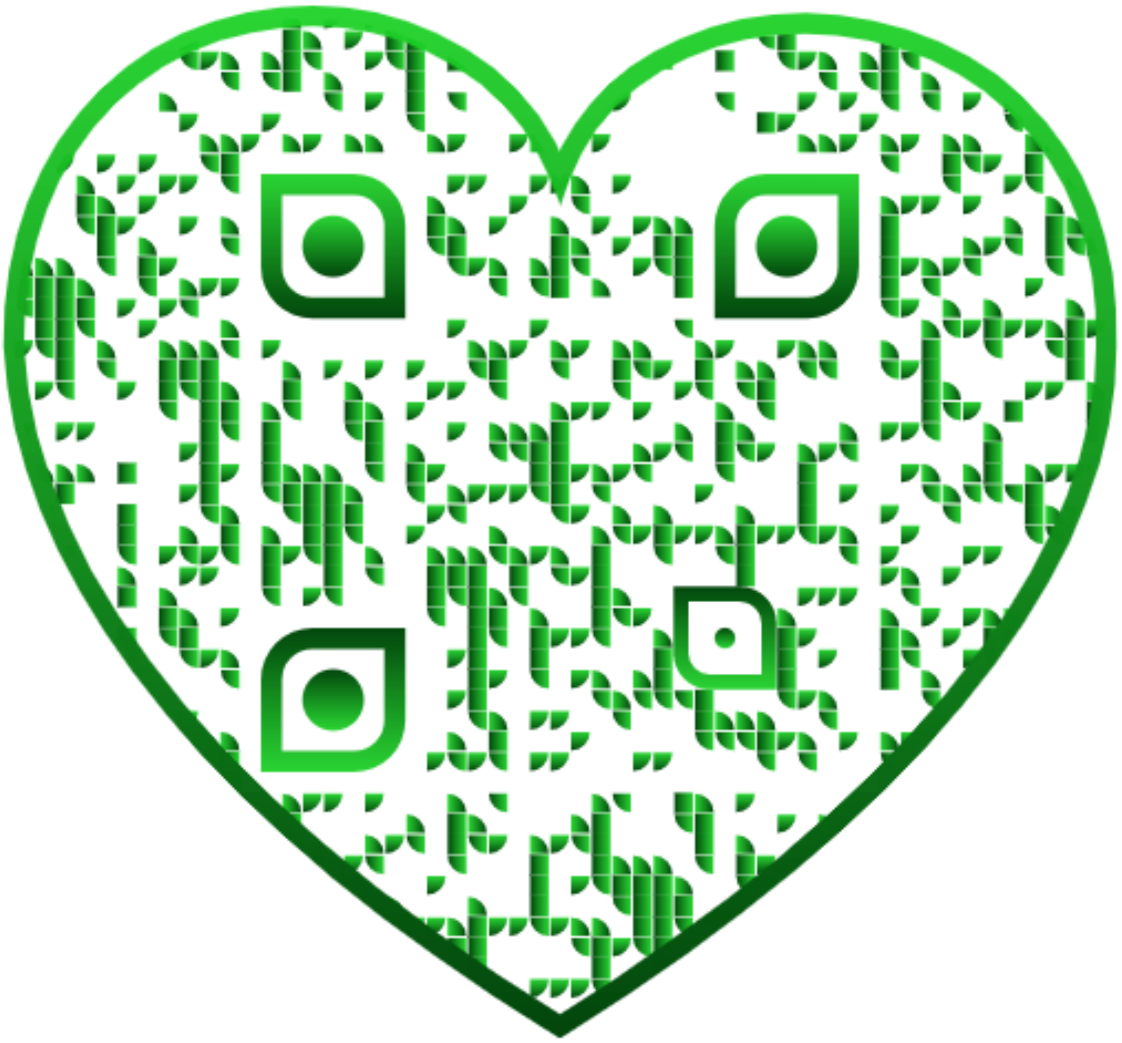
Paul Rutter

Community Pharmacy

Symptoms, Diagnosis and Treatment

Third edition

CHURCHILL
LIVINGSTONE
ELSEVIER



Useful web sites

Evidence-based Medicine

National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
http://www.nice.org.uk/

Bandolier – evidence-based medicine journal
http://www.medicine.ox.ac.uk/bandolier/

Centre for Reviews and Dissemination
http://www.york.ac.uk/inst/crd/

Medicines and Prescribing support from NICE
http://www.nice.org.uk/mpc/

Midlands Therapeutics Review and Advisory Committee
http://www.keele.ac.uk/schools/pharm/MTRAC/

Newcastle Regional Drug and Therapeutics Centre
http://www.nyrdtc.nhs.uk/

King's Fund
http://www.kingsfund.org.uk/

Medicines Information

National Electronic Library for Medicines
http://www.nelm.nhs.uk/en/

UK Medicines Information
http://www.ukmi.nhs.uk/

Electronic Medicines Compendium
http://www.emc.medicines.org.uk/

UK Medicines Information Central
http://www.ukmicentral.nhs.uk/

Prodigy (formerly Clinical Knowledge Summaries)
http://prodigy.clarity.co.uk/home

PAGB Medicines chest
http://www.medicinechestonline.com/

Organisations & Associations

Royal Pharmaceutical Society
http://www.rpharms.com/home/home.asp

The British Medical Association
http://www.bma.org

The Nursing and Midwifery Council
http://www.nmc-uk.org/

National Pharmacy Association
http://www.npa.co.uk/

Pharmaceutical Services Negotiating Committee
http://www.psnc.org.uk/

Guild of Healthcare Pharmacists
http://www.ghp.org.uk/

UK Clinical Pharmacists Association
http://www.ukcpa.org/

Association of the British Pharmaceutical Industry
http://www.abpi.org.uk/

The Proprietary Association of Great Britain
http://www.pagb.co.uk/

British Pharmaceutical Students Association
http://www.bpsa.com

International Pharmaceutical Federation (FIP)
http://www.fip.org/

World Health Organization
http://www.who.ch/

Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency
http://www.mhra.gov.uk/index.htm#page=DynamicListMedicines

Journals

British Journal of General Practice
http://www.rcgp.org.uk/brjgenpract.aspx

British Medical Journal
http://www.bmj.com/

Health Services Research
http://www.hsr.org/

Nursing Standard
http://www.nursing-standard.co.uk

Pharmaceutical Journal
http://www.pharmj.com

Chemist and Druggist
http://www.chemistanddruggist.co.uk/1

The Lancet
http://www.thelancet.com/

International Journal of Clinical Pharmacy
http://www.springer.com/medicine/internal/journal/11096

General Health Sites for Patients

http://www.patient.co.uk
http://www.healthfinder.gov/
http://www.mayoclinic.com/index.cfm?
http://www.bbc.co.uk/health/

Community Pharmacy

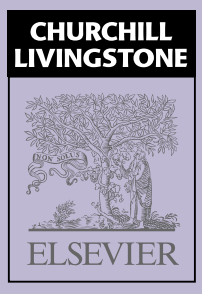
Content Strategist: Pauline Graham
Content Development Specialist: Sally Davies/Ailsa Laing
Project Manager: Umarani Natarajan
Designer/Design Direction: Miles Hitchen
Illustrator: PCA Creative

Community Pharmacy

Symptoms, Diagnosis and Treatment

Paul Rutter BPharm MRPharmS PhD
Department of Pharmacy, University of Wolverhampton, Wolverhampton, UK

THIRD EDITION



Edinburgh London New York Oxford Philadelphia St Louis Sydney Toronto 2013

CHURCHILL
LIVINGSTONE
ELSEVIER

© 2013 Elsevier Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

First edition 2004
Second edition 2009
Third edition 2013

ISBN **978-0-7020-5018-3**
E-book ISBN **978-0-7020-5473-0**

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

Notices
Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

With respect to any drug or pharmaceutical products identified, readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of practitioners, relying on their own experience and knowledge of their patients, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

ELSEVIER your source for books, journals and multimedia in the health sciences
www.elsevierhealth.com

ELSEVIER Book Aid International Working together to grow libraries in developing countries
www.elsevier.com • www.bookaid.org

The publisher's policy is to use **paper manufactured from sustainable forests**

Printed in China

Contents

Useful web sites		Inside front cover, vi
Preface		vii
Introduction		ix
How to use the book		xiii
1	Respiratory system	1
2	Ophthalmology	43
3	Ear conditions	67
4	Central nervous system	79
5	Women's health	107
6	Gastroenterology	133
7	Dermatology	195
8	Musculoskeletal conditions	259
9	Paediatrics	283
10	Specific product requests	313
Abbreviations		339
Glossary of terms		341
Index		343

Useful web sites

Evidence-based Medicine

National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
http://www.nice.org.uk/

Bandolier – evidence-based medicine journal
http://www.medicine.ox.ac.uk/bandolier/

Centre for Reviews and Dissemination
http://www.york.ac.uk/inst/crd/

Medicines and Prescribing support from NICE
http://www.nice.org.uk/mpc/

Midlands Therapeutics Review and Advisory Committee
http://www.keele.ac.uk/schools/pharm/MTRAC/

Newcastle Regional Drug and Therapeutics Centre
http://www.nyrdtc.nhs.uk/

King's Fund
http://www.kingsfund.org.uk/

Medicines Information

National Electronic Library for Medicines
http://www.nelm.nhs.uk/en/

UK Medicines Information
http://www.ukmi.nhs.uk/

Electronic Medicines Compendium
http://www.emc.medicines.org.uk/

UK Medicines Information Central
http://www.ukmicentral.nhs.uk/

Prodigy (formerly Clinical Knowledge Summaries)
http://prodigy.clarity.co.uk/home

PAGB Medicines chest
http://www.medicinechestonline.com/

Organisations & Associations

Royal Pharmaceutical Society
http://www.rpharms.com/home/home.asp

The British Medical Association
http://www.bma.org

The Nursing and Midwifery Council
http://www.nmc-uk.org/

National Pharmacy Association
http://www.npa.co.uk/

Pharmaceutical Services Negotiating Committee
http://www.psnc.org.uk/

Guild of Healthcare Pharmacists
http://www.ghp.org.uk/

UK Clinical Pharmacists Association
http://www.ukcpa.org/

Association of the British Pharmaceutical Industry
http://www.abpi.org.uk/

The Proprietary Association of Great Britain
http://www.pagb.co.uk/

British Pharmaceutical Students Association
http://www.bpsa.com

International Pharmaceutical Federation (FIP)
http://www.fip.org/

World Health Organization
http://www.who.ch/

Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency
http://www.mhra.gov.uk/index.htm#page=DynamicListMedicines

Journals

British Journal of General Practice
http://www.rcgp.org.uk/brjgenpract.aspx

British Medical Journal
http://www.bmj.com/

Health Services Research
http://www.hsr.org/

Nursing Standard
http://www.nursing-standard.co.uk

Pharmaceutical Journal
http://www.pharmj.com

Chemist and Druggist
http://www.chemistanddruggist.co.uk/1

The Lancet
http://www.thelancet.com/

International Journal of Clinical Pharmacy
http://www.springer.com/medicine/internal/journal/11096

General Health Sites for Patients

http://www.patient.co.uk
http://www.healthfinder.gov/
http://www.mayoclinic.com/index.cfm?
http://www.bbc.co.uk/health/

Preface

Demand on healthcare professionals to deliver high-quality patient care has never been greater. A multitude of factors impinge on healthcare delivery today, including an ageing population, more sophisticated medicines, high patient expectation, health service infrastructure, as well as adequate and appropriate staffing levels. In primary care the medical practitioner role is pivotal in providing this care and they remain the central member of the healthcare team, but demands on their time mean other models of service delivery are being adopted in the UK and in other developed countries that utilise other types of healthcare professionals.

This is leading to a breaking down of the traditional boundaries of care between doctors, nurses, and pharmacists. In particular, certain medical practitioner responsibilities, which were once seen as their sole domain, are now being performed by nurses and pharmacists, for example, specialist practice nurses; and, more recently, independent prescribing status allows nurses and pharmacists to prescribe medicines. This change in responsibilities is now firmly established in UK government healthcare policy. Probably of greatest impact to community pharmacy practice is the prominence placed on self-care by Western governments. In the UK, the government self-care agenda is clear, with numerous published policy papers detailing how maximising self-care can be achieved. In May 2011, the self-care forum (http://www.selfcareforum.org/) was established, the purpose of which is to promote self-care and embed it in everyday life.

This drive for patients to manage their own health has been facilitated by the Government making more medicines available over the counter. In the UK, between 1983 and 2011, over 80 prescription-only medicines have been reclassified as pharmacy medicines (sold under the supervision of the pharmacist). More recent switches have included products from new therapeutic classes (e.g. anti-emetics, proton pump inhibitors, triptans and alpha-blockers) allowing community pharmacists to manage and treat a wider range of conditions.

Further deregulation of medicines to treat acute illness from different therapeutic areas seems likely, especially as healthcare professional opinion to acute medicine deregulation is broadly positive and the impact on general practice workload associated with dealing with minor ailments is high (and represents 100 to 150 million GP consultations per annum). Government policy now seems also to embrace chronic disease management as a self-care activity, and might well be the largest area for future growth of reclassification of medicines. The UK, in 2004, was the first country in the world to deregulate simvastatin; subsequently, orlistat for the treatment of obesity (2008) and tamsulosin (2010) for benign prostatic hyperplasia, have become available.

Pharmacists, now more than ever before, need to demonstrate that they are competent practitioners to be trusted with this additional responsibility. Therefore pharmacists require greater levels of knowledge and understanding about commonly occurring medical conditions. They will need to be able to recognise their signs and symptoms, and use an evidence-based approach to treatment.

This was, and still is, the catalyst for this book. Although other books targeted for pharmacists on diagnosis are published, this book aims to give a more in-depth view of minor conditions and how to differentiate them from more sinister pathology that may present in a similar way. The book is intended for all non-medical prescribers but especially for pharmacists, from undergraduate students to experienced practitioners.

It is hoped that the information contained within the book is both informative and useful.

Paul Rutter
Wolverhampton

This page intentionally left blank

Introduction

Community pharmacists are the most accessible healthcare professional. No appointment is needed to consult a pharmacist and patients can receive free, unbiased advice almost anywhere. A community pharmacist is often the first health professional the patient seeks advice from and, as such, provides a filtering mechanism whereby minor self-limiting conditions can be appropriately treated with the correct medication and patients with more sinister pathology referred on to the GP for further investigation. On a typical day a pharmacist practising in an 'average' community pharmacy can realistically expect to help between 5 and 15 patients a day who present with various symptoms for which they are seeking advice, reassurance, treatment or a combination of all three.

Current UK health policy, and that of other Western countries, of making more medicines available has promoted patient self-care, and with it a greater role for community pharmacists. The UK over-the-counter (OTC) medicines market has seen considerable growth over the last few years, and in 2010 was worth over £2.3 billion. The upward sales trend for OTC medicines, the UK government's continued promotion of self-care and ever increasing demands on primary healthcare services means that OTC medicines have, and will continue to play, an important part in disease management.

Communication skills

The ability of the community pharmacist to diagnose the patient's presenting signs and symptoms is a significant challenge given that, unlike most other healthcare professionals, community pharmacists do not normally have access to the patient's medical record and thus have no idea about what the person's problem is until a conversation is initiated.

For the most part, pharmacists will be totally dependent on their ability to question patients in order to arrive at a differential diagnosis. This is in stark contrast to the GP and to a lesser extent the nurse, who can draw on physical examination and diagnostic tests to help them arrive at a diagnosis.

Whilst pharmacists could (and some argue should) perform simple physical examinations, most do not, due to the lack of training they receive; diagnostic testing is never employed because of the cost (which would have to be passed on to the patient), the invasive nature of most tests (e.g. blood taking for analysis) and the lack of immediacy in gaining test results.

Having said this, a number of studies have shown that patient history taking is by far the most important element of arriving at a correct diagnosis, although performing physical examinations and conducting laboratory investigations do improve the odds of getting the diagnosis right.

It is vital, therefore, that pharmacists possess excellent communication skills to ensure the correct information is obtained from the patient. This will be drawn from a combination of good questioning technique, listening actively to the patient and picking up on non-verbal cues.

Approaches to differential diagnosis

Try to avoid using acronyms

Traditionally, the use of acronyms has been advocated to help pharmacists remember what questions to ask a patient. However, it is important that pharmacists do not solely rely on acronyms in trying to differentially diagnose a person's presenting complaint; acronyms are rigid, inflexible and often inappropriate. Every patient is different and therefore it is unlikely that an acronym can be fully applied, and more importantly, using acronyms can mean that vital information is missed, which could shape your course of action. Some of the more commonly used acronyms are discussed briefly below.

WWHAM

This is the simplest acronym to remember but it is also the worst one to use. It gives the pharmacist very limited information from which to work and it is unlikely that a correct differential diagnosis will be made. It should be used with caution and it is probably only helpful for counter assistants to use when a patient first presents, so

that a general picture of the person's presenting complaint can be established.

	Meaning of the letter	Attributes of the acronym
W	Who is the patient?	*Positive points*
W	What are the symptoms?	Establishes presenting complaint
H	How long have the symptoms been present?	*Negative points*
A	Action taken?	Fails to consider general appearance of patient. No social/lifestyle factors taken into account; no family history sought; not specific or in-depth enough; no history of previous symptoms
M	Medication being taken?	

Other acronyms that have been suggested as being helpful for pharmacists in differential diagnosis are ENCORE, ASMETHOD and SIT DOWN SIR. Although these three acronyms are more comprehensive than WWHAM, they still are limited. No one acronym takes into consideration all factors that might impinge on the differential diagnosis. All fail to establish a full history from the patient in respect to lifestyle and social factors or the relevance of a family history. They are very much designed to establish the nature and severity of the presenting complaint. This, in many instances, will be adequate but for intermittent conditions (e.g. irritable bowel syndrome, asthma, hay fever) or conditions where a positive family history is important (e.g. psoriasis, eczema) they might well miss important information that effects the diagnosis.

	Meaning of the letter	Attributes of the acronym
E	Explore	*Positive points*
N	No medication	'Observe' section suggests taking into account the appearance of the patient – does he or she look poorly?
C	Care	*Negative points*
O	Observe	Sections on 'No medication' and 'Refer' add little to the differential diagnosis process. No social/lifestyle factors taken into account; no family history sought
R	Refer	
E	Explain	

	Meaning of the letter	Attributes of the acronym
A	Age/appearance?	*Positive points*
S	Self or someone else?	Establishes the nature of problem and if patient has suffered from previous similar episodes
M	Medication?	*Negative points*
E	Extra medicines?	Exact symptoms and severity social/lifestyle factors not taken into account; no family history sought
T	Time persisting?	
H	History?	
O	Other symptoms?	
D	Danger symptoms?	

	Meaning of the letter	Attributes of the acronym
S	Site or location?	*Positive points*
I	Intensity or severity?	Establishes the severity and nature of problem and if the patient has suffered from previous similar episodes
T	Type or nature?	*Negative points*
D	Duration?	Fails to consider general appearance of patient. No social/lifestyle factors taken into account; no family history sought
O	Onset?	
W	With (other symptoms)?	
N	Annoyed or aggravated?	
S	Spread or radiation?	
I	Incidence or frequency pattern?	
R	Relieved by?	

Clinical reasoning

Whether we are conscious of it or not, most people will – at some level – use clinical reasoning to arrive at a differential diagnosis. Clinical reasoning relates to the decision-making processes associated with clinical practice. It is a thinking process directed towards enabling the pharmacist to take appropriate action in a specific context. It fundamentally differs from using acronyms in that it is built around clinical knowledge and skills that are applied to the individual patient. It involves recognition of cues and analysis of data. Very early in a clinical encounter, and based on limited information, the person will arrive at a small number of hypotheses. The pharmacist then sets about testing these hypotheses by asking the patient a series of questions. The answer to each question allows the pharmacist to narrow down the possible diagnosis by either eliminating particular conditions or confirming his or her suspicions of a particular condition. Once the questioning is over, the pharmacist should be in a position to differentially diagnose the patient's condition.

In addition, clinical experience (pattern recognition) also plays a part in the process. Certain conditions have very characteristic presentations and, once seen, it is a relatively straightforward task to diagnose the next case by recalling the appearance of the rash. Therefore, much of daily practice will consist of seeing new cases that strongly resemble previous encounters and comparing new cases to old.

Key steps in the process

1. Formulating a diagnosis based on the patient and the initial presenting complaint

Before any questions are asked of the patient you should consider who the patient is and how this may influence your thinking.

- What is the general appearance of the patient? Does the person look well or poorly? Is the person you are about to talk to the patient or someone acting on the patient's behalf? This will shape your thinking as to the severity of the problem.
- How old is the patient? This is very useful information. Epidemiological studies for a wide range of conditions and disease states has shown that certain age groups will suffer from certain problems. For example, it is very unlikely that a child who presents with cough will have chronic bronchitis but the probability of an elderly person having chronic bronchitis is much higher.
- What sex is the patient? As with age, sex can dramatically alter the chances of suffering from certain conditions. Migraines are five times more common in women than men, yet cluster headache is nine times more common in men than women.
- What is the presenting complaint? Some conditions are much more common than others. Therefore you could form an idea of what condition the patient is likely to be suffering from based on the laws of probability (epidemiology). For example, if a person presents with a headache then you should already know that the most common cause of headache is tension-type headache, followed by migraine and then sinusitis. Other causes of headache are rare but obviously need to be eliminated. Your line of questioning should try to confirm or refute the most likely causes of headache.

2. Asking questions

The questions you ask the patient will be specific to that patient. After establishing who the person is, how poorly he or she is and what the presenting complaint is, a number of targeted questions specific to that patient should be asked. The following scenario will illustrate this point.

A 31-year old female asks for advice about a headache she has.

What are your initial thoughts? (Formulating a diagnosis based on the patient and the initial presenting complaint.):

- The patient is present
- The patient is female and in her early 30s
- The patient looks and sounds OK
- Epidemiology states tension-type headache is most likely but women are more prone to migraine than men.

What line of questioning do you take?

Your main aim is to differentiate between tension-type and migraine headache.

Nature of the pain

Tension headache usually produces a dull ache, as opposed to the throbbing nature of migraine pain:

- Patient's response: dull ache
- Pharmacist's thoughts: suggestive of tension-type headache.

Location of pain

Tension headache is generally bilateral; migraine is normally unilateral

- Patient's response: all over
- Pharmacist's thoughts: suggestive of tension-type headache.

Severity of pain

Tension headache is not usually severe and disabling; migraine can be disabling

- Patient's response: bothersome more than stopping her doing things
- Pharmacist's thoughts: suggestive of tension headache.

The answers so far are indicative of tension-type headache. However, further specific questions relating to lifestyle and previous and family history should be asked. It would be expected that there was no family history of migraine and there is probably some trigger factor causing the headache, for example, increased stress due to work or personal pressures. The patient might therefore have had similar headaches in the past.

Finally, even though at this stage you are confident of your differential diagnosis you should still ask a couple of questions to rule out any sinister pathology. Obviously you are expecting the answers from these questions to be

negative to support your differential diagnosis. Any questions that invoke the opposite to that expected will require further investigation.

3. Confirm facts

Before making a recommendation to the patient it is always helpful to try and re-cap on the information elicited. This is especially important when you have had to ask a lot of questions. It is well known that short-term working memory is relatively small and that remembering all the pertinent facts is difficult. Summarising the information at this stage will not only help you formulate your final diagnosis but will also allow the patient to add further information or correct you on facts that you have failed to remember correctly.

The way in which one goes about establishing what is wrong with the patient will vary from practitioner to practitioner. However, it is important that whatever method is adopted it must be sufficiently robust enough to be of benefit to the patient. Using a clinical reasoning approach to differential diagnosis allows you to build a fuller picture of the patient's presenting complaint. It is both flexible and specific to each individual, unlike the use of acronyms.

How to use the book

The book is divided into 10 chapters. The first nine chapters are systems based and structured in the format shown in Fig. 1. The final chapter is product based and has a slightly different format. A list of abbreviations and a glossary are included at the end of the book.

Key features of each chapter

At the beginning of each chapter there is a short section addressing basic anatomy and history taking specific to that body system. A basic understanding of the anatomical location of major structures is useful when attempting to diagnose/exclude conditions from a patient's presenting complaint. It would be almost impossible to know whether to treat or refer a patient who presented with symptoms suggestive of renal colic if one doesn't know where the kidneys are. However, this book is not intended to replace an anatomy text and the reader is referred to the list of further reading for anatomy texts.

Self-assessment questions

Twenty multiple choice questions and at least two case-studies are presented at the end of each chapter. These are designed to test factual recall and applied knowledge. The multiple choice questions are constructed to mimic those set in the pre-registration examination. They start with simple traditional multiple choice questions in which the right answer has to be picked from a series of five possible answers, and work up to more complex questions which are inter-related.

The case studies challenge you with 'real-life' situations. All are drawn from practice and have been encountered by practising pharmacists, but have been modified for inclusion in the book.

Elements included under each condition

The same structure has been adopted for every condition. This is intended to help the reader approach differential diagnosis from the position of clinical decision-making. To help summarise the information, tables and algorithms are included for many of the conditions.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

A table summarising the key questions that should be asked for each condition is included. The relevance (i.e. the rationale for asking the question) is given for each question. This will allow pharmacists to determine what questions to ask of every patient to enable a differential diagnosis.

Primer for differential diagnosis

A 'primer for differential diagnosis' is available for a number of conditions covered. This algorithmic approach to differential diagnosis is geared toward nearly or recently qualified pharmacists. They are not intended to be solely relied upon in making a differential diagnosis but to act as an aide memoire. It is anticipated that the primers will be used in conjunction with the text, thus allowing a broader understanding of the differential diagnosis of the condition to be considered.

Triggers points indicative of referral

A summary box of trigger factors when it would be prudent to refer the patient to a medical practitioner is presented for each condition. These trigger factors are not absolute and the pharmacist will have to use their professional judgement on a case-by-case basis. For example, a person with a cough of 3 days' duration might need referral if they are visibly poorly.

Evidence-based OTC medication and practical prescribing and product selection

These two sections present the reader, first, with an evaluation of the current literature on whether over-the-counter

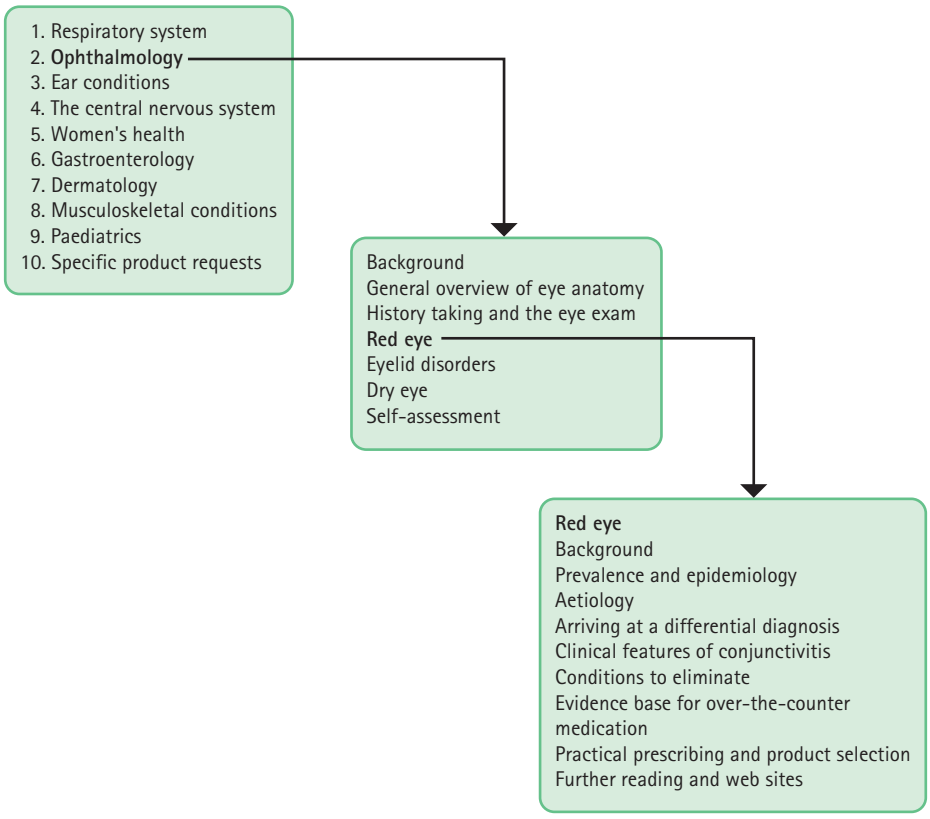


Fig. 1 Structure of this book.

(OTC) medicine works, and, second with a quick reference to the dose of the medicine and when and when it cannot be prescribed. This does not replace standard textbooks such as *Martindale* or *Stockley's Drug Interactions*, but it does allow the user to find basic data in one text without having to reach for three or four other texts to answer simple questions.

The pregnancy and breastfeeding recommendations in this book are based largely on those from standard texts such as: Briggs' *Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation* and, Schaefers' *Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation*. In addition, the UKMi web site has been used (http://www.ukmi.nhs.uk/). Many manufacturers of OTC medicines advise against their products being used in these groups, but where possible, in the summary tables reference is made to the recommendations made from these sources. This hopefully will provide extra information for pharmacists if faced with queries from pregnant and lactating women.

Hints and tips boxes

A summary box of useful information is provided near the end of each condition. This contains information that does not fall readily into any of the other sections but is none the less useful. For example, some of the hints and tips boxes give advice on how to administer eye drops, suppositories and other forms of medicines that are not taken via the oral route.

References, further reading and web sites

To supplement the text, at the end of each condition a list of selected references and reading is provided for those that wish to seek further information on the subject. Web sites are also provided, and all sites have been checked and were active and relevant at the time of writing (Winter 2012).

Finally, all information presented in the book is accurate and factual as far as the author is aware. It is acknowledged that guidelines change, products become discontinued and new information becomes available over the lifetime of a book. Therefore, if any information in the book is not current or valid, the author would be grateful of any feedback; positive or negative to ensure that the next edition is as up-to-date as possible.

Chapter 1

Respiratory system

In this chapter

Background 1
General overview of the anatomy of the respiratory tract 1
History taking and physical exam 2
Cough 2
The common cold 12
Sore throats 19
Rhinitis 25
Self-assessment questions 35

Background

Diseases of the respiratory tract are amongst the most common reasons for consulting a GP. The average GP sees approximately 700 to 1000 patients each year with respiratory disease. Although respiratory disease can cause significant morbidity and mortality, the vast majority of conditions are minor and self-limiting.

General overview of the anatomy of the respiratory tract

The basic requirement for all living cells to function and survive is a continuous supply of oxygen. However, a by-product of cell activity is carbon dioxide, which, if not removed, poisons and kills the cells of the body. The principal function of the respiratory system is therefore the exchange of carbon dioxide and oxygen between blood and atmospheric air. This exchange takes place in the lungs, where pulmonary capillaries are in intimate contact with the linings of the lung's terminal air spaces: the alveoli. All other structures associated with the respiratory tract serve to facilitate this gaseous exchange.

The respiratory tract is divided arbitrarily into the upper and lower respiratory tract. In addition to these structures, the respiratory system also includes the oral cavity, rib cage and diaphragm.

Upper respiratory tract

The upper respiratory tract comprises those structures located outside the thorax: the nasal cavity, pharynx and larynx.

Nasal cavity

The internal portion of the nose is classed as the nasal cavity. The nasal cavity is connected to the pharynx through two openings called the internal nares. Besides receiving olfactory stimuli (smell), the nasal cavity plays an important part in respiration because it filters out large dust particles and warms and moistens incoming air.

Pharynx

The pharynx is divided into three sections:

- nasopharynx, which exchanges air with the nasal cavity and moves particulate matter toward the mouth
- oropharynx and laryngopharynx, which serve as a common passageway for air and food
- laryngopharynx, which connects with the oesophagus and the larynx and, like the oropharynx, serves as a common pathway for the respiratory and digestive systems.

Larynx (voice box)

The larynx is a short passageway that connects the pharynx with the trachea. The glottis and epiglottis are located here and act like 'trap doors' to ensure that liquids and food are routed into the oesophagus and not the trachea.

Lower respiratory tract

The lower respiratory tract is located almost entirely within the thorax and comprises the trachea, bronchial tree and lungs.

Trachea and bronchi

The trachea connects the larynx with the bronchi. The bronchi divide and subdivide into bronchioles and these in turn divide to form terminal bronchioles, which give rise to alveoli where gaseous exchange takes place. The epithelial lining of the bronchial tree acts as a defence mechanism known as the mucociliary escalator. Cilia on the surface of cells beat upwards in organised waves of contraction thus expelling foreign bodies.

Lungs

The lungs are cone shaped and lie in the thoracic cavity. Enclosing and protecting the lungs are the pleural membranes; the inner membrane covers the lungs and the outer membrane is attached to the thoracic cavity. Between the membranes is the pleural cavity, which contains fluid and prevents friction between the membranes during breathing.

History taking and physical exam

Cough, cold, sore throat and rhinitis often coexist and an accurate history is therefore essential to differentially diagnose a patient who presents with symptoms of respiratory disease. A number of similar questions must be asked for each symptom, although symptom-specific questions are also needed (these are discussed under each heading, below). Currently, examination of the respiratory tract is outside the remit of the community pharmacist, unless they have additional qualifications (e.g. independent prescriber status).

Cough

Background

The main function of coughing is airway clearance. Excess secretions and foreign bodies are cleared from the lungs by a combination of coughing and the mucociliary escalator. (the upward beating of the finger-like cilia in the bronchi that move mucus and entrapped foreign bodies to be expectorated or swallowed). Cough is the most common respiratory symptom and one of the few ways by which abnormalities of the respiratory tract manifest themselves. Cough can be very debilitating to the patients' well-being and be disruptive to family, friends and work colleagues.

Coughs can be described as either productive (chesty) or non-productive (dry, tight, tickly). However, many patients will say that they are not producing sputum, although they go on to say that they 'can feel it on their chest'. In these cases the cough is probably productive in nature and should be treated as such.

Coughs are either classed as acute or chronic in nature. The British Thoracic Society Guidelines (2006) recommend that:

- an acute cough lasts less than 3 weeks
- chronic cough lasts more than 8 weeks.

The guidelines acknowledge that a 'grey area' exists for those coughs lasting between 3 and 8 weeks as it is difficult to define their aetiological basis because all chronic coughs will have started as an acute cough. For community pharmacy practice this 'grey area' is rather academic, as any cough lasting longer than the accepted definition of acute should be referred to a medical practitioner for further investigation.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Statistics from general medical practice show that respiratory illness accounts for more patient visits than any other disease category. Acute cough is usually caused by a viral upper respiratory tract infection (URTI) and constitutes 20% of consultations. This translates to 12 million GP visits per year and represents the largest single cause of primary care consultation. In community pharmacy the figures are even higher with at least 24 million visits per year (or 2000 visits per pharmacy per year).

Schoolchildren experience the greatest number of coughs, with an estimated 7–10 episodes per year (as compared to adults with 2–5 episodes per year). Acute viral URTIs exhibit seasonality, with higher incidence seen in the winter months.

Aetiology

A five-part cough reflex is responsible for cough production. Receptors located mainly in the pharynx, larynx, trachea and bifurcations of the large bronchi are stimulated via mechanical, irritant or thermal mechanisms. Neural impulses are then carried along afferent pathways of the vagal and superior laryngeal nerves, which terminate at the cough centre in the medulla. Efferent fibres of the vagus and spinal nerves carry neural activity to the muscles of the diaphragm, chest wall and abdomen. These muscles contract, followed by the sudden opening of the glottis that creates the cough.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The most likely cause of acute cough in primary care for all ages is viral URTI. Recurrent viral bronchitis is most prevalent in preschool and young school-aged children and is the most common cause of persistent cough in

children of all ages. Table 1.1 highlights those conditions that can be encountered by community pharmacists and their relative incidence.

As viral infection is the most likely cause of cough encountered by pharmacists it is logical to ask questions that help to confirm or refute this assumption. However, it is important to differentiate other causes of cough from viral causes and also refer those cases of cough that might have more serious pathology. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 1.2).

Clinical features of acute viral cough

Viral coughs typically present with sudden onset and associated fever. Sputum production is minimal and symptoms

Table 1.1
Causes of cough and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most Likely	Viral infection
Likely	Upper airways cough syndrome (formerly known as postnasal drip and includes allergies), acute bronchitis
Unlikely	Croup, chronic bronchitis, asthma, pneumonia, ACE inhibitor induced
Very unlikely	Heart failure, bronchiectasis, tuberculosis, cancer, pneumothorax, lung abscess, nocardiasis, GORD

Table 1.2
Specific questions to ask the patient: Cough

Question	Relevance
Sputum colour	Mucoid (clear and white) is normally of little consequence and suggests that no infection is present Yellow, green or brown sputum normally indicates infection. Mucopurulent sputum is generally caused by a viral infection and does not require automatic referral Haemoptysis can either be rust coloured (pneumonia), pink tinged (left ventricular failure) or dark red (carcinoma). Occasionally, patients can produce sputum with bright red blood as one-off events. This is due to the force of coughing causing a blood vessel to rupture. This is non-serious and does not require automatic referral
Nature of sputum	Thin and frothy suggests left ventricular failure Thick, mucoid to yellow can suggest asthma Offensive foul-smelling sputum suggests either bronchiectasis or lung abscess
Onset of cough	A cough that is worse in the morning may suggest upper airways cough syndrome, bronchiectasis or chronic bronchitis
Duration of cough	URTI cough can linger for more than 3 weeks and is termed 'postviral cough'. However, coughs lasting longer than 3 weeks should be viewed with caution as the longer the cough is present the more likely serious pathology is responsible; for example, the most likely diagnoses of cough are as follows: at 3 days duration will be a URTI; at 3 weeks duration will be acute or chronic bronchitis; and at 3 months duration conditions such as chronic bronchitis, tuberculosis and carcinoma become more likely
Periodicity	Adult patients with recurrent cough might have chronic bronchitis, especially if they smoke Care should be exercised in children who present with recurrent cough and have a family history of eczema, asthma or hay fever. This might suggest asthma and referral would be required for further investigation
Age of the patient	Children will most likely be suffering from a URTI but asthma and croup should be considered With increasing age conditions such as bronchitis, pneumonia and carcinoma become more prevalent
Smoking history	Patients who smoke are more prone to chronic and recurrent cough. Over time this might develop in to chronic bronchitis and COPD

are often worse in the evening. Associated cold symptoms are also often present; these usually last between 7 and 10 days. Duration of longer than 14 days might suggest 'post viral cough' or possibly indicate a bacterial secondary infection but this is clinically difficult to establish without sputum samples being analysed.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Upper airways cough syndrome (previously referred to as postnasal drip)

Postnasal drip has recently (2006) been broadened to include a number of rhinosinus conditions related to cough. The umbrella term of upper airways cough syndrome (UACS) is being adopted.

UACS is characterised by a sinus or nasal discharge that flows behind the nose and into the throat. Patients should be asked if they are swallowing mucus or notice that they are clearing their throat more than usual, as these features are commonly seen in patients with UACS. Allergies are one cause of UACS. Coughs caused by allergies are often non-productive and worse at night. However, there are usually other associated symptoms, such as sneezing, nasal discharge/blockage, conjunctivitis and itching oral cavity. Cough of allergic origin might show seasonal variation, for example hay fever. Other causes include vasomotor rhinitis (caused by odours and changes in temperature/humidity) and post-infectious UACS after an URTI. If UACS is present, it is better to direct treatment at the cause of UACS (e.g. antihistamines or decongestants) rather than just treat the cough.

Acute bronchitis

Most cases are seen in autumn or winter and symptoms are similar to viral URTI but patients also tend to exhibit dyspnoea and wheeze. The cough usually lasts for 7–10 days but can persist for three weeks. The cause is normally viral, but sometimes bacterial. Symptoms will resolve without antibiotic treatment, regardless of the cause.

Unlikely causes

Laryngotracheobronchitis (croup)

Symptoms are triggered by a recent viral infection, with parainfluenza virus accounting for 75% of cases, although other viral pathogens implicated include the rhinovirus and respiratory syncytial virus. It affects infants aged between 3 months and 6 years old and affects 2 to 6% of children. The incidence is highest between 1 and 2 years of age and occurs in boys more than girls; it is more common in autumn and winter months. It often follows on from an URTI and occurs in the late evening and night. The cough can be severe and violent and described as having a barking (seal-like) quality. In between coughing episodes the child may be breathless and struggle to breathe properly. Typically, symptoms improve during the day and often recur again the following night, with the majority of children seeing symptoms resolve in 48 hours. Warm moist air as a treatment for croup has been used since the 19th century. This is either done by moving the child to a bathroom and running a hot bath or shower or by boiling a kettle in the room. However, UK guidelines (Prodigy, 2011) do not advocate humidification as there is no evidence to support its use.

Croup management is based on an assessment of severity. Advice by pharmacists should be that if symptoms persist beyond 48 hours or the child exhibits any symptoms of stridor then medical intervention is required. Standard treatment for those children with stridor would be oral or intra-muscular dexamethasone or nebulised budesonide.

Chronic bronchitis

Chronic bronchitis (CB), along with emphysema, is characterised by the destruction of lung tissue and collectively known as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) The prevalence of COPD in the UK is uncertain. However, figures from the Health and Safety Executive (2010) estimate that over a million individuals currently have a diagnosis of COPD, and accounts for 25 000 deaths each year.

Patients with CB often present with a long-standing history of recurrent acute bronchitis in which episodes become increasingly severe and persist for increasing duration until the cough becomes continual. CB has been defined as coughing up sputum on most days for three or more consecutive months over the previous 2 years. CB is caused by chronic irritation of the airways by inhaled substances, especially tobacco smoke. A history of smoking is the single most important factor in the aetiology of CB. In non-smokers the likely cause of CB is UACS, asthma or gastro-oesophageal reflux. One study has shown that 99% of non-smokers with CB and a normal chest X-ray suffered from one of these three conditions.

CB starts with a non-productive cough that later becomes a mucopurulent productive cough. The patient should be questioned about smoking habit. If the patient is a smoker the cough will usually be worse in the morning. Secondary infections contribute to acute exacerbations seen in CB. It typically occurs in patients over the age of 40 and is more common in men. Pharmacists have an important role to play in identifying smokers with CB as this provides an excellent opportunity for health promotion advice and assessing the patient's willingness to stop smoking.

Asthma

The exact prevalence of asthma is unknown due to differing terminologies and definitions plus difficulties in correct diagnosis, especially in children, and co-morbidity with COPD in the elderly. Best estimate of asthma prevalence in adults is approximately 4%, but it may be up to 10%. In children the figures are higher (10–15%) because a proportion of children will 'grow out' of it and be symptom free by adulthood.

Asthma is a chronic inflammatory condition of the airways characterised by coughing, wheeze, chest tightness and shortness of breath. Classically these symptoms tend to be variable, intermittent, worse at night and provoked by triggers. In addition, possible associated features are family or personal history of atopy and worsening symptoms after taking non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or beta-blockers.

In the context of presentations to a community pharmacist, asthma can present as a non-productive cough, especially in young children where the cough is often worst at night. In these cases pay particular attention to other possible symptoms such as chest tightness, wheeze and difficulty in breathing, which may be frequent and recurrent and occur even when the child does not have a cold.

Pneumonia (community acquired)

Bacterial infection is usually responsible for pneumonia and most commonly caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (80% of cases), although other pathogens are also responsible, e.g. *Chlamydia* and *Mycoplasma*. Initially, the cough is non-productive and painful (first 24 to 48 hours), but rapidly becomes productive, with sputum being stained red. The intensity of the redness varies depending on the causative organism. The cough tends to be worst at night. The patient will be unwell, with a high fever, malaise, headache, breathlessness, and experience pleuritic pain (inflammation of pleural membranes, manifested as pain to the sides) that worsens on inspiration. Urgent referral to the doctor is required as antibiotics should be started as soon as possible.

Medicine-induced cough or wheeze

A number of medicines may cause bronchoconstriction, which presents as cough or wheeze. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors are most commonly associated with cough. Incidence might be as high as 16%; it is not dose related and time to onset is variable, ranging from a few hours to more than 1 year after the start of treatment. Cough invariably ceases after withdrawal of the ACE inhibitor but takes 3 to 4 weeks to resolve. Other medicines that are associated with cough or wheeze are NSAIDs and beta-blockers. If an adverse drug reaction (ADR) is suspected then the pharmacist should discuss alternative medication with the prescriber, for example the incidence of cough with angiotension II receptor blockers is half that of ACE Inhibitors.

Very unlikely causes

Cough is a symptom of many other conditions, although the majority will be rarely encountered in community pharmacy. However, it is important to be aware of these rare causes of cough to ensure that appropriate referrals are made.

Heart failure

Heart failure is a condition of the elderly. The prevalence of heart failure rises with increasing age; 3 to 5% of people aged over 65 are affected and this increases to approximately 10% of patients aged 80 and over. Heart failure is characterised by insidious progression and diagnosing early mild heart failure is extremely difficult because symptoms are not pronounced. Often, the first symptoms patients experience are shortness of breath, orthopnoea and dyspnoea at night. As the condition progresses from mild/moderate to severe heart failure patients might complain of a productive, frothy cough, which may have pink-tinged sputum.

Bronchiectasis

Bronchiectasis is caused by irreversible dilation of the bronchi. Characteristically, the patient has a chronic cough of very long duration, which produces copious amounts of mucopurulent sputum (green-yellow in colour) that is usually foul smelling. The cough tends to be worse in the morning and evening. In long-standing cases the sputum is said to display characteristic layering with the top being frothy, the middle clear and the bottom dense with purulent particles.

Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis (TB) is a bacterial infection caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and is transmitted primarily by inhalation. After many decades of decline, the number of new TB cases occurring in industrialised countries is now starting to increase. In 2009, UK figures showed that over 9000 cases were notified – an increase of 4% on the previous year and the highest number for nearly 30 years. The incidence is higher in inner city areas (especially London and the West Midlands), among the elderly and immigrants from developing countries. TB is characterised by its slow onset and initial mild symptoms. The cough is chronic in nature and sputum production can vary from mild to severe with associated haemoptysis. Other

symptoms of the condition are malaise, fever, night sweats and weight loss. However, not all patients will experience all symptoms. A patient with a productive cough for more than 3 weeks and exhibiting one or more of the associated symptoms should be referred for further investigation, especially if they fall into one of the groups listed above. Chest X-rays and sputum smear tests can be performed to confirm the diagnosis.

Carcinoma of the lung

A number of studies have shown that between 20 and 90% of patients will develop a cough at some point during the progression of carcinoma of the lung. The possibility of carcinoma increases in long-term cigarette smokers who have had a cough for a number of months or who develop a marked change in the character of their cough. The cough produces small amounts of sputum that might be blood streaked. Other symptoms that can be associated with the cough are dyspnoea, weight loss and fatigue.

Lung abscess

A typical presentation is of a non-productive cough with pleuritic pain and dyspnoea. It is more common in the elderly. Signs of infection such as malaise and fever can also be present. Later the cough produces large amounts of purulent and often foul-smelling sputum.

Spontaneous pneumothorax (collapsed lung)

Rupture of the bullae (the small air or fluid filled sacs in the lung) can cause spontaneous pneumothorax but normally there is no underlying cause. It affects approximately 1 in 10000 people, usually tall, thin men between 20 and 40 years old. Cigarette smoking and a family history of pneumothorax are contributing risk factors. This can be a life-threatening disorder causing a non-productive cough and severe respiratory distress. The patient experiences sudden sharp unilateral chest pain that worsens on inspiration. The symptoms often begin suddenly, and can occur during rest or sleep.

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD) does not usually present with cough but patients with this condition might cough when recumbent (lying down). The patient might show symptoms of reflux or heartburn. Patients with GORD have increased cough reflex sensitivity and respond well to proton pump inhibitors. It should always be considered in all cases of unexplained cough.

Nocardiasis

Nocardiasis is an extremely rare bacterial infection caused by *Nocardia asteroides;* it is transmitted primarily by inhalation. It is very unlikely a pharmacist will ever encounter this condition and is included in this text for the sake of completeness. It has a higher incidence in the elderly population, especially men. The sputum is purulent, thick and possibly blood tinged. Fever is prominent and night sweats, pleurisy, weight loss and fatigue might also be present.

Figure 1.1 will aid the differentiation between serious and non-serious conditions of cough in adults.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Cough

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Chest pain Haemoptysis Pain on inspiration Wheeze and/or shortness of breath	All are symptoms outside remit of community pharmacist
Duration longer than 3 weeks Cough that recurs on a regular basis	Suggests non-acute cause of cough and requires further investigation
Debilitating symptoms in the elderly	This patient group at greater risk of complications
Persistent nocturnal cough in children	Suggests possible asthma

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Cough is often trivialised by practitioners but coughing can impair quality of life and cause anxiety to parents of children with cough. Patients who exercise self-care will be confronted with a plethora of over-the-counter (OTC) medication and many will find the choice overwhelming. The pharmacist must ensure that the most appropriate medication is selected for the patient, but this must be done on an evidence based approach.

All the active ingredients to treat cough were brought to the market many years ago when clinical trials suffered from flaws in study design compared to today's standards, thus clinical efficacy is therefore difficult to establish.

Expectorants

A number of active ingredients have been formulated to help expectoration, including guaifenesin, ammonium

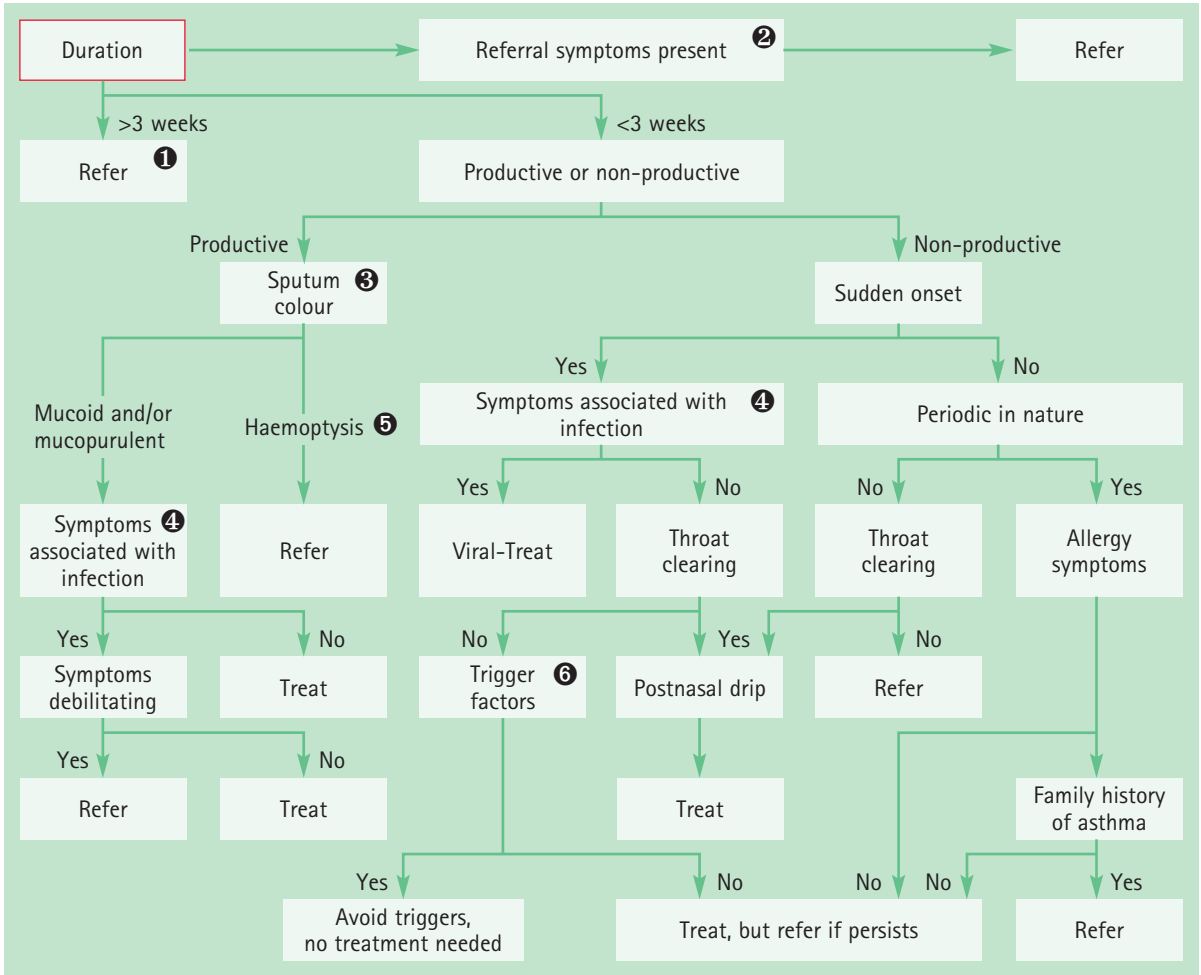


Fig. 1.1 Primer for differential diagnosis of cough in adults

❶ Duration of cough
Coughs lasting longer than 3 weeks are considered chronic in nature. Most acute, self-limiting coughs usually resolve within 3 weeks; conditions with sinister pathology are more likely the longer the cough has been present. However, not all coughs that have lasted 3 weeks have to be referred automatically. Postnasal drip and seasonal allergies (e.g. hay fever) can persist for weeks and be managed by community pharmacists.

❷ Referral symptoms
Certain symptoms warrant direct referral to the GP or even casualty. For example, shortness of breath, breathlessness (possible asthma), chest pain (possible cardiovascular cause) or pain on inspiration (pleurisy or pneumothorax).

❸ Sputum colour
Sputum colour can be helpful in deciding when to refer. However, there is a common misconception that patients who present with green-yellow or brown sputum have a bacterial infection; this is not normally the case. If the cough has persisted for more than 7 to 10 days it is possible that an initial viral infection has become secondarily infected with a bacterial infection. This could indicate referral, especially if the symptoms are debilitating or if the patient is elderly.

❹ Symptoms associated with infection
The patient might have associated symptoms of fever, rhinorrhoea and sore throat.

❺ Haemoptysis
Blood in the sputum requires further investigation, especially if the person has had the symptoms for a period of time.

❻ Trigger factors
Certain atmospheric factors can trigger cough. These factors include air temperature changes, pollution (e.g. cigarette smoke) and dry atmospheres (e.g. air conditioning).

salts, ipecacuanha, creosote and squill. The majority of products marketed in the UK for productive cough contain guaifenesin, although products containing squill (e.g. Buttercup Syrup) are available. The clinical evidence available for any active ingredient is limited. Older ingredients such as ammonium salts, ipecacuanha and squill were traditionally used to induce vomiting as it was believed that at subemetic doses they would cause gastric irritation, triggering reflex expectoration. This has never been proven and belongs in the annals of folklore. Guaifenesin is thought to stimulate secretion of respiratory tract fluid, increasing sputum volume and decreasing viscosity so assisting in removal of sputum. Guaifenesin is the only active ingredient that has any evidence of effectiveness. Two studies identified by Smith, Schroeder & Fahey (Cochrane Review 2008) found conflicting results for guaifenesin as an expectorant. In the largest study ($n = 239$) participants stated guaifenesin significantly reduced cough frequency and intensity compared to placebo. In the smaller trial ($n = 65$) guaifenesin was stated to have an antitussive not expectorant effect.

Summary

Based on studies, guaifenesin is the only expectorant with any evidence of effectiveness. However, trial results are not convincing and guaifenesin is probably little or no better than placebo. Given its proven safety record, absence of drug interactions, placebo properties and the public's desire to treat productive coughs with a home remedy it would seem reasonable to supply OTC cough medicines containing guaifenesin.

Cough suppressants (antitussives)

Cough suppressants act directly on the cough centre to depress the cough reflex. Their effectiveness has been investigated in patients with acute and chronic cough as well as citric-acid-induced cough. Although trials on healthy volunteers – in whom coughing was induced by citric acid – allowed reproducible conditions to assess the activity of antitussives, they are of little value because they do not represent physiological cough. Of greatest interest to OTC medication are trials investigating acute cough, because patients suffering from chronic cough should be referred to the GP.

Codeine

Codeine is generally accepted as a standard or benchmark antitussive against which all others are judged. A review by Eddy et al (1970) showed codeine to be an effective antitussive in animal models, and cough-induced studies in humans have also shown codeine to be effective. However, these findings appear to be less reproducible in acute and pathological chronic cough. More recent studies have failed to demonstrate a significant clinical effect of codeine compared with placebo in patients suffering with acute cough. Greater voluntary control of the cough reflex by patients has been suggested for the apparent lack of effect codeine has on acute cough.

Pholcodine

Pholcodine, like codeine, has been subject to limited clinical trials, with the majority being either animal models or citric-acid-induced cough studies in man. These studies have shown pholcodine to have antitussive activity. A review by Findlay (1988) concluded that, on balance, pholcodine appears to possess antitussive activity but advocates the need for better, well-controlled studies.

Dextromethorphan

Trial data for dextromethorphan, like that for codeine and pholcodine, are limited. It has been shown to be effective in citric-acid-induced cough and chronic cough but studies assessing the efficacy of dextromethorphan in acute cough have shown it to be no better than placebo. It appears to have limited abuse potential and fewer side effects than codeine.

Antihistamines

Antihistamines have been included in cough remedies for decades. Their mechanism of action is thought to be through the anticholinergic-like drying action on the mucous membranes and not via histamine. There are numerous clinical trials involving antihistamines for the relief of cough and cold symptoms, most notably with diphenhydramine.

Citric-acid-induced cough studies have demonstrated significant antitussive activity compared to placebo and results from chronic cough trials support an antitussive activity for diphenhydramine. However, trials that showed a significant reduction in cough frequency suffered from having small patient numbers, thus limiting their usefulness. Additionally, poor methodological design of trials investigating the antitussive activity of diphenhydramine in acute cough makes assessment of its effectiveness difficult. A recent review concluded 'Presumptions about efficacy of diphenhydramine against cough in humans are not unequivocally substantiated in literature' (Bjornsdottir et al 2007). Less-sedating antihistamines, have also not

been shown to have any benefit in treating coughs compared to placebo (Smith et al 2008).

Demulcents

Demulcents, such as simple linctus, are pharmacologically inert and are used on the theoretical basis that they reduce irritation by coating the pharynx and so prevent coughing. There is no evidence for their efficacy and they are used mainly for their placebo effect.

Combination cough mixtures

Many of the over-the-counter cough preparations are combinations of agents. Some of these include ingredients targeting other aspects of a common cold such as decongestants. It should be noted that some combination products contain sub-therapeutic doses of the active ingredients, while a few contain illogical combinations such as cough suppressants with an expectorant, or an antihistamine with an expectorant. If possible, these should be avoided.

Summary

Antitussives have been traditionally evaluated for efficacy in animal studies or cough-induced models on healthy volunteers. This presents serious problems in assessing their effectiveness because support for their antitussive activity does not come from patients with acute cough associated with URTI. Furthermore, there appear to be no comparative studies of sound study design to allow judgements to be made on their comparable efficacy. Compounding these problems is the self-limiting nature of acute cough, which further hinders differentiation between clinical efficacy and normal symptom resolution.

Antitussives therefore have a limited role in the treatment of acute non-productive cough. Patients should be encouraged to drink more fluid and told that their symptoms will resolve in time on their own. If medication is recommended then any active ingredient could be selected; side effect profile and abuse tendency rather than clinical efficacy will drive choice. On this basis, pholcodine and dextromethorphan would be first-line therapy and codeine, because of its greater side effect profile and tendency to be abused, should be reserved for second-line treatment. Antihistamines should not be used routinely, unless night-time sedation is perceived as beneficial to aid sleep.

Cough medication for children

Very few well-designed studies have been conducted in children. A review published in the Drug and Therapeutics Bulletin (Anonymous 1999) identified just five trials of sound methodological design. However, of these five trials, one study used illogical drug combinations (expectorant combined with suppressant) and a further three studies used combination products not available on the UK market.

In 2008 a Cochrane review examining the treatment of acute cough in both adults and children concluded there was no good evidence to support the effectiveness of cough medicines in acute cough (Smith et al 2008). In addition, there has been growing evidence of the potential harm that these agents can pose to young children, either due to adverse effects, or from accidental inappropriate dosing (Isbister et al 2010; Vassilev et al 2010). Based on the lack of efficacy and potential harm, the MHRA/CHM (in 2008 and 2009 respectively) recommended that cough and cold mixtures should not be used in children under 6 years of age, and should only be used in children aged 6 to 12 on the advice of a pharmacist or doctor and treatment limited to 5 days or less.

Furthermore, in October 2010, the MHRA announced that the risks associated with OTC oral liquid cough medicines containing codeine outweigh the benefits in children and young people under 18 years and therefore should no longer be used.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the cough medicines reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 1.3; useful tips relating to patients presenting with cough are given in Hints and Tips Box 1.1.

Cough expectorants

Guaifenesin

Almost all manufacturers include guaifenesin in their cough product ranges, including Benylin, Robitussin and Vicks. Children aged between 6 and 12 years should take 100 mg four times a day and the dose for adults – if it is going to work – must be 200 mg four times a day. Some products deliver suboptimal doses or the quantity taken in a single dose would be so large that the product only lasts 1 or 2 days. It is therefore advisable to always check the label of any branded guaifenesin product before recommendation to ensure the patient is receiving appropriate treatment. Guaifenesin-based products have no cautions in their use and no side effects; they are also free from clinically significant drug interactions so can be given safely with prescribed medication. Sugar-free versions (e.g. Robitussin range) are available.

Table 1.3
Practical prescribing: Summary of cough medicines

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Cough expectorants					
Guaifenesin	>6 years	None	None	None	OK
Cough suppressants					
Codeine	>18 years	Sedation, constipation	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Asthmatics	Pregnancy – best avoided in 3rd trimester Short periods OK in breastfeeding. Reports of dextromethorphan causing drowsiness and poor feeding in the baby
Pholcodine	>6 years	Possible sedation			
Dextromethorphan	>6 years				
Antihistamines					
Diphenhydramine*	>6 years	Dry mouth, sedation and constipation	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Pregnancy – Standard references state OK, although some manufacturers advise avoidance Breastfeeding – OK as amount secreted into breast milk small. It may however reduce milk supply. Reports of poor feeding in the baby
Demulcents					
Simple linctus	>1 month	None	None	None	OK

*Included in some cough preparations (e.g. Benylin Children's Night Cough & Benylin 4 Flu).

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 1.1: COUGH

Treatment for children under 6	Parents should be advised to make the child drink more fluid and potentially try a non-pharmacological cough mixture such as a demulcent.
Insulin-dependent diabetics	People with insulin-dependent diabetes should be asked to monitor their blood glucose more frequently because insulin requirements increase during acute infections
Avoid theophylline	Theophylline is available as an OTC product (e.g. DoDo Chesteze), but it is best avoided because patients requiring medication to help with shortness of breath or wheeze are best referred
Avoid illogical combinations	Very few cough remedies now have illogical medicine combinations. However, there are still a few on the market and these are best avoided. For example, combinations of expectorants and suppressants (e.g. Pulmo Bailey)

Cough suppressants (codeine, pholcodine, dextromethorphan)

Codeine, pholcodine and dextromethorphan are all opiate derivatives and therefore – broadly – have the same interactions, cautions in use and side effect profile. They do interact with prescription-only medications (POMs) and also with OTC medications, especially those that cross the blood-brain barrier. Their combined effect is to potentiate sedation and it is important to warn the patient of this, although short-term use of cough suppressants with the interacting medication is unlikely to warrant dosage modification. Care should be exercised when giving cough suppressants to asthmatics because, in theory, cough suppressants can cause respiratory depression. However, in practice this is very rarely observed and does not preclude the use of cough suppressants in asthmatic patients. However, other side effects can occur (e.g. constipation), especially with codeine. If a cough suppressant is unsuitable, for example in late pregnancy and children, then a demulcent can be offered.

Codeine

The dose for adults and children over 18 is 5 mL three or four times a day.

Pholcodine

The adult dose is 5 to 10 mL (5 to 10 mg) three or four times a day. For children aged 6 to 12 years the dose is half the adult dose, 2.5 to 5 mL (2.5 to 5 mg). Sugar-free versions (e.g. Pavacol-D) are available.

Dextromethorphan

Dextromethorphan can also be given in children over the age of 6. One product is commercially available (Vicks Cough Syrup with honey for dry coughs) – the dose being 5 mL every six hours. For adults and children aged over 12, there are a number of products available. (e.g. Benylin dry cough original and non-drowsy; Covonia original Bronchial Balsam and Robitussin for Dry coughs). The dosing is standard – 10 mL four times a day.

Antihistamines

Routine use of antihistamines is unjustified in treating non-productive cough. However, the sedative side effects from antihistamines can, on occasion, be useful to allow the patient an uninterrupted night's sleep.

All antihistamines included in cough remedies are first-generation antihistamines and associated with sedation. They interact with other sedating medication, resulting in potentiation of the sedative properties of the interacting medicines. They also possess antimuscarinic side effects, which commonly result in dry mouth and possibly constipation. It is these antimuscarinic properties that mean patients with glaucoma and prostate enlargement should ideally avoid their use, because it could lead to increased intraocular pressure and precipitation of urinary retention.

Demulcents

Demulcents, for example simple linctus, provide a safe alternative for at-risk patient groups such as the elderly, pregnant women, young children and those taking multiple medication. They can act as useful placebos when the patient insists on a cough mixture and will not take no for an answer. If recommended they should be given three or four times a day.

References

Bjornsdottir I, Einarson TR, Guomundsson LS, et al. Efficacy of diphenhydramine against cough in humans: a review. Pharm World Sci 2007;29(6):577–83.

Eddy NB, Friebel H, Hahn KJ, et al. Codeine and its alternatives for pain and cough relief. Geneva: World Health Organ 1970;1–253.

Findlay JWA. Review Articles: Pholcodine. J Clin Pharm Ther 1988;13:5–17.

Isbister GK, Prior F, Kilham HA. Restricting cough and cold medicines in children. Journal of Paediatrics and Child Health 2012;48:91–8.

Smith SM, Schroeder K, Fahey T. Over-the-counter (OTC) medications for acute cough in children and adults in ambulatory settings. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD001831. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001831.pub3.

Vassilev ZP, Kabadi S, Villa R. Safety and efficacy of over-the-counter cough and cold medicines for use in children. Expert Opinion Drug Safety 2010;9(2):233–42.

Further Reading

Dicpinigaitis PV, Colice GL, Goolsby MJ, et al. Acute cough: a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge. Cough 2009; 5:11.

Knutson D, Aring A. Viral croup. Am Fam Physician 2004;69:535–40, 541–2.

MeReC Bulletin. The management of common infections in primary care Volume 17 Number 3 December 2006.

Morice AH, McGarvey L, Pavord I. Recommendations for the management of cough in adults. Thorax 2006;61: S1–24.

NICE Guidance on TB. 2011, Available at http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG117 (accessed 1 November 2012).
Pratter MR. Overview of common causes of chronic cough: ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. Chest 2006;129(1 Suppl):59S–62S.
Russell KF, Liang Y, O'Gorman K, et al. Glucocorticoids for croup. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD001955. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001955.pub3.
Sahn S, Heffner J. Spontaneous pneumothorax. N Engl J Med 2000;342:868–74.
SIGN and BTS. British guideline on the management of asthma: a national clinical guideline (revised 2011). Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network and The British Thoracic Society, 2011, http://www.sign.ac.uk/guidelines/fulltext/101/index.html (accessed 1 November 2012).

Web sites

British Lung Foundation: http://www.lunguk.org/
Asthma UK: http://www.asthma.org.uk/
Action on Smoking and Health (ASH): http://www.ash.org.uk/
The British Thoracic Society: www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/

The common cold

Background

Colds, along with coughs, represent the largest caseload for primary healthcare workers. Because the condition has no specific cure and is self-limiting with two-thirds of sufferers recovering within a week, it would be easy to dismiss the condition as unimportant. However, because of the very high number of cases seen it is essential that pharmacists have a thorough understanding of the condition so that severe symptoms or symptoms suggestive of influenza are identified.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The common cold is extremely prevalent and like cough is caused by viral URTI. Children contract colds more frequently than adults with on average five to six colds per year compared to two to four colds in adults, although in children this can be as high as 12 colds per year. Children aged between 4 and 8 years are most likely to contract a cold and it can appear to a child's parents that one cold follows another with no respite. By the age of 10 the number of colds contracted is half that observed in pre-school children. In the UK, colds peak in December and January, possibly due to increased crowding indoors during cold weather, especially among schoolchildren.

Table 1.4
Causes of cold and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Viral infection
Likely	Rhinitis, rhinosinusitis, otitis media
Unlikely	Influenza

Aetiology

More than 200 different virus types can produce symptoms of the common cold, including rhinoviruses (accounting for 30–50% of all cases), coronaviruses, parainfluenza virus, respiratory syncytial virus and adenovirus. Transmission is primarily by the virus coming into contact with the hands, which then touch the nose, mouth and eyes (direct contact transmission). Droplets shed from the nose coat surfaces such as door handles and telephones. Cold viruses can remain viable on these surfaces for several hours and when an uninfected person touches the contaminated surface transmission occurs. Transmission by coughing and sneezing infected mucus particles does occur, although it is a secondary mechanism. This is why good hygiene (washing hands frequently and using disposable tissues) remains the cornerstone of reducing the spread of a cold.

Once the virus is exposed to the mucosa, it invades the nasal and bronchial epithelia, attaching to specific receptors and causing damage to the ciliated cells. This results in the release of inflammatory mediators, which in turn leads to inflammation of the tissues lining the nose. Permeability of capillary cell walls increases, resulting in oedema, which is experienced by the patient as nasal congestion and sneezing. Fluid might drip down the back of the throat, spreading the virus to the throat and upper chest causing cough and sore throat.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

It is extremely likely that someone presenting with cold symptoms will have a viral infection. Table 1.4 highlights those conditions that can be encountered by community pharmacists and their relative incidence.

Most people will accurately self-diagnose a common cold and it is the pharmacist's role to confirm this self-diagnosis and assess the severity of the symptoms as some patients, for example the elderly, infirm and those with

Table 1.5
Specific questions to ask the patient: The common cold

Question	Relevance
Onset of symptoms	Peak incidence of flu is in the winter months; the common cold occurs any time throughout the year Flu symptoms tend to have a more abrupt onset than the common cold – a matter of hours rather than 1 or 2 days Summer colds are common but they must be differentiated from seasonal allergic rhinitis (hay fever)
Nature of symptoms	Marked myalgia, chills and malaise are more prominent in flu than the common cold. Loss of appetite is also common with flu
Aggravating factors	Headache/pain that is worsened by sneezing, coughing and bending over suggests sinus complications If ear pain is present, especially in children, middle ear involvement is likely

existing medical conditions might need greater support and care. In the first instance, the pharmacist should make an overall assessment of the person's general state of health. Anyone with debilitating symptoms that effectively prevents them from doing their normal day-to-day routine should be managed more carefully. Whilst it is likely that a patient will have a common cold, severe colds can mimic the symptoms of flu, which is the only condition of any real significance that has to be eliminated before treatment can be given, although secondary complications can occur. Asking symptom specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 1.5).

Clinical features of the common cold

Symptoms of the common cold are well known. However, the nature and severity of symptoms will be influenced by factors such as the causative agent, patient age and underlying medical conditions. Following an incubation period of between 1 and 3 days (although this can be as short as 10–12 hours), the patient develops a sore throat and sneezing, followed by profuse nasal discharge and congestion. Cough and UACS commonly follow. In addition, headache, mild to moderate fever (<38.9°C; 102°F) and general malaise might be present. Most colds resolve in 1 week, but up to a quarter of people will have symptoms lasting 14 days or more.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Rhinitis

A blocked or stuffy nose, whether acute or chronic in nature, is a common complaint. Rhinitis is covered in more detail on page 25 and the reader is referred to this section for differential diagnosis of rhinitis from the common cold.

Acute rhinosinusitis

Rhinosinusitis (formerly sinusitis) is inflammation of one or more of the paranasal sinuses. Up to 2% of patients will develop acute rhinosinusitis as a complication of the common cold. Anatomically the sinuses are described in four pairs; frontal, ethmoid, maxillary and sphenoid. (Fig. 1.2) All are air-filled spaces that drain into the nasal cavity. Following a cold, sinus air spaces can become filled with nasal secretions, which stagnate because of a reduction in ciliary function of the cells lining the sinuses. Bacteria – commonly *Streptococcus* and *Haemophilus* – can then secondarily infect these stagnant secretions. It is clinically defined by at least two of the following symptoms:

- blockage or congestion
- discharge or UACS
- facial pain or pressure
- reduction or loss of smell.

The pain in the early stages tends to be relatively mild and localised, usually unilateral and dull but becomes bilateral and more severe the longer the condition persists. Bending forwards often exacerbates the pain (moving the eyes from side to side, coughing or sneezing can also increase the pain) and sinuses will be tender when gently palpated. If the ethmoid sinuses are involved, retro-orbital pain (behind the eye) is often experienced. Analgesics for pain relief and oral or nasal sympathomimetics can be tried, to remove the nasal secretions. Antibiotics are now not routinely recommended (2011) unless the person is systemically unwell or at risk of complications due to underlying medical conditions. If antibiotics are to be prescribed then amoxicillin is first line (or doxycycline if the patient has a penicillin allergy).

Acute otitis media

This is commonly seen in children following a common cold and results from the virus spreading to the middle ear

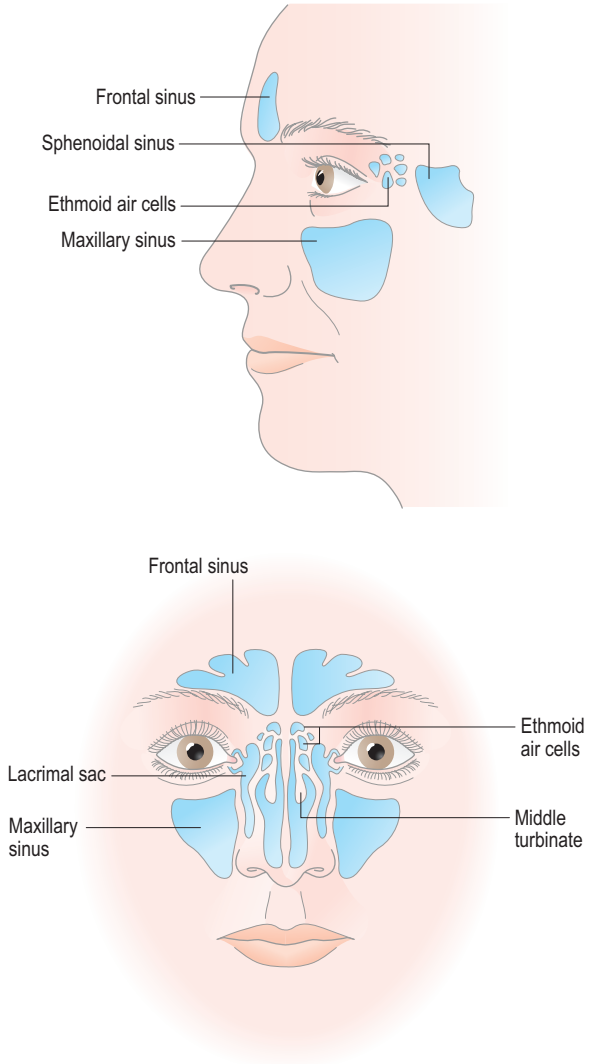


Fig. 1.2 Location of the sinuses

via the Eustachian tube – an accumulation of pus within the middle ear or inflammation of the tympanic membrane (eardrum) results. The overriding symptom is ear pain but the child may rub or tug at the ear and be more irritable. Referral to the GP would be appropriate for auroscopical examination, unless the pharmacist is competent to perform this procedure. Examination reveals bulging tympanic membrane, loss of normal landmarks and a change in colour (red or yellow). Rupture of the eardrum causes purulent discharge and relieves the pain.

The pharmacist should offer symptomatic relief of pain with either paracetamol or ibuprofen. If symptoms persist referral to the GP for possible antibiotics should be considered. However, prescribing policy of antibiotics across the UK is variable as national guidance (2008) allows for different strategies to be followed (e.g. no prescribing or delayed prescribing policies).

Unlikely causes

Influenza

Patients often use the word 'flu' when describing a common cold. However, subtle differences in symptoms between the two conditions should allow differentiation. It is helpful to remember that the 'flu' season tends to be between December and March, whereas the common cold, although more common in winter months, can occur at anytime. The onset of influenza is sudden and the typical symptoms are shivering, chills, malaise, marked aching of limbs, insomnia, a non-productive cough (cough in the common cold is usually productive) and loss of appetite. Influenza is therefore normally debilitating and a person with flu is much more likely to send a third party into a pharmacy for medication than present in person.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: The common cold

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Acute sinus involvement that fails to respond to decongestant therapy Middle ear pain that fails to respond to analgesia	Possible need for antibiotics
Patients with symptoms indicative of flu Vulnerable patient groups, such as the very elderly	Need an assessment of symptom severity by doctor

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Many of the active ingredients found in cold remedies are also constituents of cough products. Often they are combined and marketed as cough and cold or flu remedies. For information relating to cough ingredients the reader is referred to the sections on OTC medication for coughs (page 6).

Antihistamines

Data from a Cochrane review conducted by De Sutter et al (2003) found antihistamines when used as monotherapy did not have significant benefit clinically in nasal congestion, rhinorrhoea or sneezing in older children and adults. Additionally, they appeared not to influence subjective improvement. Only two trials were evaluated in young children, the results of which were conflicting. However, the larger study, which was more robustly conducted showed no benefit of antihistamines on the common cold.

Trials that used antihistamines in combination with other products such as decongestants and antitussives do show some beneficial global effects in adults and older children. Unfortunately, in most trials it was not possible to assess the clinical significance of these benefits because of insufficient data.

Sympathomimetics

Trial data specifically looking at the effects of decongestants in the common cold are limited. A Cochrane review (Taverner et al 2007) identified 7 trials that met their inclusion criteria, which involved topical oxymetazoline and oral pseudoephedrine and phenylpropanolamine (no longer used in the UK). Data supports their use in adults when used in single doses. However, data were lacking in children under 12 years. No difference in efficacy was found between topical or systemic products.

Multi-ingredient preparations

There is no shortage of cold and flu remedies marketed. Many combine three or more ingredients. In the majority of cases either the patient will not require all the active ingredients to treat symptoms or the 'drug cocktail' administered will not contain active ingredients that have proven efficacy. A more sensible approach to medicine management would be to match symptoms with active ingredients with known evidence of efficacy. In many cases this can be achieved by providing the patient with monotherapy or a product containing two active ingredients. Preparations with multiple ingredients therefore have a very limited role to play in the management of coughs and colds. However, patients might perceive that an 'all in one' medicine as better value for money and, potentially, compliance with such preparations might be improved.

Alternative therapies

Many products are advocated to help treat cold symptoms. Three products in particular have received much attention and are widely used.

Zinc lozenges

The argument for zinc as a plausible treatment in ameliorating symptoms of the common cold can be traced back to 1984. Since that time a number of studies have looked at zinc's effect on treating the common cold. A recent Cochrane review (Singh and Das 2011) identified 15 randomised controlled trials that compared zinc versus placebo. Findings demonstrated that zinc (lozenges or syrup) is beneficial in reducing the duration and severity of the common cold in healthy people, when taken within 24 hours of onset of symptoms. They also reported that people taking zinc lozenges (not syrup or tablet form) were more likely to experience adverse events, including bad taste and nausea. In conclusion the authors were reluctant to make a general recommendation for the use of zinc in the treatment of the common cold because of variability in the dose, formulation and duration of use seen in the trials reviewed.

Vitamin C

Vitamin C has been widely recommended as a 'cure' for the common cold by many sources both medical and non-medical. However, controversy still remains whether it is an effective weapon in combating the common cold. A large number of clinical trials have investigated the effect of vitamin C on the prevention and treatment of the common cold.

A Cochrane review examining the role of vitamin C at doses above 200 mg per day in preventing and treating the common cold identified 29 studies involving 11 306 subjects (Hemilä et al 2010). The review found that vitamin C prophylaxis had no effect on the incidence of the common cold in the general community, and a small effect on the duration of a cold (equivalent to approximately 1 day less per year for adults and 4 days for children) in this population. However, they found a halving of the incidence of the common cold in people undergoing high physical stress (marathon runners, skiers and soldiers on subarctic exercises) with the prophylactic use of vitamin C. The review found the use of vitamin C once a cold had started had no consistent effect on the duration or the severity of the cold. The authors concluded that routine prophylaxis with vitamin C in the general community is unjustified, but could be beneficial to those exposed to brief periods of severe physical exercise.

Echinacea

The herbal remedy echinacea is marketed as a treatment for URTIs, including the common cold. Several reviews

have reported echinacea's effect as inconsistent. This is in part due to the limited number of trials that are comparable as different echinacea species are used as well as differing plant parts and extraction methods. A Cochrane review (Linde et al 2006) has attempted to take these factors in to consideration and found some evidence that aerial parts of *Echinacea purpurea* (either alcoholic extract or pressed juice) might be effective in the early treatment of colds in adults. Following on from the Cochrane review, Shah et al (2007) conducted a further review, which also included experimentally induced colds. From the 14 trials that met the inclusion criteria, results drawn showed that treatment with echinacea reduced the chance of developing a cold by about half and the duration of colds was reduced by 1.4 days. The authors did, however, acknowledge various limitations of the study, including variability in product composition and plant species used, possible bias and problems with heterogeneity.

Vapour inhalation

Steam inhalation has long been advocated to aid symptoms of the common cold, usually with the addition of menthol crystals. Trial data (review of six trials all involving adults) shows conflicting evidence in symptom relief of the common cold (Singh and Singh 2011). However, it is cheap and does not carry any significant risks apart from minor discomfort and irritation of the nose. It appears that steam is the key to symptom resolution, and not any additional ingredient that is added to the water.

Saline sprays

Saline sprays have been shown to work in observational studies. A Cochrane review exploring the use of saline irrigation on acute upper respiratory tract infections identified three randomised controlled trials involving 618 participants (Kassel et al 2010). The studies generally found no difference between saline treatment and control. Although there was some limited evidence of benefit in adults in some studies, the review was constrained by the different interventions used (e.g. nasal irrigations, drops and sprays) and the variety of outcomes measured. The authors noted that there were no serious side effects, but saline irrigation could cause minor irritation and discomfort, with up to 40% of babies not tolerating saline nasal drops.

General summary

Evidence of efficacy for Western and complementary medicines in preventing and treating the common cold are weak. Decongestants used on a when needed basis and zinc (if taken early) probably have the strongest evidence base in treating symptoms, although recent evidence suggests that echinacea might well have beneficial effects.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the cold medicines reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 1.6 and

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 1.2: THE COMMON COLD

Limiting viral spread	Use disposable tissues rather than handkerchiefs Wash hands frequently, especially after nose blowing Do not share hand towels Try to avoid touching your nose
Stuffy noses in babies	Saline nose drops can be used from birth to help with congestion. This would be a more suitable and safer alternative than a topical sympathomimetic
General Sales List cold remedies	Products such as the Lemsip and Beechams ranges contain paracetamol. It is important to ensure patients are not taking excessive doses of analgesia unknowingly. Also, many products contain sub-therapeutic doses of sympathomimetics. If a sympathomimetic is needed then these products are generally best avoided
Administration of nasal drops	The best way to administer nose drops is to have the head in the downward position facing the floor. Tilting the head backward and toward the ceiling is incorrect as this facilitates the swallowing of the drops. However, most patients will find the latter way of putting drops into the nose much easier than the former

Table 1.6
Practical prescribing: Summary of cold medicines

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Antihistamines					
Diphenhydramine	>6 years	Dry mouth, sedation and constipation	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Pregnancy – Standard references state OK, although some manufacturers advise avoidance Breastfeeding – OK as amount secreted into breast milk small. It may however reduce milk supply
Systemic sympathomimetics					
Phenylephrine	>12 years	At OTC doses insomnia most likely. Possibly may cause tachycardia	Avoid concomitant use with MAOIs and moclobemide due to risk of hypertensive crisis. Avoid in patients taking Beta-blockers and TCAs	Control of hypertension and diabetes may be affected, but a short treatment course is unlikely to be clinically important	Best avoided in pregnancy as mild fetal malformations have been reported Breastfeeding – OK as amount secreted into breast milk small. It may, however, reduce milk supply
Pseudoephedrine	>6 years				
Topical sympathomimetics					
Oxymetazoline	>12 years	Possible local irritation in ~5% of patients	Avoid concomitant use with MAOIs and moclobemide due to risk of hypertensive crisis	None	Pregnancy Not adequately studied, avoid Breastfeeding – OK
Xylometazoline (Otrivine Child Nasal Drops)	>6 years				

MAOI, monoamine oxidase inhibitor; OTC over-the-counter; TCA, tricyclic antidepressant.

useful tips relating to patients presenting with a cold are given in Hints and Tips Box 1.2.

Antihistamines

First-generation antihistamines are now included in relatively few cough and cold remedies. Further information on antihistamines can be found on page 8.

Sympathomimetics

Sympathomimetics serve to constrict dilated blood vessels and swollen nasal mucosa, easing congestion and helping breathing. Sympathomimetics interact with monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) (e.g. phenelzine, isocarboxazid, tranylcypromine and moclobemide), which can result in a fatal hypertensive crisis. The danger of the interaction persists for up to 2 weeks after treatment with MAOIs is discontinued. In addition, systemic sympathomimetics can also increase blood pressure, which might, although unlikely with short courses of treatment, alter control of blood pressure in hypertensive patients and disturb blood glucose control in diabetics. However, coadministration of medicines such as beta-blockers is probably clinically unimportant and does not preclude patients on beta-blockers from

taking a sympathomimetic. A topical sympathomimetic could be given to such patients to negate this potential interaction. The most likely side effects of sympathomimetics are insomnia, restlessness and tachycardia. Patients should be advised not to take a dose just before bed-time because their mild stimulant action can disturb sleep.

As with cough remedies, the MHRA/CHM has stated that sympathomimetics (oral or nasally administered) should not be given to children under 6 years of age and for those aged between 6 and 12 duration of treatment should be limited to a maximum of 5 days. Additionally, maximum pack sizes are limited to 720 mg (the equivalent of 12 tablets or capsules of 60 mg or 24 tablets or capsules of 30 mg) and sales restricted to one pack per person owing to concerns over illicit manufacture of methylamphetamine (crystal meth) from OTC sympathomimetics.

Systemic sympathomimetics

Phenylephrine

Phenylephrine is available in a number of proprietary cold remedies, for example Lemsip and Beechams, in doses ranging between 5 and 12 mg three or four times a day for adults and children over the age of 12.

Pseudoephedrine

Pseudoephedrine is widely available as either a single ingredient (e.g. Sudafed Decongestant Tablets) or in multi-ingredient products in cold and cough remedies (e.g. Benylin Four Flu Tablets). The standard adult dose is 60 mg four times a day and half the adult dose is suitable for children between 6 and 12 years of age.

Nasal sympathomimetics

Nasal administration of sympathomimetics represents the safest route of administration. They can be given to most patient groups, including pregnant women after the first trimester and patients with pre-existing heart disease, diabetes, hypertension and hyperthyroidism. However, a degree of systemic absorption is possible, especially when using drops, as a small quantity might be swallowed, and therefore they should be avoided in patients taking MAOIs. All topical decongestants should not be used for longer than 5 to 7 days (September 2012, BNF 64 states maximum of 7 days) otherwise rhinitis medicamentosa (rebound congestion) can occur.

Ephedrine and phenylephrine

Both are short acting and need to be administered three or four times a day.

Oxymetazoline and xylometazoline

These agents are longer acting than ephedrine and phenylephrine and require less frequent dosing, typically two or three times a day. They are made by a number of manufacturers (e.g. Otrivine range, Sudafed Blocked Nose Spray and Vicks range) who all recommend use from 12 years upwards, except Otrivine Child Nasal Drops, which can be given to children over the age of six (1 or 2 drops into each nostril once or twice daily).

References

De Sutter AIM, Lemiengre M, Campbell H. Antihistamines for the common cold. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2003, Issue 3.

Hemilä H, Chalker E, Douglas B. Vitamin C for preventing and treating the common cold. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD000980. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000980.pub3.

Kassel JC, King D, Spurling GKP. Saline nasal irrigation for acute upper respiratory tract infections. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD006821. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006821.pub2.

Linde K, Barrett B, Bauer R, et al. Echinacea for preventing and treating the common cold. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD000530. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000530.pub2.

Shah S, Sander S, White CM, et al. Evaluation of echinacea for the prevention and treatment of the common cold: a meta-analysis. Lancet Infect Dis 2007;7:473–80.

Singh M, Das RR. Zinc for the common cold. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD001364. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001364.pub3.

Singh M, Singh M. Heated, humidified air for the common cold. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 5. Art. No.: CD001728. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001728.pub4.

Taverner D, Latte GJ. Nasal decongestants for the common cold. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2009, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD001953. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001953.pub4.

Further reading

Ahovuo-Saloranta A, Rautakorpi UM, Borisenko OV, et al. Antibiotics for acute maxillary sinusitis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD000243. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000243.pub2.

Aljazaf K, Hale TW, Ilett KF, et al. Pseudoephedrine: effects on milk production in women and estimation of infant exposure via breastmilk. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2003;56:18–24.

Chadha NK, Chadha R. 10-minute consultation: sinusitis. BMJ 2007;334:1165 (2 June), doi:10.1136/bmj.39161.557211.47.

Sanders S, Glasziou PP, Del Mar CB, et al. Antibiotics for acute otitis media in children. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2004, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD000219. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000219.pub2.

Scadding GK, Durham SR, Mirakian R, et al. BSACI guidelines for the management of rhinosinusitis and nasal polyposis. Clinical and Experimental Allergy 2007;38(2):260–75.

Web sites

Common Cold Centre: http://www.cf.ac.uk/biosi/associates/cold/

SIGN Guidelines on Diagnosis and management of childhood otitis media in primary care: http://www.sign.ac.uk/guidelines/fulltext/66/index.html

Commoncold Inc: http://www.commoncold.org

Sore throats

Background

Any part of the respiratory mucosa of the throat can give rise to symptoms of throat pain. This includes the pharynx (pharyngitis) and tonsils (tonsillitis), yet clinical distinction between pharyngitis and tonsillitis is unclear and the term sore throat is commonly used. Pain can range from scratchiness to severe pain. Sore throats are often associated with the common cold. However in this section, people who present with sore throat as the principal symptom are considered.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Sore throats are extremely common. UK figures show that a GP with a list size of 2000 patients will see about 120 people each year with a throat infection. However, four to six times as many people will visit the pharmacy and self-treat. Figures from other countries such as New Zealand and Australia broadly support UK findings. On average an adult will experience two to three sore throats each year.

Aetiology

Viral infection accounts for between 70 and 90% of all sore throat cases. Remaining cases are nearly all bacterial; the most common cause being Group A beta-haemolytic *Streptococcus* (also known as *Streptococcus pyogenes*). A fuller account of the aetiology of viral and bacterial pathogens that affect the upper respiratory tract appears on page 12.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The overwhelming majority of cases will be acute and self-limiting URTI, whether viral or bacterial in origin. Clinically, differentiation between viral and bacterial infection is extremely difficult, although specific symptom clusters are suggestive for sore throat of bacterial origin (see conditions to eliminate) but these are by no means fool proof. Other causes of sore throat also need to be considered and Table 1.7 highlights those conditions that can be encountered by community pharmacists and their relative incidence. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine the cause and whether referral is needed (Table 1.8).

Table 1.7
Causes of sore throat and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Viral infection
Likely	Streptococcal infection
Unlikely	Glandular fever, trauma
Very unlikely	Carcinoma, medicines

Physical examination

After questioning, the pharmacist should inspect the mouth and cervical glands (located just below the angle of the jaw) to substantiate the differential diagnosis. (Fig. 1.3) Using a good light source (e.g. pen torch) ask the patient to say 'ah'; this should allow you to see the pharynx well. When examining the mouth pay particular attention to the fauces and tonsils. Are they red and swollen? Is there any exudate present? Is there any sign of ulceration?

Clinical features of sore throat

Many studies have now shown that it is exceedingly difficult to differentiate viral and bacterial infection on patient history and clinical findings. Patients will present with a sore throat as an isolated symptom or as part of a cluster of symptoms that include rhinorrhoea, cough, malaise, fever, headache and hoarseness (laryngitis). Symptoms are relatively short-lived with 40% of people being symptom free after 3 days and 85% of people symptom free after 1 week.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely cause

Streptococcal sore throat

Patients who present with pharyngeal or tonsillar exudates, swollen anterior cervical glands, high grade fever (over

Table 1.8
Specific questions to ask the patient: Sore throat

Question	Relevance
Age of the patient	Although viruses are the commonest cause of sore throat there are epidemiological variance with age: Under 3 years old *Streptococcus* is uncommon *Streptococcal* infections are more prevalent in people under the age of 30, particularly those of school age (5 to 10 years) and young adults (15–25 years old) Viral causes are the commonest cause of sore throat in adults Glandular fever is most prevalent in adolescents
Tender cervical glands	On examination, patients suffering from glandular fever and streptococcal sore throat often have markedly swollen glands. This is less so in viral sore throat
Tonsillar exudate present	Marked tonsillar exudate is more suggestive of a bacterial cause than a viral cause
Ulceration	Herpetiform and herpes simplex ulcers can also cause soreness in the mouth especially in the posterior part of the mouth.

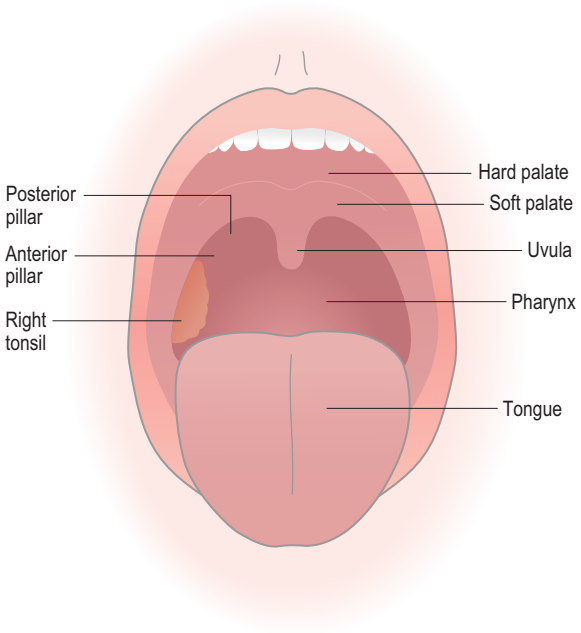


Fig. 1.3 Major structures of the mouth

39.4°C; 101°F) and absence of cough are more likely to have a bacterial infection. However, even if the patient exhibits all these four 'classic' symptoms up to 40% will not have bacterial infection. To further compound the difficulty of diagnosis the routine use of throat swabs performed by GPs are not recommended as asymptomatic carriage of *Streptococcus* affects up to 40% of people making it impossible to differentiate between infection and carriage. Table 1.9 summarises the potential distinguishing features of viral and bacterial infection.

If bacterial infection is suspected then referral to the GP is appropriate. The use of antibiotics in such situations is debatable as a Cochrane review (Spinks et al 2006) found that the absolute benefit of antibiotics was modest, with an average reduction in illness time of 1 day. The National Institute of Health and Clinical Excellence recommend a 10 day course of penicillin or erythromycin (where an allergy to penicillin exists) if the patient has a history of rheumatic fever, increased risk from acute infection, unilateral peritonsillitis and marked systemic upset.

Glandular fever (infectious mononucleosis)

Glandular fever is caused by the Epstein–Barr virus and is often called the kissing disease because transmission primarily occurs from saliva. It has a peak incidence in adolescents and young adults. The signs and symptoms of glandular fever can be difficult to distinguish from sore throat because it is characterised by pharyngitis (occasionally with exudates), fever, cervical lymphadenopathy and fatigue. The person can also suffer from general malaise prior to the start of the other symptoms. A macular rash can also occur in a small proportion of patients.

Trauma-related sore throat

Occasionally patients develop a sore throat from direct irritation of the pharynx. This can be due to substances such as cigarette smoke, a lodged foreign body or from acid reflux.

Medicine induced sore throat

A rare complication associated with certain medication is agranulocytosis, which can manifest as a sore throat. The patient will also probably present with signs of infection including fever and chills. Medicines known to cause this adverse event are listed in Table 1.10.

Table 1.9
Features of viral and bacterial sore throat

	Age	Tonsillar/pharyngeal exudate	Duration	Cervical glands	Cough present	Other symptoms
Viral Infection	Any age	Possible but generally limited	3–7 days	Normal	Common	Low grade fever, headache
Bacterial Infection	School children	Often present and can be substantial	3–7 days	Swollen	Rare	High grade fever, possible rash

Table 1.10
Examples of medication known to cause agranulocytosis

Captopril
Carbimazole
Cytotoxics
Neuroleptics, e.g. clozapine
Penicillamine
Sulfasalazine
Sulphur-containing antibiotics

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Sore Throat

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Duration of more than 2 weeks	Suggests non-acute cause and requires further investigation
Marked tonsillar exudate accompanied with a high temperature and swollen glands	Possible bacterial cause and may require antibiotics
Adverse drug reaction People taking medicines that can interfere with the immune response (e.g. immunosupressants, disease modifying anti-rheumatics)	Requires doctor involvement to monitor
Dysphagia Associated skin rash	Suggests sinister pathology

Laryngeal and tonsillar carcinoma

Both these cancers have a strong link with smoking and excessive alcohol intake, and are more common in men than women. Sore throat and dysphagia are the common presenting symptoms. In addition, patients with tonsillar cancer often develop referred ear pain. Any person, regardless of age, that presents with dysphagia should be referred.

Figure 1.4 will help in the differentiation of serious and non-serious conditions in which sore throat is a major presenting complaint.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

The majority of sore throats are viral in origin and self-limiting. Medication therefore aims to relieve symptoms and discomfort whilst the infection runs its course. Lozenge and spray formulations incorporating antibacterial and anaesthetics provide the mainstay of treatment for which there is no shortage on the market. In addition systemic analgesics and antipyretics will help reduce the pain associated with sore throat.

Local anaesthetics

Lidocaine and benzocaine are included in a number of marketed products. Very few published clinical trials involving products marketed for sore throat have been conducted yet local anaesthetics have proven efficacy. It therefore appears manufacturers are using trial data on local anaesthetic efficacy for conditions other than sore throats to substantiate their effect.

Antibacterial and antifungal agents

Antibacterial agents include chlorhexidine, tyrothricin, dequalinium chloride and benzalkonium chloride. In vitro testing has shown that many of the proprietary products

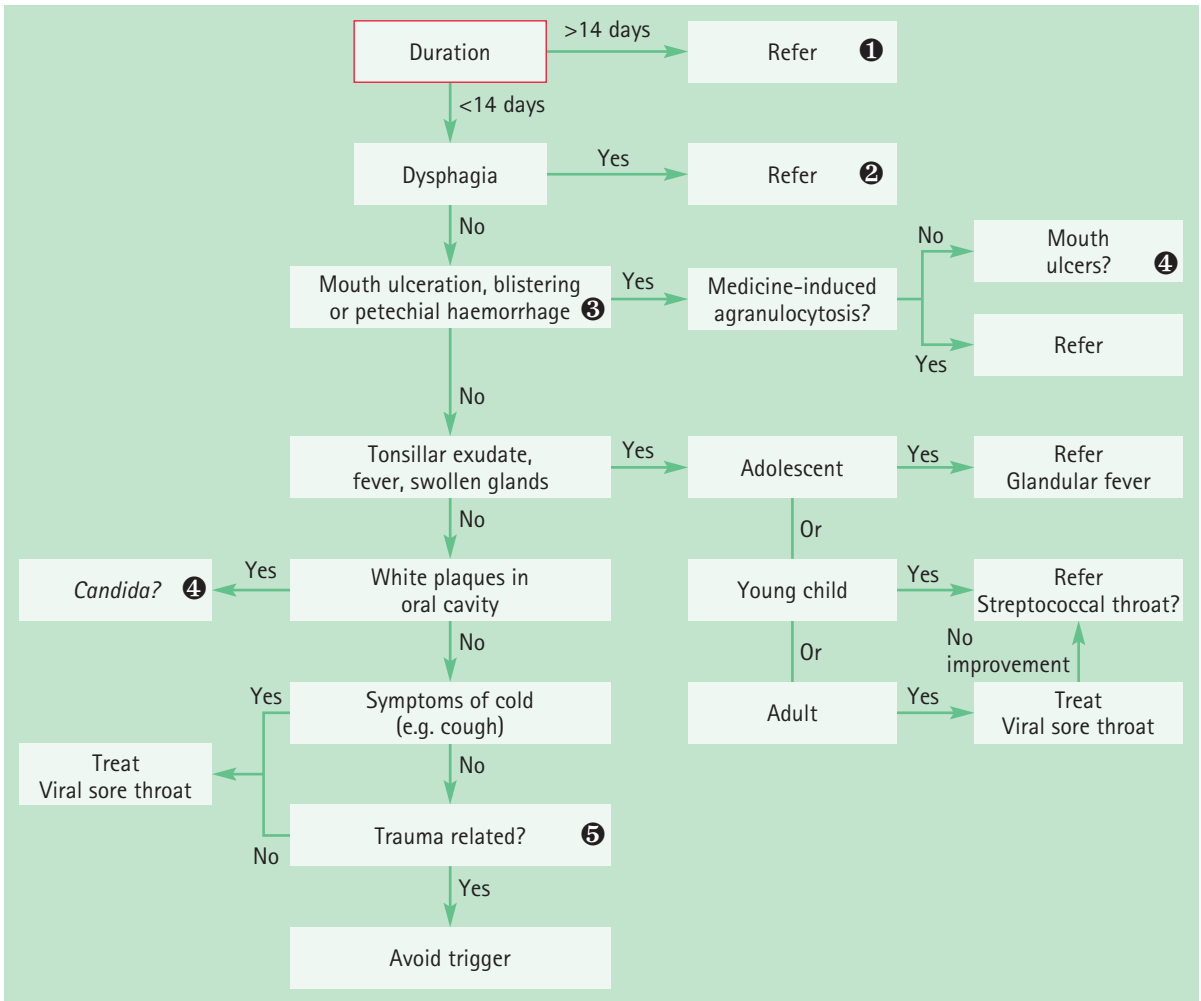


Fig. 1.4 Primer for differential diagnosis of sore throat

❶ Duration longer than 2 weeks
The overwhelming majority of cases resolve spontaneously in this time; it is therefore prudent to refer these cases for further investigation.

❷ Dysphagia
True difficulty in swallowing (i.e. not just caused by pain but by a mechanical blockage) should be referred. Most patients with sore throat will find it less easy to swallow but this has to be differentiated from actual difficulty in swallowing. Severe inflammation of the throat can cause restriction of the airways and thus hinder breathing. Additionally, rare causes of sore throat also have associated dysphagia symptoms, such as peritonsillar abscess, thyroiditis and oesophageal carcinoma.

❸ Signs of agranulocytosis
A severe reduction in the number of white blood cells can result in neutropenia, which is manifested as fever, sore throat, ulceration and small haemorrhages under the skin.

❹ Mouth ulceration and *Candida* (oral thrush) primers
See Chapter 6 and Figs 6.6 & 6.7 for further differentiation of these conditions.

❺ Trauma related
Simple acts of drinking fluids that are too hot can give rise to ulceration of the pharynx. It is worth asking whether any such factors could have triggered the sore throat.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 1.3: SORE THROAT

Stimulation of saliva production	Sucking a lozenge or pastille promotes saliva production, which will lubricate the throat and thus exert a soothing action
Gargles or lozenges?	Gargles have very short contact time with inflamed mucosa and therefore any effect will be short lived. A lozenge or a pastille is preferable, as contact time will be longer

do have antibacterial activity, and some inhibit *Candida albicans* growth. In vivo tests have also shown antibacterial effects.

The use of antibacterial and antifungal agents should not be routinely recommended since the vast majority of sore throats are caused by viral infections for which they have no action against. As adverse effects are rare and stimulation of saliva from sucking the lozenge may confer symptomatic relief, the use of such products may be justified.

Anti-inflammatories

Benzydamine is available as a spray or mouthwash and one small trial involving benzydamine as a gargle resulted in significantly greater relief of pain compared to placebo (Thomas et al 2000).

Analgesia

There is good evidence to show that simple systemic analgesia, for example paracetamol, aspirin and ibuprofen, is effective in reducing the pain associated with sore throat. Thomas et al (2000) undertook a review of treatments other than antibiotics for sore throats. They identified 22 trials, 13 of which involved NSAIDs (primarily ibuprofen) or paracetamol, and found both NSAIDs and paracetamol were effective. However, the authors noted that patients took the medications regularly in the studies, not on an 'as needed' basis, and this should be stressed to patients presenting with sore throats. Flurbiprofen lozenges have also been shown to be more effective than placebo in reducing pain associated with sore throat. However, the clinical significance of the benefit is uncertain, and comparisons with active treatments are lacking. In a review in *Prescrire* in 2007 the conclusion was that 'flurbiprofen lozenges have a negative risk-benefit balance ... it is better to suck real sweets and, if necessary, take paracetamol' (Anonymous 2007).

Aspirin and salt water gargles

Gargling with aspirin or salt water is a common lay remedy for sore throat. No trials appear to have been conducted on their effectiveness and until such time that evidence becomes available they should not be recommended.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the sore throat medicines reviewed under 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 1.11 and useful tips relating to patients presenting with a sore throat are given in Hints and Tips Box 1.3.

Local anaesthetics (lidocaine, benzocaine)

All local anaesthetics have a short duration of action and frequent dosing is required to maintain the anaesthetic effect whether formulated as a lozenge or spray. They appear to be free from any drug interactions, have minimal side effects and can be given to most patients, including pregnant and breastfeeding women. A small number of patients may experience a hypersensitivity reaction with either ingredient although it appears to be more common with benzocaine. Owing to differences in the chemical structure of these products cross sensitivity is unusual and therefore if a patient experiences side effects with one then the other can be tried. Most products do contain a sugar base but the amount of sugar is too small to substantially affect blood glucose control and therefore can be recommended to diabetic patients.

Lidocaine

Lidocaine is available as a spray (Covonia Throat Spray (0.05%) and Dequaspray (2.0%)). Lidocaine is licensed only for adults and is best taken on a when needed basis. As both proprietary products have differing strengths of lidocaine the dosing schedules differ – for Covonia the dose is three to five sprays between six and 10 times a day and for Dequaspray the dose is three sprays every 3 hours when needed up to a maximum of six times per day.

Benzocaine

Unlike lidocaine, benzocaine can be given to children both in lozenge and spray formulations. Lozenges are available and can be given from aged 3 and over (Tyrozets 1 lozenge (5 mg) every 3 hours when needed, maximum six in 24

Table 1.11
Practical prescribing: Summary of sore throat medicines

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Local anaesthetics					
Lidocaine	>12 years	Can cause sensitisation reactions	None	None	OK
Benzocaine	Lozenge >3 years Spray >6 years				
Anti-inflammatories					
Benzydamine	Rinse >12 years Spray >6 years	Oral rinse may cause stinging	None	None	OK, but in pregnancy limit use after 30 wks
Flurbiprofen	>12 years	None reported	None	Avoid in patients with peptic ulcers	Avoid if possible

hours); adults can take up to eight (10 mg) in 24 hours every 2–3 hours when needed (e.g. Tyrozets, Merocaine, Dequacaine). Additionally, children over the age of 6 can also use a spray formulation (Ultra Chloraseptic (0.71%) or AAA Spray (1.5%)), for which the dose is one spray every 2 to 3 hours.

Anti-inflammatories (benzydamine and flurbiprofen)

Anti-inflammatories have the advantage over local anaesthetics in that they do not generally anaesthetise the entire mouth.

Benzydamine (Difflam Sore Throat Rinse, Difflam Spray)

The rinse should be used by adults and children over the age of 12 every 1½ to 3 hours when required. It has no drug interactions of note, can be used by all patient groups and only occasionally does the rinse cause stinging, in which case the rinse can be diluted with water. The manufacturers advise that the product should be stored in the box away from direct sunlight, however, the stability of the product is not known to be affected by sunlight.

The dosing for the spray is the same as the rinse but unlike the rinse it can be used in children. For those under the age of six the dose is based on mg/kg dosing, for those aged 6 to 12 they should use four puffs and adults four to eight puffs.

Flurbiprofen (Strefen)

Strefen lozenges (8.75 mg flurbiprofen) can only be given to adults and children over the age of 12 years. The dose is one lozenge to be sucked every 3 to 6 hours with a maximum of five lozenges in 24 hours. They are contraindicated in patients with peptic ulceration and those patients allergic to flurbiprofen, and must be used with caution in pregnant and breastfeeding women.

References

Anonymous. Flurbiprofen: new indication. Lozenges: NSAIDs are not to be taken like sweets! Prescrire Int 2007;16:13.

Spinks A, Glasziou PP, Del Mar CB. Antibiotics for sore throat. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD000023. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000023.pub3.

Thomas M, Del Mar C, Glasziou P. How effective are treatments other than antibiotics for acute sore throat? Br J Gen Pract 2000;50:817–20.

Further Reading

Kennedy J. Self care of acute sore throat. SelfCare 2010;2(1):21–4.

Middleton DB. Pharyngitis. Prim Care 1996;23:719–39.

Van Driel ML, De Sutter AIM, Keber N, et al. Different antibiotic treatments for group A streptococcal pharyngitis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 10. Art.No.:CD004406. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004406.pub2.

Watson N, Nimmo WS, Christian J, et al. Relief of sore throat with the anti-inflammatory throat lozenge flurbiprofen 8.75mg: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of efficacy and safety. Int J Clin Pract 2000;54:490–6.

Web sites

Sinus Care Center: http://www.sinuscarecenter.com/

Rhinitis

Background

Rhinitis is simply inflammation of the nasal lining. It is characterised by rhinorrhoea, nasal congestion, sneezing and itching. The majority of cases that present in a community pharmacy will be viral infection, colds or allergic rhinitis (AR). Currently there are different classifications of AR. ARIA (Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma) guidelines reclassify AR into intermittent and persistent categories, with subdivision into mild or moderate-severe disease. In 2007, the British Society for Allergy and Clinical Immunology published guidelines that differed from ARIA where classification of AR was based on seasonal or perennial types of rhinitis. This text adopts the ARIA criteria. The ARIA classification is based on the timing of the symptoms and is divided into intermittent (occurring on less than 4 days per week and less than 4 weeks at a time) or persistent (occurring on more than 4 days per week and more than 4 weeks at a time). Rhinitis has a significant impact on quality of life, impairing performance at work and school, and disrupting sleep.

Prevalence and epidemiology

AR is a global health problem and has dramatically increased over the last 20 years with studies suggesting the prevalence has at least doubled in that time. The UK has one of the highest levels of allergic rhinitis in the world, with estimates ranging from 10 to 25% of adults and as many as 40% of children affected. These figures might, however, represent an underestimate as many people do not consult their doctor and choose to self-medicate. Seasonal intermittent allergic rhinitis (hay fever) commonly affects school-aged children with 10 to 30% of the adolescent population suffering from the condition. The mean age of onset is 10 years and the incidence peaks between the ages of 13 and 19 years. It is believed that improved living standards and reduced risk of childhood infections might increase susceptibility to hay fever.

Table 1.12
Allergens responsible for rhinitis

	When	Causative allergen
Intermittent allergic rhinitis	February to April	Tree pollens (hazel and alder associated with early symptoms and silver birch in March/April)
	May to August (peak in June and July)	Grass pollen
	September to October	Fungal spores
Persistent allergic rhinitis (e.g. perennial rhinitis)	Year round	House dust mite, animal dander, especially cats

Allergic rhinitis is a recognised risk factor for the development of asthma and usually precedes it.

Aetiology

AR is a mucosal reaction in response to allergen exposure. Initially, the patient must come into contact with an allergen; for intermittent AR this is usually pollen or fungal spores. The allergen lodges within the mucous blanket lining the nasal membranes, and activates IgE antibodies (formed from previous allergen exposure) on the surface of mast cells. Potent chemical mediators are released, primarily histamine, but also leukotrienes, kinins and prostaglandins, which exert their action via neural and vascular mechanisms. This immediate response to an allergen is known as the early-phase allergic reaction and gives rise to nasal itch, rhinorrhoea sneezing and nasal congestion. A late-phase reaction then occurs 4 to 12 hours after allergen exposure with nasal congestion as the main symptom.

Also of importance is the phenomenon of nasal priming. Patients, after a period of continuous allergen exposure, can find that they experience the same level of severity in symptoms with lower levels of allergen exposure. Similarly, symptoms will be worse than previously experienced when levels of the allergen are the same. This may explain why patients complain of worsening hay fever symptoms the longer the season goes on. Table 1.12 highlights the main allergens responsible for AR.

Table 1.13
Specific questions to ask the patient: Rhinitis

Question	Relevance
Seasonal variation	Symptoms in the summer months suggest intermittent allergic rhinitis where as year round symptoms suggest perennial rhinitis
History of asthma, eczema or intermittent allergic rhinitis in the family	If a first-degree relative suffers from atopy then intermittent allergic rhinitis is much more likely
Triggers	When pollen counts are high symptoms of intermittent allergic rhinitis worsen Infective rhinitis and vasomotor rhinitis will be unaffected by pollen count Patients with persistent rhinitis might suffer from worsening symptoms when pollen counts are high but symptoms should still persist when indoors compared with intermittent rhinitis sufferers who usually see improvement of symptoms when away from pollen

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Rhinitis is not difficult to diagnose. Within the community pharmacy setting the majority of patients who present with rhinitis will be suffering from a cold or intermittent AR. Diagnosis is largely dependent upon the patient having a family history of atopy, clinical symptoms and worsening symptoms at a particular time of year. Asking symptom-specific questions (Table 1.13) will help the pharmacist to determine the cause and whether referral is needed and Table 1.14 highlights those conditions that can be encountered by community pharmacists and their relative incidence.

Clinical features of intermittent AR

The patient will experience a combination or all four of the classical rhinitis symptoms of nasal itch, sneeze (especially paroxysmal), watery rhinorrhoea and nasal congestion. In addition the patient might also suffer from ocular irritation giving rise to allergic conjunctivitis. The symptoms will occur intermittently (i.e. times of pollen exposure) and tend to be worse in the morning and evening as pollen levels peak at this time, as they do when the weather is hot and humid.

Table 1.14
Causes of allergic rhinitis and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Intermittent allergic rhinitis
Likely	Persistent allergic rhinitis, infective rhinitis
Unlikely	Vasomotor rhinitis, pregnancy, medicines, nasal foreign bodies or blockage

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Persistent AR

Persistent AR is much less common than intermittent AR. As its name suggests, the problem tends to be persistent and does not exhibit seasonality. However, it must be remembered that patients suffering from persistent AR might also be allergic to pollen and experience worsening symptoms in the summer months. Besides not having a seasonal cause, there are a number of other clues to look out for that aid differentiation. Nasal congestion is much more common, which often leads to hyposmia (poor sense of smell) and ocular symptoms are uncommon. Additionally, persistent AR sufferers also tend to sneeze less frequently and experience more episodes of chronic sinusitis. The most common allergen causing persistent AR is the house dust mite but animal dander (from particularly cats, dogs and horses) are common causes of symptoms, and so it is prudent to ask about pets that are kept.

Infective rhinitis

This is normally viral in origin and associated with the common cold. Nasal discharge tends to be more mucopurulent than AR and nasal itching is uncommon. Sneezing tends not to occur in paroxysms and the condition resolves more quickly, whereas AR lasts for as long as the person is exposed to the allergen. Other symptoms, such as cough and sore throat, are much more prominent in infective rhinitis than AR.

Unlikely causes

Vasomotor rhinitis (intrinsic rhinitis)

Vasomotor rhinitis is thought to be due to either an overactive parasympathetic nervous system response, or

hypoactive sympathetic nervous system response to irritants such as dry air, pollutants, or strong odours. The symptoms can be similar to AR yet an allergy test will be negative. Itching and sneezing are less common and patients might experience worsening nasal symptoms in response to climatic factors, such as a sudden change in temperature.

Rhinitis of pregnancy

It is thought that this occurs because of hormonal changes; however, evidence is lacking (Wallace et al 2008). It usually starts after the second month of the pregnancy, and resolves spontaneously after childbirth. Nasal congestion is the prominent feature.

Rhinitis medicamentosa and medicine-induced rhinitis

Rhinitis medicamentosa is due to prolonged use of topical decongestants (more than 5 to 7 days), which causes rebound vasodilatation of the nasal arterioles leading to further nasal congestion. Although the exact pathophysiology is unclear, it is thought to be due to de-sensitisation of the alpha adrenoceptors as a result of constant stimulation. A number of oral medications are implicated in causing rhinitis through other mechanisms, including angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, reserpine, alpha adrenoceptor antagonists (e.g. terazosin), phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors (e.g. sildenafil), chlorpromazine, oral contraceptives, aspirin, and other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

Nasal blockage

In the absence of rhinorrhoea, nasal itch and sneezing, it is possible that the problem is mechanical or anatomical. If the blockage is continuous and unilateral this may relate to a deviated nasal septum in adults. This may develop or be a result of trauma. Referral is needed and surgery is recommended. If the obstruction is bilateral this may relate to nasal polyps in adults. Nasal obstruction is progressive and is often accompanied by hyposmia. Referral is needed for corticosteroids or surgery.

Nasal foreign body

A trapped foreign body in a nostril commonly occurs in young children, often without the parents' knowledge. Within a matter of days of the foreign body being lodged the patient experiences an offensive nasal discharge. Any unilateral discharge, particularly in a child should be referred for nasal examination, as it is highly likely that a foreign body is responsible.

Figure 1.5 will aid in differentiating the different types of rhinitis.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Rhinitis

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Failed medication Medicine induced rhinitis	Requires involvement of doctor for further medicine treatment
Nasal obstruction which fails to clear	Suggests polyp
Unilateral discharge especially in children	Possible trapped foreign body

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Before medication is started it is clearly important to try and identify the causative allergen. If this can be achieved then measures to limit the exposure to the allergen will be beneficial in reducing the symptoms experienced by the patient. This is more easily accomplished in persistent allergic rhinitis than in seasonal intermittent rhinitis.

Allergen avoidance

Avoidance of pollen is almost impossible but if the patient follows a few simple rules then exposure to pollen can be reduced. Patients may choose to stay indoors when pollen counts are high. Windows should be closed (both when in the house and when travelling in cars) and 'wrap around' sunglasses worn. Air conditioning in cars fitted with a pollen filter is also beneficial. Patients should avoid walking in areas with the potential for high pollen exposure (grassy fields, parks and gardens) as well as areas such as city centres as many intermittent allergy sufferers will have increased sensitivity to other irritants such as car exhaust fumes and cigarette smoke.

The two main causative agents of persistent AR – house dust mite and animal dander – can be more easily avoided. The offending pet can be excluded from certain parts of the house such as living areas and bedrooms. Acaricidal sprays and strict bedroom cleaning regimes have shown to be of some benefit in reducing rhinitis symptoms (Sheikh et al 2010).

Medication

Pharmacists now possess a wide range of therapeutic options to treat AR allowing the vast majority of sufferers to

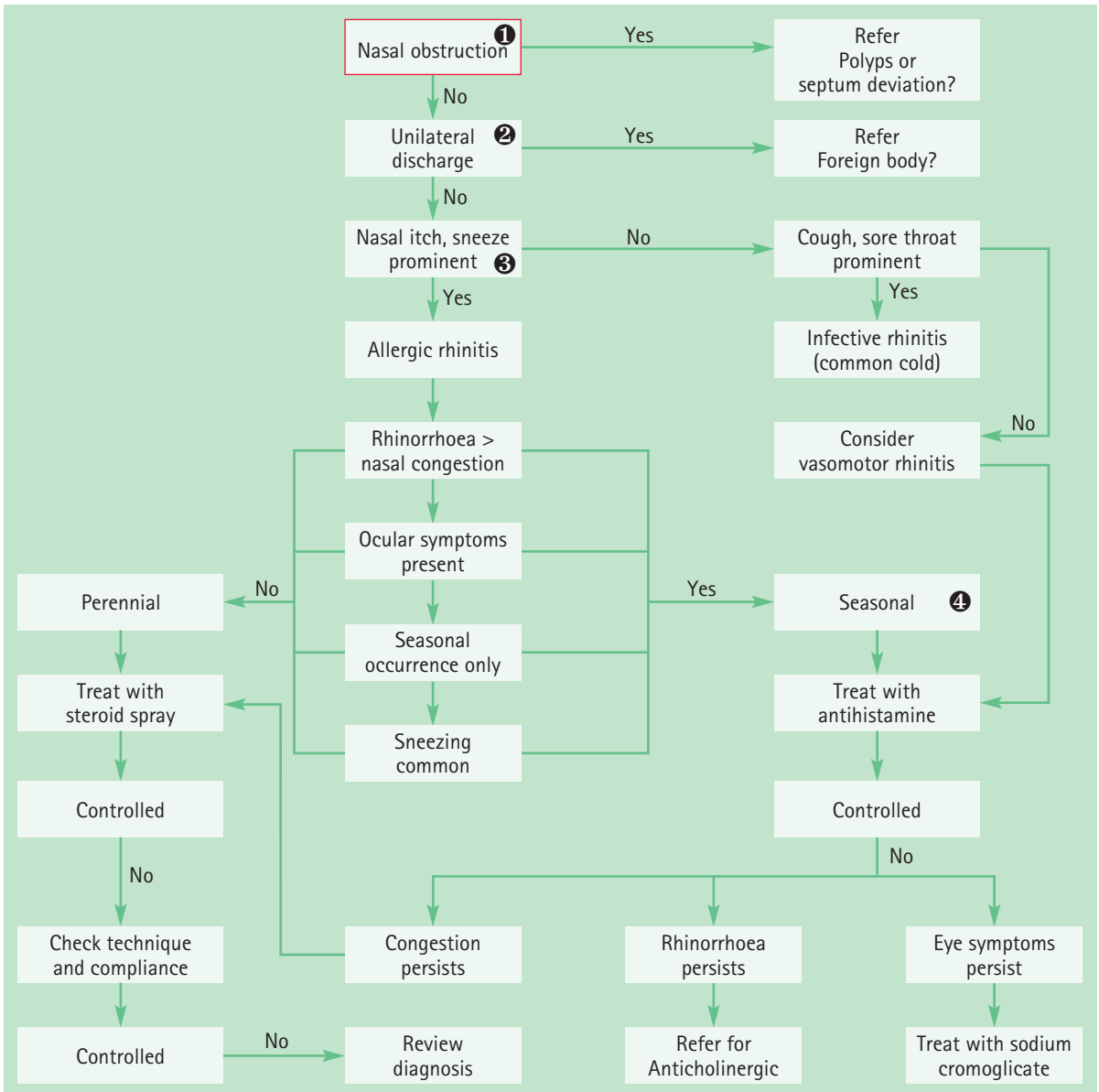


Fig. 1.5 Primer for differential diagnosis of rhinitis

❶ Nasal obstruction
Nasal obstruction differs from nasal congestion in that obstruction refers to a physical blockage of the nasal passage and is normally due to an anatomical fault, whereas congestion refers to the nasal passages being temporarily blocked by nasal secretions that can easily be cleared by nose blowing. Obstruction therefore warrants referral.

❷ Unilateral discharge
Any one-sided nasal discharge must be viewed with suspicion. Accidental lodging of a foreign body by young children is the usual cause.

❸ Nasal itch and sneeze prominent
Nasal itching and sneezing are classically associated with hay fever, although these symptoms are also associated with perennial rhinitis, but to a lesser extent. Sneezing is often said to occur in multiple bouts, which is unlike infective rhinitis. Coughing can occur but is infrequent.

❹ Treatment of vasomotor rhinitis
Because symptoms are similar to hay fever then it is reasonable to assume that first-line therapy for vasomotor rhinitis would be a systemic antihistamine.

be appropriately managed in the pharmacy. Management of AR falls broadly into two categories; systemic and topical.

Systemic therapy: antihistamines

Both sedating and non-sedating antihistamines are clinically effective in reducing the symptoms associated with AR (Sheikh et al 2006). However, given the sedative effects of first generation antihistamines they should not be routinely recommended compared to second generation, non-sedating antihistamines.

Of the second generation antihistamines the community pharmacist has a choice between acrivastine, cetirizine, or loratadine. All are equally effective and are considered to be non-sedating, although they are not truly non-sedating and do cause different levels of sedation. Loratadine has been shown to have the lowest affinity for histamine receptors in the brain and a paper published by Mann et al in 2000 reviewing reported sedation with second generation antihistamines showed loratadine to be least sedating of the non-sedating antihistamines. In comparison cetirizine was 3.5 times more likely to cause sedation and acrivastine 2.5 times more likely to cause sedation than loratadine. On this basis, loratadine would be the antihistamine of choice.

Topical therapy

To combat nasal congestion and ocular symptoms a range of topically administered medication is available, including antihistamines, corticosteroids, mast cell stabilisers and decongestants. All can be administered intranasally but corticosteroids cannot be administered intraocularly.

Intranasal medication

Corticosteroids

Intranasal corticosteroids have been recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO) as first-line therapy for allergic rhinitis because a number of clinical trials have confirmed their efficacy. Additionally, they have demonstrated superiority to antihistamines in the treatment of allergic rhinitis for all nasal symptoms, and equivalence for ocular symptoms (Wallace et al 2008). There is little difference in efficacy between the intranasal corticosteroids and clinical evidence does not support the use of one intranasal corticosteroid over another. They have a slow onset of action and patients should be advised that it will take 2 weeks before maximum clinical efficacy is observed. Patients who regularly suffer from nasal congestion associated with allergic rhinitis should be advised to commence therapy before exposure to the allergen to ensure symptom control.

Antihistamines

Azelastine is currently the only nasally administered antihistamine marketed for OTC sale. Clinical trials have proven its efficacy and a meta analysis concluded that azelastine was more effective than placebo and equivalent to oral antihistamines (Lee & Pickard 2007).

Mast cell stabilisers

Like corticosteroids, sodium cromoglicate is a prophylactic agent. However, the effect of sodium cromoglicate is only partial – it is less effective than corticosteroids, although it is not clear why. A further drawback with nasal cromoglicate is the frequency of administration; between four and six times a day. Although no data is available for the compliance with such a regimen it is likely to be poor and result in inadequate symptom control. Their place in allergic rhinitis is therefore limited.

Decongestants

Topical decongestants are effective in the treatment of nasal congestion but are of limited value in treating AR as prolonged use is associated with rebound congestion. Their place in therapy is probably best reserved for when nasal congestion needs to be treated quickly and can provide symptom relief whilst corticosteroid therapy is initiated and has time to begin to exert its action.

Intraocular medication

Mast cell stabilisers

Sodium cromoglicate has proven efficacy and is significantly better than placebo (Lindsay-Miller 1979). It does require four times a day dosing and compliance might be a problem. Further, cromoglicate takes 4 to 6 weeks to reach maximal response, thus, mast cell stabilisers alone only have a role when patients can predict well in advance the onset of the symptoms.

Antihistamines

The only ocular antihistamine available OTC is antazoline. It is available in combination with xylometazoline. There appears to be little trial data in the public domain regarding decongestant/antihistamine combinations, although one small trial involving 25 patients concluded that a combination of the two drugs was superior to either alone. At best it should be used short-term to avoid possible rebound conjunctivitis caused by xylometazoline, which is well documented.

Sympathomimetics

OTC ocular sympathomimetics are commonly used to control ocular redness and discomfort. There appears to be no significant differences between ocular decongestants on the basis of their vasoconstrictive effectiveness. Like

nasal sympathomimetics they should be restricted to short-term (less than 5 days) use to avoid rebound effects.

Summary

Loratadine should be recommended as first-line therapy if the patient suffers from mild intermittent general symptoms such as nasal itching, sneezing, rhinorrhoea and associated ocular symptoms. If this fails to control all symptoms then sodium cromoglicate eye drops or a corticosteroid nasal spray should be added to the regimen. If a patient has moderate to severe intermittent symptoms, or persistent AR then regular topical nasal corticosteroids are recommended as first-line treatment, with antihistamines added if there is a poor response. If nasal congestion predominates then regular topical nasal corticosteroids are recommended as first-line treatment. The Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) group, working in collaboration with WHO, has produced a guideline for pharmacists on the management of allergic rhinitis (see Web sites).

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the rhinitis medicines reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 1.15 and useful tips relating to patients presenting with rhinitis are given in Hints and Tips Box 1.4.

Systemic antihistamines

Systemic antihistamines selectively inhibit histamine H_1 receptors and suppress many of the vascular effects of histamine. They have rapid onset of action (approximately 30 min to 1 hour) and relieve ocular symptoms, rhinorrhoea and nasal irritation, but have little effect on nasal congestion. For maximum effect they are best taken on a regular basis but will have an effect if taken when required. Patient response is variable between the differing antihistamines and more than one type may have to be tried to provide symptom control. They possess very few side effects and can be given safely with other prescribed medication. They can also be prescribed to all patient groups, although manufacturers advise against prescribing to the elderly. First generation, sedating antihistamines are the preferred antihistamines in pregnancy as the risk of foetal toxicity appears low, with chlorphenamine being medicine of choice. Of the non-sedating antihistamines loratadine is the most widely studied and data available does not indicate an increased risk of teratogenicity yet manufacturers advise avoidance (presumably on the basis of being outside their product licences). For breastfeeding mothers non-sedating antihistamines should be avoided as infant drowsiness has been associated with their use. Expert opinion states cetirizine and loratadine are antihistamines of choice despite manufacturers advising that they should not be used in this patient group.

Non-sedating antihistamines

Acrivastine (Benadryl Allergy Relief)

Acrivastine is recommended for adults and children over 12 years of age. The dose is one capsule (8 mg) as necessary, up to three times a day. Acrivastine can also be purchased as a combination product (Benadryl Plus), which contains a sympathomimetic (pseudoephedrine). However, if nasal congestion is a problem, corticosteroids should be considered in preference to a decongestant.

Cetirizine (e.g. Zirtek Allergy, Benadryl One-a-Day and Benadryl Allergy Oral Syrup, Pollenshield)

Cetirizine is available as either tablets or solution. The dose for adults and children 6 years and over is one tablet (10 mg) daily. The dose for the oral solution can either be 10 mL (10 mg) once daily, or 5 mL (5 mg) twice daily. For children aged between 2 and 5 years of age the dose is 2.5 mL (2.5 mg) twice daily.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 1.4: RHINITIS

Breakthrough symptoms with one-a-day antihistamines	Patients who suffer breakthrough symptoms using a once daily preparation (loratadine, cetirizine) may benefit from changing to acrivastine as three times a day dosing may confer better symptom control
Corticosteroid nasal sprays	These are suspensions and the bottle should be shaken before use. Regular usage is essential for full therapeutic benefit. It should also be explained that maximum relief might not be obtained for several days. However, most begin to act in 3–7 hours

Table 1.15
Practical prescribing: Summary of rhinitis medicines

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Systemic antihistamines					
Acrivastine	>12 years	Sedation, but rare and least likely with loratadine	None	None	Manufacturers advise avoidance, but safety data has shown them to be safe
Cetirizine	>2 years				
Loratadine	>2 years				
Chlorphenamine	>1 year	Dry mouth, sedation and constipation	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Standard references state OK, although some manufacturers advise avoidance
Ocular antihistamines					
Antazoline*	>12 years	Local irritation, bitter taste	Avoid concomitant use with MAOIs and moclobemide due to risk of hypertensive crisis	Avoid in glaucoma	Safety not established, but probably OK
Nasal antihistamines					
Azelastine	>5 years	Nasal irritation (5%), bitter taste (3%)	None	None	Safety not established, but probably OK
Nasal corticosteroids					
Beclometasone	>18 years	Nasal irritation, bitter taste, headache (fluticasone) nosebleeds	None	Avoid in glaucoma	Manufacturers advise avoidance, but safety data has shown them to be safe
Fluticasone					
Triamcinolone		Headache, nosebleeds, dyspepsia, bronchitis, flu-like symptoms and cough			

Table 1.15
Practical prescribing: Summary of rhinitis medicines (Continued)

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Ocular and nasal mast cell stabilisers					
Sodium cromoglicate ocular	>12 years	Local irritation, blurred vision	None	None	OK
Sodium cromoglicate nasal	>5 years	Nasal irritation. Rare -wheezing and shortness of breath			OK
Ocular sympathomimetics					
Naphazoline	>12 years	Local irritation	Avoid concomitant use with MAOIs and moclobemide due to risk of hypertensive crisis	None	Not adequately studied but not yet shown to be a risk – probably OK

*only available in combination with naphazoline.

Loratadine (e.g. Clarityn Allergy)

Loratadine is available as either a tablet or syrup. It can be given from 2 years upwards. The dose is 10 mg daily providing they are over 30 kg. If they are under 30 kg then the dose is halved (5 mg).

Sedating antihistamines

Chlorphenamine (e.g. Piriton Allergy Tablets and Syrup)

This can be given from one year upwards (2.5 mL twice daily). The dose for children aged 2 to 6 years is 2.5 mL every 4–6 hours and those children aged six to 12 is 2 mg (5 mL or half a tablet) every 4–6 hours. The adult dose is 4 mg every 4–6 hours.

Nasal corticosteroids (beclometasone, fluticasone, triamcinolone)

Currently, only beclometasone, fluticasone and triamcinolone are available for sale to the public. In addition, flunisolide and budesonide possess pharmacy status but manufacturers have not produced an OTC product. They can be used in most patient groups, although avoidance is recommended in glaucoma. (Glaucoma and/or cataracts have been reported in patients receiving nasal corticosteroids.) In addition, manufacturers recommend that they are not used during pregnancy and breastfeeding due to insufficient evidence to establish safety. However, exposure data does suggest that they are safe. Beclometasone and fluticasone can cause unpleasant taste and smell as well as nasal and throat irritation (incidence >1%). Beclometasone is also reported to cause rashes and urticaria. Fluticasone and triamcinolone also cause headaches and nosebleeds. Dyspepsia, bronchitis, flu-like symptoms and cough have also been reported with triamcinolone. All products are licensed for only people over the age of 18.

Beclometasone (Beconase Hayfever)

The recommended dose is two sprays into each nostril twice daily (400 µg/day). Once symptoms have improved it might be possible to decrease the dose to one spray twice daily. However, should symptoms recur, patients should revert to the standard dosage.

Fluticasone (Pirinase Hayfever Nasal Spray)

The dose is two sprays into each nostril once daily (200 µg/day), although if symptoms are not controlled, the dose

can be increased to twice daily. Like beclometasone once symptoms are controlled the patient should use the lowest effective dose.

Triamcinolone (Nasacort Allergy Nasal Spray)

The standard adult dose is two sprays into each nostril (220 µg/day) once daily, which can be reduced to just one spray per nostril daily.

Nasal antihistamines

Intranasal antihistamines are useful in treating mild or intermittent nasal symptoms and work more quickly than systemic antihistamines (15 minutes). They appear to have no drug interactions and there is no evidence to show they are unsafe in pregnancy, although manufacturers advise caution. There is a lack of data for use in breastfeeding but it is assumed that if oral antihistamines can be used then intranasal antihistamines, which result in lower blood concentrations, would be safe to use.

Azelastine (Rhinolast Allergy)

Azelastine can be given to adults and children over 5 years of age. The dose is one application (0.14 mL) in each nostril twice daily (0.56 mg of azelastine hydrochloride).

Mast cell stabilisers (sodium cromoglicate)

Sodium cromoglicate eye drops and nasal spray are poorly absorbed at therapeutic doses and the amount reaching the systemic circulation is very low. It has no drug interactions and can be given to all patient groups. Clinical experience has shown it to be safe in pregnancy and expert opinion considers sodium cromoglicate to be safe in breastfeeding. It is a prophylactic agent and has to be given continuously whilst exposed to the allergen.

Ocular cromoglicate (e.g. Opticrom Allergy, Optrex Allergy)

One or two drops should be administered in each eye four times a day. Instillation of the drops can cause a transient blurring of vision.

Nasal cromoglicate (Rynacrom 4% Nasal Spray)

The dose for adults and children is one spray into each nostril two to four times daily. Nasal irritation is possible, especially during the first few days of use.

Sympathomimetics

For general information about sympathomimetics and product information on nasally administered products see page 17.

Ocular sympathomimetics

Ocular products either contain a combination of sympathomimetic and antihistamine (antazoline/xylometazoline, Otrivine Antistin) or sympathomimetic alone (e.g. Naphazoline 0.01%). They are useful in reducing redness in the eye but will not treat the underlying pathology that is causing the eye to be red. They should be limited to short-term use to avoid rebound effects. Like all sympathomimetics they can interact with monoamine oxidase inhibitors and should not be used by patients receiving such treatment or within 14 days of ceasing therapy.

Otrivine Antistin

Used in adults and children over 12 years, the dose is one or two drops two or three times a day. Patients with glaucoma should avoid this product due to the potential of the antihistamine component to increase intraocular pressure. Local transient irritation and a bitter taste after application have been reported.

Naphazoline (E.g. Murine, Optrex Bloodshot Eyes Eye Drops & Optrex Eye Brightening Drops)

The use of products containing naphazoline is restricted to adults and children over the age of 12 years old. One to two drops should be administered into the eye three or four times a day.

Complementary therapies

Butterbur is promoted as having anti-allergic properties. Two clinical trials have reported favourable outcomes of butterbur in controlling symptoms. Both trials found butterbur to be as effective as its comparator drug (cetirizine and fexofenadine respectively) although another trial found it to be no better than placebo. Until further larger studies are conducted to assess butterbur's effect it should not be routinely recommended.

References

Lee TA, Pickard AS. Meta-analysis of azelastine nasal spray for the treatment of allergic rhinitis. Pharmacotherapy 2007;27(6):852–9.

Lindsay-Miller ACM. Group comparative trial of 2% sodium cromoglycate (Opticrom) with placebo in treatment of seasonal allergic conjunctivitis. Clin Allergy 1979; 9:271–5.

Mann RD, Pearce GL, Dunn N, et al. Sedation with 'non-sedating' antihistamines: four prescription-event monitoring studies in general practice. BMJ 2000;320:1184–6.

Sheikh A, Hurwitz B, Nurmatov U, et al. House dust mite avoidance measures for perennial allergic rhinitis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 7. Art. No.: CD001563. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001563.pub3.

Further Reading

Asher MI, Montefort S, Björkstén B, et al. ISAAC Phase Three Study Group. Worldwide time trends in the prevalence of symptoms of asthma, allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, and eczema in childhood: ISAAC phases one and three repeat multicountry cross-sectional surveys. Lancet 2006;368:733–43.

Bousquet J, Khaltaev N, Cruz AA, et al. Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) 2008 update (in collaboration with the World Health Organization, GA2LEN and AllerGen). Allergy 2008;63(Suppl 86):S8–160.

Farooque S. Diagnosis, allergen avoidance and treatment of allergic rhinitis. The Prescriber 2009;19th May:38–48.

Hans de Groot, Brand PLP, Fokkens WF, et al. Allergic rhinoconjunctivitis in children BMJ 2007;335:985–8, doi:10.1136/bmj.39365.617905.BE.

Jones NS, Carney AS, Davis A. The prevalence of allergic rhinosinusitis: a review. J Laryngol Otol 1998;112:1019–30.

Marshall S. An update on hay fever treatments. Pharm J 2009;282:489–92.

Passalacqua G, Bousquet PJ, Kai-Hakon C, et al. ARIA Update: 1-Systematic review of complimentary and alternative medicine for rhinitis and asthma. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2006;117:1054–62.

Price D, Bond C, Bouchard J, et al. International Primary Care Respiratory Group (IPCRG) Guidelines: Management of Allergic Rhinitis. Prim Care Respir J 2006;15:58–70.

Saleh HA, Durham SR. Perennial rhinitis. BMJ 2007;335:502–7, doi:10.1136/bmj.39304.678194.AE

Scadding GK, Durham SR, Mirakian R, et al. BSACI guidelines for the management of rhinosinusitis and nasal polyposis. Clin Exp Allergy 2008;38:260–75.

Skoner DP. Allergic rhinitis: definition, epidemiology, pathophysiology, detection, and diagnosis. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2001;108(supplement 1):2–8.

Slater JW, Zechnich AD, Haxby DG. Second-generation antihistamines: a comparative review. Drugs 1999;57:31–47.

Wallace DV, Dykewicz MS, Bernstein DI, et al. The diagnosis and management of rhinitis: an updated practice parameter. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2008;122(2S):1–84.

Web sites

Action Against Allergy: www.actionagainstallergy.co.uk

Allergy UK: http://www.allergyuk.org/

Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) resources for pharmacists: http://www.whiar.org/Pharmacy.php

The British Society for Allergy and Clinical Immunology: www.bsaci.org

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

1.1 Which respiratory condition is characterised by shortness of breath and bronchoconstriction?

a. Acute bronchitis
b. Heart failure
c. Asthma
d. Chronic bronchitis
e. Pneumonia

1.2 What course of action would be most appropriate if a baby was suffering with croup-like symptoms?

a. Take the infant to casualty
b. Put the infant into a steamy room
c. Seek medical help if symptoms persist for more than 48 hours
d. Give the infant a cough suppressant
e. Give the infant an antihistamine

1.3. Which patient group is most at risk of pneumothorax?

a. Elderly women
b. Young men
c. Young women
d. Elderly men
e. None of the above

1.4. Which one of the following medicines can cause rebound congestion with over use?

a. Pseudoephedrine tablets
b. Guaifenesin cough mixture
c. Oxymetazoline nasal spray
d. Chlorphenamine tablets
e. Codeine linctus

1.5. Which medicine is drug of choice for nasal congestion caused by allergic rhinitis?

a. Loratadine
b. Nasal sodium cromoglicate
c. Azelastine
d. Nasal beclometasone
e. Chlorphenamine

1.6. Which patient group is most likely to suffer from infectious mononucleosis?

a. Infants
b. Children
c. Adolescents
d. Adults
e. The elderly

1.7. What symptoms are commonly associated with acute sinusitis?

a. Dull, localised unilateral pain that is often worse on bending down
b. Dull, localised unilateral pain that often eases on bending down
c. Dull, diffuse bilateral pain that is often worse on bending down
d. Dull, diffuse bilateral pain that often eases on bending down
e. Sharp, localised bilateral pain that often eases on bending down

1.8. The most likely cause of acute cough in children is:

a. Bacterial infection
b. Viral infection
c. Postnasal drip
d. Croup
e. Asthma

Questions 1.9 to 1.11 concern the following conditions:

A. Tuberculosis
B. Left ventricular failure
C. Chronic bronchitis
D. Pneumonia
E. Acute bronchitis

Select in which of the above conditions (A to E):

1.9. Shortness of breath is often the main presenting symptom

1.10. Cigarette smoking is the main cause of the condition

1.11. A higher prevalence is seen in ethnic groups

Questions 1.12 to 1.14 concern the following medicines:

A. Codeine
B. Pseudoephedrine
C. Pholcodine
D. Beclometasone
E. Benzydamine

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

1.12. Should be avoided by patients taking beta-blockers

1.13. Is associated with illicit drug manufacture

1.14. Can reduce breast milk production

Questions 1.15 to 1.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If 1, 2 and 3 are correct
B. If 1 and 2 only are correct
C. If 2 and 3 only are correct
D. If 1 only is correct
E. If 3 only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

1.15. Which of the following symptoms are associated with sinusitis:

a. Localised pain
b. Pain is worsened on bending over
c. Pain is described as throbbing

1.16. A pharmacist should refer patients when the following symptoms are associated with the common cold:

a. Duration of more than 5–7 days
b. If fever is present
c. If middle ear involvement is suspected

1.17. Which of the following precautions should a patient take if he or she suffers from perennial rhinitis:

a. Avoid contact with animals, especially household pets
b. Reduce house dust mite by regular cleaning of carpets
c. Close the windows when in the house

Questions 1.18 to 1.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First Statement	*Second statement*
1.18.	Carbimazole can cause a sore throat	Carbimazole is used to treat hypothyroidism
1.19.	Conjunctivitis is a common symptom in hay fever sufferers	The redness is concentrated in fornices of the eyes
1.20.	Pholcodine is an antitussive	It blocks nerve conduction to the medulla

Case study

CASE STUDY 1.1

Mr RT has asked to speak to the pharmacist as he has a troublesome cough.

a. Discuss the appropriately worded questions you will need to ask Mr RT to determine the seriousness of the cough.

Questions should fall broadly into two groups:

Those that relate to the presenting complaint, for example: nature, duration, onset, periodicity, sputum colour (if applicable), associated symptoms, aggravating/alleviating symptoms.

Those which look at the medical, family and social history of the patient: current medication regimen (recent changes to medication or dosage adjustment), self-medication, general well-being of the patient, smoking status.

Discussion with Mr RT indicates he has a productive cough that appeared a few days ago and the sputum is white. His nose is 'a bit blocked'. He has a headache and he does not have any chest pain. Before you can make a recommendation for the symptoms you identify he is taking the following medication

- *Manerix 150 mg bd – he has taken this for over 6 months.*
- *Trusopt tds – he has used this for 2 years*
- *Paracetamol 2 qds prn – for lower back pain*

b. Compare and contrast the different products available to treat Mr RT's symptoms and indicate which you consider would be the most beneficial to him and those that are contraindicated.

Information related to products to treat a productive cough with nasal congestion should be sought. This involves expectorant medication and sympathomimetics. Mr RT's current drug regimen will have to be taken into consideration and checks for interactions and suitability made. For example, Mr RT is taking Manerix, therefore sympathomimetics should be avoided.

A few weeks later Mr RT returns to the pharmacy and complaining that he is still having trouble clearing his blocked nose. A friend at work recommended Otrivine Nasal Spray.

c. The use of local decongestants is associated with this phenomenon known as rhinitis medicamentosa. Explain what this is and what advice you would give to Mr RT?

Rhinitis medicamentosa relates to the problem of overly long use of topical sympathomimetics. Prolonged use (normally more than 7 days continuous use) results in vascular engorgement of the nose on withdrawal of the medication. Patients often believe mistakenly that symptoms have returned and begin to use the medication again and thus perpetuate the problem. This cycle of overuse has to be broken and explained to patients so that they understand why they have continued nasal congestion. Strategies to relieve the problem are, if appropriate, a switch to systemically administered decongestants or if this is not appropriate then on withdrawal of the medication the patient counselled that the symptoms will initially worsen but that symptoms will gradually resolve. In Mr RT's case he should be advised not to take the nasal spray because of the risk of a drug interaction between the spray and Manerix.

CASE STUDY 1.2

A female patient (about 30 years old) presents to the pharmacist complaining of a bothersome sore throat. The following information is gained from the patient.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint	
What symptoms have you got	Pain when trying to swallow
How long had the symptoms	Had for the last 2 days
Any other symptoms	Headache
Additional questions asked	Raised temperature? Don't know True difficulty swallowing-no
Previous history of presenting complaint	Had cough and cold a few months ago
Past medical history	Eczema
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Nothing currently
Allergies	None known
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	No questions asked in relation to social history
Family history	N/A
Examination	Throat appears normal. No ulceration or pus obviously visible using pen torch. Glands do not feel swollen. Running low fever (38°C)

Using the information gained from questioning and linking this with known epidemiology on sore throat (see Table 1.7) it should be possible to make a differential diagnosis.

Diagnostic pointers with respect to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

CASE STUDY 1.2 (Continued)

	Age	Tonsillar/pharyngeal exudate	Duration	Cervical glands	Cough present	Other symptoms
Viral infection	Any age	Possible but generally limited	3–7 days	Normal	Common	Low grade fever, headache
Bacterial infection	Schoolchildren	Often present and can be substantial	3–7 days	Swollen	Rare	High grade fever, possible rash
Thrush	Young and old	No	5–14 days?	Normal	No	No
Glandular fever	Adolescents	Unlikely	>14 days	Swollen	No	Lethargy
Trauma	Any age	Unlikely	Varies depending on cause	Normal	No	None
Carcinoma	Older people	None	>14 days	Normal?	No?	Dysphagia, ear pain
Medicines	Adults	None	depends	Normal	No	

When this information is applied to the information gained from our patient we see that her symptoms most closely match viral infection or trauma. As epidemiology states viral infection is the most prevalent cause of sore throat it seems likely that this is the cause of her symptoms. Trauma appears less likely due to having no systemic symptoms – a supplementary question about precipitating factors should exclude trauma as a cause.

	Age	Tonsillar/ pharyngeal exudate	Duration	Cervical glands swollen	Cough present	Absence of dysphagia	Systemic upset present
Viral infection	✓	✓?	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Bacterial infection	X	X	✓	X	X?	✓	✓?
Thrush	X	✓	X?	✓	✓	✓	X
Glandular fever	X	✓	X	X	✓	✓	X
Trauma	✓	✓	✓?	✓	✓	✓	X
Carcinoma	X	✓	X	✓	✓	X	X
Medicines	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Danger symptoms/signs (trigger points for referral)

As a final double check it might be worth making sure the person has none of the 'referral signs or symptoms. This is the case with this patient.

Adverse drug reaction	X
Associated skin rash	X
Duration of more than 2 weeks	X
Dysphagia	X
Marked tonsillar exudate accompanied with a high temperature and swollen glands	X

CASE STUDY 1.3

Mr JL, an Asian man in his early sixties (slightly overweight) wants something for his persistent cough. He has tried some stuff from the supermarket but it did not work. The following information is gained from the patient.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint	
Describe symptoms	Cough with a little bit of phlegm
How long had the symptoms	Weeks. Just been there in the background. Not really bothered by it but just doesn't seem to want to go. Saw the GP about 6 weeks ago and was given antibiotics. Seemed to help but the cough came back again
Nature of sputum	Not a lot there really. Seems green/brown
Onset/timing	Not noticed it being better or worse at any time
Other symptoms/ provokes	Generally feel off colour and has done for a while
Additional questions	No blood in sputum that noticed; No weight loss
Previous history of presenting complaint	Gets coughs and colds from time-to-time but not constantly
Past medical history	GORD, hypothyroidism
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Pantoprazole 1 od Thyroxine 100 µg 1od
Allergies	KNA
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Drink most nights down the club plus smokes 20–40 a day. Unemployed currently
Family history	Lives on own
On examination	N/A

Epidemiology of cough suggests that viral sore throat is the most likely cause of cough in primary care for all ages. However, other conditions are possible and are noted below:

Using the information gained from questioning and linking this with known epidemiology on cough (see Table 1.1) it should be possible to make a differential diagnosis.

Diagnostic pointers with respect to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

CASE STUDY 1.3 (Continued)

	Acute or chronic	Sputum	Sputum colour	Age	Systemic symptoms	Worse
Viral	Acute	Sometimes	White to green or yellowy	Any	Yes	PM
PND	Acute	No	N/A	Adults	No	None
Allergy	Either	No	N/A	Any	No	PM
AB	Acute	Sometimes	White to green or yellowy	Adults	Yes	None
Croup	Acute	No	N/A	Young children	No	PM
CB	Chronic	Yes	Mucopurulent	> 40	No	AM
Asthma	Chronic	Sometimes	Yellow	Any	No	PM
Pneumonia	Acute	Yes	Rust tinged	> 50	Yes	PM
Medication	Either	No	N/A	Adults	No	None
HF	Chronic	Yes	Pink tinged	Elderly	No	PM
Bronchiectasis	Chronic	Yes	Mucopurulent	Adults	No	AM & PM
TB	Chronic	Yes	Blood present	Any	Yes	None
Ca	Chronic	Yes	Dark red	> 50	No	None
Pneumothorax	Acute	No	N/A	Young adults	No	None
Lung abscess	Chronic	No	N/A	Elderly	Yes	None
Nocardiasis	Chronic	Yes	Mucopurulent	Adults	Yes	None

When this information is applied to the information gained from our patient we see that the conditions that most closely fit with the man's symptoms are chronic bronchitis, tuberculosis or nocardiasis. Based on epidemiology, nocardiasis seems highly unlikely so is it chronic bronchitis or tuberculosis? The man does smoke heavily and this fits with chronic bronchitis but he says that he has not a repeated history of cough. The patient has felt unwell for 'a while' and this suggests systemic involvement. Although rare, tuberculosis appears to be a possibility and it would seem sensible to refer him to his GP because of the long-standing nature of the symptoms, general malaise and being of an ethnic background.

CASE STUDY 1.3 (Continued)

	Acute or chronic	Sputum	Sputum colour (productive only)	Age	Systemic symptoms
Viral	X	✓?	X?	✓	✓
Postnasal drip	X	X	N/A	✓	X
Allergy	X?	X	N/A	✓	X
Acute bronchitis	X	✓	X?	✓	✓
Croup	X	X	N/A	X	X
Chronic bronchitis	✓	✓	✓	✓	X
Asthma	✓	✓?	✓?	✓	X
Pneumonia	X	✓	✓?	✓	✓
Medication	X?	X	N/A	n/a	N/A
Heart failure	✓	✓	X	X	X
Bronchiectasis	✓	✓	✓?	✓	X
Tuberculosis	✓	✓	✓?	✓	✓
Carcinoma	✓	✓	✓?	✓	X
Pneumothorax	X	X	N/A	X	X
Lung abscess	✓	X	N/A	✓	✓
Nocardiasis	✓	✓	✓?	✓	✓

Answers

1 = c	2 = c	3 = b	4 = c	5 = d	6 = c	7 = a	8 = b	9 = b	10 = c
11 = a	12 = b	13 = b	14 = b	15 = b	16 = e	17 = b	18 = c	19 = b	20 = a

Chapter 2

Ophthalmology

In this chapter

Background 43
General overview of eye anatomy 43
History taking and the eye exam 44
The eye examination 44
Red eye 44
Eyelid disorders 53
Dry eye (keratoconjunctivitis sicca) 56
Self-assessment questions 60

Background

The eye is one of the most important and complex organs of the body. Vision is taken for granted and only when our sight is threatened do we truly appreciate what we have. Due to its complicated and intricate anatomy, many things can and do go wrong with the eye, and these manifest as ocular symptoms to the patient.

It is the pharmacist's role to differentiate between minor self-limiting and serious sight-threatening conditions. For pharmacists to undertake this role they need to be familiar with the gross anatomy of the eye, be able to take an eye history and perform a simple eye examination.

In addition, pharmacists can play a major role in health promotion towards eye care. Patients who present with repeat medication for degenerative conditions, such as glaucoma, could have regular contact with the pharmacist, who could check patient concordance, ability to administer eye drops and ointments correctly and, potentially, discover any deterioration of the patient's condition.

General overview of eye anatomy

A basic understanding of the main eye structures is useful to help pharmacists assess the nature and severity of the presenting complaint. Figure 2.1 highlights the principal eye structures.

The eyelids

The eyelids consist mainly of voluntary muscle with a border of thick connective tissue, known as the tarsal plate. This plate is felt as a ridge when everting the eyelid to remove a foreign body. Covering the inner aspect of the eyelids is the conjunctiva, which continues over the surface of the eye.

The sclera and cornea

The sclera encircles the eye, apart from a small 'window' at the very front of the eye where the cornea is located. The sclera is often referred to as the 'white of the eye.' The transparent cornea allows light to enter the eye and helps to converge light on to the retina.

The iris, pupil and ciliary body

The iris is the coloured part of the eye. It is an incomplete circle, with a hole in the middle of the iris, which forms the pupil. The iris attaches to the ciliary body, which serves to hold the lens in place. The ciliary body produces the aqueous, a watery solution that bathes the lens. This is manufactured behind the iris, travels through the posterior chamber and the pupil before draining at the anterior chamber angle (where the iris meets the cornea). If this exit becomes blocked then the intraocular pressure of the eye becomes elevated.

The lens

The lens is responsible for 'fine focusing' light onto the retina. It possesses the ability to vary its focusing power. However, this variable focus power is lost with increasing age as the lens grows harder and less elastic. This is the reason many people require reading glasses as they get older.

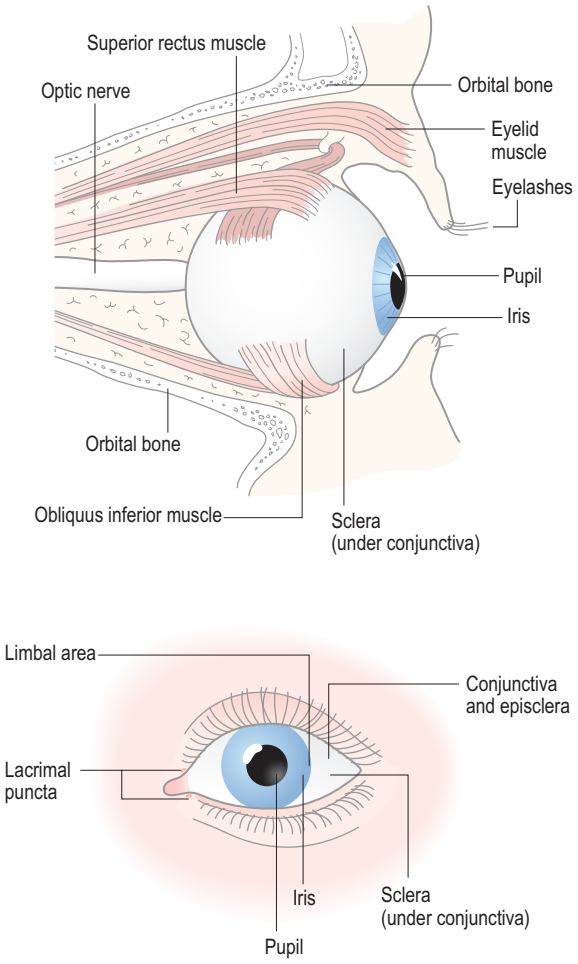


Fig. 2.1 Anatomy of the eye. Above: side view; below: front view.

The retina

The retina is the light-sensitive layer of the eye; it is the reason for the presence of all the other eye structures. The functioning of the retina can be compromised by many factors, such as underlying disease states, and foreign bodies causing retinal damage and detachment.

History taking and the eye exam

A detailed history should be sought from the patient when attempting to decide on the presenting complaint. Pay attention to vision, the severity and nature of discomfort and the presence of discharge. Do not forget to ask about any family history of eye disease (e.g. glaucoma), the person's previous eye and medication history. Answers to these various questions should enable the pharmacist to build up a picture of the problem and arrive at a tentative differential diagnosis.

The history gained should then be supplemented by performing an eye exam. A great deal of information can be learned from a close inspection of the eye. For example, you can check the size of the pupils, their comparative size and reaction to light, the colour of the sclera, the nature of any discharge and if there is any eye lid involvement. It is impossible to agree with a patient's self-diagnosis or for you to differentially diagnose any form of conjunctivitis from behind a counter. Pharmacists owe it to their patients to perform a simple eye exam.

The eye examination

The eye can only be examined in good light. This might mean asking the patient to move to an area within the pharmacy where this can be performed. Before performing an eye exam it is important to explain to the patient fully what you are about to do, and gain their consent.

- First, wash your hands.
- Next, ask the patient to look straight ahead. This allows you to view the pupil, cornea and sclera.
- Then, gently pull down the lower lid and ask the patient to look upwards and to both the left and the right.
- Next, gently lift the upper lid and ask the patient to look downwards and to both the left and right.
- These two steps enable you to examine the conjunctiva.
- Now ask the patient to look directly into a near light and then to look back at you. This is best performed using a pen-torch. This enables you to examine the reaction of the pupils to light. Any abnormal pupil reaction in the presence of ocular symptoms should always be treated seriously.
- You should finally assess the visual acuity of the patient by asking the patient to read small print with the affected eye. If the patient shows any difficulty in reading small print this should be viewed with caution. (Snellen charts – standard charts used to assess visual acuity – are not usually available in a community pharmacy).

Red eye

Background

Conjunctivitis simply means inflammation of the conjunctiva and is characterised by varying degrees of ocular

redness, irritation, itching and discharge. Redness of the eye and inflammation of the conjunctiva has been reported as being the most common ophthalmic problem encountered in the Western world.

As conjunctivitis (bacterial, viral and allergic forms) is the most common ocular condition encountered by community pharmacists, this section concentrates on recognising the different types of conjunctivitis and differentially diagnosing these from more serious ocular disorders.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of conjunctivitis is not known, although statistics for GPs show that eye problems account for 2–5% of their workload and one small UK community pharmacy-based study found that on average pharmacies saw two cases of red eye per week. Infective (bacterial and viral) account for 1/3 of eye cases seen by GPs. Conjunctivitis seems to affect sexes equally and may present in any age of patient although it is more common in children and the elderly. All three types of conjunctivitis are essentially self-limiting, although viral conjunctivitis can be recurrent and persist for many weeks.

Aetiology

The various pathogens that cause bacterial conjunctivitis vary between adults and children. In adults *Staphylococcus* species are most common (over 50% of cases), followed by *Streptococcus pnuemoniae* (20%), *Moraxella* species (5%) and *Haemophilus influenzae* (5%). In children, *Streptococcus*, *Moraxella* and *Haemophilus* are most common. The adenovirus is most commonly implicated in viral conjunctivitis and pollen usually causes seasonal allergic conjunctivitis.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Red eye is a presenting complaint of both serious and non-serious causes of eye pathology. Community pharmacists must be able to differentiate between those conditions that can be managed and those that need referral. Table 2.1 depicts those conditions which the pharmacist may see.

Redness of the eye can occur alone or present with accompanying symptoms of pain, discomfort, discharge and loss of visual acuity. Along with an examination of the eye a number of eye specific questions should always be asked of the patient to aid in diagnosis (Table 2.2).

Clinical features of conjunctivitis

The overwhelming majority of patients presenting to the pharmacy with red eye will have some form of conjunctivitis. Each of the three common types of conjunctivitis has similar but varying symptoms. Each presents with the main symptoms of redness, discharge and discomfort. Table 2.3 and Figures 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 highlight the similarities and differences in the classical presentations of the three conditions.

Table 2.1
Causes of red eye and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Bacterial or allergic conjunctivitis
Likely	Viral conjunctivitis, subconjunctival haemorrhage
Unlikely	Episcleritis, scleritis, keratitis, uveitis
Very Unlikely	Acute closed angle glaucoma

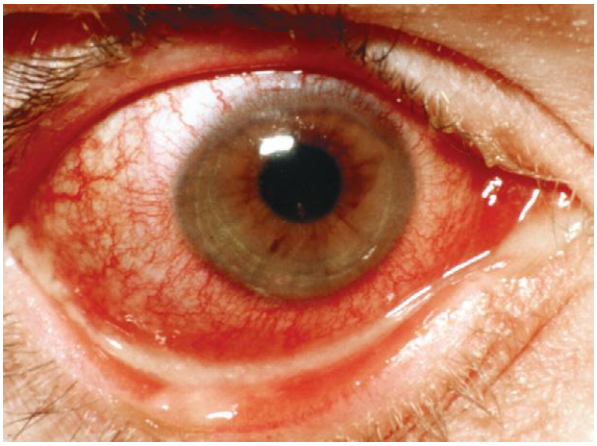


Fig. 2.2 Bacterial conjunctivitis. Reproduced from David A. Palay and Jay H. Krachmer, 2005, *Primary Care Ophthalmology*, 2nd edition, Elsevier Mosby, with permission.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Subconjunctival haemorrhage

The rupture of a blood vessel under the conjunctiva causes subconjunctival haemorrhage. A segment of, or even the whole eye will appear bright red (Fig. 2.5). It occurs spontaneously but can be precipitated by coughing, straining or lifting. The suddenness of symptoms and the brightness of the blood invariably means patients present very soon

Table 2.2
Specific questions to ask the patient: Red eye

Question	Relevance
Discharge present	Most commonly seen in conjunctivitis. Can vary from watery through to mucopurulent, dependent on the type Mucopurulent discharge is more suggestive of bacterial conjunctivitis especially if the eyes are glued together in the absence of itching
Visual changes	Any loss of vision or haloes around objects should be viewed with extreme caution, especially if scleral redness is also present
Pain/discomfort/itch	True pain is generally associated with conditions requiring referral, e.g. scleritis, keratitis and acute glaucoma. Pain associated with conjunctivitis is often described as a gritty/foreign-body-type pain
Location of redness	Redness concentrated near or around the coloured part of the eye can indicate sinister pathology, for example uveitis. Generalised redness and redness toward the fornices (corner of the eyes) is more indicative of conjunctivitis. Localised scleral redness can indicate scleritis or episcleritis
Duration	Minor eye problems are usually self-limiting and resolve within a few days. Any ocular redness, apart from subconjunctival haemorrhage, and allergic conjunctivitis that lasts more than 1 week requires referral
Photophobia	Photophobia is usually associated with sinister eye pathology, for example keratitis and uveitis
Other symptoms	Signs and symptoms of an upper respiratory tract infection point toward a viral cause of conjunctivitis Vomiting suggests glaucoma

Fig. 2.3 Viral conjunctivitis. Reproduced from Joseph W Sowka OD, Andrew S Gurwood OD and Alan Kabat OD, *Handbook of Ocular Disease Management*, Jobson Publishing, with permission.

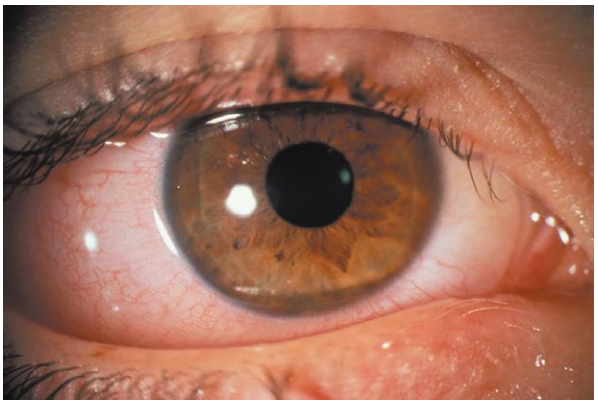


Fig. 2.4 Allergic conjunctivitis. Reproduced from J H Krachmer, M J Mannis and E J Holland (eds), 2005, *Cornea: Volume 1 Fundamentals, Diagnosis and Management*, 2nd edition, Elsevier Mosby, with permission.

after they have noticed the problem. There is no pain and the patient should be reassured that symptoms will resolve in 10 to 14 days without treatment. However, a patient with a history of trauma should be referred to exclude ocular injury.

Unlikely causes

Episcleritis

The episclera lies just beneath the conjunctiva and adjacent to the sclera. If this becomes inflamed the eye appears red, which is segmental affecting only part of the eye (Fig. 2.6).

Table 2.3
Symptoms that help to distinguish between the different types of conjunctivitis

	Bacterial	Viral	Allergic
Eyes affected	Both, but one eye often affected first by 24–48 hours	Both	Both
Discharge	Purulent	Watery	Watery
Pain	Gritty feeling	Gritty feeling	Itching
Distribution of redness	Generalised and diffuse	Generalised	Generalised but greatest in fornices
Associated symptoms	None commonly	Cough and cold symptoms	Rhinitis (may also have family history of atopy)

Fig. 2.5 Subconjunctival haemorrhage. Reproduced from Jack J Kanski, 2007, *Clinical Ophthalmology: A Systematic Approach,* 6th edition, Butterworth Heinemann, with permission.

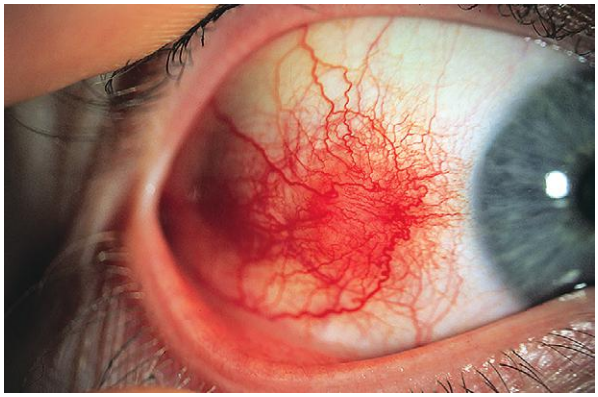


Fig. 2.6 Episcleritis. Reproduced from Jack J Kanski, 2007, *Clinical Ophthalmology: A Systematic Approach*, 6th edition, Butterworth Heinemann, with permission.

The condition affects only one eye in the majority of cases and is usually painless or a dull ache might be present. It is more commonly seen in young women and is usually self-limiting resolving in 2 to 3 weeks, but it can take 6 to 8 weeks before symptoms resolve. Episcleritis is one of those conditions, like subconjunctival haemorrhage, that typically looks worse than it is.

Scleritis

Inflammation of the sclera is much less common than episcleritis. It is often associated with autoimmune diseases, for example in 20% of cases the patient has rheumatoid arthritis. It presents similarly to episcleritis but pain is a predominant feature as is blurred vision. Eye movement can worsen pain. Scleritis also tends to affect older people (mean presentation age in the early 50s).

Discharge is rare or absent in both episcleritis and scleritis.

Keratitis (corneal ulcer)

Inflammation of the cornea often results from recent trauma (e.g. eye abrasion) or administration of long-term steroid drops. Over wear of soft contact lenses has also been implicated in causing keratitis. Pain, which can be very severe, is a prominent feature. The patient usually complains of photophobia and loss of visual acuity accompanied with a watery discharge. Redness of the eye tends to be worse around the iris. Immediate referral to a medical practitioner is needed as loss of sight is possible if left untreated.

Uveitis (iritis)

Uveitis describes inflammation involving the uveal tract (iris, ciliary body and choroids). The likely cause is an

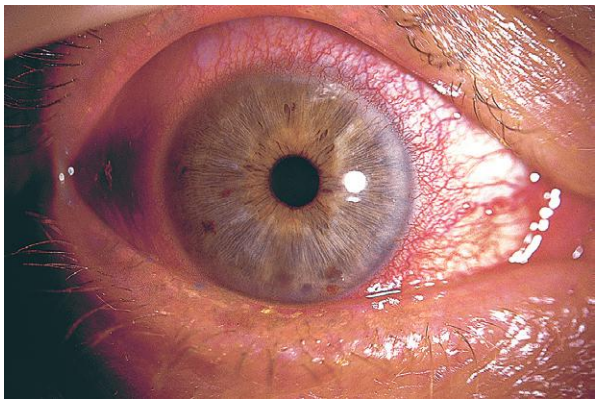


Fig. 2.7 Uveitis. Reproduced from Jack J Kanski, 2006, *Clinical Diagnosis in Ophthalmology*, Elsevier Mosby, with permission.

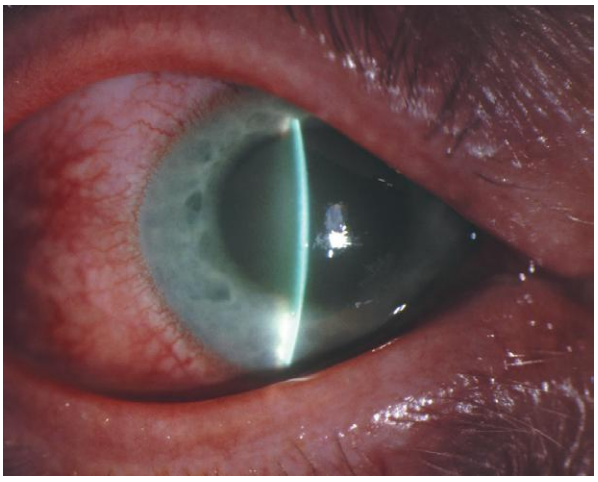


Fig. 2.8 Acute angle glaucoma. Reproduced from Jack J Kanski, 2007, *Clinical Ophthalmology: A Systematic Approach*, 6th edition, Butterworth Heinemann, with permission.

antigen-antibody reaction, which can occur as part of a systemic disease such as rheumatoid arthritis or ulcerative colitis. Photophobia and pain are prominent features along with redness and watering of the eye. Usually, only one eye is affected and the redness is often localised to the limbal area (known as the ciliary flush). On examination, the pupil will appear irregular shaped, constricted or fixed (Fig. 2.7). The patient might also complain of impaired reading vision. Immediate referral to a medical practitioner is needed.

Very unlikely causes

Acute closed-angle glaucoma

There are two main types of glaucoma:

- simple chronic open-angle glaucoma, which does not cause pain
- acute closed-angle glaucoma, which can present with a painful red eye.

The latter requires immediate referral to the GP or even casualty. It is due to inadequate drainage of aqueous fluid from the anterior chamber of the eye, which results in an increase in intraocular pressure. The onset can be very quick and characteristically occurs in the evening. The eye appears red and may be cloudy (Fig. 2.8). Vision is blurred and the patient might also notice haloes around lights. Vomiting is often experienced due to the rapid rise in intraocular pressure. As it is such a painful condition, patients are unlikely to present to the community pharmacist.

Figure 2.9 can be used to help differentiation between serious and non-serious red eye conditions.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Red eye

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Clouding of the cornea Associated vomiting	Suggests glaucoma
Redness caused by a foreign body	Requires removal of body – outside remit of community pharmacist
Irregular shaped pupil or abnormal pupil reaction to light Photophobia True eye pain Distortion of vision Redness localised around the pupil	All suggest sinister pathology

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Bacterial conjunctivitis

Bacterial conjunctivitis is regarded as self-limiting – 65% of people will have clinical cure in 2 to 5 days with no treatment – yet antibiotics are routinely given by medical practitioners as they are considered clinically desirable to speed recovery and reduce relapse.

Up until 2005 over-the-counter ocular antibiotics consisted of dibromopropamidine isethionate and propamidine. Both compounds are active against a wide range of

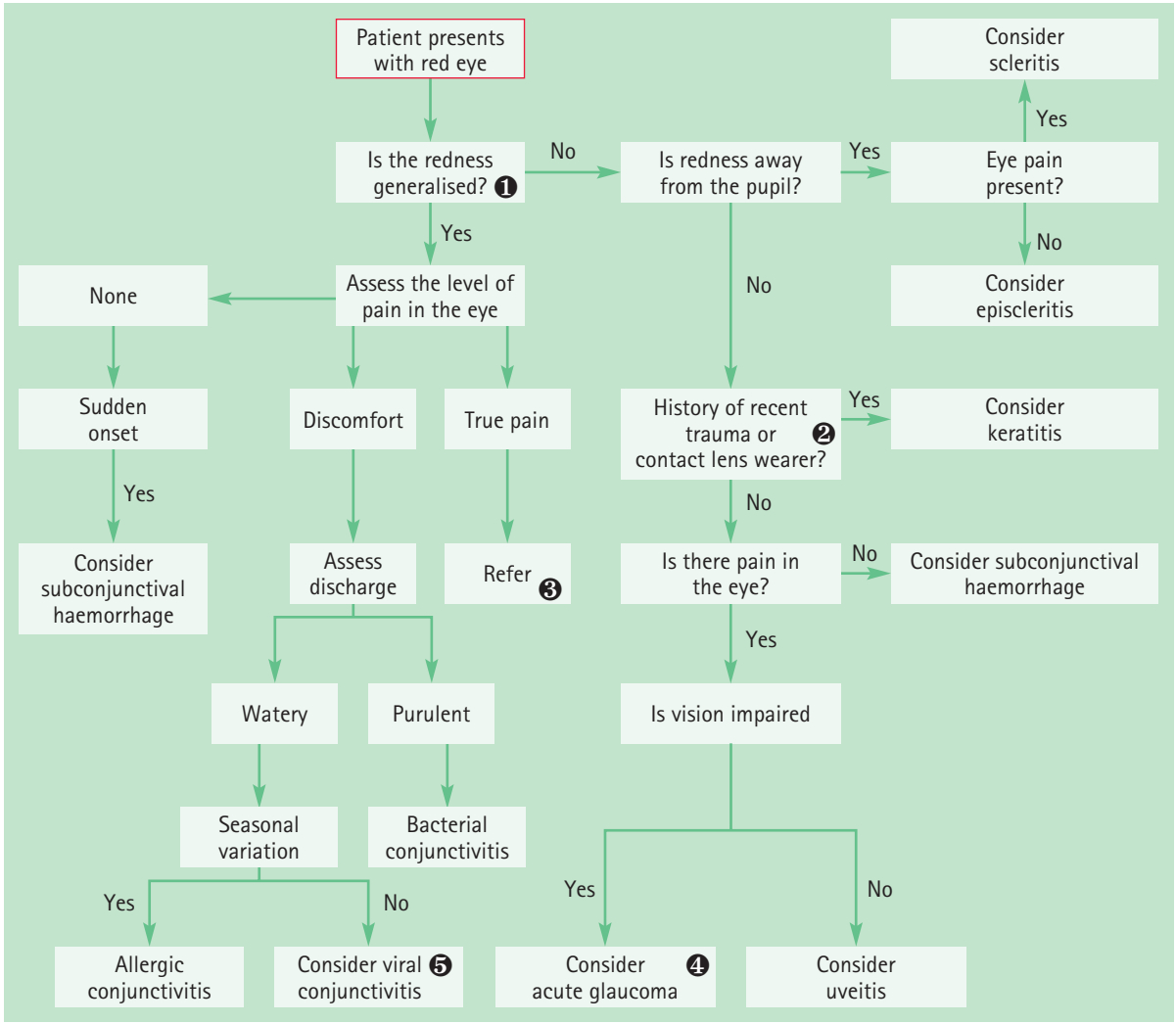


Fig. 2.9 Primer for differential diagnosis of red eye.

❶ Generalised redness
Most episodes of conjunctivitis will show generalised redness, although the intensity of redness tends to be worse towards the corners of the eye or away from the pupil. Occasionally, severe conjunctivitis can have marked redness throughout the eye; these cases are best referred.

❷ Contact lens wearers
Contact lens wearers are more predisposed to keratitis because the space between the contact lens and cornea can act as an incubator for bacteria and enhance mechanical abrasion. This is especially true if patients sleep with their lenses in, because contact time for abrasion to occur is prolonged.

❸ True pain
It is important to distinguish true pain from ocular irritation. Red eye caused by conjunctivitis causes discomfort, often described as gritty or a 'foreign body' sensation. It does not normally cause true eye pain. True pain would indicate more serious ocular pathology, such as scleritis, uveitis or keratitis. It is important to encourage the patient to describe the sensation carefully to enable an accurate assessment of the type of pain experienced.

❹ Glaucoma
This is more common in people aged over 50 years and long-sighted people. Dim light can precipitate an attack. It is a medical emergency and immediate referral is needed.

❺ Viral conjunctivitis
Associated symptoms of an upper respiratory tract infection might be present (e.g. cough and cold). Viral conjunctivitis often occurs in epidemics and it is not unusual to see a number of cases in a very short space of time.

organisms, including those responsible for bacterial conjunctivitis. However, clinical trials are lacking to substantiate their effectiveness and a further possible limitation is their licensed dosage regimen (four times a day for drops) has been reported to be too infrequent to achieve sufficient concentrations to kill or stop the growth of the infecting pathogen.

In 2005, chloramphenicol eye drops and in 2007 chloramphenicol ointment were deregulated. Deregulation was probably hindered by case reports linking topical use to cases of aplastic anaemia. However, fears of an association between topical use of chloramphenicol and aplastic anaemia have proven so far to be unfounded. Chloramphenicol has proven efficacy but its routine use has been called in to question.

Rose et al (The Lancet 2005) questioned whether antibiotics were needed in children as no significant difference was seen in the cure rate after 7 days; 86% of the children were clinically cured in the antibiotic group compared with 83% in the placebo group. The authors concluded that antibiotics were not needed in children. The most recent Cochrane review (Sheikh & Hurwitz 2006) concluded that:

although the use of antibiotics is associated with significantly improved rates of clinical and microbiological remission, the benefits are marginal as in most cases the infection is self-limiting. Therefore, when people with clinically diagnosed infective conjunctivitis are treated, the chances that an individual will benefit from treatment is very small.

Summary of advice for patients

Anti-infectives should not be routinely recommended and patients told that the condition is self-limiting but if symptoms persist for more than 7 days then they should be re-assessed. Self-help measures should be recommended and include:

- bathe the eyelids with lukewarm water to remove any discharge
- tissues should be used to wipe the eyes and thrown away immediately
- avoid wearing contact lenses until symptoms have resolved
- regular hand washing and avoid sharing pillows and towels.

Viral conjunctivitis

Currently, there are no specific OTC preparations available to treat viral conjunctivitis. Viral causes are highly contagious and the pharmacist should instruct the patient to follow strict hygiene measures (e.g. not sharing towels and washing hands frequently), which will help to control the spread of the virus.

Allergic conjunctivitis

Avoidance of the allergen will, in theory, result in control of symptoms. However, total avoidance is almost impossible and the use of prophylactic medication is usually advocated. The evidence base for mast cell stabilisers, antihistamines and sympathomimetics is discussed in Chapter 1 (page 27).

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medication for red eye reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 2.4 and useful tips relating to treatment are given in Hints and Tips Box 2.1.

Products for bacterial conjunctivitis

Chloramphenicol (e.g. Golden Eye Antibiotic Drops/Ointment, Optrex Infected Eye Drops/Ointment, Brochlor Eye Ointment)

Chloramphenicol drops and ointment are licensed for use in children over the age of 2 years old. The recommended dosage for the drops is one drop every two hours for the first 48 hours then reducing to four times a day for a maximum of 5 days treatment. The ointment, if used in conjunction with the drops, should be only applied at night – approximately 1 cm of ointment should be applied to the inside of the eyelid, after which blinking several times will spread the ointment. If used alone, then the ointment should be used three or four times a day. They can be used in most patient groups, although they should be avoided in patients with a family history of blood dyscrasias. In pregnancy and breastfeeding there is a lack of manufacturer data for them to recommend their use. Practically, during pregnancy hygiene measures should be adopted and if absolutely necessary they can be used in breastfeeding women.

Propamidine isethionate 0.1% (Brolene and Golden Eye Drops) and Dibromopropamidine isethionate 0.15% (Golden Eye Ointment)

Propamidine and dibromopropamidine isethionate are only licensed for adults and children over the age of 12. The dose for eye drops is one or two drops up to four times daily, whereas the ointment should be applied once or twice daily. If there has been no significant improvement after 2 days the person should be referred to the

Table 2.4
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for red eye

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug Interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Allergic conjunctivitis					
Mast cell stabilisers sodium cromoglicate	>6 years	Local irritation, blurred vision	None	None	OK
Antihistamines Antazoline*	>12 years	Local irritation, bitter taste	Avoid concomitant use with MAOI's and moclobemide due to risk of hypertensive crisis	Avoid in glaucoma	
Sympathomimetics Naphazoline	>12 years	Local irritation	Avoid concomitant use with MAOIs and moclobemide due to risk of hypertensive crisis	None	Not adequately studied but not yet shown to be a risk – probably OK
Bacterial conjunctivitis					
Chloramphenicol	>2 years	Local burning and stinging	None	Avoid if family history of blood and bone marrow problems	In pregnancy ideally avoid
Propamidine and dibromopropamidine isethionate	>12 years	Blurred vision	None	None	OK

*Only available in combination with naphazoline.

GP. Blurring of vision on instillation may occur but is transient. The manufacturers state that use in pregnancy has not been established but there appears to be no reports of teratogenic effects and therefore could be used in pregnancy if deemed appropriate. They are free from drug interactions and can be given to all patient groups.

Products for allergic conjunctivitis

Mast cell stabilisers (sodium cromoglicate)

Intraocular sodium cromoglicate (e.g. Opticrom Allergy, Optrex Allergy) is a prophylactic agent and therefore has to be given continuously whilst exposed to the allergen. One or two drops should be administered in each eye four times a day. Although no minimum age is stated for their use, data on file from Sanofi Aventis (Opticrom Allergy) show it can be used from children over the age of six. Clinical experience has shown it to be safe in pregnancy and expert opinion considers sodium cromoglicate to be safe in breastfeeding. It has no drug interactions and can be given to all patient groups. Instillation of the drops may cause a transient blurring of vision.

Sympathomimetics

These agents can be used to reduce redness of the eye. Products either contain a combination of sympathomimetic and antihistamine (antazoline/xylometazoline, Otrivine Antistin) or sympathomimetic alone (e.g. Naphazoline 0.01%). They are useful in reducing redness in the eye but will not treat the underlying pathology that is causing the eye to be red. They should be limited to short-term use to avoid rebound effects. Like all sympathomimetics they can interact with monoamine oxidase inhibitors and should not be used by patients receiving such treatment or within 14 days of ceasing therapy.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 2.1: EYE DROPS

Children and school	The Health Protection Agency recommends (2010) that children with conjunctivitis do not need to be kept away from schools
Contact Lens wearers	Patients who wear soft contact lenses should be advised to stop wearing them while treatment continues and for 48 hours afterwards. This is because preservatives in the eye drops can damage the lenses
Brolene and Golden Eye drops	If the patient is instructed to use the drops every 2 hours rather than four times a day then the drops will probably be more efficacious. However this is outside the current product license
Choramphenicol drops	These must be stored in the fridge. If they are put into the eye cold it will be uncomfortable so patients should be told to remove them from the fridge prior to use to allow them to warm up to room temperature
Administration of eye drops	1. Wash your hands 2. Tilt your head backwards, until you can see the ceiling 3. Pull down the lower eyelid by pinching outwards to form a small pocket, and look upwards 4. Holding the dropper in the other hand, hold it as near as possible to the eyelid without touching it 5. Place one drop inside the lower eyelid then close your eye 6. **Wipe away any excess drops from the eyelid and lashes with the clean tissue** 7. **Repeat steps 2 to 6 if more than one drop needs to be administered**
Administration of eye ointment	1. Repeat eye drop steps 1 and 2 2. Pull down the lower eyelid 3. Place a thin line of ointment along the inside of the lower eyelid 4. Close your eye, and move the eyeball from side to side 5. Wipe away any excess ointment from the eyelids and lashes using the clean tissue 6. After using ointment, your vision may be blurred, but will soon be cleared by blinking

Otrivine Antistin

Used in adults and children over 12 years, the dose is 1 or 2 drops two or three times a day. Patients with glaucoma should avoid this product due to the potential of the anti-histamine component to increase intraocular pressure. Local transient irritation and a bitter taste after application have been reported.

Naphazoline (e.g. Murine, Optrex Bloodshot Eyes Eye Drops & Optrex Eye Brightening Drops)

The use of products containing naphazoline is restricted to adults and children over the age of 12 years old. One to two drops should be administered into the eye three or four times a day.

References

Rose PW, Harnden A, Brueggemann AB, et al. Chloramphenicol treatment for acute infective conjunctivitis in children in primary care: a randomised double blind placebo controlled trial. Lancet 2005;366:37–43.

Sheikh A, Hurwitz B. Antibiotics versus placebo for acute bacterial conjunctivitis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 2.

Further reading

Drug and Therapeutics Bulletin. Management of acute infective conjunctivitis 2011;49:7. Available at: http://dtb.bmj.com/content/49/7/78.full.pdf (accessed 2 November 2012).

Everitt HA, Little PS, Smith PW. A randomised controlled trial of management strategies for acute infective conjunctivitis in general practice. Br Med J 2006;333:321.

Health Protection Agency, 2010. Guidance on infection control in schools and other childcare settings. April [online]. Available: http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1194947358374 (Accessed6 August 2012).

Kanski JJ, Bolton A. Illustrated tutorials in clinical ophthalmology. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2001.

Khaw PT, Elkington AR. ABC of eyes. London: BMJ Publishing Group; 1999.

Tey A. Types, presentations and management of conjunctivitis. The Prescriber 2009;5th May:26–32, 36–8.

Web sites

International Glaucoma Association: http://www.glaucoma-association.com/
Uveitis Information Group: http://www.uveitis.net/
Eyecare Trust: http://www.eyecaretrust.org.uk/
The Royal College of Ophthalmologists: www.rcophth.ac.uk

Eyelid disorders

Background

A number of disorders can afflict the eyelids, ranging from mild dermatitis to malignant tumours. In the context of community pharmacy consultations, the most common presenting conditions will be blepharitis, hordeola (styes) and chalazion.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Data on the incidence or prevalence of eyelid disorders is limited yet clinical practice suggests that the above three conditions are frequently encountered. For example, blepharitis has been reported to account for 5% of primary care ophthalmic consultations.

Aetiology

Blepharitis is classified into three categories that reflect the aetiology of the condition; staphylococcal, seborrhoeic and meibomian gland dysfunction. Further classification of blepharitis is sometimes used based on anatomical location. For example, anterior blepharitis refers to staphylococcal and seborrhoeic causes as they primarily affect the bases of the eyelashes. Posterior blepharitis refers to meibomian gland dysfunction as these are situated on the posterior lid. Patients with blepharitis do though show overlapping signs and symptoms that suggest mixed aetiology. Furthermore, it appears that many blepharitis sufferers also have dry eye syndrome but the exact relationship between the two conditions is unclear.

Styes are caused by bacterial infection (staphylococcal in 90–95% of cases) and can either be internal or external. External styes occur on the outside surface of the eyelid and are due to an infected gland (either the Zeis gland – a type of sebaceous gland) or the gland of Moll (a type of sweat gland), both of which are located near the base of the eyelashes. An internal hordeolum is a secondary infection of the meibomian gland in the tarsal plate. Occasionally, internal styes can evolve into a chalazion, a granulomatous inflammation that develops into a painless lump.

Table 2.5
Causes of eyelid disorders and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Blepharitis, hordeola
Likely	Contact or irritant dermatitis
Unlikely	Chalazion, ectropion, entropion
Very unlikely	Orbital cellulitis, carcinoma

Table 2.6
Specific questions to ask the patient: The eye lid

Question	Relevance
Duration	A long standing history of sore eyes is indicative of blepharitis, a chronic, persistent condition, although it can be intermittent with periods of remission
Lid involvement	If the majority of the lid margin is inflamed and red then this suggests blepharitis. Hordeola tend to show localised lid involvement
Eye involvement	Conjunctivitis is a common complication in blepharitis
Other co-existing conditions	Patients who suffer from blepharitis often have a co-existing skin condition such as seborrhoeic dermatitis or rosacea

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Blepharitis and hordeola are the most likely presentations (Table 2.5) and should be relatively straightforward to recognise, so long as a careful history, eye exam and appropriate questioning are undertaken (Table 2.6).

Clinical features of blepharitis

Typically, blepharitis is bilateral with symptoms ranging from irritation, itching and burning of the lid margins. Lid margins may appear red and raw accompanied with excessive tearing and crusty debris or skin flakes around the eyelashes. Symptoms also tend to be worse in the mornings and patients might complain of eyelids being stuck together (Fig. 2.10). In chronic cases, madarosis (missing lashes) and trichiasis (inturned lash) can occur. This latter symptom

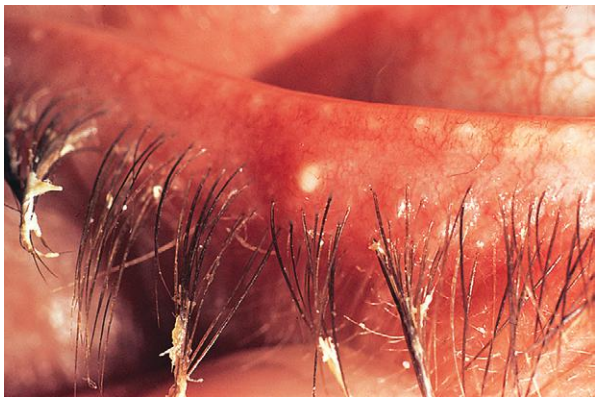


Fig. 2.10 Blepharitis. Reproduced from Jack K Kanski, 2007, *Clinical Ophthalmology: A Systematic Approach*, 6th edition, Butterworth Heinemann, with permission.

Fig. 2.11 External stye. Reproduced from Jack J Kanski, 2007, *Clinical Ophthalmology: A Systematic Approach*, 6th edition, Butterworth Heinemann, with permission.

can lead to further local irritation and result in conjunctivitis. Seborrhoeic aetiology is likely if greasy crusting of the lashes and oily scale predominates compared to eyelash loss or misdirection, which suggests staphylococcal cause.

Clinical features of styes

Patients with external styes present with a swollen upper or lower lid, which will be painful and sensitive to touch. Over time the swelling develops into a pus-filled lesion. The lesion will then either spontaneously shrink and resolve or burst over the next few days (Fig. 2.11). The primary symptoms of an internal stye are as external styes; pain, redness and swelling, although pain is often more severe and pus filled lesions are not obvious due to inward growth.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Contact or irritant dermatitis

Many products – especially cosmetics – can be sensitising and result in itching and flaking skin that mimics blepharitis. The patient should be questioned about recent use of such products to allow dermatitis to be eliminated. For further information on dermatitis see page 239.

Blepharitis unresponsive to therapy

If the patient fails to respond to OTC treatment, or the condition recurs, then it is possible that other causes such as rosacea might be responsible for the symptoms. If OTC treatment has failed then GP referral is needed.

Unlikely causes

Chalazion

A chalazion forms when the meibomian gland becomes blocked, and could be confused with a stye. Styes often have a 'head' of pus at the lid margin and will be tender and sore, whereas a chalazion presents as a painless lump. This should be clearly visible if the eyelid is everted. A chalazion is self-limiting, although it might take a few weeks to resolve completely. No treatment is needed unless the patient complains that it is particularly bothersome and is affecting vision. Referral in these circumstances is needed for surgical removal.

Entropion

Entropion is defined as inversion of the eyelid margin. It can occur unilaterally or bilaterally, with the lower eyelid more frequently affected. The in-turning of the eyelid causes the eyelashes to be pushed against the cornea, resulting in ocular irritation and conjunctival redness (Fig. 2.12). Referral is needed for surgical repair to correct the problem. Taping down the lower lid to draw the eyelid margin away from the eye is sometimes employed as a temporary solution.

Ectropion

Ectropion is the converse to entropion. The eyelid turns outward exposing the conjunctiva and cornea to the atmosphere (Fig. 2.13). Patients will often present complaining of a continually watering eye. Paradoxically, this can lead to dryness of the eye, as the eye is not receiving adequate lubrication.

Very unlikely causes

Orbital cellulitis

Inflammation of the skin surrounding the orbit of the eye is usually a complication from a sinus infection, although

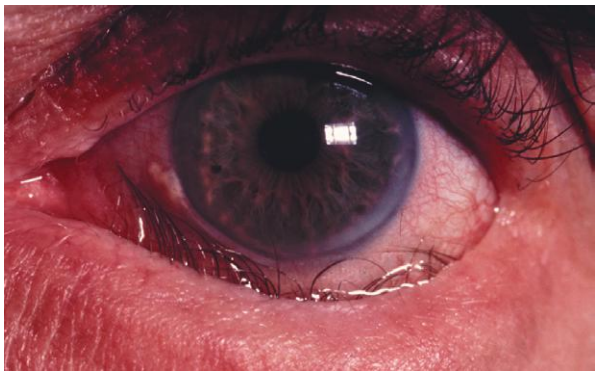


Fig. 2.12 Entropion. Reproduced from Jack J Kanski, 2007, *Clinical Ophthalmology: A Systematic Approach*, 6th edition, Butterworth Heinemann, with permission.

Fig. 2.13 Ectropion. Reproduced from Jack J Kanski, 2007, *Clinical Ophthalmology: A Systematic Approach*, 6th edition, Butterworth Heinemann, with permission.

in extreme cases of stye the infection can spread to involve the entire lid and even the periorbital tissues. The patient will present with unilateral swollen eyelids, be unwell and might show restricted eye movements. This has to be referred immediately because blindness is a potential complication.

Basal cell carcinoma

This is the commonest form of eyelid malignancy and accounts for over 90% of cases. The lesion is usually nodular with a reddish hue (due to permanent capillary dilation) and most frequently affects the lower lid margin. No pain or discomfort is present. Long-term exposure to the sun is the main cause and for further information on sun-induced skin damage see page 245.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Blepharitis and styes

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/ reason for referral
Chalazion that becomes bothersome to the patient	May need surgical intervention but assessment from doctor required
Inward or outward turning lower eyelid	Requires medical intervention
Patient with swollen eyelids and associated feelings of being unwell	Suggests orbital cellulitis
Middle aged/elderly patient with painless nodular lesion on or near eyelid	Suggests sinister pathology, possibly carcinoma

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

OTC medication is generally not required for blepharitis or styes. No specific products are available and both can respond well to conservative treatment, such as warm compresses.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Blepharitis

The mainstay of treatment for blepharitis is improved lid hygiene. First, the eyelids should be cleaned using a warm compress for 5–10 minutes. A diluted mixture of baby shampoo (1 : 10) with warm water should then be applied to the eyelids using a cotton bud. This should be done twice a day initially and can be reduced to once a day if symptoms improve. Failure to respond to hygiene measures requires GP referral. As blepharitis can cause dry eye the prescribing of an ocular lubricant (e.g. hypromellose or carbomers) can be tried, and if there are signs of staphylococcal infection then topical antibiotics such as fusidic acid gel or even systemic treatment with oxytetracycline should be considered.

Styes

Although styes are caused by bacterial pathogens the use of antibiotic therapy is not usually needed. Topical application of ocular antibiotics does not result in speedier symptom resolution but it might prevent a subsequent staphylococcal infection from a lash lower down. A warm

compress, applied for 5–10 minutes, every three or four times a day might bring to a head an external stye and once burst, the pain will subside and the symptoms resolve. The use of dibromopropamidine has been advocated in the treatment of styes but is of unproven benefit.

Further reading

Miller K, Odufuwa B, Liew G, Anderson KL. Interventions for blepharitis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2005, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD005556. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005556.

Shields SR. Managing eye disease in primary care. Postgrad Med 2000;108:83–6, 91–6.

Web sites

Handbook of Ocular Disease Management: http://cms.revoptom.com/handbook/hbhome.htm

Dry eye (keratoconjunctivitis sicca)

Background

Dry eye is a frequent cause of eye irritation causing varying degrees of discomfort which leads patients to seek medical care. The condition is chronic with no cure.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of dry eye is unclear due to a lack of consistency in its definition coupled with few population-based studies which used differing criteria for diagnosis. What is clear though is dry eye syndrome is common. Almost 3% of older adults will develop dry eye each year; it is more common in women than men and associated more in those people with poor health.

Aetiology

Essentially, a reduction in tear volume or alteration in tear composition causes dry eyes. Underproduction of tears can be the result of increased evaporation from the eye, increased tear drainage and a decrease in tear production by the lacrimal gland. Tear composition is complex; the tear film is made up from three distinct layers:

- the innermost mucin layer, which allows tears to adhere to the conjunctival surface
- middle aqueous layer, containing 90% of the tear thickness
- outermost, lipid layer, that helps to slow aqueous layer evaporation.

Table 2.7
Causes of dry eye and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	KCS
Likely	Blepharitis, Sjögren's syndrome, medicine-induced dry eye
Unlikely	Ectropion, rosacea
Very unlikely	Bell's palsy

A reduction in any of these layers can lead to dryness but frequently, the mucin layer is affected due to a reduction in the mucin producing goblet cells.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

There are a number of conditions that can cause dry eye (Table 2.7); however keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS) accounts for the vast majority of dry eye cases.

From a community pharmacists perspective many patients will want to buy artificial tears and good practice would dictate that the pharmacist enquires whether the patient has been instructed from their GP or optician to buy these products or whether this is a self-diagnosis. If it is a self-diagnosis the pharmacist should eliminate underlying pathology and ask a number of eye-specific questions to determine if the self-diagnosis is correct (Table 2.8).

Clinical features of dry eye

Usually affecting both eyes, symptoms reported are eyes that burn, feel tired, itchy, irritated or gritty. The conjunctiva is not red unless irritated (e.g. eye rubbing or allergy). Decreased tear production results in irritation and burning.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Blepharitis

Chronic disease of eyelashes, eyelids, or margins of eyelids can lead to irritation of the conjunctiva. See page 53 for more information on blepharitis.

Sjögren's syndrome

This syndrome has unknown aetiology but is associated with rheumatic conditions. It occurs in the same patient population as keratoconjunctivitis sicca; elderly and more

Table 2.8
Specific questions to ask the patient: Dry eye

Question	Relevance
Clarifying questions	Have you had daily, persistent, troublesome dry eyes for more than 3 months? Do you have a recurrent sensation of sand or gravel in the eyes? A positive response to at least one of these questions would indicate dry eye syndrome
Aggravating factors	Dry eye is worsened by dry air, wind, dust and smoke
Associated symptoms	Normally no other symptoms are present in dry eye. If the patient complains of a dry mouth, check for medication that can cause dry mouth. If medication is not implicated then symptoms could be due to an autoimmune disease
Amount of tears produced	If the patient complains of watery eyes but states that the eyes are dry and sore, check for ectropion

Table 2.9
Medication that can cause dry eye

Diuretics
Drugs that have an anticholinergic effect. e.g. TCAs, antihistamines
Isotretinoin
HRT (particularly oestrogen alone)
Androgen antagonists
Cardiac arrhythmic drugs, beta-blockers
SSRIs

commonly in women. The patient will have a history of dry eyes but experiences periods of exacerbation and remission. It is also associated with dryness of other mucous membranes, especially the mouth. Criteria for diagnosing and classifying of Sjögren's syndrome have been proposed (Viteli 2002).

Medicine-induced dry eye

A number of medicines can exacerbate or produce side effects of dry eyes as a result of decreased tear production (Table 2.9). If medication could be causing dry eyes then the pharmacist should contact the GP to discuss possible alternative therapies to alleviate the problem.

Unlikely causes

Ectropion

Sometimes the lower eyelid turns outward. This over exposes the conjunctiva to the atmosphere leading to eye dryness. For further information see page 54.

Rosacea

Rosacea is a disease of the skin characterised by facial skin findings including erythema, telangiectasia, papules, pustules that mimic acne vulgaris, although many patients also suffer from marginal blepharitis and keratoconjunctivitis sicca. Those patients with rosacea should be questioned about eye involvement to optimise treatment.

Very unlikely causes

Bell's palsy

Bell's palsy is characterised by unilateral facial paralysis, often with sudden onset. A complication of Bell's palsy is that the patient might be unable to close one eye or blink, leading to decrease tear film and dry eye.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Dry eye

- Associated dryness of mouth and other mucous membranes
- Outward turning lower eyelid

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Dry eyes are managed by the instillation of artificial tears and lubricating ointments. Products in the UK consist of hypromellose (0.3 to 1.0%), polyvinyl alcohol, carmellose, carbomer 980, sodium hyaluronate and wool fats.

Despite a lack of published trial data, hypromellose products have been in use for over half a century. They possess film-forming and emollient properties but unfortunately do not have ideal wetting characteristics, which results in up to hourly administration to provide adequate relief.

Table 2.10
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for dry eye

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug Interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Hypromellose & carmellose	Dry eye in children rare & therefore should be referred	Transient stinging and/or burning reported. Blurred vision after instillation of carbomer and polyvinyl alcohol	None	None	OK
Carbomer 940					
Polyvinyl alcohol		None reported			
Wool fats					
Hyaluronate					

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 2.2: DRY EYE

Preservatives in eye drops	Many eye drops contain benzalkonium chloride which itself can cause eye irritation. If symptoms persists or are worsened by the eye drops it may be worth trying a preservative-free formulation or single dose unit preparations

This disadvantage of frequent installation has led to the development of other products. Polyvinyl alcohol in a concentration of 1.4% acts as a viscosity enhancer. At this concentration the products have the same surface tension as normal tears, lending them optimal wetting characteristics and hence less frequent dosing, typically four times a day. Similarly to hypromellose there is a lack of published data confirming their efficacy.

Carbomer has been shown to be more efficacious than placebo and as safe as, but better tolerated, than polyvinyl alcohol. In a comparison study between two proprietary brands, Viscotears and GelTears, both were found to be equally effective although neither was significantly better than the other. Sodium hyaluronate has been subject to a number of trials that have shown a reduction in symptom severity. They have also been compared with carbomer products and carboxymethylcellulose, and found to be equally effective.

Summary

Despite hypromellose lacking trial evidence, its place in the management of dry eye is well established. In addition, it is very cheap and should therefore be recommended as a first-line treatment. However, other newer products, which possess better wetting characteristics, provide useful alternatives to hypromellose because they can be administered less frequently; these products are more expensive.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medication for dry eye that is reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 2.10 and useful tips on medication are given in Hints and Tips Box 2.2.

The dosage of all products marketed for dry eye is largely dependent on the patient's need for lubrication, and is therefore given on a when-required basis. None of these products is known to interact with any medicine, they cause minimal and transient side effects and are suitable for all patient groups.

Hypromellose and carmellose

Hypromellose is widely available as a non-proprietary medicine in a strength of 0.3%; it is also available at 0.5% (Isopto Plain) and 1% (Isopto Alkaline); carmellose is available as 0.5%. Both might require hourly or even half-hourly dosing initially, which should reduce as symptoms improve. They are pharmacologically inert and all patient

groups should be able to use it safely, including pregnant and breastfeeding women. However, because of a lack of data, some manufacturers err on the side of caution and recommend that it should be avoided.

Polyvinyl alcohol

Two proprietary products are available; Liquifilm Tears and Sno Tears. The standard dose is four times day. Liquifilm is also available as a preservative-free formulation. It can be given to all patient groups.

Carbomer (E.g. Clinitas Gel, GelTears, Liposic, Liquivisc, Viscotears)

Manufacturers recommend that adults and the elderly use one drop three or four times a day or as required, depending upon patient need. Due to the products viscosity, carbomer should be used last if other eye drops need to be instilled. Manufacturers advise avoidance in pregnancy and lactation due to insufficient data. Clinical experience, however, has shown carbomer can be used safely in these patient groups.

Lubricants

Wool fats (e.g. Lacri-Lube and Simple eye ointment)

These products contain a mixture of white soft paraffin, liquid paraffin and wool fat. They are useful at bedtime when prolonged lubrication is needed but because they blur vision are unsuitable during the day. They are pharmacologically inert and can be used in pregnancy and breastfeeding.

Sodium hyaluronate (e.g. Hayabak, Oxyal)

The dose for all products containing sodium hyaluronate is on a when-needed basis.

Reference

Vitali C, Bombardieri S, Jonsson R, et al. Classification criteria for Sjogren's syndrome: a revised version of the European criteria proposed by the American-European Consensus Group. Ann Rheum Dis 2002;61:554–8.

Further reading

Brodwall J, Alme G, Gedde-Dahl S, et al. A comparative study of polyacrylic acid [Viscotears] liquid gel versus polyvinylalcohol in the treatment of dry eyes. Acta Ophthalmol Scand 1997;75:457–61.

Bron AJ, Daubas P, Siou-Mermet R, et al. Comparison of the efficacy and safety of two eye gels in the treatment of dry eyes: Lacrinorm and Viscotears. Eye 1998;12:839–47.

Johnson ME, Murphy PJ, Boulton M. Carbomer and sodium hyaluronate eyedrops for moderate dry eye treatment. Optometry Vision Sci 2008;85(8):750–7.

Lee JH, Ahn HS, Kim EK, Kim TI. Efficacy of sodium hyaluronate and carboxymethylcellulose in treating mild to moderate dry eye disease. Cornea 2011;30(2):175–9.

Moss SE, Klein R, Klein BEK. Incidence of dry eye in an older population. Arch Ophthalmol 2004;122:369–73.

Sullivan LJ, McCurrach F, Lee S, et al. Efficacy and safety of 0.3% carbomer gel compared to placebo in patients with moderate to severe dry eye syndrome. Ophthalmology 1997;104:1402–8.

Web sites

Sjögren's Syndrome Foundation: http://www.sjogrens.org/home

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

2.1 Which of the following would be the *most* appropriate course of action for a patient with a chalazion?

a. Instillation of Brolene eye drops four times a day
b. Bathing with salt water three times a day
c. Application of Golden Eye ointment twice a day
d. No treatment
e. Referral to the GP

2.2 Basal cell carcinoma usually affects?

a. The upper eye lid
b. The lower lid margin
c. Upper and lower eyelids equally
d. The lower lid margin and eye itself
e. The eye only

2.3 How can visual acuity be assessed in the community pharmacy?

a. By checking the reaction of the pupils to light
b. Getting the patient to walk in a straight line
c. Getting the patient to read print from a book
d. Getting the patient to read distant print
e. None of the above

2.4 Which one of the following medicines can cause dry eyes?

a. Pseudoephedrine
b. Atenolol
c. Codeine
d. Isotretinoin
e. Pantoprazole

2.5 Symptoms of blurred vision and eye pain that is associated with onset in the evening suggests:

a. Episcleritis
b. Keratitis
c. Uveitis
d. Glaucoma
e. Viral conjunctivitis

2.6 In which of the following conditions is severe eye pain experienced?

a. Subconjunctival haemorrhage
b. Episcleritis
c. Keratitis
d. Ectropion
e. Viral conjunctivitis

2.7 What viral pathogen is responsible for the majority of viral conjunctivitis cases?

a. The rhinovirus
b. The Epstein–Barr virus
c. The adenovirus
d. The Norwalk-like virus
e. The rotavirus

2.8 Subconjunctival haemorrhage is associated with?

a. A segment or whole eye appearing bright red and no pain
b. A segment or whole eye appearing bright red and with pain
c. A segment of the eye only that appears pale red and no pain
d. A segment of the eye only that appears bright red and with pain
e. Ciliary flush

Questions 2.9 to 2.11 concern the following conditions:

A. A clear, watery discharge
B. Haloes seen around bright lights
C. Soreness of the surface of the eye
D. A small, hard lump under the skin of the upper lid
E. Grittiness and burning of the eyes in an elderly patient

Select from A to E, which of the above statements relate to the following conditions:

2.9 Acute closed-angle glaucoma

2.10 Chalazion

2.11 Allergic conjunctivitis

Questions 2.12 to 2.14 concern the following OTC medications:

A. Hypromellose
B. Naphazoline
C. Carbomer 940
D. Dibromopropamide isethionate
E. Sodium cromoglicate

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

2.12 Is used to treat allergic conjunctivitis

2.13 Can cause rebound conjunctivitis

2.14 May require hourly administration

Questions 2.15 to 2.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

2.15 Which condition(s) are associated with autoimmune disease?

a. Scleritis
b. Keratitis
c. Glaucoma

2.16 Subconjunctival haemorrhage is characterised by:

a. Eye that is red and bloodshot
b. No pain
c. Onset is sudden

2.17 Patients with dry eye syndrome can present with:

a. Itchy/sore eyes
b. Associated red eye
c. A long-standing history of dry eye

Questions 2.18 to 2.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false.

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
2.18	Conjunctivitis is caused by infection only	Inflammation of the conjunctiva tends to be away from the pupil
2.19	Ectropion should be referred	It requires surgical intervention
2.20	Blepharitis can cause red eye	Skin flaking results in direct conjunctival irritation

Case study

CASE STUDY 2.1

Mrs JR, a 32-year-old-woman, asks you for something to treat her 'sore eyes'. She doesn't wear contact lenses.

a. What questions you would ask Mrs JR and what observations would you make of her eyes to help you diagnose her eye condition?

Questions should fall broadly into two groups:

- *General questions: duration, onset, medication, family history.*
- *More specific questions: degree of discomfort, whether there is any discharge, if there have been any changes to vision, if the patient has experienced previous episodes.*

You perform a physical examination.

b. What signs or symptoms would cause you to refer Mrs JR, rather than recommend OTC treatment?

- *True eye pain*
- *Sudden distortion of vision*
- *Photophobia*
- *Associated vomiting*
- *Clouding of the cornea*
- *Irregular shaped pupil*
- *Redness localised around the pupil*
- *Redness caused by a foreign body*
- *Patient with swollen eyelids and associated feelings of being unwell*
- *Inward or outward turning lower eyelid*

You decide that Mrs JR appears to be suffering from allergic conjunctivitis.

c. What OTC preparations are available to treat allergic conjunctivitis?

Based on evidence and side-effect profiles it would be normal to recommend:

- *First line: Topical-mast cell stabilisers*
- *Second line: Systemic antihistamines*

CASE STUDY 2.2

A man in his early 50s presents at lunch time to the pharmacy with a bright red eye. He wants to ease the redness. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
Describe symptoms	Bright red left eye in the lower half of the sclera. No blood vessels visible
How long had the symptoms	Since mid-morning
Type/severity of pain	None
Other symptoms/provokes	None
Discharge	None
Additional questions	Done nothing different at work (builder) than he would usually do
Previous history of presenting complaint	No
Past medical history	Takes blood pressure medicines but cannot remember their name
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Rennies for indigestion now and then
Allergies	None known
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Smokes (10–15 cigarettes a day) and has a pint or two on most days
Family history	No history of eye problems in the family (mum and dad)
On examination	Acuity OK. Pupil reaction normal.

Using the information gained from questioning and linking this with known epidemiology on red eye (see Table 2.1) it should be possible to make a differential diagnosis.

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

CASE STUDY 2.2 (Continued)

	Discharge	Pain	Visual disturbance	Pupil reflex	Eyes affected	Redness
Conjunctivitis – bacterial	Yes, often mucopurulent	Sore, gritty	No	OK	1 or both	Generalised redness
Conjunctivitis – viral	Yes, sometimes watery	Sore, gritty	No	OK	1 or both	Generalised redness
Conjunctivitis – allergic	Yes, watery	Very itchy	No	OK	Both	Worse in fornices
Subconjunctival haemorrhage	No	No	No	OK	Either	Segmental
Episcleritis	No	Little or none	No	OK	1	Segmental
Scleritis	No	Yes	No	OK	1	Segmental
Keratitis	Watery	Yes, severe	Photophobia	Abnormal	1	Around iris
Uveitis	No	Painful	Photophobia	Abnormal	1	Around iris
Glaucoma	No	Yes, severe	Blurred	Abnormal	1	Haloes, (vomiting)

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that his symptoms most closely match subconjunctival haemorrhage or episcleritis. Looking at the presenting history and who it is then subconjunctival haemorrhage is most likely. (Episcleritis is more common in women and not seen as an 'injection' of bright red blood in the eye.) Subconjunctival haemorrhage also has a very sudden onset and fits with the patient's symptoms.

	Discharge absent	Absence of true pain	Visual disturbance	Pupil reflex normal	Eyes affected	Redness
Conjunctivitis – bacterial	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Conjunctivitis – viral	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Conjunctivitis – allergic	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Subconjunctival haemorrhage	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Episcleritis	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Scleritis	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓
Keratitis	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗
Uveitis	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗
Glaucoma	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗

CASE STUDY 2.2 (Continued)

Danger symptoms/signs (trigger points for referral)

As a final double check it might be worth making sure the person has none of the 'referral signs or symptoms'; this is the case with this patient.

Associated vomiting	✗
Clouding of the cornea	✗
Distortion of vision	✗
Irregular shaped pupil or abnormal pupil reaction to light	✗
Photophobia	✗
Redness caused by a foreign body	✗
Redness localised around the pupil	✗
True eye pain	✗

CASE STUDY 2.3

A mother asks for your advice for her 14-year-old daughter. Emma has a sore and red eye. Questioning reveals that:

- *Emma has had the symptoms for 2 to 3 days.*
- *The redness is located away from the coloured part of the eye.*
- *There is a slight discharge, although Emma has not noticed much colour in the discharge.*
- *Her eye feels slightly gritty.*
- *Her other eye is a little red but not as red as the problem eye.*
- *She is complaining of slight headaches around her eyes.*
- *She has taken nothing for the problem and only takes erythromycin for acne from the GP.*
- *She has not had these types of symptoms before.*

Using the information in case study 2.2, what do you think is wrong with her?

Differential diagnosis of bacterial or viral conjunctivitis

What action are you going to take?

Give advice about hygiene measures and if these fail to control symptoms or symptoms not improved after 7 days then ask the patient to return for re-assessment. Antibiotic eye drops may then be needed.

Answers

1 = d	2 = b	3 = c	4 = d	5 = d	6 = c	7 = c	8 = a	9 = b	10 = d
11 = a	12 = e	13 = b	14 = a	15 = d	16 = a	17 = a	18 = d	19 = b	20 = a

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 3

Ear conditions

In this chapter

Background 67
General overview of ear anatomy 67
History taking and physical exam 67
Ear wax impaction 67
Otitis externa 71
Self-assessment questions 75

Background

Currently, community pharmacists can only offer help to patients with conditions that affect the external ear and this chapter therefore concentrates on external ear problems. However, with appropriate auroscopical training and further POM to P deregulation of medicines, it is not unrealistic to extend the community pharmacists' role to include middle ear problems.

General overview of ear anatomy

The external ear consists of the pinna (Fig. 3.1) and the external auditory meatus (EAM, ear canal). Their function is to collect and transmit sound to the tympanic membrane (eardrum).

The pinna consists chiefly of cartilage and has a firm elastic consistency. The EAM opens behind the tragus and curves inwards for approximately 3 cm; the inner two-thirds is bony and the outer third cartilaginous. The skin lining the cartilaginous outer portion has a well-developed subcutaneous layer that contains hair follicles, ceruminous and sebaceous glands.

The two portions of the meatus have slightly different directions; the outer cartilaginous portion is upward and backward where as the inner bony portion is forward and downward. This is important to know when examining the ear.

History taking and physical exam

A thorough and accurate history coupled with a physical examination of the outer ear should be undertaken, as certain symptoms can help decide what structure of the ear the problem originates from (Table 3.1) and its likely cause (Table 3.2).

Physical examination

After taking a history of the presenting complaint, the ear should be examined. Before performing an examination explain to the patient what you want to do and gain their consent.

1. First, wash your hands
2. Next inspect the external ear for redness, swelling and discharge.
3. Then apply pressure to the mastoid area which is directly behind the pinna (If the area is tender this suggests mastoiditis, a rare complication of otitis media).
4. Next move the pinna up and down and manipulate the tragus. If either is tender on movement then this suggests external ear involvement.
5. You should finally examine the EAM. This is best performed using an otoscope, however currently most pharmacists have not had appropriate training in their use. An alternative way to inspect the EAM would be to use a pen torch. Because of the shape of the EAM, when performing an examination the pinna needs to be manipulated to obtain the best view of the ear canal (Fig. 3.2).

Ear wax impaction

Background

Ear wax is produced in the outer third of the cartilaginous portion of the ear canal by the ceruminous glands. Earwax

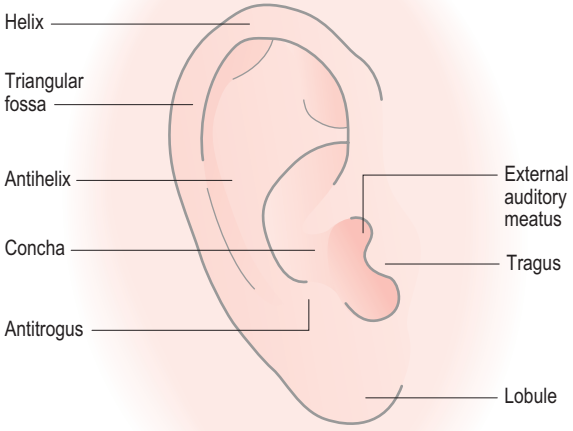


Fig. 3.1 The pinna.

Table 3.1
Ear symptoms and the affected ear structures

Symptom	External ear	Middle ear	Inner ear
Itch	✓		
Pain	✓	✓	
Discharge	✓	✓	
Deafness	✓	✓	✓
Dizziness			✓
Tinnitus			✓

Adapted from C Acomb, Pharmaceutical Journal, August 1991.

performs a number of important functions, including, mechanical protection of the tympanic membrane, trapping dirt, repelling water and contributing to a slightly acidic medium that has been reported to exert protection against bacterial and fungal infection. Cerumen varies in its composition between individuals but can be broadly divided into two types; 'wet or sticky' type of wax, which is common in Caucasians and African-Americans or 'dry' that is common in Asian populations.

Table 3.2
Possible causes of the presenting complaint

Patient presents with	Possible causes
Redness and swelling	Perichondritis, haematoma
Discharge	Otitis externa or media. If discharge mucinous, originates from middle ear as EAM has no mucous glands
Pain in mastoid area	Otitis media, mastoiditis
Pain when pressing tragus or moving pinna	Otitis externa

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence rates of ear wax impaction is not clear but studies have shown that 2–6% of the general population suffer from impacted wax and one Scottish survey of GPs reported an average of nine patients per month (range 5 to 50 patients) requesting ear wax removal. However, many more patients self-diagnose and medicate without seeking GP assistance, therefore pharmacists have an important role in ensuring that treatment is appropriate. The high number of presentations may be due to patient misconception that earwax needs to be removed.

A number of patient groups appear to be more prone to ear wax impaction than the general population, for example, patients with congenital anomalies (narrowed ear canal), patients with learning difficulties and those fitted with a hearing aid. The elderly are more susceptible to impaction due to the decrease in cerumen producing glands resulting in drier and harder ear wax.

Aetiology

The skin of the tympanic membrane is unusual. It is not simply shed as skin is from the rest of the body but is migratory. This is because the auditory canal is the body's only 'dead end' and abrasion of the stratum corneum cannot occur. Skin therefore moves outwards away from the ear drum and out along the ear canal. This means that the ears are largely self-cleaning as the ear canal naturally sheds wax from the ear. However, this normal function can be interrupted, usually by misguided attempts to clean ears. Wax therefore becomes trapped, hampering its outward migration.

Fig. 3.2 Inspection of the external auditory meatus. Above: in children; below: in adults.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Ear wax is by far the commonest external ear problem that pharmacists encounter and is the most common ear problem in the general population. Careful questioning along with inspection of the EAM should mean that wax impaction is readily distinguished from other conditions (Table 3.3).

Table 3.3
Specific questions to ask the patient: Ear wax

Question	Relevance
Course of symptoms	The patient usually has a history of gradual hearing loss with ear wax impaction
Associated symptoms	Dizziness and tinnitus indicates an inner ear problem and should be referred. Ear wax impaction rarely causes tinnitus, vertigo or true pain
History of trauma	Check if the person has recently tried to clean the ears. This often leads to wax impaction
Use of medicines	If a patient has used an appropriate OTC medication correctly this would necessitate referral for further investigation and possibly ear-syringing

Clinical features of ear wax impaction

The key features of ear wax impaction are a history of gradual hearing loss, ear discomfort (to variable degrees) and recent attempts to clean ears. Itching, tinnitus and dizziness occur infrequently. Otoscopical examination should reveal excessive wax.

Conditions to eliminate

Trauma of the ear canal

It is common practice for people to use all manner of implements to try and clean the ear canal of wax (e.g. cotton buds, hairgrips, and pens). Inspection of the ear canal might reveal laceration of the ear canal and the patient may experience greater conductive deafness because of the wax becoming further impacted. Trauma might also lead to discharge from the ear canal; these cases are probably best referred.

Foreign bodies

Symptoms can mimic ear wax impaction but, over time, discharge and pain is observed. Children are the most likely age group to present with a foreign body in the ear canal and suspected cases need to be referred to a GP.

Table 3.4
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for ear wax

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Oil-based products	No lower age limit stated	None	None	None	OK
Peroxide-based products		Irritation			
Docusate		Irritation			
Sodium bicarbonate		None			
Glycerin	>1 year (Earex Plus)				

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Ear wax

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Dizziness or tinnitus	Suggests inner ear problem; requires further investigation
Pain originating from the middle ear Fever and general malaise in children	Middle ear infection?
Associated trauma-related conductive deafness Foreign body in the EAM OTC medication failure	Requires further investigation by doctor

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Cerumenolytics have been used for many years to help soften, dislodge and remove impacted ear wax. Two systematic reviews have been published (Burton & Doree 2009; Hand & Harvey 2004) to determine if pharmacological intervention is effective in wax removal. Each had slightly different inclusion criteria resulting in some trials being included in both but also some trials reviewed in only one of the reviews. All trials reviewed had aspects of poor methodological quality (e.g. lack of clear randomisation and blinding and potential for publication bias as some were company sponsored trials) and were of relatively small size. The findings from these reviews support the use of oil-based softeners, sodium bicarbonate and sterile water over no treatment at all, but no active treatment proved more superior over any other. Further trials between oil-based products and saline reported oil-based products to be significantly better than saline but again showed no differences between each other.

Summary

The evidence from limited trial data suggests simple remedies such as water appear to be equally effective as marketed ear wax products. Additionally, trial data does not clearly point to one particular cerumenolytic having superior efficacy.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to ear wax medicines reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 3.4 and useful tips relating to patients presenting with ear wax are given in Hints and Tips Box 3.1.

Cerumenolytics

Although agents used to soften ear wax have limited evidence of efficacy, they are very safe. They can be given to all patient groups, do not interact with any medicines and can be used in children. They have very few side effects, which appear to be limited to local irritation when first administered. They might, for a short while, increase deafness and the patient should be warned about this possibility.

Oil-based products

Cerumol Ear Drops (Arachis – peanut oil, 57.3%)
The standard dose for adults and children is five drops into the affected ear two or three times a day repeated for up to 3 days. In between administration a plug of cotton wool moistened with Cerumol or smeared with petroleum jelly should then be applied to retain the liquid.

Cerumol Olive Oil Drops (olive oil 100%)
For adults and children, two to three drops should be instilled twice a day for up to 7 days. Like Cerumol, a

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 3.1: EAR WAX

Peanut allergy	Peanut allergy affects approximately 1 in 200 people and patients should be warned about preparations that contain arachis or almond oil
Hypersensitivity reactions to ear drops	Local reactions to the active ingredient or constituents have been reported. If a person has had a previous reaction using ear drops then care must be exercised
Administration of ear drops	Hold the bottle in your hands for a few minutes prior to administration to warm the solution. This makes insertion more comfortable Lie on a bed with the affected ear pointing toward the ceiling or alternatively tilt your head to one side with the affected ear pointing toward the ceiling With one hand straighten the ear canal. Adults pull the pinna up and back and in children, pull down and back Holding the dropper in the other hand, hold it as near as possible to the ear canal without touching it and place the correct number of drops into the ear canal The head should be kept in the same position for several minutes Once the head is returned to the normal position, any excess solution should be wiped away with a clean tissue

cotton wool plug should be gently placed in the ear to retain the liquid.

Earex (Arachis – peanut oil, almond oil & camphor oil in equal parts)

For adults and children, four drops should be instilled twice a day for up to 4 days. Like Cerumol, a cotton wool plug should be gently placed in the ear to retain the liquid.

Peroxide-based products (Exterol & Otex range)

For adults and children, five drops should be instilled once or twice daily for at least 3 to 4 days. Unlike Cerumol, the patient should be advised not to plug the ear but retain the drops in ear for several minutes by keeping the head tilted and then wipe away any surplus. Patients might experience mild, temporary effervescence in the ear as the urea hydrogen peroxide complex liberates oxygen.

Water-based products (e.g. sodium bicarbonate)

This is only available as a non-proprietary product and should be instilled two to three times a day for up to 3 days.

Docusate (Waxsol, Molcer)

The manufacturers of Waxsol recommend that adults and children use enough ear drops sufficient to fill the affected ear on not more than two consecutive nights.

Glycerin based products (Earex Advance & Earex Plus)

Earex Advance can be used from children aged over 2 years. Three to six drops should be placed in the ear canal and left in situ for a few minutes before rinsing out with lukewarm water. For Earex Plus the dose for wax removal is that it should be used twice daily for 4 days and can be given to children over 1 year of age.

References

Burton MJ, Doree C. Ear drops for the removal of ear wax. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2009, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD004326. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004326.pub2.

Hand C, Harvey I. The effectiveness of topical preparations for the treatment of earwax: a systematic review. Br J Gen Prac 2004;54:862–7.

Further reading

Corbridge RJ. Essential ENT Practice. London: Arnold; 1998.

Rodgers R. Hearing loss and wax occlusion in older people. Practice Nursing 2004;15:290–4.

Web sites

British Tinnitus Association: http://www.tinnitus.org.uk

The Primary Ear Care Centre: www.earcarecentre.com/

Otitis externa

Background

Otitis externa refers to generalised inflammation throughout the EAM and is often associated with infection. It usually occurs as an acute episode but may become chronic (greater than 3 months) in children.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The lifetime prevalence of acute otitis externa is 10% and a GP will see approximately 16 new cases per year. It is

more common in hot and humid climates and in western society the number of episodes increases in the summer months. People who swim are five times more likely than non-swimmers to contract it and it is commoner in adults and reported to be slightly more common in women than men.

Aetiology

Primary infection, contact sensitivity or a combination of both causes otitis externa. Pathogens implicated with acute otitis externa include *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Staphylococcus* spp. and *Streptococcus pyogenes*. Fungal overgrowth with *Aspergillus niger* is also seen especially after prolonged antibiotic treatment.

Certain local or general factors can precipitate otitis externa. Local causes include trauma or discharge from the middle ear and general causes include seborrhoeic dermatitis, psoriasis and skin infections.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

In common with ear wax impaction, otitis externa is easily recognised providing a careful history and ear examination has been conducted. However, other otological conditions can present with similar symptoms of pain and discharge (Table 3.5).

It is therefore important to differentiate between otitis externa and conditions that require referral. Table 3.6 highlights some of the questions that should be asked of the patient.

Table 3.5
Causes of ear symptoms and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Otitis externa caused by infection or trauma
Likely	Otitis Media
Unlikely	Dermatitis (contact, allergic, seborrhoeic or atopic)
Very unlikely	Perichondritis, malignancy

Table 3.6
Specific questions to ask the patient: otitis externa

Question	Relevance
Symptom presentation	Principal symptom of acute otitis externa is itch/irritation and pain
Discharge	Otitis media is the commonest cause of ear discharge and is usually mucopurulent. If discharge is present with otitis externa, then discharge is not mucopurulent
Systemic symptoms	Otitis externa should not present with any systemic symptoms Fever and cold symptoms usually present in otitis media In all forms of dermatitis, systemic symptoms should not be present

Clinical features of otitis externa

Otitis externa is characterised by itching and irritation, which, depending on the severity, can become intense. This provokes the patient to scratch the skin of the EAM, resulting in trauma and pain. Patients might not present until pain becomes a prominent feature. However, there should be a period when irritation is the only symptom apparent. Chewing and manipulation of the tragus and pinna can exacerbate pain. Otorrhoea (ear discharge) follows and the skin of the EAM can become oedematous, leading to conductive hearing loss. On examination, the ear canal or external ear, or both, appear red, swollen, or eczematous (Fig. 3.3).

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Acute otitis media

A rapidly accumulating effusion in the middle ear (acute otitis media) is most common in children aged 3 to 6 years old. In older children, ear pain/earache is the predominant feature and tends to be throbbing. In young children this is often manifested as irritability or crying with characteristic ear tugging/rubbing. Systemic symptoms can also be present such as fever and loss of appetite. An examination of the ear should reveal a red/yellow and bulging tympanic membrane. Pain resolves on rupture of the tympanic membrane, which releases a mucopurulent discharge. Over three-quarters of episodes resolve within 3 days without treatment and current UK guidelines do not advocate the routine use of antibiotics. Patients should be managed with analgesia (paracetamol or ibuprofen) unless they are systemically unwell or are under 2 years of age and have discharge. These cases should be referred for GP consideration of antibiotics.

Fig. 3.3 Otitis externa. Reproduced from C Milford and A Rowlands, 1999, Shared Care for ENT, Isis Medical Media Ltd, Martin Dunitz Publishers, with permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

Children may develop recurrent otitis media and is known as 'glue ear'. The condition is symptomless apart from impaired hearing, but can have a negative impact on a child's language and educational development.

Unlikely causes

Dermatitis

Allergic, contact, seborrhoeic and atopic forms of dermatitis can occur on the external ear. Itch is a prominent symptom and could be mistaken for otitis externa, however there should be no ear pain or discharge associated with dermatitis. In addition, in seborrhoeic and atopic forms skin involvement elsewhere should be obvious.

Very unlikely causes

Perichondritis

In severe cases of otitis externa the inflammation can spread from the outer ear canal to the pinna, resulting in perichondritis (Fig. 3.4). Referral is needed, as systemic antibiotics are required.

Trauma

Recent trauma (e.g. blow to the head) can cause an auricular haematoma. This is best known as a cauliflower ear and requires non-urgent referral.

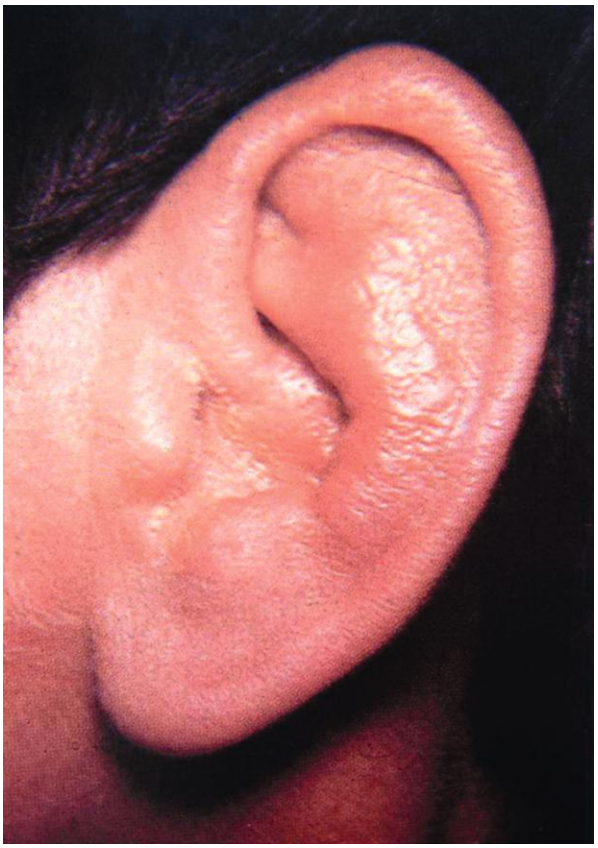


Fig. 3.4 Perichondritis. Courtesy of Joydeep Som, MD. Reproduced from W. G. Belleza and S. Kalman, 2006, Medical Clinics of North America, 2006, 'Emergencies in the Outpatient Setting: Part 1', Elsevier, with permission.

Malignant tumours

Basal and squamous cell carcinomas can develop on the pinna of the ear. Typically they are slow growing and associated with increasing age. Any elderly patient presenting with an ulcerative or crusting lesion needs referral.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Otitis externa

- Generalised inflammation of the pinna
- Impaired hearing in children
- Mucopurulent discharge
- Pain on palpation of the mastoid area
- Patients showing signs of systemic infection
- Slow-growing growths on the pinna in elderly people
- Symptoms that are not improving and been present for 4 or more days

Table 3.7
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for otitis externa

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Choline salicylate	>1 year	None reported	None	None	OK
Acetic acid	>12 years	Transient stinging or burning sensation			

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

OTC treatment of otitis externa is currently very limited. Inflammation of the EAM would respond to corticosteroids; however, all ear drops/sprays that contain steroids are currently POM. This limits OTC options to either oral antihistamines – to try and combat itching and irritation or analgesia to control pain.

Choline salicylate is found in two proprietary products (Earex Plus, Audax). Two small trials comparing the analgesic effect of choline salicylate against aspirin and paracetamol have been conducted. Both trials concluded that choline salicylate reduced pain more quickly than oral analgesia.

In addition, acetic acid is available OTC (Earcalm Spray, 2% acetic acid) and is indicated for the treatment of superficial infections of the EAM. The *British National Formulary 64* states 'that it may be used to treat mild otitis externa but more severe cases an anti-inflammatory preparation with or without an anti-infective drug is required.' This advice appears to be taken from a 2003 BMJ article (van Balen et al) who found acetic acid to be far less effective than acetic acid combined with a steroid or a steroid/anti-infective combination. A further review article published in 2008 also found insufficient evidence to demonstrate the effectiveness of acetic acid in treating otitis externa (Hajioff & Mackeith 2008). However, current Prodigy guidance (2012) states acetic acid alone can be used first-line to treat bacterial and/or fungal disease.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to otitis externa medicines reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed below and summarised in Table 3.7. Pain associated with otitis media can be managed with simple analgesics such as paracetamol and ibuprofen.

Choline salicylate (Earex Plus – choline salicylate 21.6%, glycerol 12.62%)

Choline salicylate can be given to adults and children over the age of 1 year. The EAM should be completely filled with drops and then plugged with cotton wool soaked with the ear drops. This should be repeated every 3 to 4 hours.

Acetic acid (Earcalm Spray)

This can be given to adults and children aged 12 and over. The dose is one spray (60 mg) into the affected ear at least three times a day. The maximum dosage frequency is one spray every 2 to 3 hours. Treatment should be continued until 2 days after symptoms have disappeared but if symptoms do not improve or worsen within 48 hours the patient should be referred to a medical practitioner. The spray should not be used for more than 7 days.

References

Hajioff D, Mackeith S. Otitis Media. BMJ Clinical Evidence 2008;06:510.

van Balen FA, Smit WM, Zuithoff NP, et al. Clinical efficacy of three common treatments in acute otitis externa in primary care: randomised controlled trial. Br Med J 2003;327:1201–5.

Further reading

Hewitt HR. Clinical evaluation of choline salicylate ear drops. The Practitioner 1970;204:438–40.

Lawrence N. A comparison of analgesic therapies for the relief of acute otalgia. Brit J Clin Pract 1970;24:478–9.

Milford C, Rowlands A. Shared Care for ENT. Oxford: Isis Medical Media Ltd; 1999.

Rosenfeld RM, Brown L, Cannon CR, et al. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2006;134:S4–S23.

SIGN (2003) Diagnosis and management of childhood otitis media in primary care. Report No. 66. Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network. www.sign.ac.uk (accessed: 6 June 2012).

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

3.1 Which of the following OTC treatments would you recommend for otitis media?

a. Hydrocortisone
b. An astringent
c. Local analgesia
d. Emollient
e. None of the above

3.2 Otitis media is more prevalent in which age group?

a. 0 to 3 years
b. 3 to 6 years
c. 6 to 9 years
d. 9 to 12 years
e. Over 12 years

3.3 If a patient complains of tinnitus and deafness, what is the most likely part of the ear which is affected?

a. Outer ear
b. Middle ear
c. Inner ear
d. Either middle or outer ear
e. Either inner or middle

3.4 Which patient group is predisposed to otitis externa?

a. Patients with seborrhoeic dermatitis
b. Patients with acne vulgaris
c. Patients with tinea corporis
d. Patients with discoid eczema
e. Patients with lichen planus

3.5 Symptoms suggestive of a middle ear problem are?

a. Itch, pain and discharge
b. Pain, discharge and deafness
c. Deafness, dizziness and tinnitus
d. Pain only
e. Itch only

3.6 The best way to view the EAM of an adult is to?

a. Pull the pinna up and back to straighten the EAM
b. Pull the pinna down and back to straighten the EAM
c. Pull the pinna up and forward to straighten the EAM
d. Pull the pinna down and forward to straighten the EAM
e. Pull the pinna back to straighten the EAM

3.7 Elderly people are more prone to ear wax because?

a. Of an increase in cerumen production
b. The skin migrates at a slower rate
c. Decreased oestrogen concentrations cause less wax to be produced
d. The number of cerumen glands decreases with age
e. Greater immobility

3.8 Which of the following contains peanut oil?

a. Otex
b. Earcalm
c. Earex
d. Molcer
e. Exterol

Questions 3.9 to 3.11 concern the following anatomical locations:

A. Mastoid area
B. The pinna
C. Tympanic membrane
D. External auditory maetus
E. Helix

Select from A to E, which of the above relate to the following statements:

3.9 When painful on manipulation suggests external ear involvement

3.10 Serves to collect sound

3.11 Appears to bulge if an infection is present

Questions 3.12 to 3.14 concern the following OTC medications:

A. Hydrogen peroxide ear drops
B. Almond oil
C. Hydrocortisone 1% cream
D. Choline salicylate ear drops
E. Sodium bicarbonate ear drops

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

3.12 Should not be given to children

3.13 Can reduce pain

3.14 Avoided in peanut allergy

Questions 3.15 to 3.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

3.15 Which statements are associated with the EAM:

a. The outer third consists mainly of cartilage
b. To inspect the EAM of a child the pinna should be pulled down and back
c. To inspect the EAM of an adult the pinna should be pulled down and back

3.16 Conductive deafness can be caused by:

a. Insertion of a foreign body into the EAM
b. Blockage of the eustachian tube
c. Poor ear-cleaning technique

3.17 The principal symptom associated with otitis externa is?

a. Intense ear pain
b. Mucopurulent discharge
c. Itch

Questions 3.18 to 3.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false.

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
3.18	Swimmers often get otitis externa	Prolonged exposure to water predisposes people to EAM infections
3.19	Perichondritis is a precursor to otitis externa	Topical antibiotics are ineffective
3.20	All children with ear pain must be referred	Systemic antibiotics are needed

Case study

CASE STUDY 3.1

Mr SW has asked to speak to the pharmacist as his ear is bothering him.

a. Discuss the appropriately worded questions you will need to ask Mr SW to determine the diagnosis of his complaint.

Questions to ask include: duration; medication tried; whether the symptoms are getting better, worse or staying about the same; degree of discomfort; whether there is any discharge. You should also check the order in which the symptoms presented, any precipitating factors, and if there is a previous history of symptoms.

b. How would a physical examination help to confirm or refute your diagnosis?

A physical examination will allow, along with questions, differentiation between middle and outer ear involvement.

You decide that Mr SW has impacted wax.

c. Compare and contrast the different products available to treat Mr SW's symptoms?

Cerumenolytics remain the mainstay of treatment in the UK. However, the evidence base for efficacy is poor. The British National Formulary advocates the use of simple agents such as olive and almond oil and Prodigy also recommends tap water, sodium chloride 0.9% or sodium bicarbonate ear drops. Dosing for all products is similar and therefore treatment choice will be driven by patient acceptability.

CASE STUDY 3.2

Mrs PR asks to speak to the pharmacist about her 4-year-old son Luke. She wants some Calpol to treat his earache?

a. How do you respond?

The pharmacist needs to establish the severity of the earache and try to determine the cause of the pain.

b. What questions will you need to ask?

- *When was the onset of the earache?*
- *Description of the pain*
- *If any discharge is present*
- *Are there any associated symptoms (e.g. cough and cold)?*
- *How is Luke's general condition compared to normal?*
- *If this is the first episode or is a recurrent problem?*
- *Is there any loss of hearing?*
- *Is the earache associated with any trauma?*

You find out that the earache has been present for a day or so and Luke is more irritable than normal. Mrs PR says he has a temperature but she hasn't actually taken it. Apart from this Luke has no other symptoms. However, he has had this problem about a year ago and was given Calpol then and it seemed to help.

c. What course of action are you going to take?

It appears Luke has a middle ear infection. Examination of the tympanic membrane would confirm this and if possible should be carried out in the pharmacy. Instigation of Calpol seems reasonable and Mrs PR could buy some for Luke. If symptoms did not subside in the next 24 h then referral to the GP would be appropriate.

Answers

1 = e	2 = b	3 = c	4 = a	5 = b	6 = a	7 = d	8 = c	9 = b	10 = b
11 = c	12 = c	13 = d	14 = b	15 = b	16 = d	17 = e	18 = a	19 = d	20 = e

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 4

Central nervous system

In this chapter

Background 79
General overview of CNS anatomy 79
History taking 79
Headache 79
Insomnia 89
Nausea and vomiting 94
Self-assessment questions 98

Background

The number of patient requests for advice and or products to treat headache, and insomnia make up a smaller proportion of pharmacist's workload than other conditions such as coughs and colds yet sales for analgesics and hypnotics are extremely high (nearly £400 million in 2010–2011). The vast majority of patients will present with benign and non-serious conditions and only in very few cases will sinister pathology be responsible.

General overview of CNS anatomy

The central nervous system (CNS) comprises of the brain and spinal cord. Its major function is to process and integrate information arriving from sensory pathways and communicate an appropriate response back via afferent pathways. CNS anatomy is complex and outside the scope of this book. The reader is referred to any good anatomical text for a comprehensive description of CNS anatomy.

History taking

A differential diagnosis for all CNS conditions will be made solely from questions asked of the patient. It is especially important that a social and work-related history is sought alongside questions asking about the patient's presenting symptoms because pressure and stress are implicated in the cause of conditions such as headache and insomnia.

Headache

Background

Headache is not a disease state or condition but rather a symptom, of which there are many causes. Headache can be the major presenting complaint, for example in migraine, cluster and tension-type headache, or one of many symptoms, for example in an upper respiratory tract infection. Table 4.1 highlights those conditions that may be seen in a community pharmacy in which headache is one of the major presenting symptoms.

Headache classification

If the pharmacist is to advise on appropriate treatment and referral then it is essential to make an accurate diagnosis. However, with so many disorders having headache as a symptom pharmacists should endeavour to follow an agreed classification system. The third edition (2010) of the International Headache Society (IHS) classification is now almost universally accepted (Table 4.2). The system first distinguishes between primary and secondary headache disorders. This is useful to the community pharmacist, as any secondary headache disorder is symptomatic of an underlying cause and would normally require referral. In the IHS system, primary headaches are classified on symptom profiles, relying on careful questioning coupled with epidemiological data on the distribution a particular headache disorder has within the population.

Table 4.1
Causes of headache and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Tension-type headache
Likely	Migraine, sinusitis, eye strain
Unlikely	Cluster headache, medication-overuse headache, temporal arteritis, trigeminal neuralgia, depression
Very unlikely	Glaucoma, meningitis, subarachnoid haemorrhage, raised intracranial pressure

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of headache is not precisely known. However, virtually everyone will have suffered from a headache at sometime; it is probably the most common pain syndrome experienced by man. It has been estimated that up to 80 to 90% of the population will experience one or more headaches per year.

Tension-type headache has been reported to affect between 40 and 90% of people in Western countries. Migraine affects approximately 15 to 20% of women and is approximately three times more common than in men. Prevalence peaks between 30 to 40 years of age. Conversely, cluster headache, which is also most prevalent in the 30–40-year-old age group, is five to six times more common in men.

Table 4.2
The International Headache Society classification of headache

Primary headaches	**1.** Migraine, including: 1.1 Migraine without aura 1.2 Migraine with aura **2.** Tension-type headache, including: 2.1 Infrequent episodic tension-type headache 2.2 Frequent episodic tension-type headache 2.3 Chronic tension-type headache	**3.** Cluster headache and other trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias, including: 3.1 Cluster headache **4.** Other primary headaches
Secondary headaches	**5.** Headache attributed to head and/or neck trauma, including: 5.2 Chronic post-traumatic headache **6.** Headache attributed to cranial or cervical vascular disorder, including: 6.2.2 Headache attributed to subarachnoid haemorrhage 6.4.1 Headache attributed to giant cell arteritis **7.** Headache attributed to non-vascular intracranial disorder, including: 7.1.1 Headache attributed to idiopathic intracranial hypertension 7.4 Headache attributed to intracranial neoplasm **8.** Headache attributed to a substance or its withdrawal, including: 8.1.3 Carbon monoxide-induced headache 8.1.4 Alcohol-induced headache	**8.2** Medication-overuse headache 8.2.1 Ergotamine-overuse headache 8.2.2 Triptan-overuse headache 8.2.3 Analgesic-overuse headache **9.** Headache attributed to infection, including: 9.1 Headache attributed to intracranial infection **10.** Headache attributed to disorder of homoeostasis **11.** Headache or facial pain, attributed to disorder of cranium, neck, eyes, ears, nose, sinuses, teeth, mouth or other facial or cranial structures including: 11.2.1 Cervicogenic headache 11.3.1 Headache attributed to acute glaucoma **12.** Headache attributed to psychiatric disorder
Neuralgias and other headaches	**13.** Cranial neuralgias, central and primary facial pain and other headaches including: 13.1 Trigeminal neuralgia	**14.** Other headache, cranial neuralgia, central or primary facial pain

Source: adapted by the British Association of Headache (BASH) from the International Headache Society Classification Subcommittee, The International Classification of Headache Disorders, 2nd ed. Cephalalgia 2004, Blackwell Publishing, reproduced with permission.

Aetiology

Considering headache affects almost everyone, the mechanisms that bring about headache are still poorly understood. Pain control systems modulate headaches of all types, independent of the cause. However, the exact aetiology of tension-type headache and migraine are still to be fully elucidated. Tension-type headache is commonly referred to as muscle contraction headache as electromyography has shown pericranial muscle contraction, which was often exacerbated by stress. However, similar muscle contraction is noted in migraine sufferers and this theory has now fallen out of favour. Consequently, no current theory for tension-type headache is unanimously endorsed but recent studies suggest a neurobiological basis.

Traditionally, migraine was thought to be a result of abnormal dilation of cerebral blood vessels but this vascular theory cannot explain all migraine symptoms. The use of 5-HT_1 agonists to reduce and stop migraine attacks suggests some neurochemical pathophysiology. Migraine is therefore probably a combination of vascular and neurochemical changes – the neurovascular hypothesis. Migraine also appears to have a genetic component with about 70% of patients having a first-degree relative with a history of migraine.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Given that headache is extremely common, and most patients will self-medicate, any patient requesting advice should ideally be questioned by the pharmacist, as it is likely that the headache has either not responded to OTC medication or is troublesome enough for the patient to seek advice. Arrival at an accurate diagnosis will rely exclusively on questioning; therefore a number of headache-specific questions should be asked (Table 4.3). In addition to these symptom-specific questions, the pharmacist should also enquire about the person's social history because social factors – mainly stress – play a significant role in headache. Ask about the person's work and family status to determine if the person is suffering from greater levels of stress than normal.

Clinical features of headache

In a community pharmacy the overwhelming majority of patients (80–90%) will present with tension-type headache. A further 10% will have migraine. Very few will have other primary headache disorders and fewer still will have a secondary headache disorder (see Table 4.1).

Tension-type headache

Tension-type headaches can be classed as either episodic or chronic. Episodic tension-type headache can be further subdivided into infrequent and frequent forms. Most patients will present to the pharmacist with the infrequent episodic form. Headaches last from 30 minutes to up to 7 days in duration and often the patient will have a history of recent headaches. They might have tried OTC medication without complete symptom resolution or say that the headaches are becoming more frequent. Pain is bifrontal or bioccipital, generalised and non-throbbing (Fig. 4.1). The patient might describe the pain as tightness or a weight pressing down on their head. The pain is gradual in onset and tends to worsen progressively through the day. Pain is normally mild to moderate and not aggravated by movement, although it is often worse under pressure or stress. Nausea and vomiting are not associated with tension-type headache and rarely causes photo or phonophobia. Overall, the headache has a limited impact on the individual.

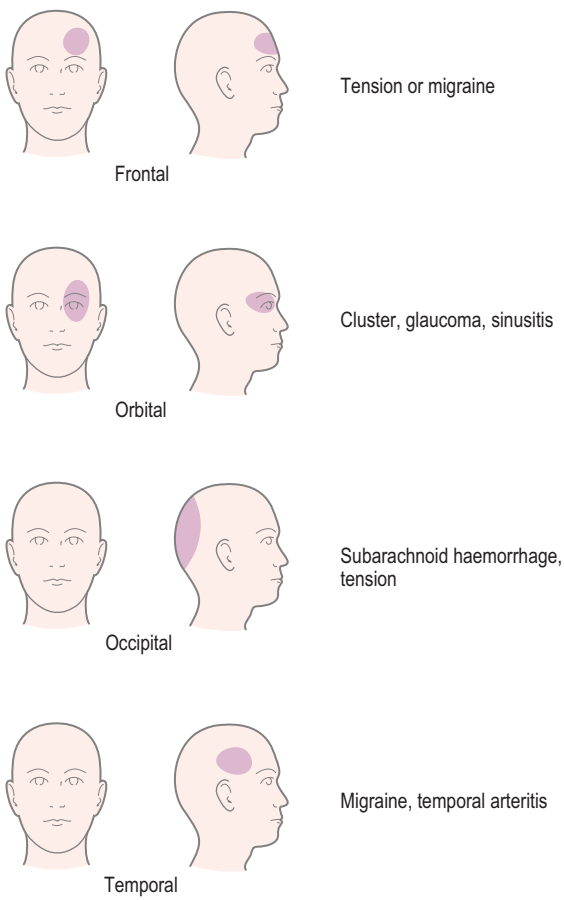


Fig. 4.1 Location of pain in headache.

Table 4.3
Specific questions to ask the patient: Headache

Question	Relevance
Onset of headache	In early childhood or as young adult, primary headache is most likely. After 50 years of age the likelihood of a secondary cause is much greater Headache that follows head trauma might indicate post-concussive headache or intracranial pathology
Frequency and timing	Headache associated with the menstrual cycle or certain times, e.g. weekend or holidays, suggests migraine Headaches that occur in clusters at the same time of day/night suggest cluster headache Headaches that occur on most days with the same pattern suggests tension-type headache
Location of pain (see Fig. 4.1)	Cluster headache is nearly always unilateral in frontal, ocular or temporal areas Migraine headache is unilateral in 70% of patients but can change from side to side from attack to attack Tension-type headache is often bilateral, either in frontal or occipital areas, and described as a tight band Very localised pain suggests an organic cause
Severity of Pain	Pain is a subjective personal experience and there are therefore no objective measures. Using a numeric pain intensity scale should allow you to assess the level of pain the person is experiencing: 0 represents no pain and 10 the worst pain possible Dull and band-like suggests tension-type headache Severe to intense ache or throbbing suggests haemorrhage or aneurysm Piercing, boring, searing eye pain suggests cluster headache Moderate to severe throbbing pain that often starts as dull ache suggests migraine
Triggers	Pain that worsens on exertion, coughing and bending suggests a tumour Food (in 10% of sufferers), menstruation and relaxation after stress are indicative of migraine Lying down makes cluster headache worse
Attack duration	Typically migraine attacks last between a few hours and 3 days Tension-type headaches last between a few hours and several days, e.g. a week or more Cluster headache will only normally last 2 to 3 hours
Associated symptoms	Headache and fever at same time imply an infectious cause Nausea suggests migraine or more sinister pathology, e.g. subarachnoid haemorrhage and space occupying lesions Scalp tenderness is associated with temporal arteritis

Patients who have frequent episodic tension-type headaches suffer more frequent headaches that last longer and over time these can develop into chronic tension-type headache. Headaches occur for more than 15 days per month, and might be daily which last for at least 3 months. These types of headaches can severely affect the patient's quality of life and should not be managed by the community pharmacist.

Migraine

There are an estimated 5 million migraine sufferers in the UK, half of whom have not been diagnosed by their GP. The peak onset for a person to have their first attack is in adolescence or as a young adult. Migraines are rare over the age of 50 and anyone in this age group presenting for the first time with migraine-like symptoms should be referred to the GP to eliminate secondary causes of headache. If this is not their first attack they will normally have a history of recurrent and episodic attacks of headache. Attacks last anything between a few hours and up to 3 days. The average length of an attack is 24 hours. The IHS classification recognises several subtypes of migraine but the two major subtypes are migraine with aura (classical migraine) and migraine without aura (common migraine). A migraine attack can be divided into three phases:

Table 4.4
Triggers and strategies to reduce migraine attacks

Trigger	Strategy
Stress	Maintain regular sleep pattern Take regular exercise Modify work environment Relaxation techniques, e.g. yoga
Diet Any food can be a potential trigger but food implicated includes: Cheese Citrus fruit Chocolate	Maintain a food diary. If an attack occurs within 6 h of food ingestion and is reproducible it is likely that it is a trigger for migraine Eat regularly and do not skip meals Note: Detecting triggers is complicated because they appear to be cumulative, jointly contributing to a 'threshold' above which attacks are initiated.

- Phase one: premonitory phase (prodrome phase), which can occur hours or possibly days before the headache. The patient might complain of a change in mood or notice a change in behaviour. Feelings of well being, yawning, poor concentration and food cravings have been reported. These prodromal features are highly individual but are relatively consistent to each patient. Identification of 'triggers' is sometimes possible (Table 4.4).
- Phase two: headache with or without aura,
- Phase three: as the headache subsides the patient can feel lethargic, tired and drained before recovery, which might take several hours and is termed the resolution phase.

Headache with aura (classic migraine)

This accounts for less than 25% of migraine cases. The aura, which are fully reversible, develop over 5 to 20 min and can last for up to 1 h. It can either be visual or neurological. Visual auras can take many guises, such as scotomas (blind spots), fortification spectra (zig-zag lines) or flashing and flickering lights. Neurological auras (pins and needles) typically start in the hand, migrating up the arm before jumping to the face and lips. Within 60 min of the aura ending the headache usually occurs. Pain is unilateral, throbbing and moderate to severe. Sometimes the pain becomes more generalised and diffuse. Physical activity and movement tends to intensify the pain. Nausea affects almost all patients but less than a third will vomit. Photophobia and phonophobia often mean patients will seek out a dark quiet room to relieve their symptoms. The patient might also suffer from fatigue, find concentrating difficult and be irritable.

Headache without aura (common migraine)

The remaining 75% of sufferers do not experience an aura but do suffer from all other symptoms as described above.

Other likely causes of headache

Eye strain

People that perform prolonged close work, for example VDU operators, can suffer from frontal aching headache. In the first instance, patients should be referred to an optician for a routine eye check.

Sinusitis

The pain tends to be relatively localised, usually orbital, unilateral and dull. A course of decongestants could be tried but if treatment failure occurs referral to the GP for possible antibiotic therapy would be needed. For further information on sinusitis see page 13.

Unlikely causes

Cluster headache

Cluster headache is predominantly a condition that affects men over the age of 30. Typically the headache occurs at the same time each day with abrupt onset and lasts between 10 minutes and 3 hours, with 50% of patients experiencing night-time symptoms. Patients are woken 2 to 3 h after falling asleep with very intense unilateral orbital boring pain. Additionally, conjunctival redness, lacrimation, nasal congestion (which laterally becomes watery) are observed on the pain side of the head. Patients tend to be restless and irritable and move about to relieve the pain.

The condition is characterised by periods of acute attacks, typically lasting a number of weeks to a few months with sufferers experiencing between one to three attacks per day. This is then followed by periods of remission, which can last months or years. During acute phases, alcohol can trigger an attack. Nausea is usually absent and a family history uncommon. Referral is required, as sumatriptan, the drug of choice, does not have an OTC licence for cluster headache.

Medication-overuse headache

Patients with long-standing symptoms of headache who regular medicate can develop medication-overuse headache. Pain receptors (nociceptors) instead of being 'switched off' when analgesics are taken are in fact 'switched on'. The consequence is a cycle where patients take more and more painkillers that are stronger and stronger in order to control the pain. Patients will experience daily or near daily headaches that are described as dull and nagging. Obviously in these cases a medication history is essential and should prompt the pharmacist to refer the patient to the GP. Treatment is to stop all analgesia for a number of weeks and requires careful planning.

Temporal arteritis

The temporal arteries that run vertically up the side of the head, just in front of the ear, can become inflamed. When this happens, they are tender to touch and might be visibly thickened. Unilateral pain is experienced and the person generally feels unwell with fever, myalgia and general malaise. Scalp tenderness is also possible, especially when combing the hair. It is most commonly seen in the elderly, especially women. Prompt treatment with oral corticosteroids is required as the retinal artery can become compromised, leading to blindness. Urgent referral is needed.

Trigeminal neuralgia

Pain follows the course of either the second (maxillary; supplying the cheeks) or third (mandibular; supplying the chin, lower lip and lower cheek) division of the nerve leading to pain experienced in the cheek, jaws, lips or gums. Pain is short lived, usually lasting only a couple of minutes but is severe and lancing and is almost always unilateral. It is three times more common in women than men.

Depression

A symptom of depression can be tension-type headaches. However, other more prominent symptoms should be present. The DSM-IV criteria are often used to aid a diagnosis of depression. The pharmacist should check for a loss of interest or pleasure in activities, fatigue, inability to concentrate, loss of appetite, weight loss, sleep disturbances and constipation. If the patient exhibits some of these characteristics then referral to the GP would be necessary. Recent changes to the patient's social circumstances, for example loss of job, might also support your differential diagnosis.

Very unlikely causes

Glaucoma

Patients experience a frontal/orbital headache with pain in the eye. The eye appears red and is painful. Vision is blurred and the cornea can look cloudy. In addition, the patient might notice haloes around the vision. For further information on glaucoma see page 48.

Meningitis

Severe generalised headache associated with fever, an obviously ill patient, neck stiffness, a positive Kernig's sign (pain behind both knees when extended) and latterly a purpuric rash are classically associated with meningitis. However, meningitis is notoriously difficult to diagnose early and any child that has difficulty in placing their chin on their chest, has a headache and running a temperature above 38.9°C (102°F), should be referred urgently.

Subarachnoid haemorrhage

The patient will experience very intense and severe pain, located in the occipital region. Nausea and vomiting are often present and a decreased lack of consciousness is prominent. Patients often describe the headache as the worse headache they have ever had. It is extremely unlikely that a patient would present in the pharmacy with such symptoms but if one did then immediate referral is needed.

Conditions causing raised intracranial pressure

Space-occupying lesions (brain tumour, haematoma and abscess) can give rise to varied headache symptoms, ranging from severe chronic pain to intermittent moderate pain. Pain can be localised or diffuse and tends to be more severe in the morning with a gradual improvement over the next few hours. Coughing, sneezing, bending and lying down can worsen the pain. Nausea and vomiting are common. After a prolonged period of time neurological symptoms start to become evident, such as drowsiness, confusion, lack of concentration, difficulty with speech and paraesthesia.

Any patient with a recent history (lasting 2 to 3 months) of head trauma, headache of long-standing duration or insidious worsening of symptoms, especially associated with decreased consciousness and vomiting must be referred urgently for fuller evaluation.

Figure 4.2 (and summary table in Case Study 4.1) will help in the differentiation of serious and non-serious causes of headache.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Headache

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Headache in children under 12 who have a stiff neck or skin rash	Meningitis?
Headache occurs after recent (1 to 3 months) trauma injury	Haematoma?
Nausea and/or vomiting in the absence of migraine symptoms Neurological symptoms, if migraine excluded, especially change in consciousness New or severe headache in patients over 50 Progressive worsening of headache symptoms over time Very sudden and/or severe onset of headache	All can suggest sinister pathology and require further investigation
Headache unresponsive to analgesics	Simple analgesia is effective, therefore if they have not worked the patients' symptoms require further investigation
Headache that has lasted for more than 2 weeks	Most acute (or uncomplicated) cases will last less than 2 weeks. Further investigation required

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Simple analgesia (paracetamol, aspirin and ibuprofen) have shown clinical benefit in relieving migraine attacks. A recent Cochrane review (Derry et al 2010) found that a single oral dose of paracetamol 1000 mg was effective in relieving moderate to severe migraine symptoms, compared with placebo. Approximately 20% of patients will be pain free in 2 hours (reduced from moderate to severe) and approximately 60% of patients can expect a reduction in the severity of pain from moderate/severe to mild pain by 2 hours. (Note that addition of metoclopramide saw efficacy equivalent to 100 mg sumatriptan – such products are available OTC in other countries, e.g. Australia.)

For episodic tension-type, a systematic review by Verhagen et al (2006) investigated the comparative efficacy of simple analgesics. The authors concluded that all simple analgesics had similar efficacy (measured as >50% pain relief).

Combinations of simple analgesics with codeine are available (page 263); however, there is doubt whether the amount of codeine in these preparations is sufficient to provide any additional pain relief. Further, there is growing evidence of problems with the over-use of these products resulting from dependence on the codeine components (Frei et al 2010). In response to the ongoing concerns about the over-use of codeine-containing products, the MHRA, in 2009, issued new guidance to restrict codeine-containing products for the short term (3 days) treatment of acute, moderate pain which is not relieved by paracetamol, ibuprofen or aspirin alone.

In summary, simple analgesia should be tried as first-line options for the relief of pain in migraine and tension-type headache.

Additionally, four UK products are specifically marketed to aid relief from pain and/or nausea associated with migraine: Migraleve; Midrid; Buccastem; and Imigran Recovery. The evidence for these products is reviewed.

Migraleve

Migraleve is available as either Migraleve Pink tablets, which contain a paracetamol codeine combination (500/8) plus buclizine 6.25 mg or Migraleve Yellow tablets, which contain only the analgesic combination. A number of trials have investigated Migraleve Pink tablets against placebo, buclizine and ergotamine products in an attempt to establish clinical effectiveness.

A review of two trials in which Migraleve was compared against buclizine (Jorgensen 1974) and placebo (Scopa et al 1974) showed Migraleve was as effective as buclizine and superior to placebo in reducing severity of migraine attacks. However, patient numbers were small ($n = 21$ and 20 respectively) and statistical significance was not reported. Migraleve has also been compared to ergotamine-containing products; the standard drug at the time the trial was conducted. Results from a GP research group (Anon 1973) concluded that Migraleve was equally effective as Migril in treating migraine. However, results should be viewed with caution because the trial suffered from poor design, lacked randomisation, placebo or proper blinding. A further trial by Carasso and Yehuda (1984) also reported beneficial effects of Migraleve. The most recent trial (Adam 1987) was well designed, being double-blind, randomised and placebo controlled. The author concluded that, compared with placebo, Migraleve did reduce the severity of attacks significantly but not their total duration.

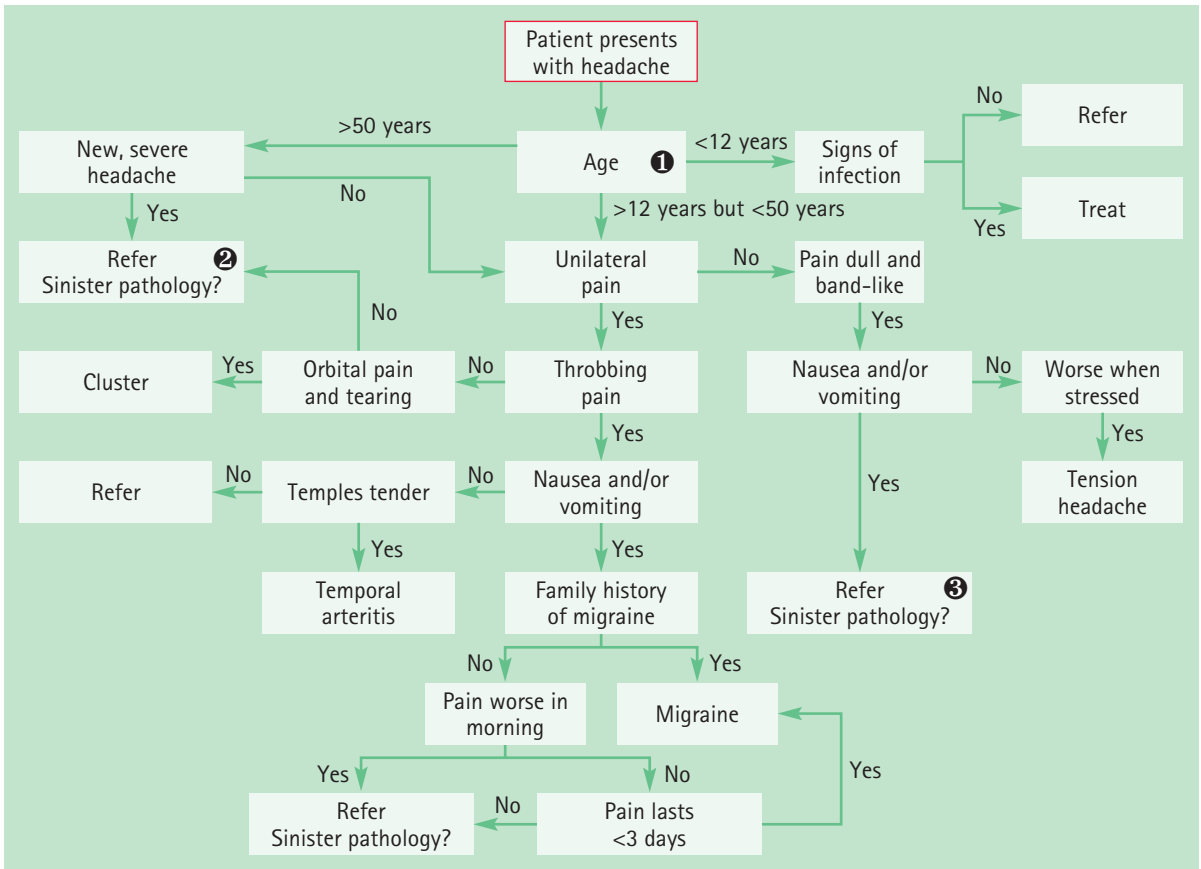


Fig. 4.2 Primer for differential diagnosis of headache.

❶ Age
Caution should be exercised in children who present with headache. Although the majority of headaches will not have an organic cause, children under 12 are probably best referred if they show no signs of a systemic infection (e.g. fever, malaise).

❷ Referral for suspected sinister pathology
With increasing age it is more likely that a sinister cause of headache is responsible for the symptoms, especially if the patient has not experienced similar headache symptoms before. Mass lesions (tumours and haematoma) and temporal arteritis should be considered.

❸ Referral for suspected sinister pathology
Nausea and vomiting in the absence of migraine-like symptoms should be treated seriously. Mass lesions and subarachnoid haemorrhage need to be eliminated.

Midrid

Midrid capsules contain isometheptene mucate 65 mg and paracetamol 325 mg. A number of trials have investigated the effect of Midrid on reducing the severity of migraine attacks. Trials date back to 1948, although it was not until the 1970s that soundly designed trials were performed. Two studies (Diamond 1975, 1976) using similar methodology investigated isometheptene versus placebo and paracetamol. Both were double blind, placebo controlled and had identical inclusion criteria. The 1975 trial concluded that isometheptene was superior in relieving headache severity compared to placebo, although the dose of isometheptene used was double that found in Midrid. The 1976 trial also concluded that isometheptene was significantly superior to placebo and appeared to be better than paracetamol alone, but this did not reach statistical significance. A further trial (Behan 1978) compared Midrid against placebo and ergotamine. Fifty patients who suffered four or more migraine attacks per month were recruited to the study. Diary cards were completed for six attacks in which patients rated relief from headache on a four-point rating scale. The author concluded that Midrid was as effective as ergotamine and that both were more

beneficial than placebo, although it is unclear whether this was statistically significant.

Summary

Limited trial data for both products suggests that they might be more effective than placebo. They could be recommended but it is not known which product is most efficacious. However, with the deregulation of sumatriptan in 2006 their place in therapy is now questionable.

Prochlorperazine (Buccastem M)

Prochlorperazine has been found to be a potent antiemetic in a number of conditions, including migraine. It works by blocking dopamine receptors found in the chemoreceptor trigger zone. It is administered via the buccal mucosa and therefore patients will need to be counselled on correct administration.

Sumatriptan (Imigran Recovery)

Sumatriptan was the first 'triptan' to be marketed in the UK and subsequently deregulated to OTC status. Triptans are $5HT_1$ agonists and stimulate $5HT1_B$ and $5HT1_D$ receptors. Triptans cause constriction of the cranial blood vessels, stop the release of inflammatory neurotransmitters at the trigeminal nerve synapses and reduce pain signal transmission. As a class of medicines they have been extensively researched. Most trials with sumatriptan (and other triptans) use end point data of 2-hour pain-free response, headache relief, and functional disability. In all end points sumatriptan 100 mg was significantly superior to placebo. At the lower 50 mg OTC dose evidence of efficacy is less strong than 100 mg but is still effective (McCrory & Gray 2011).

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to specific products used to treat migraine in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 4.5 and useful tips relating to patients presenting with migraine are given in Hints and Tips Box 4.1.

Migraleve

Migraleve is recommended for children aged 10 and over. The dose for adults and children over 14 is two Migraleve Pink tablets taken when the attack is imminent or begun. If further treatment is required, one or two Migraleve Yellow tablets can be taken every 4 h. The dose for children aged between 10 and 14 is half that of the adult dose. The maximum adult dose is eight tablets (two Migraleve Pink and six Migraleve Yellow) in 24 hours and for children aged between 10 and 14 years of age, the maximum dose is four tablets (one Migraleve Pink and three Migraleve Yellow) in 24 hours.

The buclizine component of Migraleve Pink tablets can cause drowsiness and antimuscarinic effects, whereas the codeine content might result in patients experiencing constipation. Buclizine and codeine can interact with POM and OTC medication, especially those that cause sedation. The combined effect is to potentiate sedation and it is important to warn the patient of this. It appears that Migraleve is safe in pregnancy but because of the codeine component, it is best avoided in the third trimester. It is also generally safe in breastfeeding, but drowsiness in the baby is possible – in such cases discontinue use.

Midrid

Midrid is licensed for use only in adults. The dose is two capsules at the start of an attack followed by one capsule every hour until relief is obtained. A maximum of five capsules can be taken in a 12-h period. It is a sympathomimetic agent, therefore, like decongestants, it interacts with MAOIs, which might lead to fatal hypertensive crisis, and it can affect diabetes and hypertension control (see page 17). Side effects reported with Midrid include transient rashes and other allergic reactions. Midrid is best avoided in both pregnancy and breastfeeding due to lack of data.

Buccastem M

Buccastem M is indicated for previously diagnosed migraine sufferers aged 18 years and over who experience nausea and vomiting. The dose is one or two tablets twice daily. Side effects include, drowsiness, dizziness, dry mouth, insomnia, agitation and mild skin reactions. Because it crosses the blood-brain barrier it will potentiate the effect of other CNS depressants and interact with alcohol. Prochlorperazine has been safely used in pregnancy, although the manufacturer advises avoidance unless absolutely necessary. Minimal prochlorperazine passes into the breast milk and could be used.

Imigran Recovery

Patients over the age of 18, but younger than 65, should take a single tablet (50 mg) as soon as possible after the onset of the headache. If the headache clears and then recurs a second tablet can be taken, provided there was a response to the first tablet and more than 2 hours have elapsed between the first and second tablet. No more than 100 mg can be taken during any 24 hour period. If there is no response to the first tablet, a second tablet should not be taken for the same attack. Sumatriptan is associated with a well-recognised side-effect profile with

Table 4.5
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for migraine

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Migraleve	>10 years	Dry mouth, sedation and constipation	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Pregnancy – Avoid in 3rd trimester Breastfeeding – OK but infant drowsiness reported
Midrid	>12 years	Dizziness, rash	Avoid concomitant use with MAOIs and moclobemide due to risk of hypertensive crisis. Avoid in patients taking beta-blockers and TCAs	Control of hypertension and diabetes may be affected, but a short treatment course is unlikely to be clinically important	Avoid
Buccastem M	>18 years	Drowsiness	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Patients with Parkinson's disease, epilepsy and glaucoma	Manufacturers advise avoidance but it has been used safely in both pregnancy and breastfeeding
Imigran Recovery	>18 years	Dizziness, drowsiness, tingling feeling warm, flushed or weak and sensation of heaviness in any part of the body, pressure in the throat, neck, chest and arms or legs, shortness of breath	MAOIs, ergotamine	Avoid in people with a previous MI, IHD, TIA, peripheral vascular disease, cardiac arrhythmias, hypertension; history of seizures; Hepatic and renal impairment; Atypical migraines	Avoid, but data does suggest it can be used safely. Only use if absolutely necessary.

MAOI, monoamine oxidase inhibitor; MI, myocardial infarction; TCA, tricyclic antidepressant.

the commonest adverse events (classified as occurring in 1 to 10% of patients) being dizziness, drowsiness, tingling, feeling warm, flushed or weak, sensation of heaviness in any part of the body, shortness of breath, and pressure in the throat, neck, chest and arms or legs. Triptans are associated with rare cases of cardiac disorders and therefore to allow wider availability via OTC sales the warnings associated with prescription use have become contraindications. Therefore those patients ineligible for OTC use are:

- A previous myocardial infraction, ischaemic heart disease, peripheral vascular disease, cardiac arrhythmias and history of transient ischaemic attack and stroke
- known hypertension
- history of seizures
- hepatic and renal impairment
- atypical migraines
- concomitant administration of MAOIs and ergotamine, or other 5-HT_1 receptor agonists.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 4.1: MIGRAINE

Analgesia	Recommend a soluble or orodispersible formulation to maximise absorption before it is inhibited by gastric stasis
Administration of buccal tablets	1. Place the tablet either between the upper lip and gum above the front teeth or between the cheek and upper gum 2. Allow the tablet to dissolve slowly. The tablet will soften and form a gel-like substance after 1 to 2 hours 3. The tablet will take between 3 to 5 hours to completely dissolve. If food or drinks are to be consumed in this time, place the tablet between the upper lip and gum, above the front teeth 4. The tablets should not be chewed, crushed, or swallowed 5. Touching the tablet with the tongue, or drinking fluids can cause the tablet to dissolve faster

To facilitate pharmacists in the appropriate supply of sumatriptan the manufacturer has produced a migraine questionnaire http://www.imigranrecovery.co.uk/migraine_questionnaire.html. This should prove useful as sumatriptan supply is associated with various product license restrictions, which might be difficult to remember.

The manufacturer advocates avoidance in pregnancy and breastfeeding; however, data in the Summary of Products Characteristics states it has been used safely in the first trimester of pregnancy and breastfeeding can be continued providing 12 hours after elapsed since taking the dose.

References

Adam EI. A treatment for the acute migraine attack. J Int Med Res 1987;15:71–5.

Anon. Reports from the general practitioner clinical research group. Migraine treated with an antihistamine-analgesic combination. The Practitioner 1973;211:357–61.

Behan PO. Isometheptene compound in the treatment of vascular headache. The Practitioner 1978;221:937–9.

Carasso RL, Yehuda S. The prevention and treatment of migraine with an analgesic combination. Br J Clin Pract 1984;38:25–7.

Derry S,Moore RA,McQuay HJ. Paracetamol (acetaminophen) with or without an antiemetic for acute migraine headaches in adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 11. Art. No.: CD008040. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008040.pub2.

Diamond S, Medina JL. Isometheptene – A non-ergot drug in the treatment of migraine. Headache 1975;15:211–13.

Diamond S. Treatment of migraine with isometheptene, acetaminophen, and dichloralphenazone combination: A double-blind, crossover trial. Headache 1976;16:282–7.

Frei MY, Nielsen S, Dobbin MD, et al. Serious morbidity associated with misuse of over-the-counter codeine-ibuprofen analgesics: a series of 27 cases. Med J Aust 2010;193(5):294.

McCrory DC, Gray RN. Oral sumatriptan for acute migraine. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2003, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD002915. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002915.

Scopa J, Jorgensen PB, Foster JB. Migraleve in the prophylaxis of migraine. Curr Ther Res Clin Exp 1974;16(12):1270–5.

Verhagen AP, Damen L, Berger MY, et al. Is any one analgesic superior for episodic tension-type headache? J Fam Pract 2006:55;1064–72.

Further reading

Coutin IB, Glass SF. Recognizing uncommon headache syndromes. Am Fam Physician 1996;54:2247–52.

Ferrari MD, Goadsby PJ, Roon KI, et al. Triptans (serotonin, 5-HT1B/1D agonists) in migraine: detailed results and methods of a meta-analysis of 53 trials. Cephalalgia 2002;22:633–58.

Goadsby PJ. Recent advances in the diagnosis and management of migraine. Br Med J 2006;332:25–9.

Kennedy J. Self-care of frequent headache. SelfCare 2010;1(4):145–8

Merrington DM. Comments on Migraleve trial reports. Curr Ther Res Clin Exp 1975;18:222–5.

Web sites

The migraine Trust: http://migrainetrust.org
Migraine Action Association: http://www.migraine.org.uk/
International Headache Society: http://www.i-h-s.org/
Migraine in primary care advisors (MIPCA): www.mipca.org.uk
British Association for the Study of Headache: www.bash.org.uk
Organisation for the understanding of cluster headaches (OUCH-UK): http://www.ouchuk.org
National Headache Foundation: http://www.headaches.org/

Insomnia

Background

The length of sleep people need varies but typically people aged between 20 and 45 require 7 to 8 hours per day,

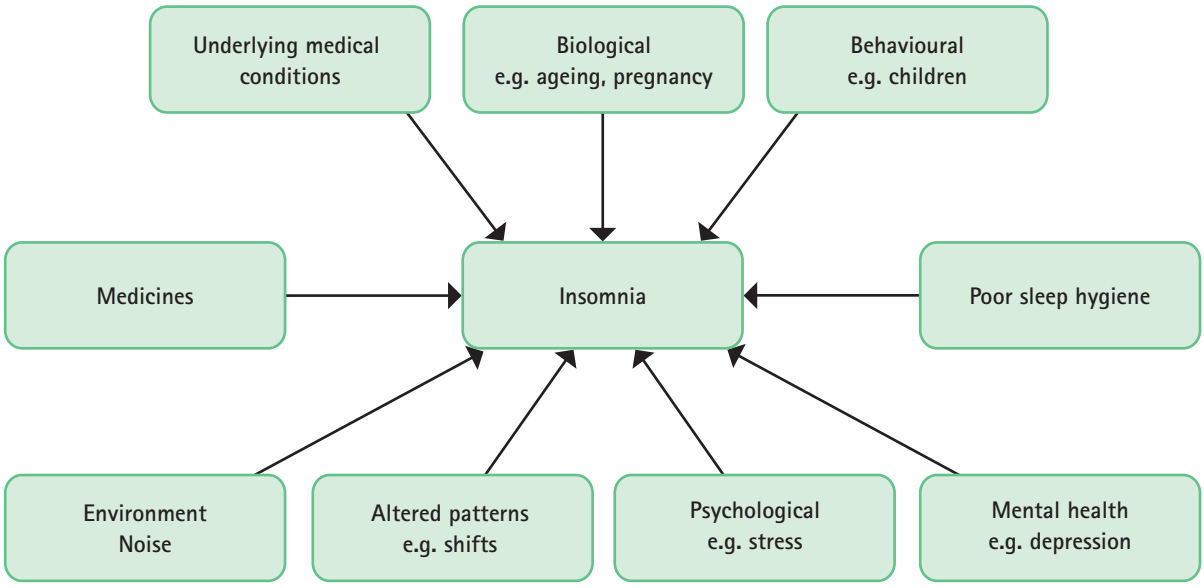


Fig. 4.3 Causes of insomnia.

although 10% of people can function on less than 5 hours per night. Sleep requirements also decrease with increasing age and people over 70 commonly have 6 hours sleep per day. Insomnia is classified by its duration; transient (a few days), short-term (up to 3 weeks) or chronic (greater than 3 weeks).

It is likely that everyone at some point will experience insomnia as it can arise from many different causes (Fig. 4.3) but for most people the problem will be of nuisance value, affecting next day alertness. The pharmacist can manage most patients with transient or short-term insomnia, however cases of chronic insomnia are best referred to the GP, as there is usually an underlying cause.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Approximately 20 to 40% of adults report occasional sleep difficulty and half of them consider it to be significant. It is twice as common in women than men. It is reported that only 5 to 10% of patients go on to develop chronic insomnia, although chronic insomnia is more common in the elderly, affecting approximately 20% of people over 65 years of age.

Aetiology

Sleep is essential to allow the body to repair and restore brain and body tissues. The mechanisms controlling sleep are complex and not yet fully understood but reflect disturbances of arousal and/or sleep promoting systems in the brain. Their relative activities determine the degree of alertness during wakefulness and depth and quality of sleep. Therefore insomnia may be caused by any factor, which increases activity in arousal systems or decreases activity in sleep systems.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The key to arriving at a differential diagnosis is to take a detailed sleep history. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 4.6). Two key features of insomnia need to be determined: the type of insomnia and how it affects the person. Transient insomnia is often caused by a change of routine, for example, time zone changes or a change to shift patterns, excessive noise, sleeping in a new environment (e.g. hotel) or extremes of temperature. Short-term insomnia is usually related to acute stress such as sitting exams, bereavement, loss of job, forthcoming marriage or house move. Asking the patient to tell you what they are thinking about before they fall asleep and when they awake will give you a clue to the cause of the insomnia. Often it can be difficult to determine the cause of insomnia and getting the patient to keep a sleep diary (retiring and waking times, time taken to fall asleep etc) is sometimes beneficial as it allows an objective measure of the persons habits compared to their subjective perceptions.

Clinical features of insomnia

Insomnia is a subjective complaint of poor sleep in terms of its quality and duration. Patients will complain of difficulty in falling asleep, staying asleep or lack refreshment by sleep. Sometimes patients will experience daytime

Table 4.6
Specific questions to ask the patient: Insomnia

Question	Relevance
Pattern of sleep	An emotional disturbance (predominantly anxiety) is commonly associated in patients who find it difficult to fall asleep; patients who fall asleep but wake early and cannot fall asleep again, or who are then restless, is sometimes associated with depression
Daily routine	Has there been any change to the work routine – changes to shift patterns, additional workload resulting in longer working hours and greater daytime fatigue Too much exercise or intellectual arousal prior to going to bed can make sleep more difficult
Underlying medical conditions	Medical conditions likely to cause insomnia are GORD, pregnancy, pruritic skin conditions, asthma, Parkinson's disease, painful conditions (osteoarthritis), hyperthyroidism (night sweats), menopausal symptoms (hot flushes) and depression.
Recent travel	Time zone changes will affect the person's normal sleep pattern and it can take a number of days to re-establish normality
Daytime sleeping	Elderly people might 'nap' through the day, which results in less sleep needed in the evening, making patients believe they have insomnia

fatigue but not generally sleepiness. This tiredness can lead to poor performance at work.

Conditions to eliminate

Insomnia in children

Bedwetting is the most common sleep arousal disorder in children. If this is not the cause, then insomnia invariably stems from a behavioural problem such as fear of the dark, insecurity or nightmares. Children should not be given sleep aids but referred to their GP for further evaluation, as the underlying cause needs to be addressed.

Medicine-induced insomnia

Medication can cause all three types of insomnia (Table 4.7). The stimulant effects of caffeine (contained in chocolate, tea, coffee and cola drinks) should not be underestimated. Drinking four or more cups of coffee can cause insomnia in the average healthy adult. It is therefore advisable to instruct patients to avoid caffeine containing products 6 hours before bedtime. Abruptly stopping some medications can also lead to insomnia. This is particularly seen with the long-term use of sedative drugs such as benzodiazepines and tricyclic antidepressants.

Underlying medical conditions

Many medical conditions may precipitate insomnia (Table 4.6). It is therefore necessary to establish a medical history from the patient. A key role for the pharmacist in these situations is to ensure that the underlying condition is being treated optimally and check that the medication regime is appropriate. If improvements to prescribing could be made then the prescriber should be contacted to discuss possible changes to the patient's medication.

Table 4.7
Medication that may cause insomnia

Stimulants	Caffeine, theophylline, sympathomimetics amines (e.g. pseudoephedrine), MAOIs – especially in early treatment
Antiepileptics	Carbamazepine, phenytoin
Alcohol	Low to moderate amounts can promote sleep but when taken in excess or over a long period it can disturb sleep
Beta-blockers	Can cause nightmares, especially propranolol. Limit by swapping to a beta-blocker that does not readily cross the blood–brain barrier
SSRIs	Especially fluoxetine
Diuretics	Ensure doses not taken after midday to stop the need to urinate at night
Griseofulvin	

Depression

It is well known that between one-third and two-thirds of patients suffering from chronic insomnia will have a recognisable psychiatric illness; most commonly depression. Many of these patients do not seek medical help and

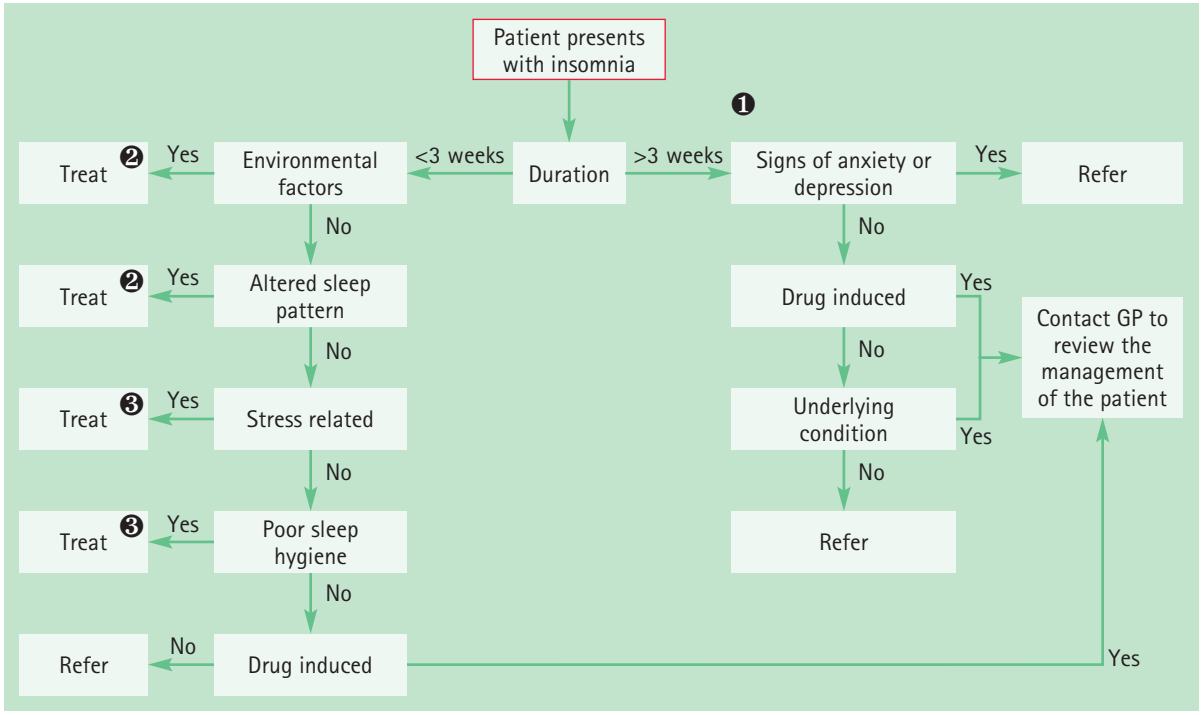


Fig. 4.4 Primer for differential diagnosis of insomnia.

❶ No cases of insomnia lasting longer than 3 weeks should be treated with OTC medication. If a previously undiagnosed medical condition is suspected, most often anxiety or depression or if insomnia has been possibly caused by the patient's pre-existing condition/medicines, then the GP should be consulted and treatment options discussed/suggested.

❷ Patients should not take antihistamines for more than 7 to 10 continuous days as tolerance to their effect can develop.

❸ In the first instance, strategies to manage the patient's insomnia should be suggested rather than issuing medication.

will self-medicate. The patient will complain of having difficulty in staying asleep and suffer from early morning waking. The pharmacist should look for other symptoms of depression such as fatigue, loss of interest and appetite, feelings of guilt, low self-esteem, difficulty in concentrating and constipation. NICE (CG90, October 2009) recommends using the DSM-IV criteria for diagnosing and assessing the severity of depression and could be applied to those patients the pharmacists suspects might have depression.

Figure 4.4 will help in the differential diagnosis of the different types of insomnia.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Insomnia

Children under 12
Duration of more than 3 weeks
Insomnia for which no cause can be ascertained
Previously undiagnosed medical conditions
Symptoms suggestive of anxiety or depression

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Many cases of transient and short-term insomnia should be managed initially by non-pharmacological measures. If these fail to rectify the problem then short-term use of sedating antihistamines may be tried.

Sleep hygiene

Once a diagnosis of insomnia has been reached, underlying causes ruled out and any misconceptions about normal sleep addressed then educating patients about behaviour and practice which affects sleep should be tackled (Table 4.8).

Medication

The sedating antihistamines diphenhydramine (DPH) and promethazine are the mainstay of OTC pharmacological treatment.

Table 4.8
Key steps to good sleep hygiene

Maintain a routine, with a regular bedtime and wakening time
Food snacks, alcoholic and caffeine containing drinks should be avoided
Avoid sleeping in very warm rooms
Avoid stimulants and alcohol
Take daytime and not evening exercise
No daytime naps
No sleeping in to catch up on sleep
No strenuous mental activity at bed time (e.g. doing a crossword in bed)
Solve problems before retiring
Associate bed with sleep – try not to watch TV or listen to music
If unable to get to sleep, get up and do something and return to bed when sleepy

Diphenhydramine

A substantial body of evidence exists to support the clinical effectiveness of DPH as a sleep aid. At doses of 50 mg DPH has been shown to be consistently superior to placebo in inducing sleep, and as effective as 60 mg of sodium pentobarbital. Doses higher than 50 mg DPH do not produce statistically superior clinical effect and night-time doses should therefore not exceed this amount. It appears to be most effective at shortening sleep-onset time.

Promethazine

Promethazine is widely accepted to cause sedation when used for its licensed indications, however, only one trial that investigated its use as a hypnotic could be found. The study by Adam and Oswald (1986) recruited 12 healthy volunteers who took placebo or promethazine 20 or 40 mg in a blinded fashion. The authors concluded that both doses of promethazine increased the length of sleep and sleep disturbances were reduced when compared to placebo. However, it was not clear if this reached statistical significance.

Summary

Of the two sedating antihistamines, DPH has by far the stronger evidence base to substantiate its use as a hypnotic. It therefore seems prudent to use this as the treatment of choice. However, antihistamines are less effective than GABA-A receptor acting hypnotics (e.g. the 'z' drugs available on prescription).

Complementary therapies

These products are used by a substantial number of patients as a self-care measure (Byrne 2006; Pearson et al, 2006). Herbal remedies containing hops, German chamomile, skullcap, wild lettuce, lavender, passiflora and valerian are available. However, there is little evidence to support their use. The majority of information available in the literature relates to hypothesised action of chemical constituents or studies in animals. Valerian appears to be the only product in which more than one trial has been conducted on humans. One systematic review (Stevinson & Ernst, 2000) found some evidence of efficacy in long-term studies (14–28 nights of therapy) but inconclusive evidence in the short-term (1–4 nights' therapy). In addition, the trials were often of short duration, used volunteers or patients with different criteria, and were usually methodologically poor. A number of branded products, containing combinations of herbal ingredients, are available OTC (e.g. Kalms range, Nytol herbal tablets, Potters Nodoff, Niteherb).

Melatonin

Melatonin is advocated for sleep disturbance, particularly associated with jet lag. A Cochrane review (Herxheimer et al 2002) found melatonin to be effective in reducing jet lag. The timing of the dose is critical. It has to be taken at bedtime after darkness has fallen on the first day of travel then again in the same way on the second, and any subsequent day, of travel. Once at the final destination it should be taken for the following few days at the same time.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for insomnia in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 4.9 and useful tips relating to patients presenting with insomnia are given in Hints and Tips Box 4.2.

Antihistamines that are used for insomnia are first-generation antihistamines and interact with other sedating medication, resulting in potentiation of sedation. Additionally, they possess antimuscarinic side effects, which commonly lead to dry mouth and possibly to constipation. It is these antimuscarinic properties that mean patients with glaucoma, and prostate enlargement should ideally avoid their use as it could lead to increased intraocular pressure and precipitation of urinary retention.

Diphenhydramine (e.g. Nytol, Nightcalm)

Diphenhydramine is licensed only for adults and children over 16 years of age. The dose is 50 mg (either two tablets

Table 4.9
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for insomnia

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Diphenhydramine Promethazine	>16 years	Dry mouth, sedation, and grogginess next day	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Some Manufacturers advise avoidance In breastfeeding occasional use OK but discontinue if baby becomes drowsy

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 4.2: INSOMNIA

Antihistamines	Tolerance can develop with continuous use
Patients who self-treat for depression	St John's wort (hypericum) is used by many patients to treat depression. There is a growing body of evidence that it is more effective than placebo for mild depression and is comparable in effect to tricyclic antidepressants. However, pharmacists should not recommend it routinely. If depression is suspected then the patient should be referred for further assessment. St. John's wort also interacts with other medicines including, warfarin, SSRIs, antiepileptics, digoxin, ciclosporin, theophylline and contraceptives

[Nytol] or one tablet [Nytol one-a-night]) and should be taken 20 min before going to bed.

Promethazine

Proprietary brands of promethazine on sale to the public include Sominex (20 mg) and Phenergan (10 or 25 mg). Adults and children over 16 years of age should take one tablet an hour before bedtime.

References

Adam K, Oswald I. The hypnotic effects of an antihistamine: promethazine. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1986;22:715–17.

Byrne J. Insomnia in older people: current approaches to treatment. The Prescriber 2006;17:54–6.

Herxheimer A, Petrie KJ. Melatonin for the prevention and treatment of jet lag. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2002, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD001520. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001520.

Pearson NJ, Johnson LL, Nahin RL. Insomnia, trouble sleeping, and complementary and alternative medicine: Analysis of the 2002 national health interview survey data. Arch Intern Med 2006;166(16): 1775–82.

Stevinson C, Ernst E. Valerian for insomnia: a systematic review of randomized clinical trials. Sleep Med 2000;1:91–9.

Further reading

Buscemi N, Vandermeer B, Hooton N, et al. The efficacy and safety of exogenous melatonin for primary sleep disorders: A meta-analysis. J Gen Intern Med 2005;20:1151–8.

Gillin JC, Byerley WF. The diagnosis and management of insomnia. N Engl J Med 1990;322:239–48.

Mellinger GD, Balter MB, Uhlenhuth EH. Insomnia and its treatment. Prevalence and correlates. Arch Gen Psychiatry 1985;42:225–32.

NICE Guidance. Depression in adults. Available at: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG90 (accessed 13 December 2011).

Rickels K, Morris RJ, Newman H, et al. Diphenhydramine in insomniac family practice patients: a double-blind study. J Clin Pharmacol 1983;23:234–42.

Sproule BA, Busto UE, Buckle C, et al. The use of non-prescription sleep products in the elderly. Int Geriatr Psychiatry 1999;10:851–7.

Web sites

National Sleep Foundation: http://www.sleepfoundation.org/

Nausea and vomiting

Background

Nausea is an unpleasant sensation, which may be a precursor to the forceful expulsion of gastric contents (vomiting).

Table 4.10
Specific questions to ask the patient: Nausea and vomiting

Question	Relevance
Presence of abdominal pain	Certain abdominal conditions, e.g. appendicitis, cholecystitis and cholelithiasis, can also cause nausea and vomiting. However, for all three conditions abdominal pain would be the presenting symptom and not nausea and vomiting. The severity of the pain alone would trigger referral
Timing of nausea and vomiting	Early morning vomiting is often associated with pregnancy and excess alcohol intake If vomiting occurs immediately after food this suggests gastritis and if vomiting begins after 1 or more hours after eating food then peptic ulcers are possible
Signs of infection	Acute cases of gastroenteritis will normally have other associated symptoms such as diarrhoea, fever and abdominal discomfort If infection is due to food contamination then other people are often affected at the same time

They are common symptoms of many disorders, especially gastrointestinal conditions. However, infection, acute alcohol ingestion, anxiety, severe pain, labyrinth and cardiovascular causes can also produce nausea and vomiting.

Deregulation of domperidone and prochlorperazine has meant that community pharmacists can now more effectively manage nausea and vomiting. Until their deregulation, treatment choices were limited to anticholinergics and first-generation antihistamines, used as prophylactic agents for the prevention of motion sickness (see page 313).

Prevalence and epidemiology

Nausea and vomiting are symptoms of other conditions and therefore their prevalence and epidemiology within the population are determined by that condition. Needless to say nausea and vomiting is common and most people at some point in time will experience these symptoms.

Aetiology

Nausea occurs because activity in the vomiting centre (located in the medulla oblongata) increases. Information received from the receptor cells in the walls of the gastrointestinal tract and parts of the nervous system reach a 'threshold value' that induces the vomiting reflex. Additionally, further input is received at the vomiting centre from an area known as the chemoreceptor trigger zone. This is highly sensitive to certain circulating chemicals, for example substances released by damaged tissues as a result of bacterial infection.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Nausea and/or vomiting rarely occur in isolation. Other symptoms are usually present and should therefore allow a differential diagnosis to be made. Most cases will have a gastrointestinal origin, with gastroenteritis being the commonest acute cause in all age groups. However, questioning the patient about associated symptoms should be made as other causes of nausea and vomiting need to be eliminated (Table 4.10).

Clinical features associated with gastroenteritis

Gastroenteritis is characterised by acute onset, vomiting and/or diarrhoea and systemic illness (e.g. fever). Most cases, regardless of infecting pathogen, resolve in a few days and rarely last more than 10 days. In children under 5 years old over 60% of cases are viral in origin with the rotavirus and small round structured virus most commonly identified. Vomiting usually precedes diarrhoea by several hours. Bacterial gastroenteritis presents with similar symptoms although fever is usually a more prominent feature.

Conditions to eliminate

Gastritis

Gastritis is often alcohol or medicine induced and can present as acute or chronic nausea and vomiting. Epigastric pain is usually present. For further information on gastritis see page 146.

Nausea and vomiting associated with headaches

Vomiting, and especially nausea, are common symptoms in patients who suffer from migraines. However, other causes of headache such as raised intracranial pressure can also cause nausea and vomiting. For further information on nausea and vomiting associated with headaches see page 82.

Nausea and vomiting in neonates (up to 1 month old)

Vomiting in neonates should always be referred because it suggests some form of congenital disorder, for example Hirschsprung's disease.

Nausea and vomiting in infants (1 month to 1 year old)

In the first year of life the most common causes of nausea and vomiting are feeding problems, gastrointestinal and urinary tract infection. Vomiting in infants needs to be differentiated from regurgitation. Regurgitation is an effortless back flow of small amounts of liquid and food between meals or at feed times; vomiting is the forceful expulsion of gastric contents. The infant will usually have a fever and be generally unwell if vomiting is associated with infection. If projectile vomiting occurs in an infant under 3 months of age then pyloric stenosis should be considered. Due to the higher risk of dehydration in this age group it is prudent to refer to a doctor if symptoms persist for more than 24 hours.

Nausea and vomiting in children (1 year to 12 years old)

Children under 12 who experience nausea and vomiting will usually have gastroenteritis, fever or otitis media. In most instances the conditions are self-limiting and medication designed to reduce pain and temperature (analgesia), and replace fluid (oral rehydration therapy) will help resolve symptoms.

Pregnancy

Pregnancy should always be considered in women of childbearing age if nausea and vomiting occur in the absence of other symptoms. Sickness tends to be worse in the first trimester and in the early morning.

Excess alcohol consumption

The patient should always be asked about recent alcohol intake, as excess quantities are associated with nausea and early morning vomiting.

Medicine-induced nausea and vomiting

Many medications can cause nausea and vomiting. Frequently implicated medicines are cytotoxics, opiates, iron, antibiotics, NSAIDs, potassium supplements, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), nicotine gum (ingestion of nicotine rather than buccal absorption), theophylline and digoxin toxicity. If medication is suspected then the pharmacist should contact the prescriber to discuss alternative treatment options.

Middle ear diseases

Any middle ear disturbance or imbalance may produce nausea and vomiting. Tinnitus, dizziness and vertigo are suggestive of Ménière's disease.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Nausea and vomiting

Children who fail to respond to OTC treatment
Moderate to severe abdominal pain
Suspected pregnancy
Unexplained nausea and vomiting in any age group
Vomiting in children under 1 year old lasting longer than 24 hours

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Currently, there are only two medicines available OTC that have licensed indications for the treatment of nausea and vomiting. For information on fluid replacement by oral rehydration solutions see page 159.

Domperidone

Domperidone is licensed for pharmacy sale to treat nausea and vomiting of less than 48 hours duration and for the relief of post-prandial symptoms that include nausea. A number of small studies have suggested that domperidone is more effective than placebo. The studies were of variable design, with differing inclusion criteria and methodology making judgement on its effectiveness difficult to determine.

Prochlorperazine

Prochlorperazine is licensed for the relief of nausea and vomiting associated with migraine. It has potent antiemetic properties in a number of conditions including migraine.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for nausea and vomiting in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 4.11.

Domperidone (Motilium 10, Motilium Instants)

Motilium 10 is only licensed for use in adults and children aged over 16 years. The dose is one tablet four times a day, preferably after meals. Its safety in pregnant women

Table 4.11
Practical prescribing: summary of medicines for nausea and vomiting

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Domperidone	>16 years	None	None	None	Insufficient evidence in pregnancy – avoid Breastfeeding OK. May increase breast milk supply as it increases prolactin levels
Prochlorperazine	>18 years	Drowsiness	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Patients with Parkinson's disease, epilepsy and glaucoma	Manufacturers advise avoidance but it has been used safely in both pregnancy and breastfeeding

has not been established, although there appear to be no reports of domperidone being teratogenic. Side effects are rare but galactorrhoea, and less frequently gynaecomastia, breast enlargement or soreness, reduced libido, dystonia and rash have been reported.

Domperidone does not appear to have any important clinical drug interactions; however, as it is a dopamine antagonist it could theoretically alter the peripheral actions of dopamine agonists such as bromocriptine.

Prochlorperazine (Buccastem M)

For dosing and counselling on Buccastem M please refer to page 87.

Further reading

Bekhti A, Rutgeerts L. Domperidone in the treatment of functional dyspepsia in patients with delayed gastric emptying. Postgrad Med J 1979;55:S30–32.

Dollery C. Therapeutic drugs, 2nd edition. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 1999.

Haarmann K, Lebkuchner F, Widmann A, et al. A double-blind study of domperidone in the symptomatic treatment of chronic post prandial upper gastrointestinal distress. Postgrad Med J 1979;55:S24–27.

Sarin SK, Sharma P, Chawla YK, et al. Clinical trial on the effect of domperidone on non-ulcer dyspepsia. Indian J Med Res 1986;83:623–8.

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

4.1 The most common cause of nausea and vomiting is:

- **a.** Migraine
- **b.** Gastroenteritis
- **c.** Gastritis
- **d.** Medicine induced
- **e.** Excess alcohol consumption

4.2 Which product can increase breast milk production?

- **a.** Prochlorperazine
- **b.** Midrid
- **c.** Domperidone
- **d.** Migraleve
- **e.** Sumatriptan

4.3 Cluster headache could be best described as:

- **a.** Bilateral piercing pain that lasts for a matter of only minutes
- **b.** Unilateral piercing pain that lasts for a matter of only minutes
- **c.** Unilateral orbital piercing pain with associated unilateral nasal congestion
- **d.** Bilateral orbital piercing pain with associated nasal congestion
- **e.** Bilateral orbital piercing pain only

4.4 Nausea and vomiting is associated with:

- **a.** Tension headache
- **b.** Trigeminal neuralgia
- **c.** Cluster headache
- **d.** Subarachnoid haemorrhage
- **e.** Sinusitis

4.5 What herbal remedy is used to help treat insomnia?

- **a.** Golden Rod
- **b.** Tolu Balsam
- **c.** Burdock
- **d.** Mugwort
- **e.** Passion Flower

4.6 Which trigger sign or symptom warrants referral?

- **a.** Headache lasting 7 to 10 days
- **b.** Headache described as vice-like
- **c.** Headache associated with the workplace environment
- **d.** Headache in children under 12 with no sign of infection
- **e.** Headache associated with fever

4.7 The amount of sleep needed with increasing age:

- **a.** Increases
- **b.** Decreases
- **c.** Stays the same

4.8 Which of these statements is true when giving advice on sleep hygiene?

- **a.** Drinking coffee and tea is OK before bedtime
- **b.** Try to vary the time when you go to bed
- **c.** Sleep in a warm room
- **d.** Try not to nap through the day
- **e.** Take light exercise before going to bed

Questions 4.9 to 4.11 concern the following anatomical locations of the brain:

- **A.** Orbital
- **B.** Temporal
- **C.** Occipital
- **D.** Generalised
- **E.** Unilateral and frontal

Select, from A to E, which of the above locations:

4.9 Is associated with cluster headache

4.10 Is associated with subarachnoid haemorrhage

4.11 Is associated with tension-type headache

Questions 4.12 to 4.14 concern the following medicines:

A. Motilium 10
B. Midrid
C. Maxolon
D. Marvelon
E. Migraleve

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

4.12 Should be avoided by patients taking paracetamol

4.13 Is licensed for nausea associated with migraine

4.14 Has been linked to causing migraine

Questions 4.15 to 4.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

4.15 Tension headache can be described as:

a. Dull ache, not normally throbbing
b. Worsens as day progresses
c. Unilateral

4.16 Symptoms of the aura associated with migraine include:

a. Scotomas
b. Flashing lights
c. Pins and needles

4.17 Which statements relating to headache are true:

a. Common migraine is more common in women than men
b. Cluster headache is more common in women than men
c. Temporal arteritis affects mainly middle-aged men

Questions 4.18 to 4.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
4.18	Common migraine is more common in women than men	Trigger factors may precipitate attacks
4.19	Insomnia can be caused by depression	Patients should be advised to try St. John's wort
4.20	Headache in VDU operators is common	Throbbing headache is caused by flickering of VDU screens

Case study

CASE STUDY 4.1

Mr AM, a male (early 30s) patient presents in the pharmacy at lunchtime complaining of headaches. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint What symptoms/ describe the symptoms	General aching feeling all over the head
How long had the symptoms	Had for the last week
Other symptoms	No problems with lights, etc. No sickness. No recent trauma
Where exactly	As above
Anytime worse/better	Seems to get worse as day goes on
Severity of pain (1–10)	4
Frequency of pain	Most of the time
Eye test; recent trauma	Eyes OK, no need for glasses; No
Previous history of presenting complaint	None
Past medical history	None
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	None
Allergies	Penicillin
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Non-smoker, drinks red wine (a couple of glasses each night). Works in marketing. Married with 2 young children. Job OK but busy with new promotion
Family history	Not known
On examination	Not applicable

Epidemiology dictates that tension-type headache is the most likely cause in primary care (see Table 4.1).

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

CASE STUDY 4.1 (Continued)

	Duration	Timing & nature	Location	Severity (pain score from 0–10)*	Precipitating factors	Who affected
Tension-type headache	Can last days	Symptoms worsen as day progresses. Non-throbbing pain	Bilateral & most often at back of head	2–5	Stress due to changes in work or home environment	All age groups and both sexes equally affected
Migraine	Average attack lasts 24 hours	Associated with menstrual cycle and weekends. Throbbing pain & nausea. Dislike of bright lights and loud noise	Usually unilateral	4–7	Food (in 10% of sufferers) & family history	3 times more common in women. Rare in children.
Cluster headache	1–3 hours	Attacks occur at same time of day. Intense boring pain	Unilateral	>7	Alcohol	3 to 5 times more common in men
Sinusitis	Days	Dull ache that starts off being unilateral	Frontal	2–6	Valsava movements	Adults
Eye strain	Days	Aching	Frontal	2–5	Close vision work	All ages
Temporal arteritis	Hours to days	Variable	Unilateral around temples	3–6	None	Elderly
Trigeminal neuralgia	Minutes	Lancing pain at any time	Face	>7	None	Adults
Depression	Days to months	Non-throbbing pain	Generalised	2–5	Social factors	Adults
Glaucoma	Hours	Often in the evening and sudden onset	Unilateral and orbital	>7	Darkness	Older adults
Meningitis	Hours to days	Associated with systemic infection	Generalised	>7	None	Children
Subarachnoid haemorrhage	Minutes to hours	Variable	Occipital	>7	None	Adults
Raised intracranial pressure	Days to months	Worse in the mornings	Variable	>4/5	None	Older adults

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that his symptoms most closely match tension-type headache, which may (or may not) be triggered by extra pressure at work. Depression is also a possibility, although less likely. It might be worth checking symptoms relating to the DSM-IV classification to eliminate depression.

CASE STUDY 4.1 (Continued)

	Duration	Timing & nature	Location	Severity (pain score from 0–10)	Precipitating factors	Who affected
Tension	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Migraine	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗	✓?
Cluster	✗	✗	✗	✗	?	✓
Sinusitis	✓	✓?	✗	✓	✗	✓
Eye strain	✓	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓
Temporal arteritis	✓	✓?	✗	✓	n/a	✗
Trigeminal neuralgia	✗	✗	✗	✗	n/a	✓
Depression	✓	✓?	✓	✓	✓?	✓
Glaucoma	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
Meningitis	✗	✗	✓	✗	n/a	✗
Subarachnoid haemorrhage	✗	✗	✗	✗	n/a	✓
Raised intracranial pressure	✓	✗	✓	✓	n/a	✗

Danger symptoms/signs (trigger points for referral)

As a final double check it might be worth making sure the person has none of the 'referral signs or symptoms'; this is the case with this patient.

Headache unresponsive to analgesics	Not yet tried
Headache in children under 12 with no signs of systemic infection or who have a stiff neck or skin rash	✗
Headache occurs after recent (1 to 3 months) trauma injury	✗
Headache that has lasted for more than 2 weeks	✗
Nausea and/or vomiting in the absence of migraine symptoms	✗
Neurological symptoms, if migraine excluded, especially change in consciousness	✗
New or severe headache in patients over 50	✗
Progressive worsening of headache symptoms over time	✗
Very sudden and/or severe onset of headache	✗

CASE STUDY 4.2

Mrs PC, a 36-year-old woman, asks you for something to treat her headache. On questioning you find out the following:

- *She has had the headache for about 5 days.*
- *The pain is located mainly behind left eye and the front of head but also at back of head.*
- *Mrs PC is experiencing aching, no sickness or visual disturbances.*
- *She has tried paracetamol, which helps for a while but the pain comes back after a few hours.*
- *She has not had this type of headache before.*
- *Work at the moment is busy because of a conference she is organising.*
- *She takes nothing from GP except the mini pill.*
- *There is no recent history of head trauma.*
- *The pain worsens as day progresses.*

a. Using the information on epidemiology and data on signs and symptoms of each condition from Case Study 4.1, what is the likely differential diagnosis?

Tension-type headache, probably as a result of additional stress at work whilst organising the conference.

b. From the above responses, which symptoms allowed you to rule out other conditions?

- *Age (36): Most likely causes are tension-type and migraine headaches based solely on age.*
- *Sex (female): women experience more migraines than men and less cluster headache. Therefore migraine is a possibility.*
- *Duration (5 days): most migraines do not last beyond 72 hours. Cluster headache duration is even less. More sinister causes of headache tend to last longer than 5 days. Therefore tension-type headache is likely.*
- *Location (behind eye and back of head): the pain seems fairly generalised, which is indicative of tension-type headache.*
- *Nature of pain (ache): again tension-type headaches are often described as non-throbbing. Pain does not appear to be severe, which means sinister pathology less likely.*
- *Associated symptoms (none): no nausea or vomiting. This tends to exclude migraine and conditions causing raised intracranial pressure.*
- *Medication (paracetamol): this appears to work but doesn't really help in establishing the cause of the headache.*
- *New headache (yes): the patient has not suffered from this type of headache before, a fact that might be suggestive of a more serious cause of headache. Further questioning is needed to make a judgement on whether referral would be appropriate.*
- *Lifestyle (work is busy): stress is a contributing factor to tension-type headache. It appears the patient is suffering from more stress than normal and could be a cause of the headache.*
- *Medication from GP (minipill): unlikely to cause the headache, but further questions should be asked of the patient about how long she has been taking the medication. Most ADRs normally coincide with new medication or an alteration to the dosage regimen.*
- *Recent trauma (none): this tends to exclude headache caused by space occupying lesions. It is worth remembering that symptoms manifest themselves once pressure is exerted on adjacent structures to a haematoma, tumour or abscess. It might therefore take after several weeks for the patient to notice symptoms. Therefore always ask about trauma over the last 6 to 12 weeks.*
- *Periodicity (worse as day goes on): this is suggestive of tension-type headache. It therefore appears that the majority of questions point to tension-type headache as the most likely cause of headache.*

CASE STUDY 4.3

Mr FD, A 67-year-old man, asks you for a strong painkiller for his headache. He has had the headache for a few days but it doesn't seem to be going away. After talking with the man you find out the following:

- *The headache is located in the frontal area and is unilateral.*
- *He describes the pain as throbbing.*
- *He has never had a headache like this before.*
- *He has not suffered from migraines in the past.*
- *There are no associated symptoms of upper respiratory tract infection.*
- *He is retired and has a non-stressful lifestyle.*
- *There are no symptoms of nausea or vomiting.*
- *He has tried paracetamol but without much success.*
- *He takes atenolol for hypertension.*

a. Using the information on epidemiology and data on signs and symptoms of each condition from Case Study 4.1, what is the likely differential diagnosis?

It appears that tension-type headache and migraine can be ruled out. Cluster headache is a possibility but the type of pain and location is not right. This suggests the headache might be a secondary type of headache requiring referral. Sinusitis is a secondary cause of headache but the patient shows no recent symptoms of URTI. From the remaining secondary causes of headache it appears the symptoms most closely match temporal arteritis.

b. What extra questions could you have asked to support this conclusion?

Enquire about tenderness in the temple region or if the scalp was tender to touch.

CASE STUDY 4.4

The wife of a 54-year-old man enters the pharmacy and asks for Imigran Recovery; she has seen it advertised in the paper and her husband seems to have all the symptoms.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
Describe symptoms	Very painful headache. Worst toward the back of the head; feels nauseous and vomited twice but vomiting seems to have subsided.
How long had the symptoms	12–24 hours
Severity of pain	Very painful (7–8 out of 10)
Nature of the pain	Just said it is very painful
Other symptoms/ provokes	Can't do anything. Painful even to do 'normal' things like shower, dress, etc.
Eye test; recent trauma	Not had eye test for a year but eyes OK; No recent trauma
Any symptoms before headache	No
Additional questions	Nothing seems to ease the pain
Previous history of presenting complaint	None
Past medical history	Hypercholesterolaemia
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Simvastatin 40 mg 1 on Ezetrol 10 mg 1od Uses antihistamines OTC during spring/summer
Allergies	NKA
Social history	Married
Smoking	Executive for a marketing firm
Alcohol	Smokes 20 a day
Drugs	Approx 20 units a week alcohol
Employment relationships	
Family history	None for pc
On examination	His wife states that he generally looks tired and pain is aggravated by light.

a. Given the information the lady has given you, is her husband a suitable candidate for Imigran Recovery?

Imigran Recovery is not indicated in this instance because it is the first presentation of symptoms and he has heart disease.

b. If the patient was suitable for Imigran Recovery, given their symptoms would you sell them to his wife?

No. Symptoms are not fully consistent with migraine. Severity, location and lack of previous history suggest it is not migraine. Symptoms are suggestive of sinister pathology.

Answers

1 = b	2 = c	3 = c	4 = d	5 = e	6 = d	7 = b	8 = d	9 = a	10 = c
11 = d	12 = e	13 = a	14 = d	15 = b	16 = a	17 = d	18 = b	19 = c	20 = c

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 5

Women's health

In this chapter

Background 107
History taking 107
Cystitis 107
Vaginal discharge 111
Primary dysmenorrhoea (period pain) 117
Premenstrual syndrome 120
Heavy menstrual bleeding (menorrhagia) 122
Self-assessment questions 125

Background

Women have unique healthcare needs ranging from pregnancy to menstrual disorders. Most of these conditions are outside the remit of the community pharmacist and specialist care is needed. However, a small number of conditions can be adequately treated OTC, providing an accurate diagnosis is made. This chapter explores such conditions and attempts to outline when referral should be made.

History taking

As with all conditions that present in the community pharmacy, it is essential to take an accurate history from the patient. However, the patient might feel uncomfortable or embarrassed about discussing symptoms especially in a busy pharmacy. Male pharmacists may find that this level of embarrassment is heightened.

Cystitis

Background

Cystitis literally means inflammation of the bladder, although in practice cystitis refers to inflammation of urethra and bladder. Before moving on to discuss cystitis in women further it is prudent to mention that men can also suffer from cystitis. However, in men cystitis is uncommon because of the longer urethra, which provides a greater barrier to bacteria entering the bladder; fluid from the prostate gland also confers some antibacterial property. This is especially so in men under the age of 50. After 50 years of age urinary tract infections in men become more common due to prostate enlargement.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Urinary tract infections (UTI) are one of most common infections treated in general medical practice and will affect up to 15% of women each year. Patients aged between 15 and 34 account for the majority of cases seen within a primary care setting and it is estimated that up to 50% of all women will experience at least one episode of cystitis in their lifetime; half of whom will have further attacks. Certain factors do increase the risk of a UTI: in young women, frequent or recent sexual activity and previous episodes of cystitis; the use of diaphragms or spermicidal agents; advancing age; and diabetes (can indicate poor diabetic control). Additionally, cystitis affects 1 to 4% of pregnant women (Le et al 2004).

Recurrent cystitis (usually defined as three episodes in the past 12 months or two episodes in the past 6 months) is relatively common even though no identifiable risk factors are present.

Aetiology

Infection is caused, in the majority of cases, by the patient's own bowel flora that ascend the urethra from the perineal

and perianal areas. Bacteria are thus transferred to the bladder where they proliferate. The most common bacterial organisms implicated in cystitis are *Escherichia coli* (>80% of cases), *Staphylococcus* (up to 10%) and *Proteus*. However, several studies have shown that up to 50% of women do not have positive urine cultures according to traditional criteria (>10^5 bacteria per mL of urine), although they do have signs and symptoms of infection. These patients with 'low count bacteriuria' are classed as having a urinary tract infection.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The majority of patients who present in the community pharmacy will have acute uncomplicated cystitis (Table 5.1). and accurately made a self-diagnosis. The pharmacist's aims are therefore to confirm a patient self-diagnosis, rule out upper urinary tract infection (pyelonephritis) and identify patients who are at risk of complications as a result of cystitis. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 5.2).

Table 5.1
Causes of cystitis symptoms and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Acute uncomplicated cystitis
Likely	Pyelonephritis
Unlikely	Sexually transmitted disease, oestrogen deficiency
Very unlikely	Medicine induced cystitis, vaginitis

Clinical features of acute uncomplicated cystitis

Cystitis is characterised by pain when passing urine and causes frequency, urgency, nocturia and haematuria. The diagnostic probability of cystitis is over 90% if patients exhibit dysuria and frequency without vaginal discharge or irritation. In addition, the patient might report only passing small amounts of urine, with pain worsening at the end of voiding urine. Symptoms usually start suddenly. Suprapubic discomfort not associated with passing urine might also be present but is not common. Haematuria, although common, should be viewed with caution because it might indicate stones or a tumour. Such cases are best referred.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely conditions

Pyelonephritis

The most frequent complication of cystitis is when the invading pathogen involves the ureter or kidney by ascending from the bladder to these higher anatomical structures. The patient will show signs of systemic infection such as fever, chills, flank or loin pain and possibly nausea and vomiting. Referral is needed to confirm the diagnosis, exclude pelvic inflammatory disease and issue appropriate treatment (7-day course of ciprofloxacin 500 mg twice daily).

Table 5.2
Specific questions to ask the patient: Cystitis

Question	Relevance
Duration	Symptoms that have lasted longer than 5 to 7 days should be referred because of the risk that the person might have developed pyelonephritis
Age of the patient	Cystitis is unusual in children and should be viewed with caution. This might be a sign of a structural urinary tract abnormality. Referral is needed Elderly female patients (>70 years) have a higher rate of complications associated with cystitis and are therefore best referred
Presence of fever	Referral is needed if the person presents with fever associated with dysuria, frequency and urgency, as fever is a sensitive indicator of an upper urinary tract infection
Vaginal discharge	If a patient reports vaginal discharge then the likely diagnosis is not cystitis but a vaginal infection
Location of pain	Pain experienced in the loin area suggests an upper urinary tract infection

Unlikely causes

Sexually transmitted diseases

Sexually transmitted diseases can be caused by a number of pathogens, for example *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoea*. Symptoms are similar to acute uncomplicated cystitis but they tend to be more gradual in onset and last for a longer period of time. In addition pyuria (pus in the urine) is usually present.

Oestrogen deficiency (atrophic vaginitis)

Postmenopausal women experience thinning of the endometrial lining as a result of a reduction in the levels of circulating oestrogen in the blood. This increases the likelihood of irritation or trauma leading to cystitis symptoms. If the symptoms are caused by intercourse, symptomatic relief can be gained with a lubricating product. Referral for possible topical oestrogen therapy would be appropriate if the symptoms recur.

Very unlikely causes

Medicine induced cystitis

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents (NSAIDs; especially tiaprofenic acid), allopurinol, danazol and cyclophosphamide have been shown to cause cystitis.

Vaginitis

Vaginitis exhibits similar symptoms to cystitis, in that dysuria, nocturia, and frequency are common. It can be caused by direct irritation (e.g. use of vaginal sprays and toiletries) All patients should be questioned about an associated vaginal discharge. The presence of vaginal discharge is highly suggestive of vaginitis and referral is needed.

Figure 5.1 will aid the differentiation of cystitis from other conditions.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Cystitis

- Children under 16
- Diabetics
- Duration longer than 7 days
- Haematuria
- Immunocompromised
- (Men)
- Patients with associated fever and flank pain
- Pregnancy
- Vaginal discharge
- Women older than 70

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Alkalinising agents

Current OTC treatment is limited to products that contain alkalinising agents, namely sodium citrate, sodium bicarbonate and potassium citrate. (Applications to reclassify trimethoprim and nitrofurantoin in the UK have been made but were withdrawn due to pressure from medical groups.) Alkalinising agents are used to return the urine pH back to normal thus relieving symptoms of dysuria. However, they have dubious efficacy with little trial data to support their use. Only one trial by Spooner (1984) could be found to support their efficacy. Spooner concluded that, when treated with a 2-day course of Cymalon, 80% of patients with cystitis for whom there was no clear clinical evidence of bacterial infection did gain symptomatic relief.

Cranberry juice

Cranberry juice is a popular alternative remedy to treat and prevent urinary tract infections, although few clinical trials have been performed to substantiate or refute its clinical effectiveness. A Cochrane review (Jepson & Craig 2012) identified 10 studies comparing cranberry juice or cranberry tablets to placebo. The review found cranberry products significantly reduced the incidence of UTIs at 12 months, particularly in women who suffer recurrent infections. However, drop out rates in the trials were high suggesting many patients may not be able to tolerate cranberry juice long term. The authors concluded that there was evidence that cranberry juice did offer some protection against recurrence of urinary tract infections in women that suffer symptomatic UTIs. However, it is still unclear what amount and concentration needs to be consumed, nor how long patients should take it for.

The same authors also reviewed the use of cranberry juice in the treatment of existing UTIs (Jepson et al 1998, updated in 2010). However, they were unable to find any RCTs that met their criteria. The authors concluded that there was no good evidence yet to support the use of cranberry juice for the treatment of UTIs.

Studies involving cranberry juice were not associated with any serious adverse events but widespread use of cranberry juice has resulted in the identification of a possible interaction with warfarin, although evidence is currently (2012) conflicting. Until evidence is conclusive it would seem prudent that patients on warfarin should be advised not to take products containing cranberry.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to cystitis medicines reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in

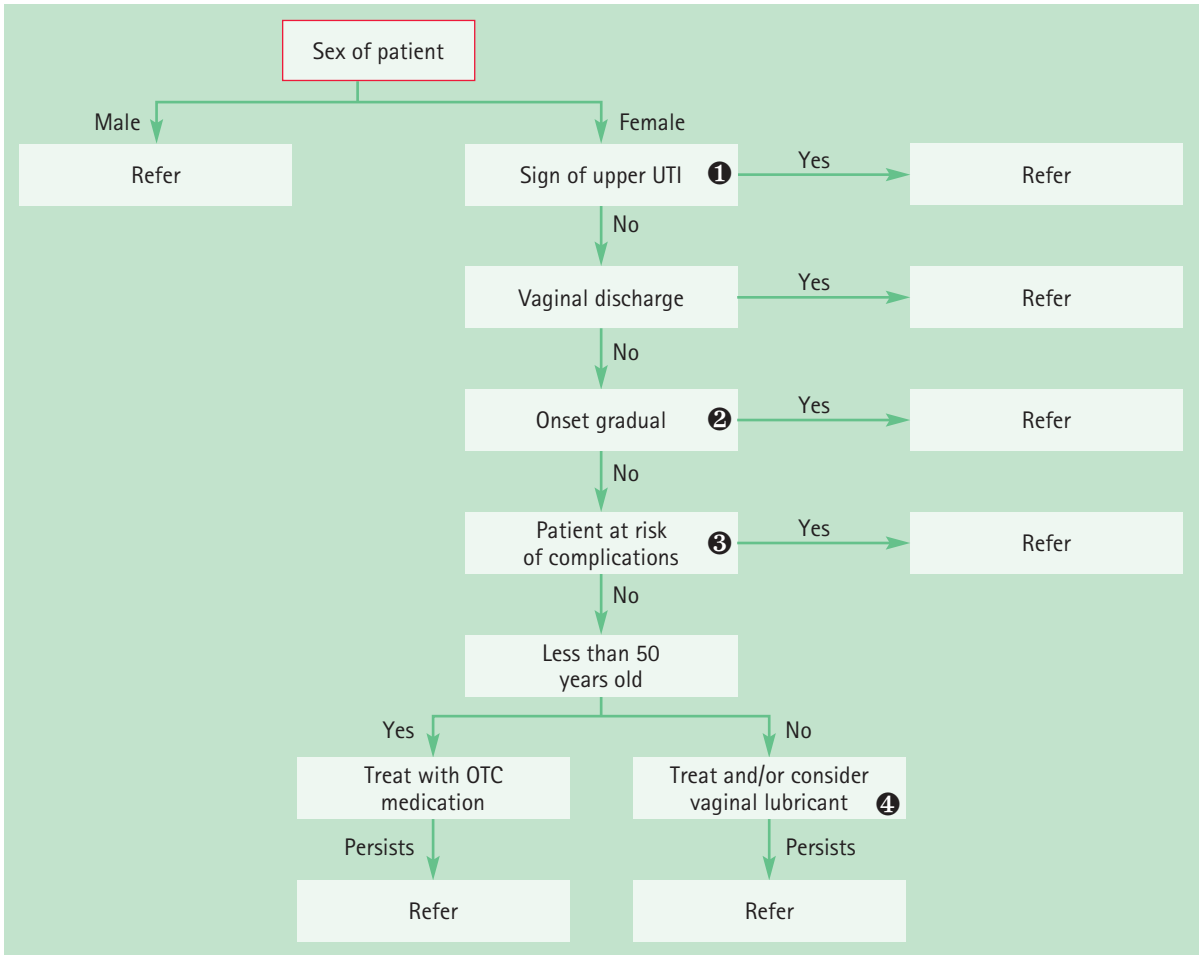


Fig. 5.1 Primer for differential diagnosis of cystitis.

❶ Involvement of the higher urinary tract structures
Symptoms such as fever, flank pain, nausea and vomiting suggest conditions such as pyelonephritis.

❷ Gradual onset
STDs should be considered in patients whose symptoms are not sudden.

❸ At-risk patients
Patients at risk of developing upper UTI include those with diabetes, pregnant women, the immunocompromised, the elderly and those patients in whom symptoms have been present for more than 5 to 7 days.

❹ Patients over 50 years old
Oestrogen deficiency might account for the patient's symptoms resulting in local atrophy of the vagina.

Table 5.3 and useful tips relating to patients presenting with cystitis are given in Hints and Tips Box 5.1.

Alkalinising agents

All marketed products are presented as a 2-day treatment course. The majority are presented as sachets (Effercitrate are dissolvable tablets) and the dose is one sachet to be taken three times a day, although potassium citrate can be bought as a ready-made solution (the dose is 10 mL three times a day diluted well with water) They possess very few side effects and can be given safely with other prescribed medication, although in theory products containing potassium should be avoided in patients taking angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, potassium-sparing diuretics and spironolactone. However, in practice

Table 5.3
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for cystitis

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Potassium citrate					
Effercitrate	>1 year*	Gastric irritation	None	Patients taking ACE inhibitors, potassium sparing diuretics and spironolactone	OK
Cystopurin	>6 years*	None			
Sodium citrate					
Cymalon	Not recommended	None reported	None	Patients with heart disease, hypertension or renal impairment	OK
Cystemme					
Canesten Oasis					

*Children should not be treated for UTI by pharmacists as unusual in this age group.
ACE, angiotensin converting enzyme.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 5.1: CYSTITIS

Fluid intake	Patients should be advised to drink about 5 L of fluid during every 24-h period. This will help promote bladder voiding, which is thought to help 'flush' bacteria out of the bladder
Product taste	The taste of potassium citrate mixture is unpleasant. Patients should be advised to dilute the mixture with water to make the taste more acceptable

it is highly unlikely that a 2-day course of an alkalinising agent will be of any clinical consequence. They can also be prescribed to most patient groups and can be given in pregnancy although most manufacturers advise against prescribing in pregnancy, presumably on the basis that pregnant women have a higher incidence of complications resulting from cystitis. The manufacturers of Effercitrate and Cystopurin state they can be used in children but good practice would dictate that children under 16 should be referred to a medical practitioner.

References

Jepson RG, Williams G, Craig JC. Cranberries for preventing urinary tract infections. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2012, Issue 10. Art. No.: CD001321. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001321.pub5.

Jepson RG, Mihaljevic L, Craig JC. Cranberries for treating urinary tract infections. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 1998, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD001322. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001322.

Le J, Briggs GG, McKeown A, et al. Urinary tract infections during pregnancy. An Pharmacother 2004;38(10):1692–701.

Spooner JB. Alkalinisation in the management of cystitis. J Int Med Res 1984;12:30–4.

Further reading

Bent S, Nallamothu BK, Simel DL, et al. Does this woman have an acute uncomplicated urinary tract infection? JAMA 2002;287:2701–10.

Car J. Urinary tract infections in women: diagnosis and management in primary care. Br Med J 2006;332:94–7.

Web sites

Cystitis and overactive bladder foundation: http://www.cobfoundation.org

Vaginal discharge

Background

Patients of any age can experience vaginal discharge. The three most common causes of vaginal discharge are bacterial vaginosis, vulvovaginal candidiasis (thrush) and trichomoniasis (Table 5.4). As thrush is the only condition that can be treated OTC, the text concentrates on differentiating this from other conditions.

Prevalence and epidemiology

It has been reported that sexually active women have a 75% chance of experiencing at least one episode of thrush during their childbearing years, and half of these will have more than one episode. Most cases are acute attacks but some women will develop recurrent thrush defined as 4 or more attacks each year. The condition is uncommon in prepubertal girls unless they have been receiving antibiotics. In adolescents it is the second most common cause of vaginal discharge after bacterial vaginosis.

Aetiology of thrush

The vagina naturally produces a watery discharge (physiological discharge), the amount and character of which varies depending on many factors, such as ovulation, pregnancy and concurrent medication. At the time of ovulation the discharge is greater in quantity and of higher viscosity. Normal secretions have no odour. The epithelium of the vagina contains glycogen, which is broken down by enzymes and bacteria (most notably lactobacilli) into acids. This maintains the low vaginal pH, creating an environment inhospitable to pathogens. The glycogen concentration is controlled by oestrogen production; therefore any changes in oestrogen levels will result in either increased or decreased glycogen concentrations. If oestrogen levels decrease glycogen concentration also decreases, giving rise to an increased vaginal pH and making the vagina more susceptible to opportunistic infection such as *Candida albicans*; 95% of thrush cases are caused by *C. albicans*. The remaining cases are caused by *C. glabrata* although symptoms are indistinguishable.

Table 5.4
Causes of vaginal discharge and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Bacterial vaginosis
Likely	Thrush, (medicine-induced thrush)
Unlikely	Trichomoniasis, atrophic vaginitis, cystitis

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Many patients will present with a self-diagnosis and the pharmacists' role will often be to confirm a self-diagnosis of thrush. This is very important as studies have shown that misdiagnosis by patients is common (Ferris et al 2002) and can have important consequences because other conditions can lead to greater health concerns. For example, bacterial vaginosis has been linked with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and the preterm delivery of low-birth-weight infants and *C. trachomatis* can cause infertility. Symptoms of pruritus, burning and discharge are possible in all three common causes of vaginal discharge. Therefore no one symptom can be relied upon with 100% certainty to differentiate between thrush, bacterial vaginosis and trichomoniasis. However, certain symptom clusters are strongly suggestive of a particular diagnosis. Asking symptom specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 5.5).

Clinical features of thrush

The dominant feature of thrush is vulval itching. This is often accompanied with discharge (in up to 20% of patients). The discharge has little or no odour and is curd-like. Symptoms are generally acute in onset.

Table 5.5
Specific questions to ask the patient: Vaginal discharge

Question	Relevance
Discharge	Any discharge with a strong odour should be referred. Bacterial vaginosis is associated with a white discharge that has a strong fishy odour and trichomoniasis is malodorous with a green-yellow discharge. By contrast, discharge associated with thrush is often described as 'curd-like' or 'cottage cheese-like' with little or no odour
Age	Thrush can occur in any age group, unlike bacterial vaginosis and trichomoniasis, which are rare in premenarchal girls. In addition, trichomoniasis is also rare in women aged over 60
Pruritus	Vaginal itching tends to be most prominent in thrush compared with bacterial vaginosis and trichomoniasis where itch is slight
Onset	In thrush, the onset of symptoms is sudden, whereas bacterial vaginosis and trichomoniasis onset tends to be less sudden

Conditions to eliminate

Bacterial vaginosis

This is the commonest cause of vaginal discharge, in a community pharmacy setting; it must be eliminated as a cause of symptoms, as treatment requires antibiotics (metronidazole 400 mg twice daily for 5 to 7 days). The exact cause of bacterial vaginosis is unknown although *Gardnerella vaginalis* is often implicated. Approximately half of patients will experience a thin white discharge with a strong fishy odour. Odour is worse after sexual intercourse and may worsen during menses. Itching and soreness are not usually present. Certain risk factors include multiple sexual partners, low social class and race (more common in black women).

Unlikely causes

Trichomoniasis

Trichomoniasis, a protozoan infection is primarily transmitted through sexual intercourse. It is uncommon compared to bacterial vaginosis and thrush. Up to 50% of patients are asymptomatic. If symptoms are experienced a profuse, frothy, greenish-yellow and malodorous discharge accompanied by vulvar itching is typical. Other symptoms can include vaginal spotting, dysuria and urgency. Referral for metronidazole (400 mg bd for 5 to 7 days) is required.

Cystitis

Dysuria can affect up to one in three women with vaginal infection. However, the patient will often be able to sense that it is an external discomfort, rather than an internal discomfort located in the urethra or bladder that occurs with urinary tract infections.

Atrophic vaginitis

Symptoms consistent with thrush in postmenopausal women, especially vaginal itching and burning, may be due to atrophic vaginitis. However, clinically significant atrophic vaginitis is uncommon in postmenopausal women, and should be referred to rule out malignancy.

There are also several factors that predispose women to thrush that require consideration prior to instigating treatment.

Medicine-induced thrush

Broad-spectrum antibiotics, corticosteroids, immunosuppressants and medication affecting the oestrogen status of the patient (oral contraceptives, HRT, tamoxifen and raloxifene) can predispose women to thrush. It is therefore not unusual to see a patient prescribed at the same time as receiving antibiotics.

Diabetes

Patients with poorly controlled diabetes (type 1 or 2) are more likely to suffer from thrush because hyperglycaemia can enhance production of protein surface receptors on *C. albicans* organisms. This hinders phagocytosis by neutrophils, thus making thrush more difficult to eliminate.

Pregnancy

Hormonal changes during pregnancy will alter the vaginal environment and have been reported to make eradication of *Candida* more difficult. Topical agents are safe and effective in pregnancy but OTC licensed indications do not allow sale to pregnant women and therefore these patients must be referred to the GP.

Chemical and mechanical irritants

Ingredients in feminine hygiene products, for example, bubble baths, vaginal sprays and douches can precipitate attacks of thrush by altering vaginal pH. Condoms have also been found to irritate and alter the vaginal pH.

Recurrent thrush (four or more episodes per year)

After treatment a minority of patients will present with recurrent symptoms. This may be due to poor compliance, misdiagnosis, resistant strains of *Candida*, undiagnosed diabetes or the patient having a mixed infection. Such cases are outside the remit of community pharmacy and have shown to be difficult to treat. Often specialist care is needed through genitourinary medicine clinics.

Figure 5.2 will help in the differentiation of vaginal thrush from other conditions in which vaginal discharge is a major presenting complaint.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Thrush

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/ reason for referral
Discharge that has a strong smell	Suggests bacterial vaginosis or trichomoniasis
Diabetics	Might suggest poor diabetic control
OTC medication failure Patients predisposed to thrush Recurrent attacks	Suggests underlying problem or misdiagnosis
Women under 16 and over 60	Thrush unusual in these age groups

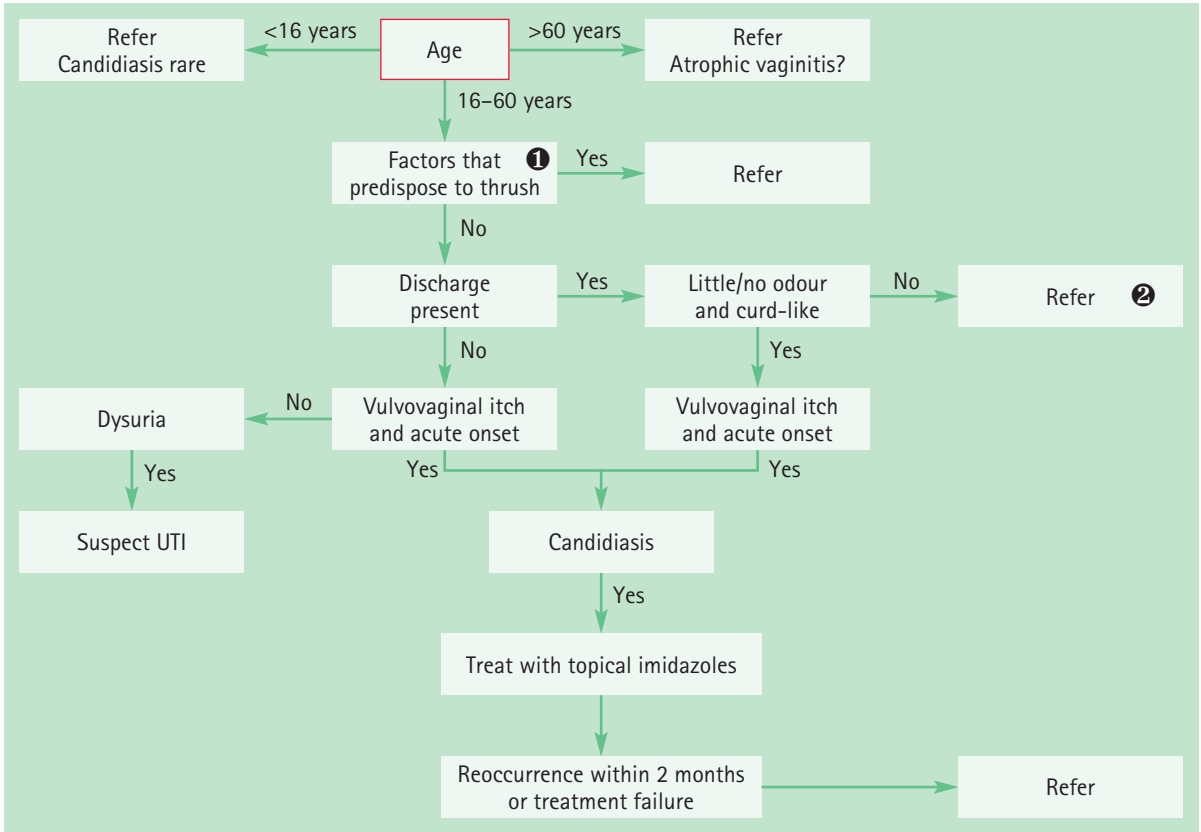


Fig. 5.2 Primer for differential diagnosis of vaginal thrush.

❶ If the person is pregnant or has diabetes then referral is the most appropriate option. If the person is suffering from medicine-induced candidiasis the prescriber should be contacted to discuss suitable treatment options and, if appropriate, alternative therapy.

❷ Discharge that has a strong odour and is not white and curd-like should be referred, as trichomoniasis or bacterial vaginosis are more likely causes.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Topical imidazoles and one systemic triazole (fluconazole) are available OTC to treat vaginal thrush. They are potent and selective inhibitors of fungal enzymes necessary for the synthesis of ergosterol, which is needed to maintain the integrity of cell membranes.

Imidazoles and triazoles have proven and comparable efficacy with clinical cure rates between 85 and 90%. Additionally, cure rates between single or multiple dose therapy and multiple day therapy show no differences (Nurbhai et al 2007, updated in 2009). Treatment choice will therefore be driven by patient acceptability and cost.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for thrush reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed below and summarised in Table 5.6; useful tips relating to patients presenting with thrush are given in Hints and Tips Box 5.2.

Topical imidazoles (clotrimazole, econazole, miconazole)

A number of formulations are available for local application including creams, vaginal tablets and pessaries. Pharmacists and the public are probably most familiar with the Canesten range of products. All internal preparations should be administered at night. This gives the medicine time to be absorbed and eliminates the possibility of accidental loss, which is more likely to occur if the person is mobile. Slight irritation on application is infrequently reported (about 5% of users) and has been linked to the vehicle and not the active ingredient. Systemic absorption is minimal and therefore there are no interactions of note,

Table 5.6
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for thrush

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Imidazoles	Not applicable	Vaginal irritation	None	None	OK but pregnant women should be referred OK in breastfeeding
Fluconazole		GI disturbances	Anticoagulants, ciclosporin, rifampicin, phenytoin, tacrolimus		Avoid

GI, gastrointestinal.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 5.2: THRUSH

Administration of pessaries	As the dosage is at night, patients should be advised to use the pessary when in bed • Remove the pessary from the packaging and place firmly into applicator (the end of the applicator needs to be gently squeezed to allow the pessary to fit) • Lying on your back, with knees drawn toward the chest, insert the applicator as deeply as is comfortable into the vagina • Slowly press the plunger of the applicator until it stops. Remove and dispose of the applicator • Remain in the supine position
Use of yoghurt	Some people recommended live yoghurt as a 'natural' treatment. This is based on sound rationale as lactobacilli contained in the yoghurt produce lactic acid, which inhibits the growth of *Candida*. However, to date, there is a lack of evidence to prove or disprove this theory
General advice to help prevent infection	Avoid tight clothing, e.g. underwear, jeans etc. Use simple non-perfumed soaps when washing
Symptom resolution	The symptoms of thrush (burning, soreness or itching of the vagina) should disappear within 3 days of treatment. If no improvement is seen after 7 days the patient should see their GP
Vaginal douching	This should not be encouraged, has no evidence of efficacy, and is associated with serious complications such as pelvic inflammatory disease

although they may damage latex condoms and diaphragms. Consequently the effectiveness of such contraceptives may be reduced. Topical imidazoles do have a number of product licence restrictions which should be observed when recommending these products and are listed in Table 5.7.

Fluconazole (e.g. Diflucan One, Canesten oral)

Fluconazole is a single oral dose treatment that can be taken at any time of the day. (Note: there are also combination packs containing oral fluconazole and a tube of topical clotrimazole.) Fluconazole is generally well tolerated but can cause gastrointestinal disturbances, such as nausea, abdominal discomfort, diarrhoea and flatulence in up to 10% of patients. There are a number of established clinically important drug interactions with fluconazole. These include anticoagulants, ciclosporin, rifampicin, phenytoin and tacrolimus. However, these drug interactions relate to the use of multiple-dose fluconazole and the relevance to single-dose fluconazole has not yet been established. It would be prudent to avoid these combinations until further evidence is available with single-dose fluconazole.

Table 5.7
Product licence restrictions – topical imidazoles

Product licence restriction	Rationale
Is under 16, or over 60, years of age	Thrush less common in these age groups
Has systemic symptoms	Suggests infection from a cause other than thrush
Has symptoms that are not entirely consistent with a previous episode (e.g. discharge is coloured or malodorous, there are ulcers or blisters)	Suspect bacterial vaginitis or trichomoniasis
Has had two episodes in 6 months, and has not consulted her GP about the condition for more than a year	Good practice as repeat infection may be due to misdiagnosis or predisposing risk factors
May be pregnant or is breastfeeding	Safe in both pregnancy and breastfeeding, although thrush is more common during pregnancy and it is also important to rule out gestational diabetes.
Has had a previous sexually transmitted infection (or her partner has)	Rule out STD
Has had abnormal menstrual bleeding or lower abdominal pain	Symptoms not suggestive of thrush
Does not experience complete resolution of symptoms after 7 days of treatment	Imidazoles are highly effective and continuing symptoms point to misdiagnosis

STD, sexually transmitted disease.

References

Ferris DG, Nyirjesy P, Sobel JD, et al. Over-the-counter antifungal drug misuse associated with patient-diagnosed vulvovaginal candidiasis. Obstet Gynecol 2002;99:419–25.

Nurbhai M, Grimshaw J, Watson M, et al. Oral versus intra-vaginal imidazole and triazole anti-fungal treatment of uncomplicated vulvovaginal candidiasis (thrush). Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007, Issue 4.

Further reading

Brown D, Binder GL, Gardner HL, et al. Comparison of econazole and clotrimazole in the treatment of vulvovaginal candidiasis. Obstet Gynecol 1980;56:121–3.

Eschenbach DA, Hillier S, Critchlow C, et al. Diagnosis and clinical manifestations of bacterial vaginosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1988;158:819–28.

Fidel PL, Sobel JD. Immunopathogenesis of recurrent vulvovaginal candidiasis. Clin Microbiol Rev 1996;9:335–48.

Ferris DG, Dekle C, Litaker MS. Women's use of over-the-counter antifungal medications for gynecologic symptoms. J Fam Pract 1996;42:595–600.

Floyd R, Hodgson C. One-day treatment of vulvovaginal candidiasis with a 500-mg clotrimazole vaginal tablet compared with a three-day regimen of two 100-mg vaginal tablets daily. Clin Ther 1986;8:181–6.

Lebherz TB, Goldman L, Wiesmeier E, et al. A comparison of the efficacy of two vaginal creams for vulvovaginal candidiasis, and correlations with the presence of Candida species in the perianal area and oral contraceptive use. Clin Ther 1983;5:409–16.

Schembri G, Malu M. Vaginal discharge: recommended management in general practice. The Prescriber 2010;19 May:37–44.

Sobel JD, Faro S, Force RW, et al. Vulvovaginal candidiasis: epidemiologic, diagnostic, and therapeutic considerations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1998;178:203–11.

Spence D, Melville C. Vaginal discharge. Br Med J 2007;335:1147–51 (1 December), doi:10.1136/bmj.39378.633287.80.

Web sites

Embarrassing problems: http://www.embarrassingproblems.com/problem/vaginal-vulva-problems

NHS Sex and young people: http://www.nhs.uk/Livewell/Sexandyoungpeople/Pages/Sex-and-young-people-hub.aspx

Primary dysmenorrhoea (period pain)

Background

Menstruation spans the years between menarche to menopause. Typically this will last 30 to 40 years, starting around the age of 12 and ceasing around the age of 50. The menstrual cycle usually lasts 28 days but this varies and it can last anything between 21 and 45 days. Menstruation itself lasts between 3 and 7 days. Individuals can also exhibit differences in menstrual cycle length and blood flow. Dysmenorrhoea is usually categorised as primary or secondary; primary dysmenorrhoea (PD) is defined as menstrual pain without organic pathology whereas in secondary dysmenorrhoea an identifiable pathologic condition can be identified.

Prevalence and epidemiology

PD is very common in adolescents but exact prevalence rates vary due to differing definitions of dysmenorrhoea used in studies. However, it is likely to affect over 50% of women, and 7 to 15% of these women report symptoms severe enough to cause school and work absence.

Aetiology

Overproduction of uterine prostaglandins E_2 and $F_{2\text{-alpha}}$ are major contributory factors in causing painful cramps. Prostaglandin production is controlled by progesterone and before menstruation starts progesterone levels decrease allowing prostaglandin production to increase, and if overproduced cramps occur. Ovulation inhibition can also improve symptoms (by using the oral contraceptive pill) as it lessens the endometrial lining of the uterus reducing menstrual fluid volume and reducing prostaglandin production.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The main consideration of the community pharmacist is to exclude conditions that have a pathologic cause (secondary dysmenorrhoea). Fortunately, by far and away the most likely problem seen in primary care is PD (Table 5.8).

It is essential to take a detailed history of the patient's menstrual history as PD is a diagnosis based on exclusion. The frequency, severity and relationship of symptoms to the menstrual cycle need to be established. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 5.9).

Table 5.8
Causes of period pain and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Primary dysmenorrhoea
Likely	Secondary dysmenorrhoea
Unlikely	Pelvic inflammatory disease, dysfunctional uterine bleeding

Table 5.9
Specific questions to ask the patient: Primary dysmenorrhoea

Question	Relevance
Age	PD is most common in adolescents and women in their early twenties. Secondary dysmenorrhoea usually affects women many years after the menarche, typically after the age of thirty
Nature of pain	A great deal of overlap exists between PD and secondary dysmenorrhoea but generally PD results in cramping whereas secondary causes are usually described as dull, continuous diffuse pain
Severity of pain	Pain is rarely severe in PD; the severity decreases with the onset of menses. Any patient presenting with severe lower abdominal pain should be referred
Onset of pain	PD starts very shortly before or within 24 hours of the onset of menses and rarely lasts for more than 3 days. Pain associated with secondary dysmenorrhoea typically starts a few days before the onset of menses

Clinical features of PD

A typical presentation of PD is of lower abdominal cramping pains shortly before (6 hours) and for 2 or possibly 3 days after the onset of bleeding. Commonly associated symptoms include fatigue, back pain, nausea and/or vomiting and diarrhoea. It is classically associated with young women who have recently (6–12 months) started having regular periods. However, there may be a gap of months or years between menarche and onset of symptoms. This is due to as many as 50% of women being anovulatory in the first year (and still 10% of women 8 years after the menarche). This is important to know, as anovulatory cycles are usually pain free.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Secondary dysmenorrhoea (e.g. endometriosis)

Endometriosis simply means presence of endometrial tissue outside of the uterus. The exact incidence of endometriosis is unclear; however, it is the most common cause of secondary dysmenorrhoea. Reports suggest it may occur in up to 50% of menstruating women but many are asymptomatic. Any person over the age of 30 either presenting for the first time with dysmenorrhoea or has noticed worsening symptoms should be viewed with caution. Patients experience lower abdominal pain (aching rather than cramping), that usually starts 5 to 7 days before menstruation begins and can be constant and severe. The pain often peaks at the onset of menstruation. Referred pain into the back and down the thighs is also possible.

Unlikely causes

Pelvic inflammatory disease

PID is an important cause of infertility and ectopic pregnancy with many women being asymptomatic and only diagnosed during infertility investigation. It most commonly occurs in sexually active women aged between 15 and 24 years old. Symptomatic cases show variable clinical presentation but it is associated with dull bilateral lower abdominal pain and dysmenorrhoea (with pain greatest premenstrually). Other symptoms such as fever, malaise, vaginal discharge, irregular menses and dyspareunia are often present.

Dysfunctional uterine bleeding

Dysfunctional uterine bleeding is a non-specific medical term defined as abnormal uterine bleeding that is not due to structural or systemic disease and includes conditions such as amenorrhoea (lack of menstruation) and menorrhagia (heavy periods); with the majority of cases attributable to menorrhagia. The pharmacist should ask the patient if their periods are different than usual.

TRIGGER POINTS Indicative of referral: Primary dysmenorrhoea

- Heavy or unexplained bleeding
- Pain experienced before menses
- Pain that increases at the onset of menses
- Signs of systemic infection (e.g. fever, malaise)
- Vaginal bleeding in postmenopausal women
- Women over the age of 30 with new or worsening symptoms

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatories

The use of NSAIDs would be a logical choice because raised prostaglandin levels cause PD. In multiple clinical trials they have been shown to be effective in 80 to 85% of women. A Cochrane review by Marjoribanks et al (2010) concluded that NSAIDs were significantly more effective in relieving moderate to severe pain associated with PD compared to placebo. However, there was little evidence of superiority of any individual NSAID.

Hyoscine butylbromide (Buscopan)

In one study, Buscopan was given to 17 patients in a double-blind placebo-crossover trial. The study failed to demonstrate a significant effect compared to placebo, or the comparator drug – aspirin, although in the authors' opinion Buscopan was a good alternative to NSAIDs.

Alverine (Spasmonal) is licensed for the treatment of dysmenorrhoea. It is an anticholinergic antispasmodic that relaxes the uterine smooth muscle; however, there is a lack of published evidence regarding its efficacy.

Low-dose combined oral contraceptives

Although not available OTC, oral contraceptives have been reported to be beneficial in treating PD. A Cochrane review (Wong et al 2009) identified 10 trials, and found improvements in pain compared to placebo (OR = 2.01; 95% CI 1.32–3.08). Therefore, if standard OTC treatment is not controlling symptoms adequately the patient is best referred as contraceptives provide an alternative treatment option.

Other treatment options

A number of alternative treatments have been tested in PD, most notably transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), acupuncture, exercise and dietary supplements. Of these, high frequency TENS appears to have the strongest body of evidence to support its use (Proctor et al 2002), acupuncture appears promising (Smith et al 2011), and the evidence for exercise is uncertain (Brown & Brown 2010). A wide range of dietary intervention is frequently recommended and includes vitamin B and E, fish oils and magnesium. Most trials were conducted on low patient numbers and have reported limited or no benefit except vitamin B1 (thiamine – 100 mg), which saw a significant proportion of women with no pain compared with placebo (Proctor et al 2001). The Chinese herbal remedy tokishakuyaku-san, taken for at least 6 months, may also reduce dysmenorrhoea.

Table 5.10
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for primary dysmenorrhoea

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Ibuprofen	Not recommended	GI discomfort, nausea and diarrhoea	Lithium, anticoagulants, methotrexate	Elderly (increased risk of side effects)	Not applicable in pregnancy as patients do not menstruate when pregnant. NSAIDs OK in breastfeeding but avoid hyoscine if possible due to lack of data
Naproxen					
Diclofenac					
Hyoscine		Dry mouth, sedation and constipation	Other anticholinergics, e.g. TCAs	Glaucoma	

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 5.3: PRIMARY DYSMENORRHOEA

Hot water bottles	The application of warmth to the lower abdomen may confer some relief of the pain

Summary

NSAIDs (ibuprofen or naproxen) should be used as first-line therapy unless the patient is contraindicated from using an NSAID. A trial of two to three cycles should be long enough to determine if NSAID therapy is successful.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 5.10; useful tips relating to patients presenting with PD are given in Hints and Tips Box 5.3.

Ibuprofen

There are a plethora of marketed ibuprofen products (e.g. Nurofen and Cuprofen) all of which have a standard dose for the relief of PD. Adults should take 200 to 400 mg (one or two tablets) three times a day, although most patients will need the higher dose of 400 mg three times a day. Because ibuprofen is only used for a few days each cycle it is generally well tolerated. However, gastric irritation is possible and ibuprofen can cause peptic ulcers or bronchospasm in asthmatics who have a history of hypersensitivity to aspirin or NSAIDs. Ibuprofen can interact with many medicines although the vast majority are not clinically significant (see Table 5.10).

Naproxen (Feminax Ultra)

Naproxen is indicated for primary dysmenorrhoea for women aged between 15 and 50 years old. The dose is two tablets (500 mg) initially, followed 6 to 8 hours later by a second tablet (250 mg) if needed. No more than three tablets should be taken in a 24-hour period. The same side effects, cautions and contraindications with ibuprofen apply to naproxen.

Diclofenac Potassium (Voltarol Pain-Eze)

Diclofenac Potassium is indicated for the relief of period pain. It can be given to people aged over 14 years old. The dose is two tablets initially, followed by one or two tablets every 4 to 6 hours as needed. No more than six tablets (75 mg) should be taken in any 24-hour period. The same side effects, cautions and contraindications with ibuprofen apply to diclofenac.

Hyoscine hydrobromide (Buscopan Cramps)

The dosage frequency for adults is two tablets four times a day. It is contraindicated in patients with narrow-angle glaucoma and myasthenia gravis and care should be exercised in patients whose conditions are characterised by tachycardia (for example, hyperthyroidism and cardiac problems). Anticholinergic side effects such as dry mouth, visual disturbances and constipation can be experienced but are generally mild and self-limiting. Side effects are potentiated if it is given with tricyclic antidepressants, antihistamines, butyrophenones, phenothiazines and disopyramide.

References

Brown J, Brown S. Exercise for dysmenorrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 2. Art.No.: CD004142. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004142.pub2.

Marjoribanks J, Proctor M, Farquhar C, et al. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for dysmenorrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD001751. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001751.pub2.
Proctor M, Murphy PA. Herbal and dietary therapies for primary and secondary dysmenorrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2001, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD002124. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002124.
Proctor M, Farquhar C, Stones W, et al. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation for primary dysmenorrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2002, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD002123. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002123.
Smith CA, Zhu X, He L, et al. Acupuncture for primary dysmenorrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD007854. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007854.pub2.
Wong CL, Farquhar C, Roberts H, et al. Oral contraceptive pill for primary dysmenorrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2009, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD002120. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002120.pub3.

Further reading

Auld B, Sinha P. Dysmenorrhoea: diagnosis and current management. The Prescriber 2006:33–40.
Harlow SD, Ephross SA. Epidemiology of menstruation and its relevance to women's health. Epidemiol Rev 1995;17:265–86.
Kemp JH. 'Buscopan' in spasmodic dysmenorrhoea. Curr Med Res Opin 1972;1:19–25.

Web sites

Endometriosis UK: http://www.endo.org.uk/
Endometriosis SHE Trust: http://www.shetrust.org.uk/
Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: http://www.rcog.org.uk/

Premenstrual syndrome

Background

Premenstrual syndrome (PMS) is a broad term that encompasses a wide range of symptoms – both physical and psychological. Symptoms range from mild to very severe; severe symptoms, especially mood symptoms, affect approximately 5% of patients and can interfere with day-to-day functioning and relationships. In these women a diagnosis of premenstrual dysphoric disorder is given.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of PMS is hard to determine because of varying definitions attributed to PMS and the number of people that do not seek medical help. Surveys have shown that over 90% of women have experienced PMS symptoms but only a fifth seek medical help, yet 13 to 25% have taken time off work because of PMS symptoms. There appears to be no marked racial or ethnic differences in the prevalence but age appears to be a risk factor – most women tend to be over 30 years old.

Aetiology

The precise pathophysiology of PMS is still unclear. A number of theories have been put forward, for example excess oestrogen, a lack of progesterone or ovarian function. Most researchers now believe PMS is a complex interaction between ovarian steroids and the neurotransmitters serotonin and GABA.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Owing to the varying and wide-ranging symptoms associated with PMS the pharmacist must endeavour to differentiate PMS from other gynaecological and mental health disorders. Careful questioning of when the symptoms occur and what symptoms are experienced will hopefully give rise to a differential diagnosis of PMS, although this might not be easy. It is important not to focus on one cycle's symptoms but ask the patient to describe their symptoms over previous cycles. A diary over three cycles should be maintained to allow a fuller picture of symptoms to be elucidated (symptom diaries are available such as the Daily Record of Severity of Problems – see www.rcog.org.uk). Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 5.11).

Clinical features of PMS

Many symptoms have been attributed to PMS, although the most common symptoms are listed in Table 5.12.

Conditions to eliminate

Primary dysmenorrhoea

Abdominal cramps and suprapubic pain might be experienced by PMS sufferers, although these symptoms are uncommon. Key distinguishing features between PMS and primary dysmenorrhoea are the lack of behavioural and mood symptoms in primary dysmenorrhoea and the difference in timing of symptoms in relation to the menstrual cycle.

Table 5.11
Specific questions to ask the patient: Premenstrual syndrome

Question	Relevance
Onset of symptoms	Symptoms that are experienced 7 to 14 days before, and that disappear a few hours after the onset of menses, are suggestive of PMS
Age of patient	PMS is most common in women aged in their 30s and 40s
Presenting symptoms	Patients with PMS will normally have symptoms suggestive of mental health disorders such as low mood, insomnia and irritability. This can make excluding mental health disorders such as depression difficult. However, the cyclical nature of the symptoms in conjunction with symptoms such as breast tenderness, bloatedness and fluid retention point to PMS

Table 5.12
Common symptoms of PMS

Physical	Behavioural	Mood
Swelling	Sleep disturbances	Irritability
Breast tenderness	Appetite changes	Mood swings
Aches	Poor concentration	Anxiety/tension
Headache	Decreased interest	Depression
Bloating/weight	Social withdrawal	Feeling out of control

Mental health disorders

Depression and anxiety are common mental health disorders, which often go undiagnosed and can be encountered by community pharmacists. Patients with PMS might experience symptoms similar to such conditions, namely low or sad mood, loss of interest or pleasure and prominent anxiety or worry. Other symptoms may include disturbed sleep and appetite, dry mouth and poor concentration. However, the symptoms are not cyclical and are not associated with other symptoms of PMS such as breast tenderness and bloatedness.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Premenstrual syndrome

- Psychological symptoms alone
- Severe or disabling symptoms
- Symptoms that either worsen or stay the same after the onset of menses
- Women under the age of 30

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

There are many drug and non-drug treatments advocated for the treatment of PMS, yet most lack evidence from well conducted randomised controlled trials. A lack of evidence or no evidence exists to support the use of reflexology, exercise, chiropractic manipulation, bright light therapy and relaxation. With regard to herbal, vitamin or mineral supplementation, only calcium supplements have good evidence of effectiveness (Whelan et al 2009). Calcium supplementation at doses of 1200 mg per day for 3 months has shown that overall PMS symtoms are significantly reduced in the luteal phase compared to placebo (Ward & Holimon 1999).

Trials involving vitamin B_6 have shown that overall symptoms of PMS improve over a period of 2 to 6 months and also help with behavioural/mood symptoms such as depression (Wyatt et al 1999). Caution is needed in the reviews findings as most included trials were of poor quality.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for PMS reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 5.13.

Calcium

Calcium supplementation should provide at least 1200 mg of elemental calcium per day. It is important to ensure that a product taken by the patient provides the required amount of elemental calcium. For example, a calcium lactate 300 mg tablet provides only 39 mg of elemental calcium; calcium carbonate 1.25 g tablets (e.g. Calcichew) provide 500 mg of elemental calcium per tablet. Calcium supplements can cause mild gastrointestinal disturbances such as nausea and flatulence. If the patient is taking

Table 5.13
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines used in premenstrual syndrome

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Pyridoxine	Not applicable	Very high doses can cause toxicity (>500 mg daily)	Levodopa when administered alone	None	Not applicable in pregnancy as patients do not menstruate when pregnant. OK in breastfeeding
Calcium		Nausea and flatulence	None	Renally impaired patients	

tetracycline antibiotics or iron then a 2-hour gap should elapse between doses to avoid decreased absorption of the antibiotic or iron.

Vitamin B_6 (pyridoxine)

There is no definitive dose of vitamin B_6 required to alleviate symptoms of PMS. However, doses of up to 100 mg daily have been shown to help reduce symptoms. Side effects are extremely rare with doses at this level, although at higher doses it can cause numbness and peripheral neuropathy. A number of drug interactions have been observed in patients taking vitamin B_6, most notably phenytoin, phenobarbital and levodopa. Only the vitamin B_6/levodopa interaction is significant and should be avoided. Although doses as low as 5 mg vitamin B_6 will reduce the effects of levodopa, the problem of this interaction in clinical practice is almost always negated as combinations of levodopa/carbidopa (Sinemet) or levodopa/benserazide (Madopar) are unaffected by vitamin B_6.

References

Ward MW, Holimon TD. Calcium treatment for premenstrual syndrome. Ann Pharmacother 1999;33:1356–8.

Whelan AM, Jurgens TM, Naylor H. Herbs, vitamins and minerals in the treatment of premenstrual syndrome: a systematic review. Can J Clin Pharmacol 2009;16(3): e407–e429.

Wyatt KM, Dimmock PW, Jones PW, et al. Efficacy of vitamin B-6 in the treatment of premenstrual syndrome: systematic review. Br Med J 1999;318:1375–81.

Further reading

RCOG. Management of premenstrual syndrome. Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists. 2007. Available at: http://www.rcog.org.uk/files/rcog-corp/uploaded-files/GT48ManagementPremensturalSyndrome.pdf (accessed 7 November 2012).

Gianetto-Berruti A, Feyles V. Premenstrual syndrome. Minerva Ginecol 2002;54:85–95.

Thys-Jacobs S, Starkey P, Bernstein D, et al. Calcium carbonate and the premenstrual syndrome: effects on premenstrual and menstrual symptoms. Am J Gynecol 1998;179:444–52.

Web sites

National Association for Premenstrual Syndrome: http://www.pms.org.uk/

Heavy menstrual bleeding (menorrhagia)

Background

NICE guidance (January 2007) defines heavy menstrual bleeding (HMB) as 'excessive menstrual blood loss which interferes with a woman's physical, social, emotional and/or material quality of life, and which can occur alone or in combination with other symptoms'. Other definitions exist and include excessive menses in an otherwise normal menstrual cycle that are associated with clots, the use of towels rather than tampons and dysmenorrhoea. Blood loss can be measured and is used in research (menorrhagia is defined as 60 to 80 mL of blood loss per cycle) but is impractical in a clinical setting. Although heavy blood loss is rarely associated with sinister pathology the impact on quality of life can be considerable.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The prevalence of HMB is difficult to establish due to varying definitions. However, 5% of women aged between 30 and 49 years old consult their GP each year (Vessey et al 1992) and a third of women describe their periods as heavy.

Aetiology

In approximately half of cases no identifiable cause can be found for HMB. Identifiable causes can result from

Table 5.14
Specific questions to ask the patient: HMB

Question	Relevance
Timing of bleeding	Symptoms that might suggest structural or pathological abnormality include bleeding at times other than menses
Effect on quality of life	An assessment should be made to determine what effect menstrual bleeding is having on the patient
Symptoms in relation to normal cycles	Patients will show cycle-to-cycle variation in the amount of blood loss. It is important to discuss with the patient this normal variation and to determine from the patient if she feels blood loss is within the normal range

uterine and pelvic pathology (e.g. fibroids, polyps and carcinoma), systemic disorders (e.g. hypothyroidism) and iatrogenic factors (e.g. medication and intrauterine devices).

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The main consideration of the community pharmacist is to exclude sinister pathology. A detailed history of the patient's menstrual cycle is essential. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 5.14).

Clinical features of HMB

The key symptom will be blood loss that is perceived to be greater than normal. The patient's bleeding pattern should be the same as during normal menses but heavier.

Conditions to eliminate

Medicine-induced menstrual bleeding

Occasionally, medicines can change menstrual bleeding patterns (Table 5.15). If an adverse drug reaction is suspected then the pharmacist should contact the prescriber and discuss other treatment options. Additionally, the incidence of menstrual pain is higher in patients who have had an intrauterine device fitted.

Endometrial and cervical carcinoma

Characterised by inappropriate uterine bleeding, and usually occurs in postmenopausal women. Bleeding starts as slight and intermittent but over time becomes heavy and continuous. Discharge and pain are rare. Irregular bleeding between periods, especially if associated with postcoital bleeding, is extremely significant and suggests pre-cancerous/cancer of the cervix.

Table 5.15
Medication that can alter menstrual bleeding

Anticoagulants
Cimetidine
Monoamine oxidase inhibitors
Phenothiazines
Steroids
Thyroid hormones

TRIGGER POINTS Indicative of referral: HMB

- Intermenstrual bleeding
- Pelvic pain
- Postcoital bleeding or postcoital pain
- Treatment failure

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Tranexamic acid has been in clinical use in the UK for approximately 30 years and has established itself as a clinically effective medicine in decreasing menstrual blood loss. It reduces blood loss by up to 50%.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Tranexamic acid is an antifibrinolytic and stops the conversion of plasminogen to plasmin – an enzyme that digests fibrin and thus brings about clot dissolution. NICE guidance states that if the patient history suggests no abnormalities then drug treatment can be given (Hints and Tips Box 5.4). This is either hormonal (currently still POM) or non-hormonal (NSAIDs or tranexamic acid). In common with more recent POM to P deregulations the manufacturer

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 5.4: HMB

Which treatment?	if menorrhagia/heavy menstrual bleeding coexists with dysmenorrhoea, the use of NSAIDs should be preferred to tranexamic acid
Treatment failure (NICE guidance)	if there is no improvement in symptoms within 3 menstrual cycles then use of NSAIDs and/or tranexamic acid should be stopped

has produced guidance for pharmacy staff and placed certain restrictions on its sale over the counter (see http://www.femstrual.co.uk/pharmacy/femstrual-protocol.html). As an OTC product it is restricted to women with a history of heavy bleeding who have regular (21–35 day) cycles that show no more than 3 days individual variability in cycle duration.

Tranexamic acid (e.g. Femstrual)

Tranexamic acid should be taken once bleeding starts. The dose is two tablets 3 times a day for a maximum of 4 days. The dose can be increased to two tablets 4 times a day in very heavy menstrual bleeding. The maximum dose is eight tablets (4 g) daily. Side effects are unusual. Those reported include mild nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea (affecting between 1 and 10% of patients).

Visual disturbances and thromboembolic events have been reported but are very rare. The causal relationship of thromboembolic events and tranexamic acid is unclear and NICE guidance states that no increase in the overall rate of thrombosis has been identified with those taking tranexamic acid. Nevertheless, women at high risk of thrombosis have been excluded from pharmacy supply. Tranexamic acid should not be taken in patients on anticoagulants, taking the combined oral contraceptive, unopposed oestrogen or tamoxifen. In breastfeeding, one small unpublished study suggests that only low levels of tranexamic acid pass into breast milk and that waiting 3–4 hours before breastfeeding will minimise any risk.

References

NICE guidelines. Heavy menstrual bleeding (Jan 2007). Available from http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/index.jsp?action=byID&to=11002 (accessed 7 November 2012).

Vessey MP, Villard-Mackintosh L, McPherson K, et al. The epidemiology of hysterectomy: findings in a large cohort study. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1992;99(5):402–7.

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

5.1 Primary dysmenorrhoea affects?

a. 10 to 20% of women
b. 20 to 30% of women
c. 30 to 40% of women
d. 40 to 50% of women
e. Over 50% of women

5.2 When do PMS symptoms usually begin?

a. Before ovulation
b. At the start of ovulation
c. Before menstruation
d. At the start of menstruation
e. Following menstruation

5.3 What percentage of women of childbearing age will experience an episode of thrush?

a. 50%
b. 55%
c. 60%
d. 70%
e. 75%

5.4 What medication can precipitate thrush?

a. Aspirin
b. Propranolol
c. Ampicillin
d. Ramipril
e. Levothyroxine

5.5 Which condition predisposes patients to pyelonephritis?

a. Hypertension
b. Rheumatoid arthritis
c. Diabetes mellitus
d. Hyperlipidaemia
e. Asthma

5.6 Dysuria accompanied with fever and flank pain is indicative of?

a. Cystitis
b. Trichomoniasis
c. Pyelonephritis
d. Vaginitis
e. Endometriosis

5.7 What symptoms are commonly associated with primary dysmenorrhoea?

a. Lower abdominal cramping pain that starts 7 to 10 days before onset of the period
b. Lower abdominal cramping pain that starts 2 to 3 days before onset of period
c. Lower abdominal cramping pain that starts 6 to 12 hours before onset of period
d. Lower abdominal griping pain that starts 2 to 3 days before onset of period
e. Lower abdominal griping pain that starts 6 to 12 hours before onset of period

5.8 Which of the following medicines can interact with phenytoin?

a. Fluconazole
b. Hyoscine
c. Potassium citrate
d. Paracetamol
e. Codeine

Questions 5.9 to 5.11 concern the following patient groups:

A. Children under 12 years old
B. Women over 30 years old
C. Women between the ages of 12 and 50
D. Women aged over 60 years old
E. Women between the ages of 40 and 60

Select, from A to E, which of the patient groups:

5.9 Are most likely to suffer from endometriosis

5.10 Are unlikely to suffer from cystitis

5.11 Should be referred automatically if they have vaginal discharge

Questions 5.12 to 5.14 concern the following conditions:

A. Vaginal thrush
B. Bacterial vaginosis
C. Trichomoniasis
D. Atrophic vaginitis
E. Cystitis

Select from A to E, which of the conditions:

5.12 Has a fishy-smelling discharge

5.13 Is rare in patients aged over 60 years old

5.14 Has a cottage-cheese-like discharge

Questions 5.15 to 5.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

5.15 A pharmacist should refer patients with vaginal candidiasis when:

a. They have had more than two attacks in the last six months
b. Women are under 16 years old
c. Women are taking antibiotics

5.16 Which of the following symptoms are associated with premenstrual syndrome?

a. Fatigue
b. Irritability
c. Breast tenderness

5.17 Which of the following medicines can cause menstrual bleeding?

a. Levothyroxine
b. Sertraline
c. Amoxicillin

Questions 5.18 to 5.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
5.18	Cystitis is uncommon in men	They have a shorter urethra than women
5.19	Vaginal discharge is uncommon in children under 12	Antibiotic therapy may precipitate attacks in this age group
5.20	Imidazoles have similar cure rates	Symptoms tend to resolve in about 3 days

Case study

CASE STUDY 5.1

Mrs PR, a 26-year-old women, presents to the pharmacy one Saturday afternoon asking for something for cystitis. The counter assistant finds out that the patient has had the symptoms about three days and has tried no medication to relieve the symptoms. At this point the patient is referred to the pharmacist.

a. What other questions do you need to ask?

- *Location of the pain*
- *Nature of the pain*
- *Severity of the pain*
- *Associated symptoms*
- *Previous history*
- *Any factors that might have precipitated the attack*
- *Medical history, including any regular medication currently taking*
- *Presence of any vaginal discharge*

You find out that Mrs PR is suffering from pain on urination, discomfort and she is going to the toilet frequently but has no other symptoms. She has had these symptoms previously about 2 years ago but they went on their own after a day or two. She takes no medicine from her GP.

b. What course of action are you going to take?

Symptoms suggest an uncomplicated acute urinary tract infection and empirical treatment could be instigated but the patient should be told that if treatment fails then she should visit the GP. Advice about adequate fluid intake should also be given.

Mrs PR returns to the pharmacy on Monday evening with a prescription for Erythromycin 250 mg qds × 20.

c. Is this an appropriate antibiotic for a urinary tract infection?

Trimethoprim (or nitrofurantoin) is first-line treatment. This is because Escherichia coli and Staphylococcus usually cause cystitis for which trimethoprim has activity.

CASE STUDY 5.2

A girl in her late teens/early 20s asks for some painkillers for period pain. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
What symptoms have you got	General aching pain in tummy (if asked where-rub around umbilicus)
How long had the symptoms	2 days
Severity of pain	4/10 (Using a scale 1-10, where 1 is no or little pain, and 10 is excruciating pain)
Any other symptoms	Felt a little sick
When is your period due	Any time now
Additional questions asked	No systemic symptoms No discharge or unusual bleeding
Previous history of presenting complaint	Had period pain before but this seems worse than previous times
Past medical history	None
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Paracetamol for pain. Helps a little but wanted something a bit stronger
Allergies	None known
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Student. Drinks, does not smoke
Family history	Not applicable
On examination	If temperature taken, slightly elevated

Epidemiology dictates that the most likely cause of period pain seen in primary care is primary dysmenorrhoea.

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

CASE STUDY 5.2 (Continued)

	Age	Pain timing to period	Nature & severity of pain	Bleeding pattern	Discharge
Primary dysmenorrhoea	Under 30	Just prior	Aching, mild to moderate	Normal	Unusual
Secondary dysmenorrhoea	Over 30	Days before	Cramping, moderate to severe	Possible	Unusual
PID	Young sexually active	Not associated with menstruation	Dull and can vary in severity	Irregular	Yes
Medicines	Any	N/A	None	Irregular	N/A
Dysfunctional uterine bleeding	Any	N/A	None	Irregular	No
Carcinoma	Postmenopausal	N/A	No (only in late stage of disease)	Irregular	Rare

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient we see that her symptoms strongly suggest primary dysmenorrhoea. A degree of caution needs to be exercised because her symptoms seem worse than previous episodes and simple analgesia seems to be ineffective. Treat her symptoms this time but review over the next few cycles.

	Age	Pain timing to period	Nature & severity of pain	Bleeding pattern	Discharge
Primary dysmenorrhoea	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Secondary dysmenorrhoea	✗	✗	✗?	✓?	✓
PID	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗
Medicines	Not applicable (no medicines taken)				
Dysfunctional uterine bleeding	✓	N/A	✗	✗	✗
Carcinoma	✗	N/A	✗	✗	✗

Danger symptoms/signs (Trigger Points for referral)

As a final double check it might be worth making sure the person has none of the 'referral signs or symptoms'; this is the case with this patient.

Heavy or unexplained bleeding	✗
Pain experienced before menses	✗
Pain that increases at the onset of menses	Not known
Signs of systemic infection (e.g. fever, malaise)	✗
Vaginal bleeding in postmenopausal women	N/A
Women over the age of 30 with new or worsening symptoms	N/A

CASE STUDY 5.3

A female patient in her early 40s presents in the pharmacy complaining of thrush. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
What symptoms have you got	Moderate itching
How long had the symptoms	Last 1 or 2 days
Any other symptoms	No other symptoms
Additional questions asked	No discharge No changes to feminine hygiene products
Previous history of presenting complaint	Similar to last symptoms which cleared with Canesten but finds cost OTC too much so wants a prescription
Past medical history	Diabetic
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Insulin
Allergies	None known
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Smokes 10 cigarettes a day. Drinks at weekends. Two teenage children. Divorced. Works for a supermarket.
Family history	Mum diabetic. Dad died about 5 years ago from a fatal myocardial infarction.
On examination	Not applicable

Epidemiology dictates that bacterial vaginosis is most prevalent in primary care.

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the three commonest conditions in which discharge is present.

CASE STUDY 5.3

	Timing	Discharge	Odour	Itch
Thrush	Acute and onset quick	White curd or cottage-cheese-like (1 in 5 patients)	Little or none	Prominent
Bacterial vaginosis	Acute but onset slower	White and thin (1 in 2 patients)	Strong and fishy, which might be worse during menses and after sex	Slight
Trichomoniasis	Acute but onset slower	Green-yellow and can be frothy	Malodorous	Slight

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient we see that her symptoms support a differential diagnosis of thrush. Discharge is least often reported with thrush compared to bacterial vaginosis and trichomoniasis and lends further weight of the diagnosis being thrush. It is worth remembering that certain disease states and actions can precipitate thrush and should be excluded. Symptoms do not appear to be brought on by any changes in toiletries but the patient is diabetic. The patient has had symptoms previously (although questioning did not reveal when the last episode was) and it is possible that the symptoms are as a consequence of her diabetes. Treatment could be given but the patient should be advised to see her doctor to check her diabetic control.

	Timing	Discharge	Odour	Itch
Thrush	✓	✗?	✓	✓
Bacterial vaginosis	✗?	✗?	✗	✗
Trichomoniasis	✗?	✗?	✗	✗

Answers

1 = e	2 = b	3 = e	4 = c	5 = c	6 = c	7 = c	8 = a	9 = b	10 = a
11= a	12 = b	13 = c	14 = a	15 = b	16 = a	17 = d	18 = c	19 = b	20 = b

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 6

Gastroenterology

In this chapter

Background 133
General overview of the anatomy of the GI tract 133
History taking and physical exam 134
Conditions affecting the oral cavity 134
Mouth ulcers 134
Oral thrush 139
Gingivitis 143
Dyspepsia 146
Diarrhoea 154
Constipation 160
Irritable bowel syndrome 168
Haemorrhoids 172
Abdominal pain 177
Self-assessment questions 187

Background

The main function of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract is to break food down in to a suitable energy source to allow normal physiological function of cells. Needless to say, the process is complex and involves many different organs. Consequently, there are many conditions that affect the GI tract, some of which are acute and self-limiting and respond well to OTC medication and others that are serious and require referral.

General overview of the anatomy of the GI tract

It is vital that pharmacists have a sound understanding of GI tract anatomy. Many conditions will present with similar symptoms and from similar locations, for example abdominal pain, and the pharmacist will need a basic knowledge of GI tract anatomy – and in particular of where each organ of the GI tract is located – to facilitate a correct differential diagnosis.

Oral cavity

The oral cavity comprises of the cheeks, hard and soft palates and tongue.

Stomach

The stomach is roughly 'J' shaped and receives food and fluid from the oesophagus. It empties into the duodenum. It is located slightly left of midline and anterior (below) to the rib cage. The lesser curvature of the stomach sits adjacent to the liver.

Liver

The liver is located below the diaphragm and located mostly right of midline in the upper right quadrant of the abdomen. The liver performs many functions, including carbohydrate, lipid and protein metabolism and the processing of many medicines.

Gall bladder

The gall bladder is a pear-shaped sac that lies deep to the liver and hangs from the lower front margin of the liver. Its function is to store and concentrate bile made by the liver.

Pancreas

The pancreas lies behind the stomach. It is essential for producing digestive enzymes transported to the duodenum

via the pancreatic duct and secretion of hormones such as insulin.

History taking and physical exam

A thorough patient history is essential as physical examination of the GI tract in a community pharmacy is limited to inspection of the mouth. This should allow confirmation of the diagnoses for conditions such as mouth ulcers and oral thrush. A description of how to examine the oral cavity appears in the following section.

Conditions affecting the oral cavity

Background

The process of digestion starts in the oral cavity. The tongue and cheeks position large pieces of food so that the teeth can tear and crush food into smaller particles. Saliva moistens, lubricates and begins the process of digesting carbohydrates (by secreting amylase enzymes) prior to swallowing.

The physical exam

The oral cavity can easily be observed in the pharmacy provided the mouth can be viewed with a good light source, preferably a pen torch (Fig 6.1). The patient will usually present with some form of oral lesion and/or pain in a particular part of the mouth. The pharmacist should examine this area carefully, but the rest of the oral cavity should also be inspected. Checks for periodontal disease (bleeding gums) and other sites of mouth soreness should be performed.

The floor of the mouth and underside of the tongue can be viewed by asking the patient to curl the tongue toward the roof of the mouth; the buccal mucosa is best observed when the patient half opens the mouth.

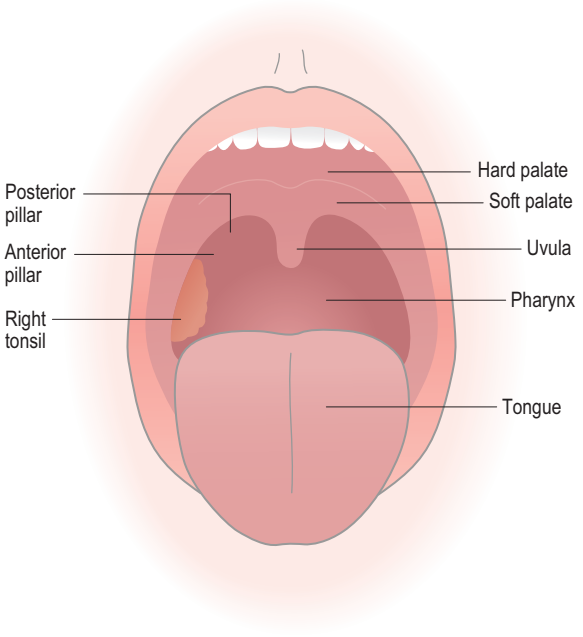


Fig. 6.1 The oral cavity.

Mouth ulcers

Background

Aphthous ulcers, more commonly known as mouth ulcers, is a collective term used to describe various different clinical presentations of superficial painful oral lesions that occur in recurrent bouts at intervals between a few days to a few months. The majority of patients (80%) who present in a community pharmacy will have minor aphthous ulcers (MAU). It is the community pharmacists' role to exclude more serious pathology, for example, systemic causes and carcinoma.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The prevalence and epidemiology of MAU is poorly understood. They occur in all ages but it has been reported that they are more common in patients aged between 20 and 40, and up to 66% of young adults give a history consistent with MAU. Lifetime prevalence is estimated to affect one in five of the general population.

Aetiology

The cause of MAU is unknown. A number of theories have been put forward to explain why people get MAU, including a genetic link, stress, trauma, food sensitivities, nutritional deficiencies (iron, zinc and vitamin B_{12}) and infection, but none have so far been proven.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

There are three main clinical presentations of ulcers: minor, major or herpetiform. Although it is most likely the patient will be suffering from MAU (Table 6.1) it is essential that these and other causes are recognised and referred to the GP for further evaluation.

A number of ulcer-specific questions should always be asked of the patient (Table 6.2) and an inspection of the oral cavity should also be performed to help aid the diagnosis.

Clinical features of minor aphthous ulcers

The ulcers of MAU are roundish, grey-white in colour and painful. They are small – usually less than 1 cm in diameter – and shallow with a raised red rim. Pain is the key presenting symptom and can make eating and drinking difficult, although pain subsides after three or four days. They rarely occur on the gingival mucosa and occur singly or in small crops of up to five ulcers. It normally takes 7 to 14 days for the ulcers to heal but recurrence typically occurs after an interval of 1 to 4 months (Fig. 6.2).

Table 6.1
Causes of ulcers and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Minor aphthous ulcers (MAU)
Likely	Major aphthous ulcers, Trauma
Unlikely	Herpetiform ulcers, herpes simplex, oral thrush medicine-induced
Very unlikely	Oral carcinoma, erythema multiforme (Steven's Johnson syndrome), Behçet's syndrome

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Major aphthous ulcers

These are characterised by large (greater than 1 cm in diameter), numerous ulcers, occurring in crops of 10 or more. The ulcers often coalesce to form one large ulcer. The ulcers heal slowly and can persist for many weeks (Fig. 6.3).

Fig. 6.2 Minor aphthous ulcer. Reproduced from R Cawson et al, 2002, Essentials of oral pathology and oral medicine, 7th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Table 6.2
Specific questions to ask the patient: Mouth ulcers

Question	Relevance
Number of ulcers	MAU occur singly or in small crops. A single large ulcerated area is more indicative of pathology outside the remit of the community pharmacist Patients with numerous ulcers are more likely to be suffering from major or herpetiform ulcers rather than MAU
Location of ulcers	Ulcers on the side of the cheeks, tongue and inside of the lips are likely to be MAU Ulcers located toward the back of the mouth are more consistent with major or herpetiform ulcers
Size and shape	Irregular-shaped ulcers tend to be caused by trauma. If trauma is not the cause then referral is necessary to exclude sinister pathology If ulcers are large or very small they are unlikely to be caused by MAU
Painless ulcers	Any patient presenting with a painless ulcer in the oral cavity must be referred. This can indicate sinister pathology such as leukoplakia or carcinoma
Age	MAU in young children (<10 years old) is not common and other causes such as primary infection with herpes simplex should be considered If ulcers appear for the first time after adolescence then the diagnostic probability is increased for them to be caused by things other than MAU

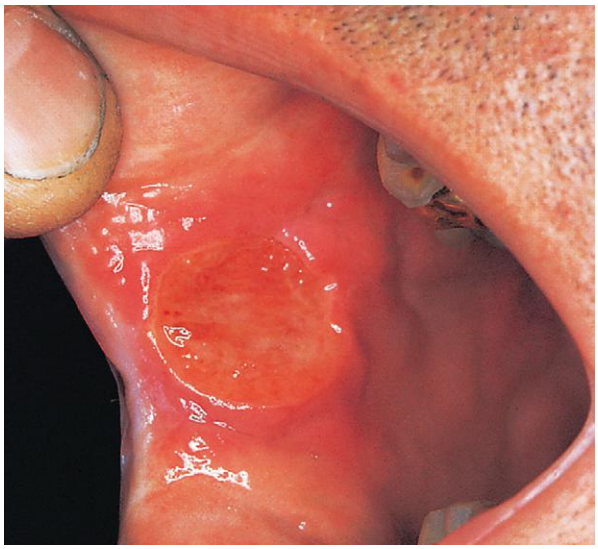


Fig. 6.3 Major aphthous ulcer. Reproduced from R Cawson et al, 2002, Essentials of oral pathology and oral medicine, 7th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Fig. 6.4 Ulcer caused by trauma. Reproduced from D Wray et al, 1999, Textbook of general and oral medicine, by Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Trauma

Trauma to the oral mucosa will result in damage and ulceration. Trauma may be mechanical (e.g. tongue biting) or thermal resulting in ulcers with an irregular border. Patients should be able to recall the traumatic event and have no history of similar ulceration or signs of systemic infection (Fig. 6.4).

Fig. 6.5 Herpetiform ulcer. Reproduced from R Cawson et al, 2002, Essentials of oral pathology and oral medicine, 7th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Unlikely causes

Herpetiform ulcers

Herpetiform ulcers are pinpoint and occur in large crops of up to 100 at a time. They usually heal within a month and often occur in the posterior part of the mouth, an unusual location for MAU (Fig. 6.5). Both herpetiform and major aphthous ulcers are approximately ten times less common than MAU.

Oral thrush

Oral thrush usually presents as creamy-white soft elevated patches. It is covered in more detail in the next section and the reader is referred to page 139 for differential diagnosis of thrush from other oral lesions.

Herpes simplex

Herpes simplex virus is a common cause of oral ulceration in children. Primary infection results in ulceration of any part of the oral mucosa, especially the gums, tongue and cheeks. The ulcers tend to be small and discrete and many in number. Prior to the eruption of ulcers the person might show signs of systemic infection such as fever and pharyngitis.

Medicine-induced ulcers

A number of case reports have been received of medication causing ulcers. These include cytotoxic agents, nicorandil, alendronate, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and beta-blockers. Ulcers are often seen at the start of therapy or when the dose is increased.

Very unlikely causes

Carcinoma

In 2009, over 6000 cases of oral cancer were confirmed. It is twice as common in men than women. Incidence rates increase sharply beyond 45 years of age. In men the highest incidence is seen in those aged 60–69, and in women it peaks in the over 80s. Smoking and excess alcohol consumption are two major risk factors.

The majority of cancers are noted on the side of the tongue, mouth and lower lip. Initial presentation ranges from painless spots, lumps or ulcers in the mouth or lip area that fail to resolve. Over time these become painful, change colour crust over or bleed. The painless nature of early symptoms leads people to seek help only when other symptoms become apparent. Symptoms therefore can be present for a number of weeks before the patient presents to a health care practitioner. Urgent referral is needed as survival rates increase dramatically if the disease is diagnosed in its early stages.

Erythema multiforme

Infection or drug therapy can cause erythema multiforme, although in about 50% of cases no cause can be found. Symptoms are sudden in onset causing widespread ulceration of the oral cavity. In addition the patient can have annular and symmetric erythematous skin lesions located toward the extremities. Conjunctivitis and eye pain is also common.

Behcet's syndrome

Most patients will suffer from recurrent, painful major aphthous ulcers that are slow to heal. Lesions are also observed in the genital region and eye involvement (iridocyclitis) is common.

Figure 6.6 will aid the differentiation between serious and non-serious conditions that cause mouth ulcers.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Mouth ulcers

Symptoms/signs	Possible Danger/reason for referral
Children under 10	Minor ulcers rare
Ulcers greater than 1 cm in diameter Ulcers in crops of five to ten, or more Duration longer than 14 days	Suggests other causes of ulceration outside scope of community pharmacist
Painless ulcer Eye involvement	Possible sinister pathology

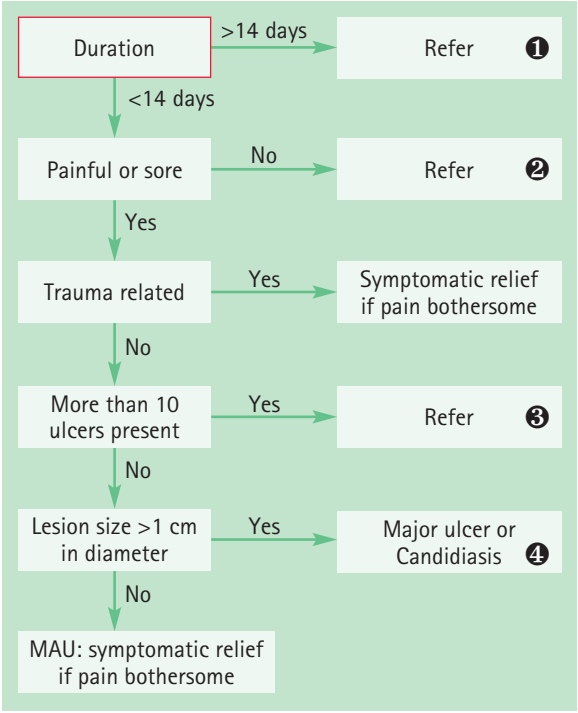


Fig. 6.6 Primer for differential diagnosis of mouth ulcers.

❶ Duration

MAU normally resolve in 7 to 14 days. Ulcers that fail to heal within this time need referral to exclude other causes.

❷ Painless ulcers

These can indicate sinister pathology, especially if the patient is over 50 years old. In addition, it is likely that the ulcer will have been present for some time before the patient presented to the pharmacy.

❸ Numerous ulcers

Crops of 5 to 10 or more ulcers are rare in MAU. Referral is necessary to determine the cause.

❹ Major ulcer or candidiasis

See Figure 6.9 for primer for differential diagnosis of oral thrush.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

A wide range of products are used for the temporary relief and treatment of mouth ulcers. These products contain corticosteroids, local anaesthetics, antibacterials, astringents and antiseptics. Until, recently, corticosteroids were available OTC (triamcinolone acetonide 0.1% in Orabase and hydrocortisone sodium succinate pellets) but these have been discontinued by the manufacturers. This is

Table 6.3
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for ulcers

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Choline salicylate	>16 years	None	None	None	OK
Lidocaine		Can cause sensitisation reactions	None	None	OK
Benzocaine	>12 years				
Chlorhexidine	>12 years	None	None	None	OK
Carmellose	No age limit stated*	None	None	None	OK

*Children should not be routinely given products as ulcers are rare in this age group.

unfortunate as a review in *BMJ Clinical Evidence* found corticosteroids did reduce the duration of pain with MAU (http://exodontia.info/files/BMJ_Clinical_Evidence_2007_Recurrent_Aphthous_Ulcers.pdf; accessed 22 November 2012).

Antibacterial agents (e.g. chlorhexidine)

A number of random controlled trials have investigated antibacterial mouthwashes containing chlorhexidine gluconate. Data from some, but not all studies, have found that they reduced the pain and severity of each episode of ulceration.

Products containing anaesthetic or analgesics

There is very little trial data to support the pain-relieving effect of anaesthetics or analgesics in MAU, apart from choline salicylate. However, these preparations are clinically effective in other painful oral conditions. It is therefore not unreasonable to expect some relief of symptoms to be shown when using these products to treat MAU.

Choline salicylate

Choline salicylate has been shown to exert an analgesic effect in a number of small studies. However, only one study by Reedy (1970) involving 27 patients evaluated choline salicylate in the treatment of oral aphthous ulceration. No significant differences were found between choline salicylate and placebo in ulcer resolution but choline salicylate was found to be significantly superior to placebo in relieving pain.

Protectants

Orabase is a paste of gelatin, pectin and carmellose sodium, which sticks when it comes in contact with wet mucosal surfaces. There is a paucity of data to support its efficacy. However, it has no known side effects, and can be used in any patient population.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 6.1: ULCERS

Application of Adcortyl	Apply after food, as food is likely to rub off the paste

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used for ulcers reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 6.3; useful tips relating to patients presenting with ulcers are given in Hints and Tips Box 6.1.

Antibacterial agents (e.g. chlorhexidine)

Chlorhexidine (e.g. Corsodyl) mouthwash is indicated as an aid in the treatment and prevention of gingivitis and in the maintenance of oral hygiene, which includes the management of aphthous ulceration. Ten mL of the mouthwash should be rinsed around the mouth for about 1 minute twice a day. It can be used by all patient groups, including those who are pregnant and breastfeeding. Side effects associated with its use include reversible tongue and tooth discolouration, burning of the tongue and taste disturbance.

Choline salicylate (Bonjela Cool)

Adults and children over 16 years old should apply the gel, using a clean finger, over the ulcer when needed, but limit this to every 3 hours. It is a safe medicine and can be given to all patient groups. It is not known to interact with any medicines or cause any side effects.

Local anaesthetics (lidocaine e.g. Anbesol range, Iglu gel, Medijel) and benzocaine (e.g. Oralgel & Oralgel Extra Strength).

All local anaesthetics have a short duration of action; frequent dosing is therefore required to maintain the anaesthetic effect. They are thus best used on a when needed basis although the upper limit on the number of applications allowed does vary depending on the concentration of anaesthetic included in each product. They appear to be free from any drug interactions, have minimal side effects and can be given to most patients. A small percentage of patients might experience a hypersensitivity reaction with lidocaine or benzocaine; this appears to be more common with benzocaine.

Carmellose sodium (Orabase Protective Paste)

Orabase can be applied as frequently as requred. It is important that it is dabbed on, and not rubbed on, for it to stick correctly. Also, patients should be discouraged from putting too much on as the excess can peel off leaving the lesion exposed. There are no apparent interactions, and Orabase can be used in all patient groups.

Reference

Reedy BL. A topical salicylate gel in the treatment of oral aphthous ulceration. Practitioner 1970;204:846–50.

Further reading

Browne RM, Fox EC, Anderson RJ. Topical triamcinolone acetonide in recurrent aphthous stomatitis. A clinical trial. Lancet 1968;1:565–7.

MacPhee IT, Sircus W, Farmer ED, et al. Use of steroids in treatment of aphthous ulceration. Br Med J 1968;2(598): 147–9.

Scully C. Aphthous ulceration. N Engl J Med 2006;355: 165–72.

Truelove SC, Morris-Owen RM. Treatment of aphthous ulceration of the mouth. Br Med J 1958;1:603–7.

Zakrzewska JM. Fortnightly review: oral cancer. Br Med J 1999;318:1051–4.

Web sites

British Association of Dermatologists (2009) Multi-professional Guidelines for the Management of the Patient with Primary Cutaneous Squamous Cell Carcinoma: http://www.bad.org.uk/Portals/_Bad/Guidelines/Clinical%20Guidelines/SCC%20Guidelines%20Final%20Aug%2009.pdf

General site on oral health: http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/mouthandteeth.html

The Behçet's Syndrome Society: http://www.behcets.org.uk/menus/main.asp

The British Dental Health Foundation: http://www.dentalhealth.org.uk/

Oral thrush

6

Background

Oropharyngeal candidiasis (oral thrush) is an opportunistic mucosal infection and is unusual in healthy adults. If oral thrush is suspected in this population community pharmacists should determine if any identifiable risk factors. A healthy adult with no risk factors generally requires referral to the GP.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The very young (neonates) and the very old are most likely to suffer from oral thrush. It has been reported that 5% of newborn infants and 10% of debilitated elderly patients suffer from oral thrush. Most other cases will be associated with underlying pathology such as diabetes, xerostomia (dry mouth), patients who are immunocompromised or be attributable to identifiable risk factors such as recent antibiotic therapy, inhaled corticosteroids, and ill-fitting dentures.

Aetiology

It is reported that *Candida albicans* is found in the oral cavity of 30–60% of healthy people in developed countries (Gonsalves et al 2007). Prevalence in denture wearers is even higher. It is transmitted directly between infected people or via objects that can hold the organism. Changes to the normal environment in the oral cavity will allow *C. albicans* to proliferate.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Oral thrush is not difficult to diagnose provided a careful history is taken and an oral examination performed. It is the role of the pharmacist to eliminate underlying pathology and exclude risk factors. A number of other conditions need to be considered (Table 6.4) and specific questions asked of the patient (Table 6.5). After questioning the pharmacist should inspect the oral cavity to confirm the diagnosis.

Clinical features of oral thrush

The classical presentation of oral thrush is of creamy-white soft elevated patches that can be wiped off revealing underlying erythematous mucosa (Fig. 6.7). Pain, soreness, altered taste and a burning tongue can be present. Lesions can occur anywhere in the oral cavity but usually affect the tongue, palate, lips and cheeks. Patients sometimes complain of malaise and loss of appetite. In neonates,

Table 6.4
Causes of oral lesions and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Thrush
Likely	Minor aphthous ulcers, medicine induced, ill-fitting dentures
Unlikely	Lichen planus, underlying medical disorders, e.g. diabetes, xerostomia (dry mouth) and immunosuppression, major & herpetiform ulcers, herpes simplex
Very Unlikely	Leukoplakia, squamous cell carcinoma

Table 6.5
Specific questions to ask the patient: Oral thrush

Question	Relevance
Size and shape of lesion	Typically, patients with oral thrush present with 'patches'. They tend to be irregularly shaped and vary in size from small to large
Associated pain	Thrush usually causes some degree of discomfort or pain. Painless patches, especially in people aged over 50, should be referred to exclude sinister pathology such as leukoplakia
Location of lesions	Oral thrush often affects the tongue and cheeks, although if precipitated by inhaled steroids the lesions appear on the pharynx

spontaneous resolution usually occurs but can take a few weeks.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Minor aphthous ulcers

Mouth ulcers are covered in more detail on page 134 and the reader is referred to this section for differential diagnosis of these from oral thrush.

Medicine-induced thrush

Inhaled corticosteroids and antibiotics are often associated with causing thrush. In addition, medicines that cause dryness of the mouth can also predispose people to thrush. Always take a drug history to determine if medicines could be a cause of the symptoms.

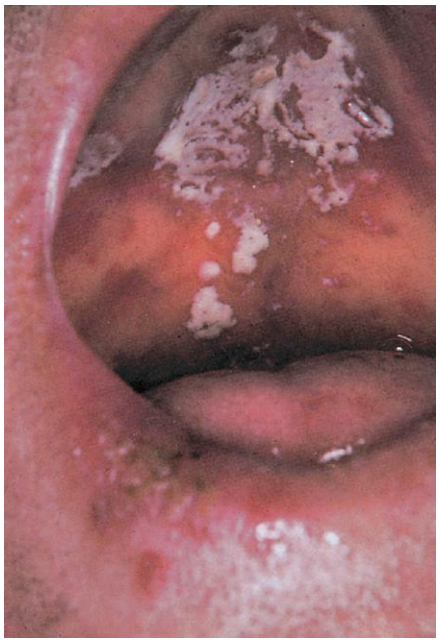


Fig. 6.7 Oral candidiasis. Reproduced from CD Forbes and WF Jackson, 2004, Illustrated pocket guide to clinical medicine, 2nd edition, Mosby, with permission.

Denture wearers

Wearing dentures, especially if they are not taken out at night, not kept clean, or do not fit well can predispose people to thrush.

Unlikely causes

Lichen planus

Lichen planus is a dermatological condition with lesions similar in appearance to plaque psoriasis. In about 50% of people the oral mucous membranes are affected. The cheeks, gums or tongue develop white, slightly raised painless lesions that look a little like a spider's web. Other symptoms can include soreness of the mouth and a burning sensation. Occasionally, lichen planus of the mouth occurs without any skin rash.

Underlying medical disorders

As stated previously, oral thrush is unusual in the adult population. Patients are at greater risk of developing thrush if they suffer from medical conditions such as diabetes, xerostomia (dry mouth) or are immunocompromised.

Other forms of ulceration (e.g. major and herpetiform ulcers, herpes simplex)

These are covered in more detail on page 135 and the reader is referred to this section for differential diagnosis of these from oral thrush.

Very unlikely causes

Leukoplakia

Leukoplakia is a predominantly white lesion of the oral mucosa that cannot be characterised as any other definable lesion and is therefore a diagnosis based on exclusion (Fig. 6.8). It is often associated with smoking and is a pre-cancerous lesion, although epidemiological data suggests that annual transformation rate to squamous cell carcinoma is approximately 1%. Patients present with a symptomless white patch that develops over a period of weeks on the tongue or cheek. The lesion cannot be wiped off, unlike oral thrush. Most cases are seen in people over the age of 40; it is more common in men. Suspected cases require referral.

Squamous cell carcinoma

Squamous cell carcinoma is covered in more detail on page 137 and the reader is referred to this section for differential diagnosis of these from oral thrush.

Fig. 6.8 Leukoplakia. Reproduced from CD Forbes and WF Jackson, 2004, Illustrated pocket guide to clinical medicine, 2nd edition, Mosby, with permission.

Figure 6.9 will aid the differentiation of thrush from other oral lesions.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Oral thrush

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Diabetics	May indicate poor diabetic control
Duration greater than 3 weeks	Unlikely to be thrush and needs further investigation by a doctor
Immunocompromised patients	Likely to have severe and extensive involvement. Outside community pharmacist's remit
Painless lesions	Sinister pathology

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Only Daktarin oral gel (miconazole) is available OTC to treat oral thrush. It has proven efficacy and appears to have clinical cure rates between 80 and 90%. In comparative trials, Daktarin appears to have superior cure rates than the POM Nystatin.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to Daktarin Oral gel reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 6.6; useful tips relating to the application of Daktarin are given in Hints and Tips Box 6.2.

The dose of gel varies dependent on the age of patient. For adults and children over 6 years, the gel should be applied four times a day and those under six the dose is twice a day. The gel should be applied directly to the area with a clean finger. In May 2008 Jansen-Cilag, the manufacturers of Daktarin, chose to vary the Summary of Product Characteristics (SPC) to recommend that it is not used in infants under 4 months and only with care below the age of 6 months. This change appears to originate from

Table 6.6
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for oral thrush

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Daktarin	>4 months	Nausea and vomiting (approx. 5% of patients)	Warfarin	None	OK

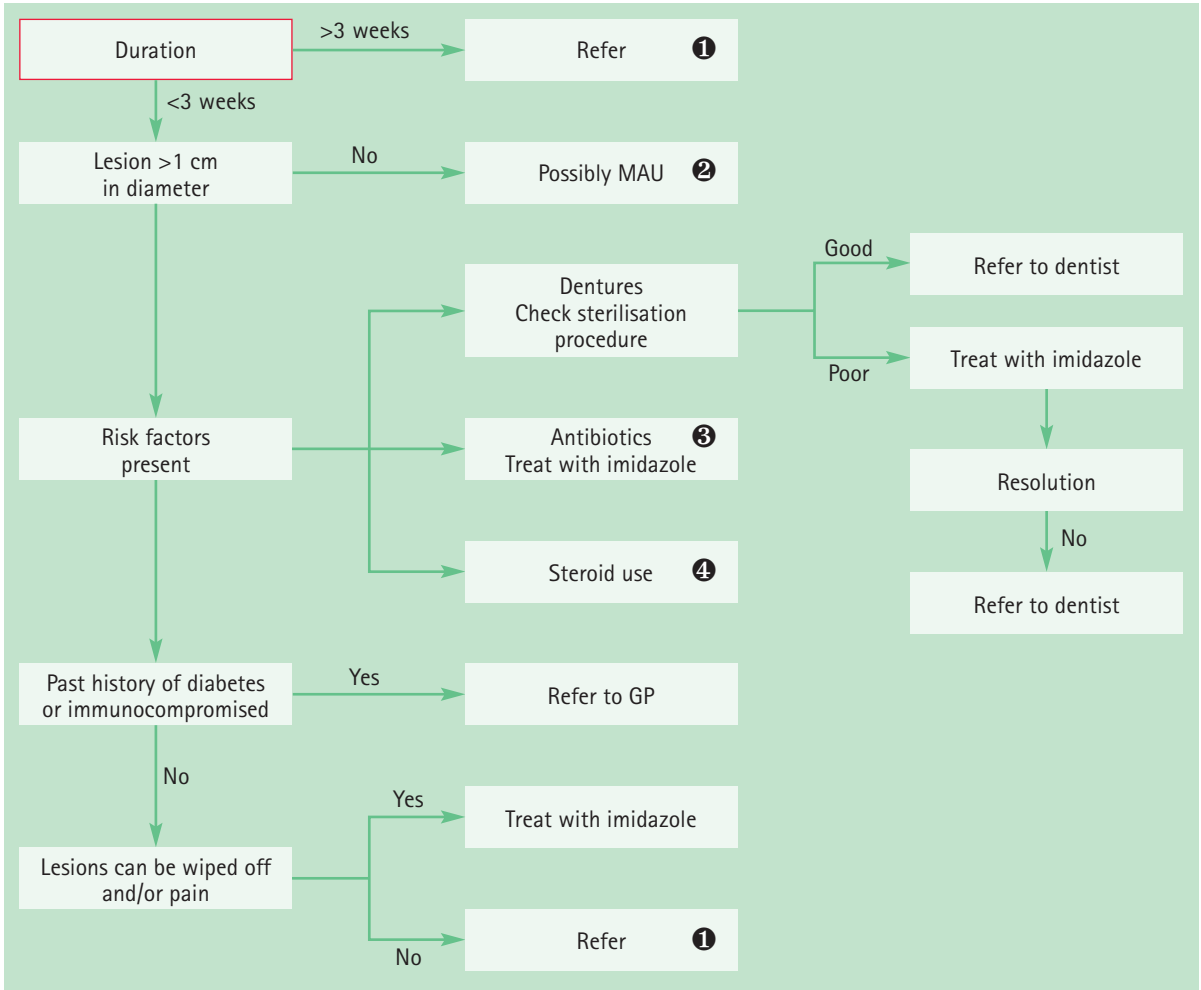


Fig. 6.9 Primer for differential diagnosis of oral thrush.

❶ Duration
Any lesion lasting more than 3 weeks must be referred to exclude sinister pathology.

❷ MAU
See Figure 6.6 for primer for differential diagnosis of mouth ulcers.

❸ Antibiotics
Broad-spectrum antibiotics, e.g. amoxicillin and macrolides, can precipitate oral thrush by altering normal flora of the oral cavity.

❹ Inhaled corticosteroids
High-dose inhaled corticosteroids can cause oral thrush. Patients should be encouraged to use a spacer and wash their mouth out after inhaler use to minimise this problem.

a published report (De Vries et al 2006) documenting a 17-day-old baby who choked when exposed to miconazole oral gel.

It can occasionally cause nausea and vomiting. The manufacturers state that it can interact with a number of medicines, namely mizolastine, cisapride, triazolam, midazolam, quinidine, pimozide, HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors and anticoagulants. However, there is a lack of published data to determine how clinically significant these interactions are except with warfarin. Co-administration of warfarin with miconazole increases warfarin levels markedly and the patient's (internationalised normalised ratio) INR should be monitored closely. The manufacturers advise that Daktarin should be avoided in pregnancy but

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 6.2: DAKTARIN

Application of Daktarin	Patients should be advised to hold the gel in the mouth for as long as possible to increase contact time between the medicine and the infection
Duration of treatment	Treatment should be continued for up to 2 days after the symptoms have cleared to prevent relapse and reinfection
Patient acceptability	Gel is flavoured orange to make retention in the mouth more acceptable to patients

published data does not support an association between miconazole and congenital defects. It appears to be safe to use whilst breastfeeding.

References

de Vries TW, Wewerinke ME, de Langen JJ. Near asphyxiation of a neonate due to miconazole oral gel. Ned Tidschr Geenskd 2004;148:1598–600.

Gonsalves WC, Chi A, Neville BW. Common oral lesions: Part I. Superficial mucosal lesions. Am Fam Physician 2007;75:501–7.

Further reading

Hoppe JE, Hahn H. Randomized comparison of two nystatin oral gels with miconazole oral gel for treatment of oral thrush in infants. Antimycotics Study Group. Infection 1996;24:136–9.

Hoppe JE. Treatment of oropharyngeal candidiasis in immunocompetent infants: a randomized multicenter study of miconazole gel vs. nystatin suspension. The Antifungals Study Group. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1997;16:288–93.

Parvinen T, Kokko J, Yli-Urpo A. Miconazole lacquer compared with gel in treatment of denture stomatitis. Scand J Dent Res 1994;102:361–6.

Web sites

General information: http://www.netdoctor.co.uk/diseases/facts/oralthrush.htm

Gingivitis

Background

Gingivitis simply means inflammation of the gums and is usually caused by an excess build-up of plaque on the teeth. The condition is entirely preventable if regular tooth brushing is undertaken.

Prevalence and epidemiology

It is estimated 50% of the UK population are affected by gum disease and that more than 85% of people over 40 will experience gingival disease. Men more than women tend to suffer from severe gingivitis.

Aetiology

Following tooth brushing, the teeth soon become coated in a mixture of saliva and gingival fluid, known as pellicle. Oral bacteria and food particles adhere to this coating and begin to proliferate forming plaque; subsequent brushing of the teeth removes this plaque build up. However, if plaque is allowed to build up for 3 or 4 days, bacteria begin to undergo internal calcification producing calcium phosphate better known as tartar (or calculus). This adheres tightly to the surface of the tooth and retains bacteria in situ. The bacteria release enzymes and toxins that invade the gingival mucosa, causing inflammation of the gingiva (gingivitis). If the plaque is not removed the inflammation travels downwards, involving the periodontal ligament and associated tooth structures (periodontitis). A pocket forms between the tooth and gum and, over a period of years, the root of the tooth and bone are eroded until such time that the tooth becomes loose and lost. This is the main cause of tooth loss in people over 40 years of age.

A number of risk factors are associated with gingivitis and periodontitis; these include diabetes mellitus, cigarette smoking, poor nutritional status and poor oral hygiene.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Gingivitis often goes unnoticed because symptoms can be very mild and painless. This often explains why a routine check-up at the dentist reveals more severe gum disease than patients thought they had. A dental history needs to be taken from the patient, in particular details of their tooth brushing routine and technique, as well as the frequency of visits to their dentist. The mouth should be inspected for tell-tale signs of gingival inflammation. A number of gingivitis-specific questions should always be asked of the patient to aid in diagnosis (Table 6.7).

Table 6.7
Specific questions to ask the patient: Gingivitis

Question	Relevance
Tooth brushing technique	Overzealous tooth brushing can lead to bleeding gums and gum recession. Make sure the patient is not 'over cleaning' their teeth. An electric tooth brush might be helpful for people who apply too much force when brushing teeth
Bleeding gums	Gums that bleed without exposure to trauma and is unexplained or unprovoked need referral to exclude underlying pathology

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Gingivitis

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Foul taste associated with gum bleeding Loose teeth	Suspect periodontitis
Spontaneous gum bleeding	Suspect periodontitis or more sinister pathology
Signs of systemic illness	Indicator of more serious underlying pathology

Clinical features of gingivitis

Gingivitis is characterised by swelling and reddening of the gums, which bleed easily with slight trauma, for example when brushing teeth. Plaque might be visible; especially on teeth that are difficult to reach when tooth brushing. Halitosis might also be present.

Conditions to eliminate

Periodontitis

If gingivitis is left untreated it will progress into periodontitis. Symptoms are similar to gingivitis but the patient will experience spontaneous bleeding, taste disturbances, halitosis and difficulty while eating. Periodontal pockets might be visible and the patient might complain of loose teeth. Referral to a dentist is needed for evaluation and removal of tartar.

Medicine-induced gum bleeding

Medicines such as warfarin, heparin and NSAIDs might produce gum bleeding. It is also worth noting that a number of medicines can cause gum hypertrophy, notably phenytoin and ciclosporin. It has also been seen in patients taking nifedipine.

Spontaneous bleeding

A number of conditions can produce spontaneous gum bleeding, for example agranulocytosis and leukaemia. Other symptoms should be present, for example, progressive fatigue, weakness and signs of systemic illness such as fever. Immediate referral to the GP is needed.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Put simply, there is no substitute for good oral hygiene. Prevention of plaque build-up is the key to healthy gums and teeth. Twice daily brushing is recommended to maintain oral hygiene at adequate levels. Brushing teeth, with a fluoride toothpaste, to prevent tooth decay, should preferably take place after eating. Flossing is recommended, three times a week, to access areas that a toothbrush might miss. A Cochrane review (Robinson et al 2005) concluded that powered tooth brushes (with rotation oscillation action – where brush heads rotate in one direction and then the other) are more effective than manual brushing at plaque removal.

There is a plethora of oral hygiene products marketed to the public. These products should be reserved for established gingivitis or in those patients who have poor tooth-brushing technique.

Mouthwashes contain chlorhexidine, hexetidine and hydrogen peroxide. Of these, chlorhexidine in concentrations of either 0.1 or 0.2% has been proven the most effective antibacterial in reducing plaque formation and gingivitis (Ernst et al 1998). In clinical trials it has been shown to be consistently more effective than placebo and comparator medicines, and there appears to be no difference in effect between concentrations. It has even been used as a positive control.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used for gingivitis reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 6.8; useful tips relating to products for oral care are given in Hints and Tips Box 6.3.

All mouthwashes, have minimal side effects and can be used by all patient groups. They are rinsed around

Table 6.8
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for gingivitis

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Chlorhexidine	>12 years	Staining of teeth and tongue. Mild irritation	None	None	OK
Hexetidine	>6 years	Mild irritation or numbness of tongue		None	OK
Hydrogen peroxide		Mucosal irritation, but rare			

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 6.3: IODINE MOUTHWASH

Dental flossing	Correct technique is important otherwise gums can be traumatised. A piece of floss about eight inches long should be wrapped around the ends of the middle fingers of each hand leaving two to three inches between the first finger and thumb. The floss should be placed between two teeth and curved in to a 'C' shape around one tooth and slid up between the gum and tooth until resistance is felt then moved vertically up and down several times to remove plaque
Using fluoride	Fluoride does reduce dental caries. Drinking water in some parts of the UK contains measurable concentrations of fluoride. Therefore fluoride toothpastes or fluoride supplementation is not needed. However, most people in Britain require fluoride supplementation which is normally through toothpaste. Most packs of toothpaste state how many parts per million of fluoride the toothpaste contains; 500 ppm is a low level, 1000-1500 ppm is a high level. A low-dose toothpaste should be used for children under 7 to avoid dental fluorosis which causes tooth discoloration Oral fluoride supplements can also be given where fluoride in water is less than 0.7 parts per million. (see BNF for dosing)

the mouth between 30 seconds and 1 minute then spat out.

Chlorhexidine gluconate (e.g. Corsodyl 0.2%, Eludril 0.1%)

The standard dose for adults and children over 12 years old is 10 mL twice a day. Although it is free from side-effects, patients should be warned that prolonged use may stain the tongue and teeth brown. This can be reduced or removed by brushing teeth before use. If this fails to remove the staining then it can be removed by a dentist. Corsodyl is also available as a spray (0.2%) and gel (1%) and used twice a day.

Hexetidine (Oraldene)

Adults and children over 6 years of age should use a 15 mL dose two or three times a day.

Hydrogen peroxide (e.g. Peroxyl)

Adults and children over 6 years of age should use 10 mL rinsed around the mouth up to four times a day.

References

Ernst CP, Prockl K, Willershausen B. The effectiveness and side effects of 0.1% and 0.2% chlorhexidine mouthrinses: a clinical study. Quintessence Int 1998;29:443–8.

Robinson P, Deacon SA, Deery C, et al. Manual versus powered toothbrushing for oral health. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2005, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD002281. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002281.pub2.

Further reading

Brecx M, Brownstone E, MacDonald L, et al. Efficacy of Listerine, Meridol and chlorhexidine mouthrinses as supplements to regular tooth cleaning measures. J Clin Periodontol 1992;19:202–7.

Hase JC, Ainamo J, Etemadzadeh H, et al. Plaque formation and gingivitis after mouthrinsing with 0.2% delmopinol hydrochloride, 0.2% chlorhexidine digluconate and placebo for 4 weeks, following an initial professional tooth cleaning. J Clin Periodontol 1995;22:533–9.
Jones CM, Blinkhorn AS, White E. Hydrogen peroxide, the effect on plaque and gingivitis when used in an oral irrigator. Clin Prev Dent 1990;12:15–8.
Kelly M. Adult Dental Health Survey: Oral Health in the United Kingdom 1998. London: TSO; 2000.
Lang NP, Hase JC, Grassi M, et al. Plaque formation and gingivitis after supervised mouthrinsing with 0.2% delmopinol hydrochloride, 0.2% chlorhexidine digluconate and placebo for 6 months. Oral Dis 1998;4:105–13.
Maruniak J, Clark WB, Walker CB, et al. The effect of 3 mouthrinses on plaque and gingivitis development. J Clin Periodontol 1992;19:19–23.

Web sites

The British Dental Association: http://www.bda.org/
The British Fluoridation Society: http://www.bfsweb.org/
The British Dental Health Foundation: http://www.dentalhealth.org.uk/
The American Academy of Periodontology: http://www.perio.org/

Dyspepsia

Background

Confusion surrounds the terminology associated with upper abdominal symptoms and the term dyspepsia is used by different authors to mean different things. It is therefore an umbrella term generally used by healthcare professionals to refer to a group of upper abdominal symptoms that arise from five main conditions:

- non-ulcer dyspepsia/functional dyspepsia (indigestion)
- gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD, heartburn)
- gastritis
- duodenal ulcers
- gastric ulcers.

These five conditions represent 90% of dyspepsia cases presented to the GP.

In August 2004, The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) issued clinical guidance on the management of dyspepsia in adults in primary care (see web sites at end of section). This guidance has specific information on pharmacist management of dyspepsia. This is still current (July 2012) and specific reference is made to this guidance.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of dyspepsia is unknown. This is largely because of the number of people who self-medicate or do not report mild symptoms to their GP. However, it is clear that dyspepsia is extremely common. Between 25 and 40% of the general population in Western society are reported to suffer from dyspepsia and virtually everyone at some point in their lives will experience an episode. Estimates suggest that 10% of people suffer on a weekly basis and that 5% of all GP consultations are for dyspepsia. The prevalence of dyspepsia is modestly higher in women than men.

Aetiology

The aetiology of dyspepsia differs depending on its cause. Decreased muscle tone leads to lower oesophageal sphincter incompetence (often as a result of medicines or overeating) and is the principal cause of GORD. Increased acid production results in inflammation of the stomach (gastritis) and is usually attributable to *Helicobacter pylori* infection, or acute alcohol indigestion. The presence of *H. pylori* is central to duodenal and gastric ulceration – *H. pylori* is present in 95% of duodenal ulcers and 80% of gastric ulcers. The exact mechanism by which it causes ulceration is still unclear but the bacteria does produce toxins that stimulate the inflammatory cascade. Increasingly common are medicine induced ulcers, most notably NSAIDs and low-dose aspirin.

Finally, when no specific cause can be found for a patient's symptoms the complaint is said to be non-ulcer dyspepsia. (Some authorities do not advocate the use of this term, preferring the term 'functional dyspepsia'.)

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Overwhelmingly, patients who present with dyspepsia are likely to be suffering from GORD, gastritis or non-ulcer dyspepsia (Table 6.9). Research has shown that even those patients who meet NICE guidelines for endoscopical investigation are found to have either gastritis/hiatus hernia (30%), oesophagitis (10–17%) or no abnormal findings (30%). It has also been reported that a medical practitioner with an average list size will only see one new case of oesophageal cancer and one new case of stomach cancer every four years. Despite these statistics, a thorough medical and drug history should be taken to enable the community pharmacist to rule out serious pathology. ALARM symptoms (see Trigger points for referral), which would warrant further investigation are surprisingly common and it is important that patients exhibiting these symptoms are referred. A number of dyspepsia specific

questions should always be asked of the patient to aid in diagnosis (Table 6.10).

Clinical features of dyspepsia

Patients with dyspepsia present with a range of symptoms commonly involving:

- vague abdominal discomfort (aching) above the umbilicus associated with belching
- bloating
- flatulence
- a feeling of fullness
- nausea and/or vomiting
- heartburn.

Although, dyspeptic symptoms are a poor predictor of disease severity or underlying pathology, retrosternal heartburn is the classic symptom of GORD.

Table 6.9
Causes of upper GI symptoms and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Non-ulcer dyspepsia
Unlikely	Medicine induced, peptic ulcers, irritable bowel syndrome
Very unlikely	Gastric and oesophageal cancers, atypical angina

Conditions to eliminate

Unlikely causes

Peptic ulceration

Ruling out peptic ulceration is probably the main consideration for community pharmacists when assessing patients with symptoms of dyspepsia. Ulcers are classed as either gastric or duodenal. They occur most commonly in patients aged between 30 and 50, although patients over the age

Table 6.10
Specific questions to ask the patient: Dyspepsia

Question	Relevance
Age	The incidence of dyspepsia decreases with advancing age and therefore young adults are likely to suffer from dyspepsia with no specific pathologic condition, unlike patients over 50 years of age, in which a specific pathologic condition becomes more common
Location	Dyspepsia is experienced as pain above the umbilicus and centrally located (epigastric area). Pain below the umbilicus will not be due to dyspepsia Pain experienced behind the sternum (breastbone) is likely to be heartburn If the patient can point to a specific area of the abdomen then it is unlikely to be dyspepsia
Nature of pain	Pain associated with dyspepsia is described as aching or discomfort. Pain described as gnawing, sharp or stabbing is unlikely to be dyspepsia
Radiation	Pain that radiates to other areas of the body is indicative of more serious pathology and the patient must be referred. The pain might be cardiovascular in origin, especially if the pain is felt down the inside aspect of the left arm
Severity	Pain described as debilitating or severe must be referred to exclude more serious conditions
Associated symptoms	Persistent vomiting with or without blood is suggestive of ulceration or even cancer and must be referred Black and tarry stools indicate a bleed in the GI tract and must be referred
Aggravating or relieving factors	Pain shortly after eating (1 to 3 hours) and relieved by food or antacids are classic symptoms of ulcers Symptoms of dyspepsia are often brought on by certain types of food, for example caffeine containing products and spicy food
Social history	Bouts of excessive drinking are commonly implicated in dyspepsia. Likewise, eating food on the move or too quickly is often the cause of the symptoms. A person's job is often a good clue to whether these are contributing to their symptoms

of 60 account for 80% of deaths even though they only account for 15% of cases. Typically the patient will have well localised mid-epigastric pain described as 'constant', 'annoying' or 'gnawing/boring'. In gastric ulcers the pain comes on whenever the stomach is empty, usually 30 minutes after eating and is generally relieved by antacids or food and aggravated by alcohol and caffeine. Gastric ulcers are also more commonly associated with weight loss and GI bleeds than duodenal ulcers. Patients can experience weight loss of 5 to 10 kg and although this could indicate carcinoma, especially in people aged over 40, on investigation a benign gastric ulcer is found most of the time. NSAID use is associated with a three- to fourfold increase in gastric ulcers.

Duodenal ulcers tend to be more consistent in symptom presentation. Pain occurs 2 to 3 hours after eating and pain that wakes a person at night is highly suggestive of duodenal ulcer. If ulcers are suspected referral to the GP is necessary as peptic ulcers can only be conclusively diagnosed by endoscopy.

Medicine-induced dyspepsia

A number of medicines can cause gastric irritation leading to or provoking GI discomfort or they can decrease oesophageal sphincter tone resulting in reflux. Aspirin and NSAIDs are very often associated with dyspepsia and can affect up to 25% of patients. Table 6.11 lists other medicines commonly implicated in causing dyspepsia.

Irritable bowel syndrome

Patients younger than 45, who have uncomplicated dyspepsia and also lower abdominal pain and altered bowel habits are likely to have irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). For further details on IBS see page 168.

Very unlikely causes

Gastric carcinoma

Gastric carcinoma is the third most common GI malignancy after colorectal and pancreatic cancer. However, only 2% of patients who are referred by their GP for an endoscopy have malignancy. It is therefore a rare condition and community pharmacists are extremely unlikely to encounter a patient with carcinoma. One or more ALARM symptoms should be present plus symptoms such as nausea and vomiting.

Oesophageal carcinoma

In its early stages, oesophageal carcinoma might go unnoticed. Over time, however, as the oesophagus becomes constricted, patients will complain of difficulty in swallowing and experience a sensation of food sticking in the oesophagus. As the disease progresses weight loss becomes prominent despite the patient maintaining a good appetite.

Atypical angina

Not all cases of angina have classical textbook presentation of pain in the retrosternal area with radiation to the neck, back or left shoulder that is precipitated by temperature changes or exercise. Patients can complain of dyspepsia-like symptoms and feel generally unwell. These symptoms might be brought on by a heavy meal. In such cases antacids will fail to relieve symptoms and referral is needed.

Figure 6.10 will aid differentiation of the causes of dyspepsia.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Dyspepsia

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
ALARM signs and symptoms Anaemia Loss of weight Anorexia Recent onset of progressive symptoms Melaena, dysphagia and haematemesis	Symptoms requiring further investigation
Pain described as severe, debilitating or that wakes the patient in the night Persistent vomiting	Suggests ulceration
Referred pain	Possible cardiovascular cause

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

In accordance with NICE guidelines the group of patients that should be treated by pharmacists are classed as having 'uninvestigated dyspepsia' (i.e. those that have not had endoscopical investigation). OTC treatment options consist of antacids, H_2 antagonists and proton pump inhibitors (PPIs). Before treatment is instigated lifestyle advice should be given where appropriate. Although there is no strong evidence that dietary changes will lessen dyspepsia symptoms, a general healthier lifestyle will have wider health

Table 6.11
Medicines that commonly cause dyspepsia

Antibiotics, e.g. macrolides and tetracyclines
Anticoagulants
ACE inhibitors
Alcohol (in excess)
Bisphosphonates
Calcium antagonists
Iron
Metformin
Metronidazole
Nitrates
Oestrogens
Potassium supplements
SSRIs
Sibutramine
Steroids
Theophylline

ACE, angiotensin-converting enzyme; SSRI, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor.

benefits. The patient should be assessed in terms of diet and physical activity:

1. Move to a lower fat diet
2. Alcohol intake to recommended levels (14 and 21 units/week for women and men respectively)
3. Smoking cessation
4. Decrease weight
5. Reduce caffeine intake

It might also be possible to identify factors that precipitate or worsen symptoms. Commonly implicated foods that precipitate dyspepsia are spicy or fatty food, caffeine, chocolate and alcohol. Bending is also said to worsen symptoms.

Antacids

Antacids have been used for many decades to treat dyspepsia and have proven efficacy in neutralising stomach acid. However, the neutralising capacity of each antacid varies dependent on the metal salt used. In addition, the solubility of each metal salt differs, which affects their onset and duration of action. Sodium and potassium salts are the most highly soluble, which makes them quick but short acting. Magnesium and aluminium salts are less soluble so have a slower onset but greater duration of action. Calcium salts have the advantage of being quick acting yet have a prolonged action.

It is therefore commonplace for manufacturers to combine two or more antacid ingredients together to ensure a quick onset (generally sodium salts e.g. sodium bicarbonate) and prolonged action (aluminium, magnesium or calcium salts).

Alginates

For patients suffering from GORD an alginate product should be first-line treatment. When in contact with gastric acid the alginate precipitates out, forming a sponge-like matrix that floats on top of the stomach contents. Alginate preparations are also commonly combined with antacids to help neutralise stomach acid. In clinical trials alginate-containing products have demonstrated superior symptom control compared to placebo and antacids. However, PPIs and H_2 antagonists do have superior efficacy to alginates.

H_2 antagonists

Two H_2 antagonists are currently available OTC in the UK; ranitidine and famotidine. Cimetidine was also available OTC but withdrawn by the manufacturer and nizatidine has exemption from POM control but currently there is no marketed product.

H_2 antagonists are effective at POM doses but OTC licensed indications use lower doses. The question is, at these lower doses are they still effective? There is a paucity of publicly available trial data supporting their use at non-prescription doses. Famotidine appears to have the greatest body of accessible trial data. A number of trials have been conducted in patients suffering from heartburn and who regularly self-medicate with antacids. Famotidine was shown to be more effective than placebo and equally effective to antacids. No trials involving ranitidine could be found on public databases that involved patients taking OTC doses.

However, the inhibitory effects of OTC doses of ranitidine on gastric acid have been investigated in healthy volunteers. Trials showed conclusively that ranitidine, and its comparator drug famotidine, did significantly raise intragastric pH compared to placebo, although antacids (calcium carbonates) had a significantly quicker onset of action but with shorter duration.

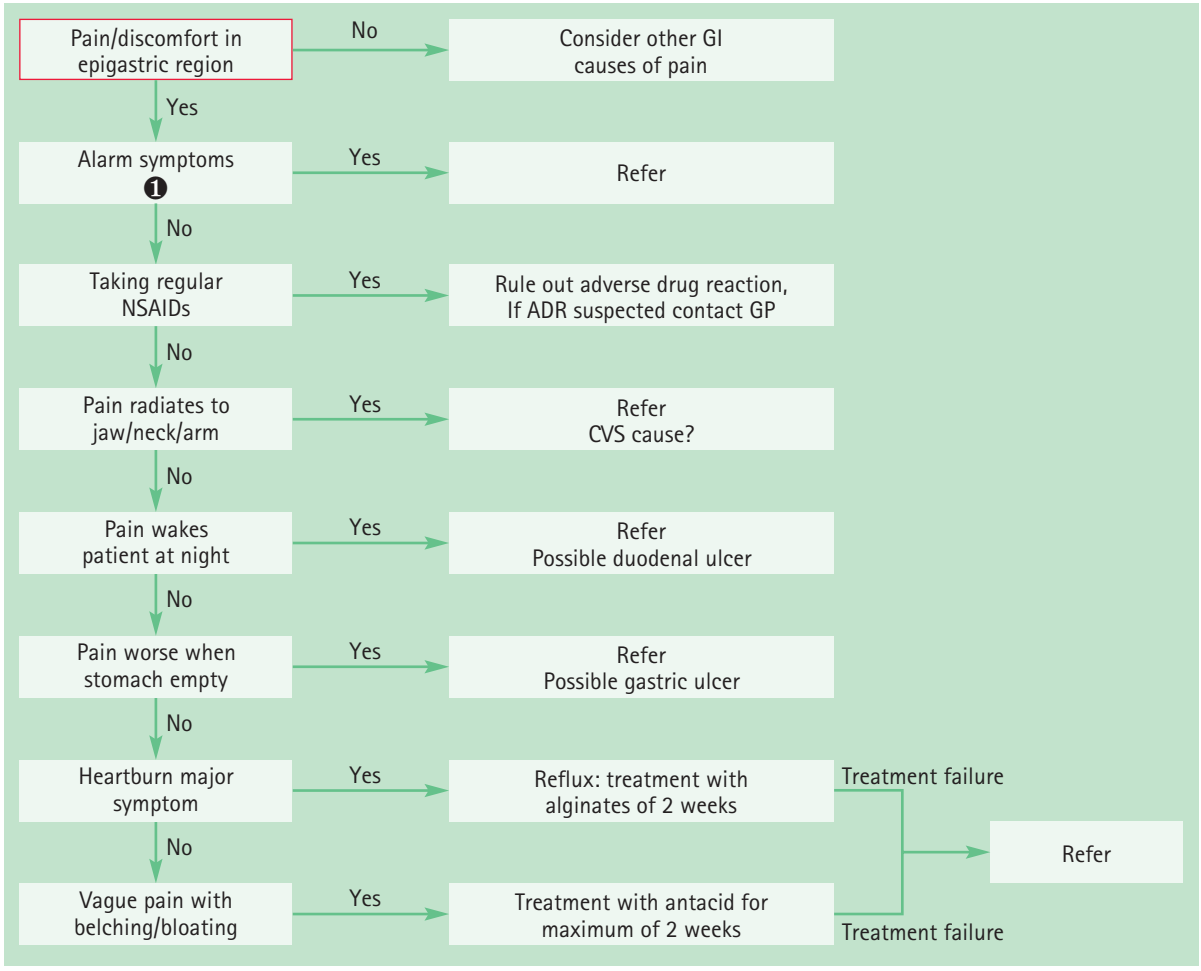


Fig. 6.10 Primer for differential diagnosis of dyspepsia.

❶ **Alarm symptoms**
These include, anaemia (signs can include tiredness and pale complexion), loss of weight, anorexia, dark stools, difficulty in swallowing, vomiting blood.

Proton pump inhibitors

A number of trials have compared PPIs with H_2 antagonists for non-ulcer dyspepsia and GORD-like symptoms (Moayyedi et al 2006; Talley et al 2002; van Pinxteren 2006). Results indicate that PPIs, even at half the standard POM dose, are generally superior to H_2 antagonists in treating dyspeptic symptoms.

Summary

Antacids will work for the majority of people presenting at the pharmacy with mild dyspeptic symptoms. They can be used as first-line therapy unless heartburn predominates then an alginate or alginate/antacid combination can be used. H_2 antagonists appear to be equally effective to antacids but are considerably more expensive. Proton pump inhibitors are the most effective and could be considered first-line, especially for those patients that suffer from moderate to severe or recurrent symptoms. Like H_2 antagonists they are expensive in comparison to simple antacids and might influence patient choice or pharmacist recommendation.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used for dyspepsia reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for

Table 6.12
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for dyspepsia

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Antacids					
Sodium only	>12 years	None	None	Patients with heart disease	OK
Calcium only		Constipation	Tetracyclines, quinolones, imidazoles, phenytoin, penicillamine and bisphosphonates	None	OK
Magnesium only		Diarrhoea			
Aluminium only		Constipation			
Alginates	>12 years*	None	None	Patients with heart disease	OK
H_2 antagonists	>16 years	Abdominal pain, diarrhoea, constipation and headache reported but uncommon	None	None	Experience has shown them to be OK. Reported diarrhoea with famotidine during breastfeeding
PPIs–					
Omeprazole	>18 years	Headache, diarrhoea, constipation, nausea and vomiting, abdominal pain, flatulence	Azole antifungals, clopidogrel, diazepam, fluvoxamine, cilostazol	None	Avoid
Rabeprazole		As above plus insomnia	Azole antifungals, atazanavir		

*Certain products can be given to children but dyspepsia unusual in children and it might be prudent to refer such patients to their GP.

over-the-counter medication is discussed and summarised in Table 6.12.

Antacids

The majority of marketed antacids are combination products containing two, three or even four constituents. The rationale for combining different salts together appears to be twofold. First, to ensure the product has quick onset (containing sodium or calcium) and a long duration of action (containing magnesium, aluminium or calcium). Second, to minimise any side effects that might be experienced from the product. For example, magnesium salts tend to cause diarrhoea and aluminium salts constipation, however, if both are combined in the same product then neither side effect is noticed. Useful tips relating to antacids are given in Hints and Tips Box 6.4.

Antacids can affect the absorption of a number of medications via chelation and adsorption. Commonly affected medicines include tetracyclines, quinolones, imidazoles, phenytoin, penicillamine and bisphosphonates. In addition, the absorption of enteric-coated preparations can be affected due to antacids increasing the stomach pH. The majority of these interactions are easily overcome by leaving a minimum gap of 1 hour between the respective doses of each medicine.

Most patient groups can take antacids, although patients on salt-restricted diets (e.g. patients with coronary heart

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 6.4: ANTACIDS

Type of formulation?	Ideally, antacids should be given in the liquid form because the acid-neutralising capacity and speed of onset is greater than that of tablet formulations
Over use of antacids	Misuse and chronic use of antacids will result in significant systemic absorption leading to various unwanted medical conditions. Milk-alkali syndrome has been reported with chronic abuse of calcium containing antacids, as has osteomalacia with aluminium containing products Antacid therapy should ideally not be longer than 2 weeks. If symptoms have not resolved in this time then other treatments and/or evaluation from the GP should be recommended
When is the best time to take antacids?	Antacids should be taken after food because gastric emptying is delayed in the presence of food. This allows antacids to exert their effect for up to 3 hours
Salt (sodium) content	Be aware that some antacid preparations do contain significant amounts of sodium – for example Gaviscon Advance contains 4.6 mmol of sodium per 10 mL. UKMi have produced a document detailing medicines with high sodium content http://www.nelm.nhs.uk/en/NeLM-Area/Evidence/Medicines-Q--A/What-is-the-sodium-content-of-medicines/ (accessed February 18, 2013)
The elderly	Avoid constipating products, as the elderly are prone to constipation
Possible solutions to minimise symptoms	Simple suggestions such as eating less but more often or eating smaller meals might help control symptoms. Avoid eating late at night and lying flat at night – use a pillow to prop the person up

disease) should ideally avoid sodium-containing antacids. In addition, antacids should not be recommended in children because dyspepsia is unusual in children under 12. Indeed, most products are licensed for use only for children aged 12 and over. However, there are a few exceptions (e.g. Acidex, Topal), which have product licences for use in children.

Alginates (e.g. the Gaviscon range)

Products containing alginates are combination preparations that contain an alginate with antacids. They are best given after each main meal and before bedtime, although they can be taken on a when-needed basis. They can be given during pregnancy and breastfeeding and to most patient groups but, as with antacids, patients on salt-restricted diets should ideally avoid sodium-containing alginate preparations. They are reported not to have any side effects or interactions with other medicines.

H_2 antagonists

Sales of H_2 antagonists are restricted to adults and children over the age of 16. They possess no clinically important drug interactions and side effects are rare. Safety concerns were raised on deregulation of H_2 antagonists about the potential to mask serious underlying conditions and the possibility of increased adverse reactions. These fears appear to have been unfounded as follow-up studies and post marketing surveillance has not shown any increase in risk associated with greater availability. Indeed, H_2 antagonists are now available as general sales list medicines. They have been used in pregnancy and breastfeeding, with ranitidine having been used most. Data suggests that there are no significant increases in any major malformations in pregnancy and can be used whilst breastfeeding and manufacturers of OTC products advise patients to speak to the doctor or pharmacist before taking.

Famotidine (PepcidTwo)

The dose for famotidine is 10 mg (one tablet) at the onset of symptoms; however, if symptoms persist an additional dose can be repeated after 1 hour. The maximum dose is 20 mg (two tablets) in 24 hours. A dose can be taken 1 hour prior to consuming food or drink that are known to bring on symptoms. PepcidTwo is a combination of famotidine, calcium carbonate and magnesium hydroxide. The antacid component of the product provides quick onset of action helping to relieve symptoms before famotidine exerts its action, which can take 2 hours.

Ranitidine (e.g. Zantac range, Gavilast and Gavilast P, Ranzac)

Dosing for ranitidine (Zantac 75) is similar to famotidine in that one tablet should be taken straight away but if

symptoms persist then a further tablet should be taken 1 hour later. The maximum dose is 300 mg (four tablets) in 24 hours. The General Sales List versions of ranitidine (Zantac 75 Relief and Ranzac), have slightly different license in that they cannot be used for prevention of heartburn and the maximum dose is only two tablets in 24 hours.

Omeprazole (Zanprol)

Zanprol is licensed for the relief of reflux-like symptoms (e.g. heartburn) associated with acid-related dyspepsia in patients aged over 18 years of age. The initial dose is two 10 mg tablets once daily. Once symptoms improve the dose can be reduced to one tablet (10 mg). If symptoms return then the dose can be stepped back up to 20 mg. Patients should be referred to their GP if symptoms do not resolve in 2 weeks or they need to use omeprazole for more than 4 weeks continuously. Omeprazole can cause a number of common side effects (>1 in 100), which include headache, diarrhoea, constipation, abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting and flatulence. Drug interactions with omeprazole are possible because it is metabolised in the liver by cytochrome P450 isoenzymes. These include 'azole' antifungals (decrease in azole bioavailability), diazepam (enhanced diazepam side effects), fluvoxamine (increased omeprazole levels), cilostazol (increased cilostazol levels – and UK manufacturers advise against co-administration) and clopidogrel (reduced clopidogrel levels). Other interactions listed in the manufacturer's literature include phenytoin and warfarin but their clinical significance appears low.

It appears to be safe in pregnancy and excreted in only small amounts of breast milk and is not contraindicated when used as a POM medicine, however for pharmacy use it is not recommended.

Rabeprazole (Pariet Pharmacy)

The MHRA have recently approved the deregulation of rabeprazole from POM to P. Its product license is very similar to that of omeprazole: it has a license for the short-term symptomatic treatment of GORD-like symptoms (e.g. heartburn) in adults aged 18 and over; if symptoms have not been controlled within 2 weeks or if continuous treatment for more than 4 weeks is required, then the patient should be referred to their doctor; and it should be avoided in pregnant and breastfeeding women. The dose is one 10 mg tablet each day. Side effects commonly seen include insomnia, headaches, dizziness, cough, diarrhea, vomiting, nausea, abdominal pain and constipation. It interacts with oral 'azole' medicines and on theoretical grounds should not be co-administered with atazanavir.

References

Moayyedi P, Soo S, Deeks J, et al. Pharmacological interventions for non-ulcer dyspepsia. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD001960. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001960.pub3.

Talley NJ, Moore MG, Sprogis A, et al. Randomised controlled trial of pantoprazole versus ranitidine for the treatment of uninvestigated heartburn in primary care. Med J Aust 2002;177(8):423–7.

van Pinxteren B, Sigterman KE, Bonis P, Lau J, et al. Short-term treatment with proton pump inhibitors, H2-receptor antagonists and prokinetics for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease-like symptoms and endoscopy negative reflux disease. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2006, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD002095. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002095.pub3.

Further reading

Castell DO, Dalton CB, Becker D, et al. Alginic acid decreases postprandial upright gastroesophageal reflux. Comparison with equal-strength antacid. Dig Dis Sci 1992;37:589–93.

Dowswell T, Neilson JP. Interventions for heartburn in pregnancy. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD007065. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007065.pub2.

Drake D, Hollander D. Neutralizing capacity and cost effectiveness of antacids. Ann Intern Med 1981; 94:215–7.

Feldman M. Comparison of the effects of over-the-counter famotidine and calcium carbonate antacid on postprandial gastric acid. A randomized controlled trial. JAMA 1996;275:1428–31.

Halter F. Determination of neutralization capacity of antacids in gastric juice. Z Gastroenterol 1983;21: S33–40.

Netzer P, Brabetz-Hofliger A, Brundler R, et al. Comparison of the effect of the antacid Rennie versus low dose H2 receptor antagonists (ranitidine, famotidine) on intragastric acidity. Ailment Pharmacol Ther 1998;12:337–42.

Reilly TG, Singh S, Cottrell J, et al. Low dose famotidine and rantidine as single post-prandial doses: a three-period placebo-controlled comparative trial. Ailment Pharmacol Ther 1996;10:749–55.

Smart HL, Atkinson M. Comparison of a dimethicone/antacid (Asilone gel) with an alginate/antacid (Gaviscon liquid) in the management of reflux oesophagitis. J R Soc Med 1990;83:554–6.

Web sites

NICE Guidance on management of dyspepsia in primary care: http://publications.nice.org.uk/dyspepsia-cg17

British Society of Gastroenterology: http://www.bsg.org.uk/

CORE – research charity: http://www.corecharity.org.uk/

American Gastroenterological Association: http://www.gastro.org/

Diarrhoea

Background

Diarrhoea can be defined as an increase in frequency of the passage of soft or watery stools relative to the usual bowel habit for that individual. It is not a disease but a sign of an underlying problem such as an infection or gastrointestinal disorder. It can be classed as acute (less than 7 days), persistent (more than 14 days) or chronic (lasting longer than a month). Most patients will present to the pharmacy with a self-diagnosis of acute diarrhoea. It is necessary to confirm this self-diagnosis because patients' interpretations of their symptoms might not match up with the medical definition of diarrhoea.

Table 6.13
Causes of diarrhoea and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Viral and bacterial infection
Likely	Medicine induced
Unlikely	Irritable bowel syndrome, giardiasis, faecal impaction
Very unlikely	Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, colorectal cancer, malabsorption syndromes

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence and epidemiology of diarrhoea is not well known. This is probably due to the number of patients who do not seek care or who self-medicate. However, acute diarrhoea does generate high GP consultation rates. It has been reported that children under the age of 5 years have between one and three bouts of diarrhoea per year and adults, on average, just under one episode of diarrhoea per year. Many of these cases are thought to be food related.

Aetiology

The aetiology of diarrhoea depends on its cause. Acute gastroenteritis, the most common cause of diarrhoea in all age groups, is usually viral in origin. In the UK rotavirus and small round structured virus (SRSV) are the most common identified causes of gastroenteritis in children, and in adults, *Campylobacter* followed by rotavirus are the most common. Other pathogens identified include *Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*; viruses such as adenovirus; and the protozoa *Cryptosporidium* and *Giardia*. Viral causes tend to cause diarrhoea by blunting of the villi of the upper small intestine decreasing the absorptive surface. Bacterial causes of diarrhoea are normally a result of eating contaminated food or drink and cause diarrhoea by a number of mechanisms. For example, enterotoxigenic *E. coli* produce enterotoxins that affect gut function with secretion and loss of fluids; enteropathogenic *E. coli* interferes with normal mucosal function; and enteroinvasive *E. coli*, *Shigella* and *Salmonella* species cause injury to the mucosa of the small intestine and deeper tissues.

Other organisms, for example *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Bacillus cereus*, produce preformed enterotoxins which on ingestion stimulate the active secretion of electrolytes into the intestinal lumen.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The most common causes of diarrhoea are viral or bacterial infection (Table 6.13) and the community pharmacist can appropriately manage the vast majority of cases. The main priority is identifying those patients that need referral and how quickly they need to be referred. Dehydration is the main complicating factor, especially in the very young (see page 297) and very old. A number of diarrhoea specific questions should always be asked of the patient to aid in diagnosis (Table 6.14).

Clinical features of acute diarrhoea

Symptoms are normally rapid in onset, with the patient having a history of prior good health. Nausea and vomiting might be present prior to or during the bout of acute diarrhoea. Abdominal cramping, flatulence and tenderness is also often present. If rotavirus is the cause the patient might also experience viral prodromal symptoms such as cough and cold. Acute infective diarrhoea is usually watery in nature with no blood present. Complete resolution of symptoms should be observed in 2 to 4 days. However, diarrhoea caused by the rotavirus can persist for longer.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Medicine-induced diarrhoea

Many medicines (both POM and OTC) can induce diarrhoea (Table 6.15). If medication is suspected as the cause of the

Table 6.14
Specific questions to ask the patient: Diarrhoea

Question	Relevance
Frequency and nature of the stools	Patients with acute self-limiting diarrhoea will be passing watery stools more frequently than normal Diarrhoea associated with blood and mucus (dysentery) requires referral to eliminate invasive infection such as *Shigella*, *Campylobacter*, *Salmonella* or *E. coli* O157 Bloody stools is also associated with conditions such as inflammatory bowel disease
Periodicity	A history of recurrent diarrhoea of no known cause should be referred for further investigation
Duration	A person who presents with a history of chronic diarrhoea should be referred. The most frequent causes of chronic diarrhoea are IBS, inflammatory disease and colon cancer
Onset of symptoms	Ingestion of bacterial pathogens can give rise to symptoms in a matter of a few hours (toxin producing bacteria) after eating contaminated food or up to 3 days later. It is therefore important to ask about food consumption over the last few days, establish if anyone else ate the same food and to check the status of his or her health
Timing of diarrhoea	Patients who experience diarrhoea first thing in the morning might well have underlying pathology such as IBS Nocturnal diarrhoea is often associated with inflammatory bowel disease
Recent change of diet	Changes in diet can cause changes to bowel function, for example when away on holiday. If the person has recently been to a non-Western country then giardiasis is a possibility
Signs of dehydration	Mild (<5%) dehydration can be vague but include tiredness, anorexia, nausea and light-headedness Moderate (5 to 10%) dehydration is characterised by dry mouth, sunken eyes, decreased urine output, moderate thirst and decreased skin turgor (pinch test of 1 to 2 seconds or longer)

diarrhoea the GP should be contacted and an alternative suggested.

Unlikely causes

Irritable bowel syndrome

Patients younger than 45 with lower abdominal pain and a history of alternating diarrhoea and constipation are likely to have IBS. For further details on IBS see page 168.

Giardiasis

Giardiasis, a protozoan infection of the small intestine, is contracted through drinking contaminated drinking water. It is an uncommon cause of diarrhoea in Western society. However, with more people taking exotic foreign holidays, enquiry about recent travel should be made. The patient will present with watery and foul-smelling diarrhoea accompanied with symptoms of bloating, flatulence and epigastric pain. If giardiasis is suspected the patient must be referred to the GP quickly for confirmation and appropriate antibiotic treatment.

Faecal impaction

Faecal impaction is most commonly seen in the elderly and those with poor mobility. Patients might present with continuous soiling as a result of liquid passing around hard stools and mistakenly believe they have diarrhoea. On questioning, the patient might describe the passage of regular poorly formed hard stools that are difficult to pass. Referral is needed as manual removal of the faeces is often needed.

Very unlikely causes

Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease

Both conditions are characterised by chronic inflammation at various sites in the GI tract and follow periods of remission and relapse. They can affect any age group, although peak incidence is between 20 and 30 years of age. In mild cases of both conditions, diarrhoea is one of the major presenting symptoms, although blood in the stool is usually present. Patients might also find that they have urgency, nocturnal diarrhoea and early morning rushes. In the acute phase patients will appear unwell and have malaise.

Table 6.15
Examples of medicines known to cause diarrhoea (defined as very common [>10%] or common [1–10%])

α-blocker	Prazosin
ACE inhibitor	Lisinopril, perindopril
Angiotensin receptor blocker	Telmisartan
Acetylcholinesterase inhibitor	Donepezil, galantamine, rivastigmine
Antacid	Magnesium salts
Antibacterial	All
Antidiabetic	Metformin, acarbose
Antidepressant	SSRIs, clomipramine, venlafaxine
Anti-emetic	Aprepitant, dolasetron
Anti-epileptic	Carbamazepine, oxcarbamazepine, tiagabine, zonisamide, pregabalin, levetiracetam
Antifungal	Caspofungin, fluconazole, flucytosine, nystatin (in large doses), terbinafine, voriconazole
Antimalarial	Mefloquine
Antiprotozoal	Metronidazole, sodium stibogluconate
Antipsychotic	Aripiprazole
Antiviral	Abacavir, emtricitabine, stavudine, tenofovir, zalcitabine, zidovudine, amprenavir, atazanavir, indinavir, lopinavir, nelfinavir, saquinavir, efavirenz, ganciclovir, valganciclovir, adefovir, oseltamivir, ribavirin, fosamprenavir
Beta-blocker	Bisoprolol, carvedilol, nebivolol
Bisphosphonate	Alendronic acid, disodium etidronate, ibandronic acid, risedronate, sodium clodronate, disodium pamidronate, tiludronic acid
Cytokine inhibitor	Adalimumab, infliximab
Cytotoxic	All classes of cytotoxics
Dopaminergic	Levodopa, entacapone
Growth hormone antagonist	Pegvisomant
Immunosuppressant	Ciclosporin, mycophenolate, leflunomide
NSAID	All
Ulcer healing	Proton pump inhibitors
Vaccines	Pediacel (5 vaccines in 1), haemophilus, meningococcal
Miscellaneous	Calcitonin, strontium ranelate, colchicines, dantrolene, olsalazine, anagrelide, nicotinic acid, pancreatin, eplerenone, acamprosate

Reproduced with permission from R Walker and C Whittlesea, Clinical pharmacy and therapeutics, 5th edition, 2011, Churchill Livingstone.

Malabsorption syndromes

Lactose intolerance is often diagnosed in infants under 1 year old. In addition to more frequent loose bowel movements symptoms such as fever, vomiting, perianal excoriation and a failure to gain weight might occur.

Coeliac disease has a bimodal incidence: first, in early infancy when cereals become a major constituent of the diet, and second, during the fourth and fifth decades. Steatorrhoea (fatty stools) is common and might be observed by the patient as frothy or floating stools in the toilet pan. Bloating and weight loss in the presence of a normal appetite might also be observed.

Colorectal cancer

Any middle-aged patient presenting with a longstanding change of bowel habit must be viewed with suspicion. Persistent diarrhoea accompanied by a feeling that the bowel has not really been emptied is suggestive of neoplasm. This is especially true if weight loss is also present.

Figure 6.11 will aid differentiation of diarrhoeal cases that require referral.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Diarrhoea

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Change in bowel (long term) habit in patients over 50	Sinister pathology?
Diarrhoea following recent travel to tropical or subtropical climate	Giardiasis?
Duration longer than 2 to 3 days in children and elderly	At risk of dehydration and associated complications
Patients unable to drink fluids (Signs of dehydration)	
Presence of blood or mucus in the stool	Outside scope of community pharmacist
Suspected faecal impaction in the elderly	
Severe abdominal pain	
Steatorrhoea	Malabsorption syndrome?

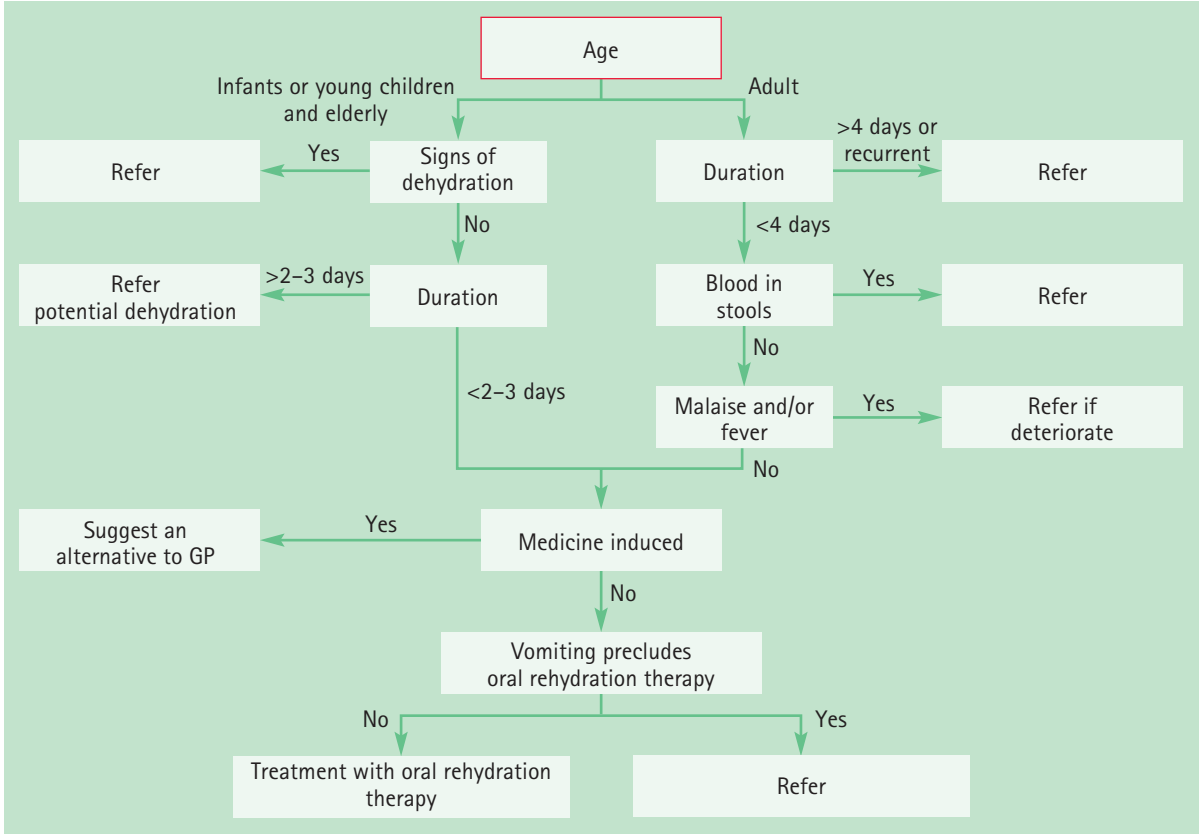


Fig. 6.11 Primer for differential diagnosis of diarrhoea.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Acute infectious diarrhoea still remains one of the leading causes of death in developing countries, despite advances in its treatment. In developed and Western countries diarrhoeal disease is primarily of economic and socially disruptive significance. Goals of OTC treatment in the UK are therefore concentrated on relief of symptoms.

Before considering treatment it is important to stress to patients the importance of hand washing. Interventions that promote hand washing can reduce diarrhoea episodes by about one-third.

Oral rehydration solution (ORS)

ORS represents one of the major advances in medicine. It has proved to be a simple highly effective treatment, which has decreased mortality and morbidity associated with acute diarrhoea in developing countries. The formula recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO) contains glucose (75 mmol/L), sodium (75 mmol/L), potassium (20 mmol/L), chloride (65 mmol/L) and citrate (10 mmol/L) in an almost isotonic fluid. Until recently, the WHO oral rehydration solution contained 90 mmol/L sodium but a systematic review (Hahn et al 2002) concluded that ORS with a reduced osmolarity compared to the standard WHO formula were associated with fewer complications in children with mild to moderate diarrhoea. Based on this, and other findings, the WHO oral rehydration solution now has a reduced osmolarity of 245 mm/L, which contains 75 mmol of sodium. A number of similar preparations are available commercially in the form of sachets that require reconstitution in clean water before use; however, commercially available solutions in the UK contain lower sodium concentrations as diarrhoea tends to be isotonic, and therefore replacement of large quantities of sodium is less important.

Rice-based ORS

In many developing countries a glucose substitute was added to electrolytes because of glucose unavailability. These products were found to be quite successful. Clinical trials have subsequently shown rice-based ORS to be highly efficacious, well tolerated and potentially more effective than conventional ORS.

Loperamide

Loperamide is a synthetic opioid analogue and is thought to exert its action via opiate receptors slowing intestinal tract time and increasing the capacity of the gut. It has been extensively researched, with many published trials investigating its effectiveness in acute infectious diarrhoea. The majority of well-designed double-blind placebo-controlled trials have consistently shown it to be significantly better than placebo and comparable to diphenoxylate. Loperamide is also available compounded with simeticone. However, there is little evidence of better efficacy in terms of diarrhoeal symptoms with the combination.

Bismuth subsalicylate

Bismuth-containing products have been used for many decades. Its use has declined over time as other products have become more popular. However, bismuth subsalicylate has been shown to be effective in treating traveller's diarrhoea. A review paper by Steffen (1990) concluded that bismuth subsalicylate was clinically superior to placebo, decreasing the number of unformed stools and increasing the number of patients who were symptom free. However, two of the trials reviewed showed bismuth subsalicylate to be significantly slower in symptom resolution than its comparator drug loperamide.

Kaolin and morphine

The constipating side effect of opioid analgesics can be used to treat diarrhoea. However, kaolin and morphine products have no evidence of efficacy and should not be recommended. It remains a popular home remedy, especially with the elderly.

Rotavirus vaccine

In 2006, two new oral vaccines (Rotarix, and RotaTeq) were licensed by the European Medicines Agency and the US Food and Drug Administration. Clinical trials have shown them to be effective (Soares-Weiser et al 2012).

From 2013, the rotavirus vaccine will be added to the routine UK childhood vaccination schedule.

Summary

Since diarrhoea results in fluid and electrolyte loss it is important to re-establish normal fluid balance and so ORS is first line treatment for all age groups, especially children and the frail elderly. Loperamide is a useful adjunct in reducing the number of bowel movements but should be reserved for those patients who will find it inconvenient to have to go to the toilet.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used for diarrhoea reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in

Table 6.16
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for diarrhoea

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
ORS	Infant upwards	None	None	None	OK
Loperamide	>12 years	Abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, tiredness	None	None	OK
Bismuth	>16 years	Black stools or tongue.	Quinolone antibiotics	None	Avoid if possible
Morphine salts	>12 years	None	None	None	OK

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 6.5: DIARRHOEA

Reconstitution of ORS	All proprietary sachets require 200 mL of water per sachet to reconstitute Different brands come in different flavours: • Dioralyte – blackcurrant and citrus • Diorolyte Relief – apricot, raspberry or blackcurrant • Electrolade – banana, blackcurrant, lemon and lime and orange Once reconstituted ORS must be stored in the fridge and drunk within 24 hours Note Oralyte is sold as a ready to drink product and requires no reconstitution.
Rough guidelines for referral for children	<1 year old: refer if duration >1 day <3 years old: refer if duration >2 days >3 years old: refer if duration >3 days
Kaolin and morphine	Subject to abuse. Store out of sight
Alternative to ORS	Patients can be advised to increase their intake of fluids, particularly fruit juices with their glucose and potassium content, and soups because of their sodium chloride content

Table 6.16; useful tips relating to patients presenting with diarrhoea are given in Hints and Tips Box 6.5.

ORS (Dioralyte, Dioralyte Relief (rice-based), Electrolade, Oralyte)

ORS can be given to all patient groups, has no side effects or drug interactions. The volume of solution given is dependent on how much fluid is lost. As infants and the elderly are more at risk of developing dehydration they should be encouraged to drink as much ORS as possible. In adults, 2 L of ORS should be given in the first 24 hours, followed by unrestricted normal fluids with 200 mL of rehydration solution per loose stool or vomit. The solution is best sipped every 5–10 min rather than drunk in large quantities less frequently. In infants, 1 to 1½ times the usual feed volume should be given.

Loperamide (e.g. Diocalm Ultra, Diah-Limit, Imodium range)

The dose is two capsules immediately, followed by one capsule after each further bout of diarrhoea. It has minimal CNS side effects, although CNS depressant effects and respiratory depression have been reported at high doses. OTC doses are therefore limited to 16 mg a day and cannot be used in children under 12. The excellent safety record of loperamide has seen it granted General Sales List status, although abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, tiredness, drowsiness, dizziness and dry mouth have been reported.

Loperamide is available in a range of formulations, such as dispersible tablets, melt-tabs and liquid.

Bismuth (Pepto-Bismol Liquid 87.6 mg/ 5 mL bismuth subsalicylate and Chewable tablet 262.5 mg)

Pepto-Bismol should only be given to people over the age of 16. The dose is 30 mL or two tablets taken every 30 min to 1 hour when needed, with a maximum of eight doses in 24 hours. Bismuth subsalicylate is well tolerated and has a favourable side-effect profile, although black stools are commonly observed (caused by unabsorbed bismuth compound). Occasional use is not known to cause problems during pregnancy and breastfeeding but the manufacturers state it should not be used. Bismuth can decrease the bioavailability of quinolone antibiotics therefore a minimum 2-hour gap should be left between doses of each medicine.

Morphine (e.g. Kaolin and morphine, Diocalm Dual Action)

Morphine is generally well tolerated at OTC doses, with no side effects reported. The products can be given to all patient groups, including pregnant and breastfeeding women. There are no drug interactions of note. Morphine is available as a non-proprietary product (Kaolin and morphine) and J Collis Browne's products.

References

Soares-Weiser K, MacLehose H, Bergman H, et al. Vaccines for preventing rotavirus diarrhoea: vaccines in use. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2012, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD008521. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD008521.pub2.

Steffen R. Worldwide efficacy of bismuth subsalicylate in the treatment of travelers' diarrhea. Rev Infect Dis 1990;12:S80–86.

Further reading

American Academy of Pediatrics [AAP] Committee on Quality Improvement SoAG. Practice Parameter. The management of acute gastroenteritis in young children. Pediatrics 1996;97:4224–433.

Amery W, Duyck F, Polak J, et al. A multicentre double-blind study in acute diarrhoea comparing loperamide (R 18553) with two common antidiarrhoeal agents and a placebo. Curr Ther Res Clin Exp 1975;17:263–70.

Chassany O, Michaux A, Bergman JF. Drug-induced diarrhoea. Drug Safety 2000;22:53–72.

Cornett JWD, Aspeling RL, Mallegol D. A double blind comparative evaluation of loperamide versus diphenoxylate with atropine in acute diarrhea. Curr Ther Res 1977;21:629–37.

Ejemot-Nwadiaro RI, Ehiri JE, Meremikwu MM, et al. Hand washing for preventing diarrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD004265. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004265.pub2.

Gavin N, Merrick N, Davidson B. Efficacy of glucose-based oral rehydration therapy. Pediatrics 1996;98:45–51.

Hahn S, Kim Y, Garner P. Reduced osmolarity oral rehydration solution for treating dehydration caused by acute diarrhoea in children. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2002, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD002847. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002847.

Islam A, Molla AM, Ahmed MA, et al. Is rice based oral rehydration therapy effective in young infants? Arch Dis Child 1994;71:19–23.

Molla AM, Sarker SA, Hossain M, et al. Rice-powder electrolyte solution as oral-therapy in diarrhoea due to *Vibrio cholerae* and *Escherichia coli*. Lancet 1982;1(8285):1317–9.

Nelemans FA, Zelvelder WG. A double-blind placebo controlled trial of loperamide (Imodium) in acute diarrhea. J Drug Res 1976;2:54–9.

Patra FC, Mahalanabis D, Jalan KN, et al. Is oral rice electrolyte solution superior to glucose electrolyte solution in infantile diarrhoea? Arch Dis Child 1982;57:910–2.

Selby W. Diarrhoea – differential diagnosis. Aust Fam Physician 1990;19:1683–6.

Soares-Weiser K, Goldberg E, Tamimi G, et al. Rotavirus vaccine for preventing diarrhoea. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2004, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD002848. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002848.pub2.

Steffen R. Worldwide efficacy of bismuth subsalicylate in the treatment of travelers' diarrhea. Rev Infect Dis 1990;12:S80–86.

Web sites

National Association for Colitis and Crohn's disease (NACC) – Crohn's and Colitis UK: http://www.nacc.org.uk

Constipation

Background

Constipation, like diarrhoea, means different things to different people. Constipation arises when the patient experiences a reduction in their normal bowel habit accompanied with more difficult defecation and/or hard stools. In Western populations 90% of people defecate between three times a day and once every three days. However, many people still believe that anything other than one bowel movement a day is abnormal.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Constipation is very common. It occurs in all age groups but is especially common in the elderly. It has been

estimated that 25 to 40% of all people over the age of 65 have constipation. The majority of the elderly have normal frequency of bowel movements but strain at stool. This is probably a result of sedentary lifestyle, a decreased fluid intake, poor nutrition, avoidance of fibrous foods and chronic illness. Women are two to three times more likely to suffer from constipation than men and 40% of women in late pregnancy experience constipation.

Aetiology

The normal function of the large intestine is to remove water and various salts from the colon, drying and expulsion of the faeces. Any process that facilitates water resorption will generally lead to constipation. The commonest cause of constipation is an increase in intestinal tract transit time of food which allows greater water resorption from the large bowel leading to harder stools that are more difficult to pass. This is most frequently caused by a deficiency in dietary fibre, a change in lifestyle and/or environment and medication. Occasionally, patients ignore the defecatory reflex as it maybe inconvenient for them to defecate.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The first thing a pharmacist should do is to establish the patient's current bowel habit compared to normal. This should establish if the patient is suffering from constipation. Questioning should then concentrate on determining the cause because constipation is a symptom and not a disease and can be caused by many different conditions. Constipation does not usually have sinister pathology and the commonest cause in the vast majority of non-elderly adults will be a lack of dietary fibre (Table 6.17). However, constipation can be caused by medication and many disease states including neurological disorders (e.g. multiple sclerosis, Parkinson's disease), metabolic and endocrine conditions (diabetes, hypothyroidism) and neoplasm. A number of constipation-specific questions should always be asked of the patient to aid in diagnosis (Table 6.18).

Clinical features of constipation

Besides the inability to defecate, patients might also have abdominal discomfort and bloating. In children, parents

Table 6.17
Causes of constipation and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Eating habits/lifestyle
Likely	Medication
Unlikely	Irritable bowel syndrome, pregnancy, depression, functional disorders (children)
Very unlikely	Colorectal cancer, hypothyroidism

Table 6.18
Specific questions to ask the patient: Constipation

Question	Relevance
Change of diet or routine	Constipation usually has a social or behavioural cause. There will usually be some event that has precipitated the onset of symptoms
Pain on defecation	Associated pain when going to the toilet is usually due to a local anorectal problem. Constipation is often secondary to the suppression of defecation because it induces pain. These cases are best referred for physical examination
Presence of blood	Bright red specks in the toilet or smears on toilet tissue suggest haemorrhoids or a tear in the anal canal (fissure). However, if blood is mixed in the stool (melaena) then referral to the GP is necessary. A stool that appears black and tarry is suggestive of an upper GI bleed
Duration (chronic or recent?)	Constipation lasting 6 weeks or more is said to be chronic. If a patient suffers from longstanding constipation and has been previously seen by the GP then treatment could be given. However, cases of more than 14 days with no identifiable cause or previous investigation by the GP should be referred
Lifestyle changes	Changes in job or marital status can precipitate depressive illness that can manifest with physiological symptoms such as constipation

might also notice the child is more irritable and have a decreased appetite. Specks of blood in the toilet pan might be present and are usually due to straining at stool. In the vast majority of cases blood in the stool does not indicate sinister pathology. Those patients presenting with acute constipation with no other symptoms apart from very small amounts of bright red blood can be managed in the pharmacy, however, if blood loss is substantial (stools appear tarry, red or black) or the patient has other associated symptoms such as malaise, abdominal distension and is over 40 years old then referral is needed.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Medicine-induced constipation

Many medicines are known to cause constipation. Most exert their action by decreasing gut motility, although opioids tend to raise sphincter tone and reduce sensitivity to rectal distension. A detailed medication history should always be sought from the patient and Table 6.19 lists the commonly implicated medicines that cause constipation.

Unlikely causes

Irritable bowel syndrome

Patients younger than 45 with lower abdominal pain and a history of alternating diarrhoea and constipation are likely to have IBS. For further details on IBS see page 168.

Pregnancy

Constipation is common in pregnancy, especially in the third trimester. A combination of increased circulating progestogen, displacement of the uterus against the colon by the fetus, decreased mobility and iron supplementation all contribute to an increased incidence of constipation whilst pregnant. Most patients complain of hard stools rather than a decrease in bowel movements. If a laxative is used a bulk-forming laxative should be recommended.

Depression

Upwards of 20% of the population will suffer from depression at sometime. Many will present with physical as well as emotional symptoms. It has been reported that a third of all patients suffering from depression present with gastrointestinal complaints in a primary care setting. Core symptoms of persistent low mood and loss of interest in most activities should trigger referral.

Functional causes in children

Constipation in children is common and the cause can be varied. Constipation is not normally a result of organic disease but stems from poor diet or a traumatic experience associated with defecation, for example, unwillingness to defecate due to association of prior pain on defecation.

Very unlikely causes

Colorectal cancer

Colorectal carcinomas are rare in patients under the age of 40. However, the incidence of carcinoma increases with increasing age and any patient over the age of 40 presenting for the first time with a marked change in bowel habit should be referred. Sexes appear to be equally affected. The patient might complain of abdominal pain, rectal bleeding and tenesmus. Weight loss – a classical textbook sign of colon cancer – is common but observed only in the latter stages of the disease. Therefore a patient is unlikely to have noticed marked weight loss when visiting a pharmacy early in disease progression.

Hypothyroidism

The signs and symptoms of hypothyroidism are often subtle and insidious in onset. Patients might experience weight gain, lethargy, cold intolerance, coarse hair and dry skin as well as constipation. Hypothyroidism affects ten times more women than men and peak incidence is in the fifth or sixth decade. Constipation is often less pronounced than lethargy and cold intolerance.

Figure 6.12 will aid differentiation between common causes of constipation and more serious causes.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral:

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Pain on defecation causing patient to suppress defactory reflex	Check for anal fissure
Patients aged over 40 years old with sudden change in bowel habits with no obvious cause	Danger symptom for rectal carcinoma
Greater than 14 days' duration with no identifiable cause	Suspect underlying cause that requires fuller investigation by GP
Tiredness	Check for anaemia or thyroid dysfunction

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

For uncomplicated constipation, non-drug treatment is advocated as first-line treatment for all patient groups as

Table 6.19
Examples of medicines known to cause constipation (frequency defined as very common [>10%] or common [1–10%])

α-blocker	Prazosin
Antacid	Aluminium and calcium salts
Anticholinergic	Trihexyphenidyl, hyoscine, oxybutynin, procyclidine, tolterodine
Antidepressant	Tricyclics, SSRIs, reboxetine, venlafaxine, duloxetine, mirtazapine
Anti-emetic	Palonosetron, dolasetron, aprepitant
Anti-epileptic	Carbamazepine, oxcarbazepine
Antipsychotic	Phenothiazines, haloperidol, pimozide and atypical antipsychotics such as amisulpride, aripiprazole, olanzapine, quetiapine, risperidone, zotepine, clozapine
Antiviral	Foscarnet
Beta-blocker	Oxprenolol, bisoprolol, nebivolol; other βετα-blockers tend to cause constipation more rarely
Bisphosphonate	Alendronic acid
CNS stimulant	Atomoxetine
Calcium channel blocker	Diltiazem, verapamil
Cytotoxic	Bortezomib, buserelin, cladribine, docetaxel, doxorubicin, exemestane, gemcitabine, irinotecan, mitoxantrone, pentostatin, temozolomide, topotecan, vinblastine, vincristine, vindesine, vinorelbine
Dopaminergic	Amantadine, bromocriptine, cabergoline, entacapone, tolcapone, levodopa, pergolide, pramipexole, quinagolide
Growth hormone antagonist	Pegvisomant
Immunosuppressant	Basiliximab, mycophenolate, tacrolimus
Lipid-lowering agent	Cholestyramine, colestipol, rosuvastatin, atorvastatin (other statins uncommon), gemfibrozil
Iron	Ferrous sulphate
Metabolic disorders	Miglustat
Muscle relaxant	Baclofen
NSAID	Meloxicam; other NSAIDs, e.g. aceclofenac, and COX-2 inhibitors reported as uncommon
Smoking cessation	Bupropion
Opioid analgesic	All opioid analgesics and derivatives
Ulcer healing	All proton pump inhibitors, sucralfate

Reproduced with permission from R Walker and C Whittlesea, Clinical pharmacy and therapeutics, 5th edition, 2011, Churchill Livingstone.

simple dietary and lifestyle modifications (increasing exercise) will relieve the majority of acute cases of constipation. Advice includes increasing fluid and fibre intake. Dietary fibre increases stool bulk, stool water content and colonic bacterial load. Fibre intake should be increased to approximately 30 g day in the form of fruit, vegetables, cereals, grain foods and wholemeal bread. It is important to remind patients that adequate fluid intake (2 L per day) is needed when following a high-fibre diet and patients might experience excessive gas production, colicky

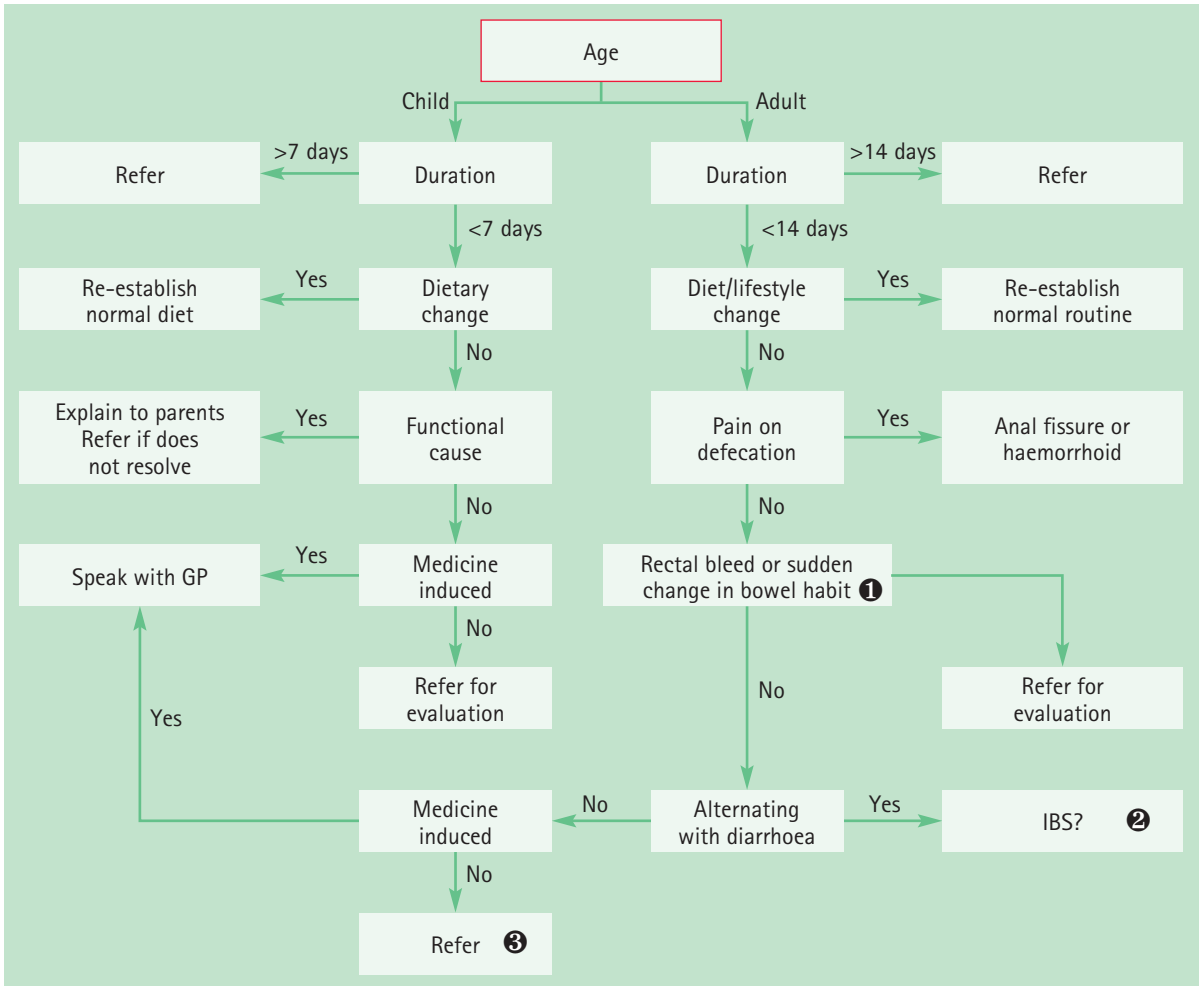


Fig. 6.12 Primer for differential diagnosis of constipation.

❶ Patients with unexplained constipation of recent onset accompanied with rectal bleeding should be referred for further investigation; most likely a colonoscopy or sigmoidoscopy and stool culture to eliminate carcinoma

❷ See Fig. 6.13 for primer for differential diagnosis of IBS.

❸ If no obvious cause of constipation can be found referral to the GP is needed for further evaluation.

abdominal pain and bloating. Effects of a high-fibre diet are usually seen in 3 to 5 days.

If medication is required, four classes of OTC laxatives are available: bulk-forming agents, stimulants, osmotics and stool softeners. Despite their widespread use surprisingly few well-designed trials have substantiated clinical efficacy.

A systematic review in 1997 (Tramonte et al) identified 36 trials involving 1815 participants that met their inclusion criteria and involved 25 different laxatives representing all four classes of laxative. Twenty of the trials compared laxative against placebo or regular diet, 13 of which demonstrated statistically significant increases in bowel movement. The remaining 16 trials compared different types of laxatives with each other. The review concluded that laxatives do increase the number of bowel movements and, in 9 of 11 trials studying overall symptom control, laxatives did perform significantly better than placebo. Unfortunately, because of a lack of comparative trial data, the review could not conclude which laxative was most efficacious. A further review of laxative effect in elderly patients suffering with chronic constipation also failed to determine superior clinical effect between laxative classes. The findings from the Tramonte paper was reviewed

in 2005 by the centre for reviews and dissemination which supported them.

Summary

It appears from the evidence that laxatives do work, but deciding on which laxative to give a patient cannot be made on an evidence-based approach. Other factors will need to be considered such as the patients' status, side-effect profile of the medicine and its cost.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used for constipation reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 6.20; useful tips relating to these medicines are given in Hints and Tips Box 6.6.

Prescribing laxatives in children should ideally be left to those healthcare professionals experienced in managing childhood constipation (BNF edition 63). OTC products are licensed for use in young children but in accordance with good practice those children younger than 6 years old who have failed to respond to dietary intervention should be referred to their GP. The text below does however make reference to dosing in children younger than 6.

Bulk-forming laxatives (e.g. ispaghula husk, methylcellulose and sterculia)

Bulk-forming laxatives exert their effect by mimicking increased fibre consumption, swelling in the bowel and increasing faecal mass. In addition, they also encourage the proliferation of colonic bacteria and this helps further increase faecal bulk and stool softness. Patients should be advised to increase their fluid intake whilst taking bulk-forming medicines. Their effect is usually seen in 12 to 36 hours but can take as long as 72 hours. Side effects commonly experienced include flatulence and abdominal distension. They are well tolerated in pregnancy and breastfeeding and have no teratogenic effects. They appear to have no drug interactions of any note.

Ispaghula husk

Ispaghula husk is widely available as either granules (Fibrelief, Fybogel, Isogel, Ispagel) or powder (Regulan). All

Table 6.20
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for constipation

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Bulk forming					
Ispaghula husk	>6 years	Flatulence and abdominal bloating	None	None	OK
Methylcellulose	>7 years				
Sterculia	>6 years				
Stimulant					
Senna	>2 years	Abdominal pain	None	None	OK, but use other laxatives in preference to stimulants in pregnancy and breastfeeding
Glycerol	Infant upwards*				
Sodium picosulphate	>10 years				
Bisacodyl	>4 years				
Osmotic					
Lactulose	Infant upwards*	Flatulence, abdominal pain and colic	None	None	OK
Magnesium hydroxide	Not recommended				
Stool softeners					
Docusate	>6 months	None reported	None	None	OK

*If prescribing to children less than 6 years of age then the pharmacist must be competent in prescribing laxatives for children.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 6.6: CONSTIPATION

Administration of suppositories	1. Wash your hands 2. Lie on one side with your knees pulled up towards your chest 3. Gently push the suppository, pointed end first, into your back passage with your finger. 4. Push the suppository in as far as possible 5. Lower your legs, roll over onto your stomach and remain still for a few minutes. 6. If you feel your body trying to expel the suppository, try to resist this. Lie still and press your buttocks together 7. Wash your hands
Sachets containing Ispaghula husk	Once the granules have been mixed with water the drink should be taken as soon as the effervescence subsides because the drink 'sets' and becomes undrinkable
Prolonged use of lactulose	In children this can contribute to the development of dental caries. Patients should be instructed to pay careful attention to dental hygiene
Lactulose taste	The sweet taste is unpalatable to many patients, especially if high doses need to be taken
Bisacodyl	Bisacodyl tablets are enteric coated and therefore patients should be told to avoid taking antacids and milk at the same time because the coating can be broken down leading to dyspepsia and gastric irritation
Laxative abuse	Some people, especially young women, use laxatives as a slimming aid. Any very slim person who is regularly purchasing laxatives should be politely asked about why they are taking the laxatives. An opening question could be phrased 'We've noticed that you have been buying quite a lot of these and we are concerned that you should be better by now, is there anything we can do for you to help?'
Onset of action	Stimulants are the quickest acting laxative, usually within 6 to 12 hours. Lactulose and bulk forming laxatives may take 48 to 72 hours before an effect is seen. Stool softeners are the slowest in onset, taking up to three days or more to work.
Which laxative to use in pregnancy?	Fibre supplementation and bulk-forming agents are considered to be safe and should therefore be first-line treatments wherever possible. Stimulant laxatives and macrogols also appear to be safe in pregnancy. Stimulant laxatives are more effective than bulk-forming laxatives but are more likely to cause diarrhoea and abdominal pain
Avoid drinks with caffeine	These can act as a diuretic and serve to make constipation worse
Combining laxatives	There is little evidence on the beneficial effect of combining different classes of laxatives. However, in refractory cases this approach might be justifiable

have to be reconstituted with water prior to taking. The dose for adults and children over 12 years old can range from one to six sachets a day depending on the brand used and the severity of the condition. Fybogel is probably the most familiar branded product used OTC in the UK – adults should take 1 sachet or 2 level 5 mL spoonfuls twice a day and for children aged between 6 and 12, ½ to one 5 mL spoonful twice daily.

Methylcellulose (Celevac)

Methylcellulose is only available as Celevac tablets. The adult dose is three to six tablets twice daily, and for children aged between 7 and 12, the dose is two tablets twice a day. Each dose should be taken with at least 300 mL of liquid.

Sterculia (Normacol and Normacol Plus granules or sachets)

Both products contain 62% sterculia but Normacol Plus also contains 8% frangula. The dose for both products is the same. Adults and children over 12 should take either one or two sachets or heaped 5 mL spoonfuls, once or twice daily after meals. For children aged between 6 and 12 the dose is half that of the adult dose.

The granules should be placed dry on the tongue and swallowed immediately with plenty of water or a cool

drink. They can also be sprinkled onto, and taken with, soft food such as yoghurt.

Stimulant laxatives (e.g. bisacodyl, glycerol, senna, sodium picosulfate)

Stimulant laxatives increase GI motility by directly stimulating colonic nerves. It is this action that, presumably, causes abdominal pain and is the main side effect associated with stimulant laxatives. Additionally, stimulant laxatives are associated with the possibility of nerve damage in long-term use and are the most commonly abused laxatives. Their onset in action is quicker than other laxative classes, with patients experiencing a bowel movement in 6 to 12 hours when taken orally. They can be taken by all patient groups, have no drug interactions and are safe in pregnancy and breastfeeding. However, because of their stimulant effect on uterine contractions they are best avoided in pregnancy if possible.

Bisacodyl (Dulcolax)

Bisacodyl is available as either tablets or suppositories and can be given to patients aged over 4 years old. The dose for children aged between 4 and 10 years is 5 mg (one tablet or one paediatric suppository) and for adults and children over 10 years the dose is 5 to 10 mg (one to two tablets or one Dulcolax 10 mg suppository).

Glycerol suppositories

Glycerol suppositories are normally used when a bowel movement is needed quickly. The patient should experience a bowel movement in 15 to 30 minutes. Varying sizes are made to accommodate use in different ages. The 1-g suppositories are designed for infants, the 2-g for children and the 4-g for adults.

Senna (e.g. Senokot)

Senna is available as syrup, tablets or granules. Dosing of proprietary products differs from those recommended in the BNF and BNF-C. Proprietary products recommend BNF/BNF-C starting doses. These are: adults and children over 12 should take 15 mg each day, preferably at bedtime; children over 6 the dose is half that of the adult dose (7.5 mg, e.g Senokot syrup).

Sodium picosulfate (e.g. Dulcolax Pico)

Adults and children over 10 years old should take 5 to 10 mg at night.

Osmotic laxatives (e.g. lactulose, macrogols and magnesium salts)

These act by retaining fluid in the bowel by osmosis or by changing the pattern of water distribution in the faeces. Flatulence, abdominal pain and colic are frequently reported. They can be taken by all patient groups, have no drug interactions and safely used in pregnancy and breastfeeding.

Lactulose

Lactulose is given twice daily for all ages. The dose for adults is initially 15 mL, for children aged between 5 and 18 the dose is 5–20 mL, those aged between 1 and 5 the dose is 2.5–10 mL and children under 1 year of age 2.5 mL. It has been reported that up to 20% of patients experience troublesome flatulence and cramps, although these often settle after a few days. It may take 48 hours or longer for it to work.

Macrogols (e.g. Movicol, Dulcobalance)

Macrogols are available as powders that are reconstituted with water. They are licensed for chronic constipation and should therefore not be routinely recommended by pharmacists because treatment should be only instigated in those presenting with acute constipation. Section 1.6.4 of the BNF highlights doses for the respective products.

Magnesium salts

Magnesium, when used as a laxative, is usually given as magnesium hydroxide. The adult dose ranges between 30 to 45 mL when needed. It is generally not recommended for use in children but is commonly prescribed in the elderly.

Stool softeners (liquid paraffin and docusate sodium)

Liquid paraffin has been traditionally used to treat constipation. However, the adverse side-effect profile of liquid paraffin now means it should never be recommended because other, safer and more effective medications are available.

Docusate sodium

Docusate sodium is a non-ionic surfactant that has stool-softening properties that allows penetration of intestinal fluids into the faecal mass. It also has weak stimulant properties. Docusate is available as either capsules (Dioctyl) or solution (Docusal). It can be given from children aged 6 months and over. Children between the age of 6 months and 2 years should take 12.5 mg (5 mL of Docusal paediatric solution) three times a day. For children aged between 2 and 12 the dose is 12.5 to 25 mg (5 to 10 mL) three times a day. Adults and children over 12 years old should take up to 500 mg daily in divided doses. In contrast to liquid paraffin, docusate sodium seems to be almost free of any side effects. Docusate sodium can be given to all patient groups.

Reference

Tramonte SM, Brand MB, Mulrow CD, et al. The treatment of chronic constipation in adults. A systematic review. J Gen Intern Med 1997;12:15–24.

Further reading

Borum ML. Constipation: evaluation and management. Primary Care 2001;28:577–90.

Gattuso JM, Kamm MA. Adverse effects of drugs used in the management of constipation and diarrhoea. Drug Saf 1994;10:47–65.

Gerber PD, Barrett JE, Barrett JA, et al. The relationship of presenting physical complaints to depressive symptoms in primary care patients. J Gen Intern Med 1992;170–3.

Herz MJ, Kahan E, Zalevski S, et al. Constipation: a different entity for patients and doctors. Fam Pract 1996;13:156–9.

Higgins PDR, Johnson JF. Epidemiology of constipation in North America: a systemic review. Am J Gast 2004;99:750–9.

Jewell D, Young G. Interventions for treating constipation in pregnancy. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2001, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD001142. DOI: 10.1002/14651858. CD001142.

Leng-Peschlow E. Senna and its rational use. Pharmacology 1992;44:S1–52.

Paraskevaides EC. Fatal lipid pneumonia and liquid paraffin. Br J Clin Pract 1990;44:509–10.

Petticrew M, Watt I, Brand M. What's the 'best buy' for treatment of constipation? Results of a systematic review of the efficacy and comparative efficacy of laxatives in the elderly. Br J Gen Pract 1999;49:387–93.

Talley NJ, Fleming KC, Evans JM, et al. Constipation in an elderly community: a study of prevalence and potential risk factors. Am J Gastroenterol 1996;9:19–25.

Irritable bowel syndrome

Background

IBS is one of the commonest GI tract conditions seen in primary care. It can be defined as a functional bowel disorder (i.e. absence of abnormality) in which abdominal pain and bloating is associated with a change in bowel habit. The diagnosis is suggested by the presence of long-standing colonic symptoms without any deterioration in the patient's general condition.

Prevalence and epidemiology

IBS is common. Adult prevalence rates in Western countries are reported to be between 10 and 20%, with approximately twice as many women than men affected. It most commonly affects people between 20 and 30 years old but recent trends indicate that there is a significant prevalence of IBS in older people.

Aetiology

No anatomic cause can be found to explain the aetiology of IBS but it is now clearly understood to be multifactorial. Many factors can contribute to disease expression and include motility dysfunction, diet and genetics. In a small proportion of cases symptoms appear after bacterial gastroenteritis. Psychological factors also influence symptom reporting and consultation and some studies have shown patients who suffer from higher levels of stress or depression experience worse symptoms when compared to other patients. Flare-up of symptoms has also been associated with periods of increased stress. Symptoms of diarrhoea and constipation appear to be linked with hyperactivity of the small intestine and colon in response to food ingestion and parasympathomimetic drugs. Excessive parasympathomimetic activity might account for mucus associated with the stool.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

IBS is essentially a diagnosis of exclusion and a careful and thorough history of the patient is essential. Diagnostic aids, such as rectal examination and biopsy, which can be used by GPs are of limited use. A number of IBS-specific questions should always be asked of the patient to aid in diagnosis (Table 6.21).

Clinical features of IBS

IBS is characterised by abdominal pain or discomfort, located especially in the left lower quadrant of the abdomen, which is often relieved by defecation or the passage of wind. Altered defecation, either constipation or diarrhoea, with associated bloating is also normally present. People with IBS can present with 'diarrhoea predominant', 'constipation predominant' or alternating symptom profiles. During bouts of diarrhoea, mucus tends to be visible on the stools. Patients might also complain of increased stool frequency but pass normal or pellet-like stools. Diarrhoea on wakening and shortly after meals is also observed in many patients.

Conditions to eliminate

Constipation and diarrhoea

Since the major presenting symptom of IBS is an alteration in defecation, it is necessary to differentiate IBS from acute and chronic causes of constipation and diarrhoea. For further information on differentiating these conditions from IBS please refer to page 160 (for constipation) and page 154 (for diarrhoea).

Figure 6.13 will aid differentiation of IBS from other abdominal conditions.

Table 6.21
Specific questions to ask the patient: IBS

Question	Relevance
Duration	NICE Guidance (CG61) states that primary care clinicians should consider a diagnosis of IBS if the patient has had any of the following symptoms for 6 months: **A**bdominal pain or discomfort **B**loating **C**hange in bowel habit
Age	IBS usually affects people under the age of 45 Particular care is required in labelling middle-aged (i.e. over 45 years old) and elderly patients with IBS when presenting with bowel symptoms for the first time. Such patients are best referred for further evaluation to eliminate organic bowel disease
Periodicity	IBS tends to be episodic. The patient might have a history of being well for a number of weeks or months in between bouts of symptoms. Often patients can trace their symptoms back many years, even to childhood
Presence of abdominal pain	The nature of pain experienced by patients with IBS is very varied, ranging from localised and sharp to diffuse and aching. It is therefore not very discriminatory; however, the patient will probably have experienced similar abdominal pain in the past. Any change in the nature and severity of the pain is best referred for further evaluation
Location of pain	Pain from IBS is normally located in the left lower quadrant. For further information on other conditions that cause pain in the lower abdomen see page 183
Diarrhoea and constipation	Patients with IBS do not have textbook definitions of constipation or diarrhoea but bowel function will be different than normal Constipation predominant IBS is more common in women

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: IBS

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Blood in the stool	The presence of blood in the stool is not usual in IBS and can suggest inflammatory bowel disease
Fever Nausea and/or vomiting Severe abdominal pain	Not usually associated with IBS. Suggests origin of symptoms from other abdominal causes
Children under 16 Patients over 45 with recent change to bowel habit	IBS unusual in these age groups. Refer for further investigation.
Steatorrhoea	Associated with malabsorption syndromes

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Before medicines are recommended it might be useful to discuss if stress is a factor and if this can be avoided. In addition, dietary modification has shown to be effective for some patients. (see Hints and Tips Box 6.7) If diet is deemed a major contributor toward symptoms then food avoidance can be tried. Suspected food products must be excluded from the diet for a minimum of 2 weeks and then gradually reintroduced to determine if the food item triggers symptoms.

Antispasmodics are considered first-line pharmacological intervention for IBS, although the evidence base for them is weak; these include mebeverine, alverine, hyoscine and peppermint oil. In addition, bulk-forming and stimulant laxatives can be used to treat constipation-predominant IBS and loperamide for diarrhoea-predominant IBS. Both laxatives and diarrhoeals can be taken on a regular basis using the lowest effective dose. The following text only concentrates on the evidence for those products specifically marketed for the treatment of IBS.

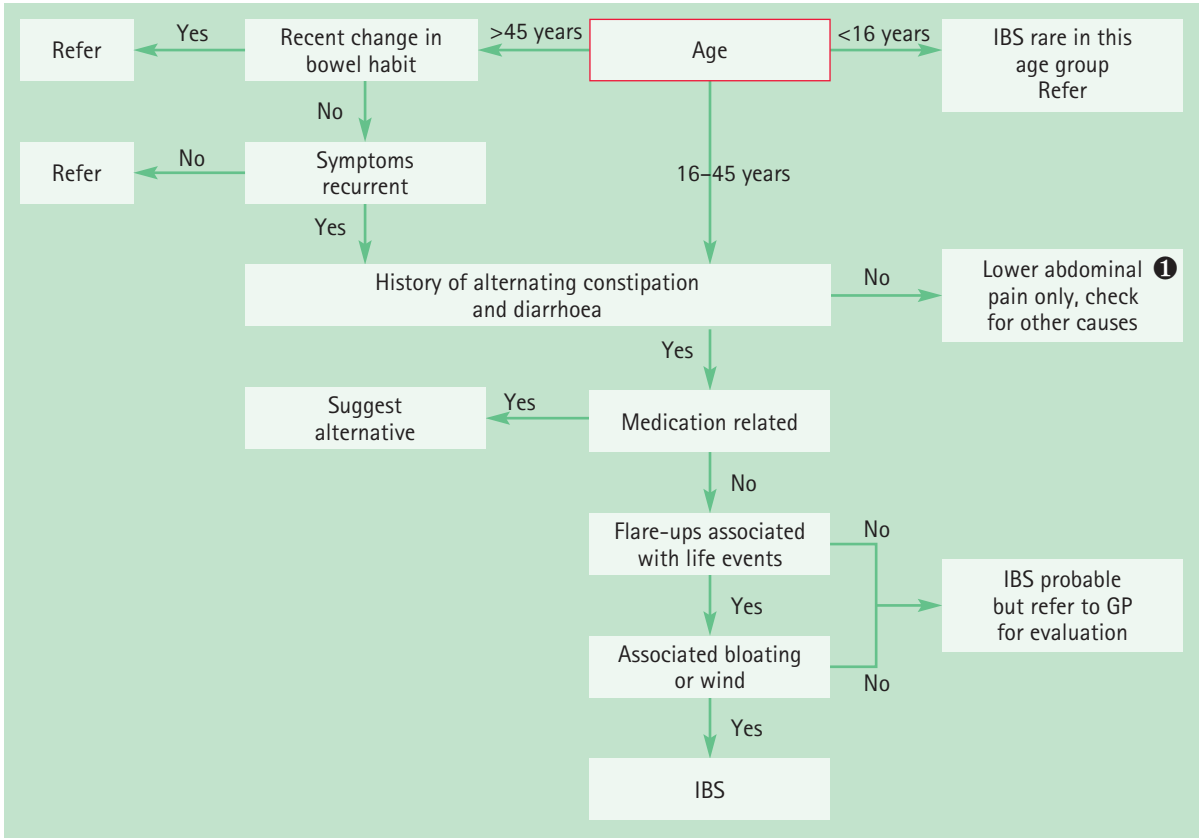


Fig. 6.13 Primer for differential diagnosis of irritable bowel syndrome.

❶ **Lower abdominal pain**
See Fig. 6.29 for primer for differential diagnosis of abdominal pain.

Antispasmodics

The Cochrane review by Ruepert (2011) concluded that antispasmodics as a class of medicines when compared to placebo provided a statistically significant benefit for abdominal pain, global assessment and IBS symptom score. However, as the authors acknowledge, antispasmodics are pharmacologically diverse and in their review it was not possible to include all compounds (due to limited number of studies) at sub-group analysis. Therefore, in this review, it was not possible to determine the individual effectiveness of certain OTC antispasmodics available in the UK. No data was reviewed for alverine and only one trial was included that considered mebeverine. In that trial (Kruis et al 1986) no statistically significant effect for improvement of global assessment was found for mebeverine. Similarly, for hyoscine no statistically significant effect for improvement of global assessment was found. The only OTC product which the review found evidence of efficacy was peppermint oil. For peppermint oil a statistically significant effect for improvement of global assessment and effect for improvement of IBS symptom score was found.

Alternative treatments

Herbal remedies for IBS have been subject to a Cochrane review (Liu et al 2006). Seventy-five trials were reviewed involving 71 different herbal medicines versus placebo or conventional pharmacological treatment. When compared against placebo, STW 5 and STW5-II, Padma Lax, Tongxie Yaofang, and Ayurvedic preparation showed significant improvement of global symptoms. Compared with conventional therapy (in 65 trials testing 51 different herbal medicines) 22 herbal medicines demonstrated a statistically

significant benefit for symptom improvement. Most trials were however deemed to be of poor methodological quality and authors concluded that findings should be interpreted with caution.

Probiotics, such as *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* have also been promoted for IBS. A systematic review identified 18 studies using probiotics either alone or in combination for the treatment of IBS (Moayyedi et al 2010). The results suggested probiotics significantly improved IBS symptoms and there was no apparent difference across the probiotics. However, the authors noted that there was potential publication bias in the review, with an over-representation of small, positive studies, and therefore these estimates of efficacy are likely to be overestimates. The authors concluded that probiotics appear to be effective in IBS, however the size of the effect and the effectiveness of individual probiotics is still to be established.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used for IBS reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 6.22; useful tips relating to the treatment of patients with IBS are given in Hints and Tips Box 6.7.

All marketed products can be given to children (see individual entries) but anyone aged under 16 suspected of having IBS should be referred to a doctor as IBS in this age group is unusual.

Hyoscine butylbromide (Buscopan IBS Relief)

The recommended starting dose for adults is one tablet three times a day, although this can be increased to two tablets four a day if necessary. It is not recommended for children under the age of 12. It is a quaternary derivative

Table 6.22
Practical prescribing: Summary of IBS medicines

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Hyoscine	>12 years	Constipation and dry mouth	Tricyclic antidepressants, neuroleptics, antihistamines and disopyramide	Glaucoma, myasthenia gravis and prostate enlargement	Avoid if possible
Mebeverine	>10 years	None	None	None	OK
Peppermint Oil	>15 years	Heartburn	None	None	OK in pregnancy; try to avoid in breastfeeding
Alverine	>12 years	Rash	None	None	OK

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 6.7: IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME

Dietary advice (taken from NICE CG61)	Have regular meals and avoid missing meals Drink at least eight cups of fluid per day, especially non-caffeinated drinks Reduce intake of alcohol and fizzy drinks Consider limiting intake of high-fibre food Reduce intake of 'resistant starch' often found in processed or re-cooked foods Limit fresh fruit to three portions per day
Hypnotherapy	This has been subject to a Cochrane review. Current trial data is inconclusive as to its effectiveness, although some data does show promising findings. A register of IBS therapists specialising in hypnotherapy can be found at http://www.ibs-register.co.uk (accessed 8 November 2012)

of hyoscine so it does not readily cross the blood–brain barrier and therefore sedation is not normally encountered, although it might cause dry mouth and constipation. Because of its anticholinergic effects it is best avoided with other medicines that also have anticholinergic effects, for example, antihistamines, tricyclic antidepressants, neuroleptics, and disopyramide. It can be given during pregnancy and breastfeeding but avoided if possible. It should also be avoided in patients with glaucoma, myasthenia gravis and prostate enlargement.

Mebeverine (Colofac IBS)

Adults and children 10 years and over should take one tablet three times a day, preferably 20 minutes before meals. Mebeverine is not known to interact with other medicines, has no cautions in its use and can be given in pregnancy and breastfeeding although there is a lack of detailed studies. It is associated with very few side effects although allergic reactions have been reported.

Alverine (Spasmonal)

Adults and children over 12 should take one or two capsules three times a day before food. Like mebeverine, it is not known to interact with other medicines, has no cautions in its use and can be given in pregnancy and breastfeeding. It has no interactions with other medicines and can be used by all patient groups. Rash is the commonest side effect, although nausea, headache, dizziness, itching and allergic reactions have been reported.

Peppermint oil (e.g. Colpermin IBS Relief)

Adults and children aged over 15 can take peppermint oil. The dose is one capsule three times a day before food, which can be increased to two capsules three times a day in severe symptoms. It often causes heartburn and rarely allergic rashes have been reported. It is safe to use in pregnancy but can decrease breast milk production. It has no drug interactions and can be used by all patient groups.

References

Kruis W, Weinzierl M, Schussler P, et al. Comparison of the therapeutic effect of wheat bran, mebeverine and placebo in patients with the irritable bowel syndrome. Digestion 1986;34:196–201.

Liu JP, Yang M, Liu Y, et al. Herbal medicines for treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD004116. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004116.pub2.

Moayyedi P, Ford AC, Talley NJ, et al. The efficacy of probiotics in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review. BMJ 2010;59(3):325.

Ruepert L, Quartero AO, de Wit NJ, et al. Bulking agents, antispasmodics and antidepressants for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 8. Art. No.: CD003460. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003460.pub3.

Further reading

Agrawal A, Whorwell PJ. Irritable bowel syndrome: diagnosis and management. Br Med J 2006;332:280–3.

Jamieson DJ, Steege JF. The prevalence of dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, pelvic pain, and irritable bowel syndrome in primary care practices. Obstet Gynecol 1996;87:55–8.

Poynard T, Regimbeau C, Benhamou Y. Meta-analysis of smooth muscle relaxants in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2001;15:355–61.

Ritchie JA, Truelove SC. Treatment of irritable bowel syndrome with lorazepam, hyoscine butylbromide, and ispaghula husk. BMJ 1979;1(6160):376–8.

Tudor GJ. A general practice study to compare alverine citrate with mebeverine hydrochloride in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. Br J Clin Pract 1986;40:276–8.

Webb AN, Kukuruzovic R, Catto-Smith AG, et al. Hypnotherapy for treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD005110. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005110.pub2.

Whitehead WE, Crowell MD, Robinson JC, et al. Effects of stressful life events on bowel symptoms: subjects with irritable bowel syndrome compared with subjects without bowel dysfunction. Gut 1992;33:825–30.

Web sites

Irritable Bowel Syndrome Self Help and Support Group: http://www.ibsgroup.org

NICE Guidelines – Irritable bowel syndrome in adults: diagnosis and management of irritable bowel syndrome in primary care: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG61

Haemorrhoids

Background

Haemorrhoids (piles) are the most common problem affecting the anorectal region. Patients might feel embarrassed talking about symptoms and it is therefore important that any requests for advice are treated sympathetically and away from others to avoid embarrassment.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of haemorrhoids is unknown but it is estimated that one in two people will experience at least

one episode at some point during their lives. Haemorrhoids can occur at any age but are rare in children and adults under the age of 20. It affects both sexes equally and is more common with increasing age; especially in people aged between 45 to 65 years of age. There is a high incidence of haemorrhoids in pregnant women.

Aetiology

The cause of haemorrhoids is probably multifactorial with anatomical (degeneration of elastic), physiological (increased anal canal pressure) and mechanical (straining at stool) processes implicated. Haemorrhoids have been traditionally described as engorged veins of the haemorrhoidal plexus. The analogy of varicose veins of the anal canal is often used but is misleading. Current thinking favours the theory of prolapsed anal cushions. Anal cushions maintain fine continence and are submucosal vascular structures suspended in the canal by a connective tissue framework derived from the internal anal sphincter and longitudinal muscle. Within each of the three cushions is a venous plexus that is fed by arteriovenous blood supply. Veins in these cushions fill with blood when sphincters inside them relax and empty when the sphincters contract. Fragmentation of the connective tissue supporting the cushions leads to their descent. The prolapsed anal cushion has impaired venous return resulting in venous stasis and inflammation of the cushion's epithelium.

Haemorrhoids are classified as either internal or external. This distinction is an anatomical one. Superior to the anal sphincter there is an area known as the dentate line. At this junction epithelial cells change from squamous to columnar epithelial tissue. Above the dentate line haemorrhoids are classed as internal and below, external. Furthermore internal haemorrhoids are graded according to severity: grade I, do not prolapse out of the anal canal; grade II, prolapse on defecation but reduce spontaneously; grade III, require manual reduction; and grade IV, cannot be reduced.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

In the first instance most patients with anorectal symptoms will self-diagnose haemorrhoids and often self-treat due to embarrassment about symptoms. Bleeding tends to cause the greatest concern and often instigates the patient to seek help. Invariably, rectal bleeding is of little consequence but should be thoroughly investigated to exclude sinister pathology. A number of haemorrhoid-specific questions should always be asked (Table 6.23).

Table 6.23
Specific questions to ask the patient: Haemorrhoids

Question	Relevance
Duration	Patients with haemorrhoids tend to have had symptoms for some time before requesting advice. However, patients with symptoms that have been constantly present for more 3 weeks should be referred
Pain	Pain associated with haemorrhoids tends to occur on defecation. It can occur at other times, for example when sitting. Pain is usually described as a dull ache Sharp or stabbing pain at the time of defecation can suggest an anal fissure or tear
Rectal Bleeding	Slight rectal bleeding is often associated with haemorrhoids. Blood appears bright red and might be visible in the toilet bowl or on the surface of the stool. The presence of blood is usually a direct referral sign but if the cause is haemorrhoids this could be treated unless the patient is unduly anxious in which case referral is appropriate Blood mixed in the stool has to be referred to eliminate a GI bleed Large volumes of blood or blood loss not associated with defecation must be referred to eliminate possible carcinoma
Associated symptoms	Symptoms associated with haemorrhoids are usually localised, for example anal itching. Other symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite and altered bowel habit should be viewed with caution and underlying pathology suspected. Referral would be needed
Diet	A lack of dietary fibre that leads to constipation is a contributory factor to haemorrhoids. The passage of hard stools and straining during defecation can cause haemorrhoids. Find out about the patient's diet and current bowel habits

Clinical features of haemorrhoids

Symptoms experienced by the patient are dependent upon the severity or type of haemorrhoid and can include bleeding, perianal itching, mucus discharge and pain. Often patients are asymptomatic until the haemorrhoid prolapses. Any blood associated is bright red and is most commonly seen as spotting around the toilet pan, streaking on toilet tissue or visible on the surface of the stool. Symptoms are often intermittent and each episode usually lasts from a few days to a few weeks.

Internal haemorrhoids are rarely painful, whereas external haemorrhoids often cause pain due to the cushion becoming thrombosed. Pain is described as a dull ache that increases in severity when the patient defecates leading to patients ignoring the urge to defecate. This can then lead to constipation, which in turn will lead to more difficulty in passing stools and further increase the pain associated with defecation.

Conditions to eliminate

Dermatitis

Localised anal itching can result from dermatitis (or even threadworm infection). If pruritus is the major presenting symptom then the most likely cause is contact dermatitis often caused by toiletries.

Medication

As constipation is a contributory factor in the manifestation of haemorrhoids, those medicines that are prone to causing constipation should, if possible, be avoided. Table 6.19 lists those medicines that are commonly known to cause constipation.

Conditions causing rectal bleeding

A number of conditions can present with varying degrees of rectal bleeding. However, other symptoms should be present which will allow them to be excluded.

Anal fissure

Anal fissures are common, with the 20–30-year-old age group most affected. Symptoms often follow a period of constipation and are normally caused by straining at stool. Pain can be intense on defecation and can last between a few minutes and a few hours after defecation. Bright red blood is commonly seen. Non-urgent referral is necessary for confirmation of the diagnosis. In the meantime the patient should be instructed to eat more fibre and increase their fluid intake.

Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease

Other symptoms besides blood in the stool are usually present with ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. These tend to be stools that are watery, abdominal pain in the lower left quadrant, weight loss and fever. Patients will appear unwell and also find that they have urgency, nocturnal diarrhoea and early morning rushes. In the acute phase patients will have malaise.

Upper GI bleeds

Erosion of the stomach wall or upper intestine is normally responsible for GI bleeds and is often associated with NSAID intake. The colour of the stool is related to the rate of bleeding. Stools from GI bleeds can be tarry (indicating a bleed of 100 to 200 mL of blood) or black (indicating a bleed of 400 to 500 mL of blood). Urgent referral is needed.

Colorectal cancer

Rectal carcinoma is most common in the 50–70-year-old age group and is characterised by rectal bleeding, a change in bowel habit and tenesmus. Rectal bleeding tends to be persistent and steady though slight for all tumours. Colorectal bleeds depend on the site of tumour, for example sigmoid tumours lead to bright red blood in or around the stool. Any patient over 40 years of age with persistent rectal bleeding and a change of bowel habit must be urgently referred. If over 60 years then persistent rectal bleeding alone is sufficient to refer. NICE have produced referral guidelines for doctors for suspected cases of colorectal cancer (http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG27, accessed 8 November 2012).

Figure 6.14 will aid the differentiation of haemorrhoids.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Haemorrhoids

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/ reason for referral
Persistent change in bowel habit in patients over 40 years of age Unexplained rectal bleeding	Sinister pathology?
Patients who have to reduce their haemorrhoids manually	OTC treatment will not help
Severe pain associated with defecation	Anal fissure?
Blood mixed in the stool Fever	Suspect GI bleeds or inflammatory bowel disease

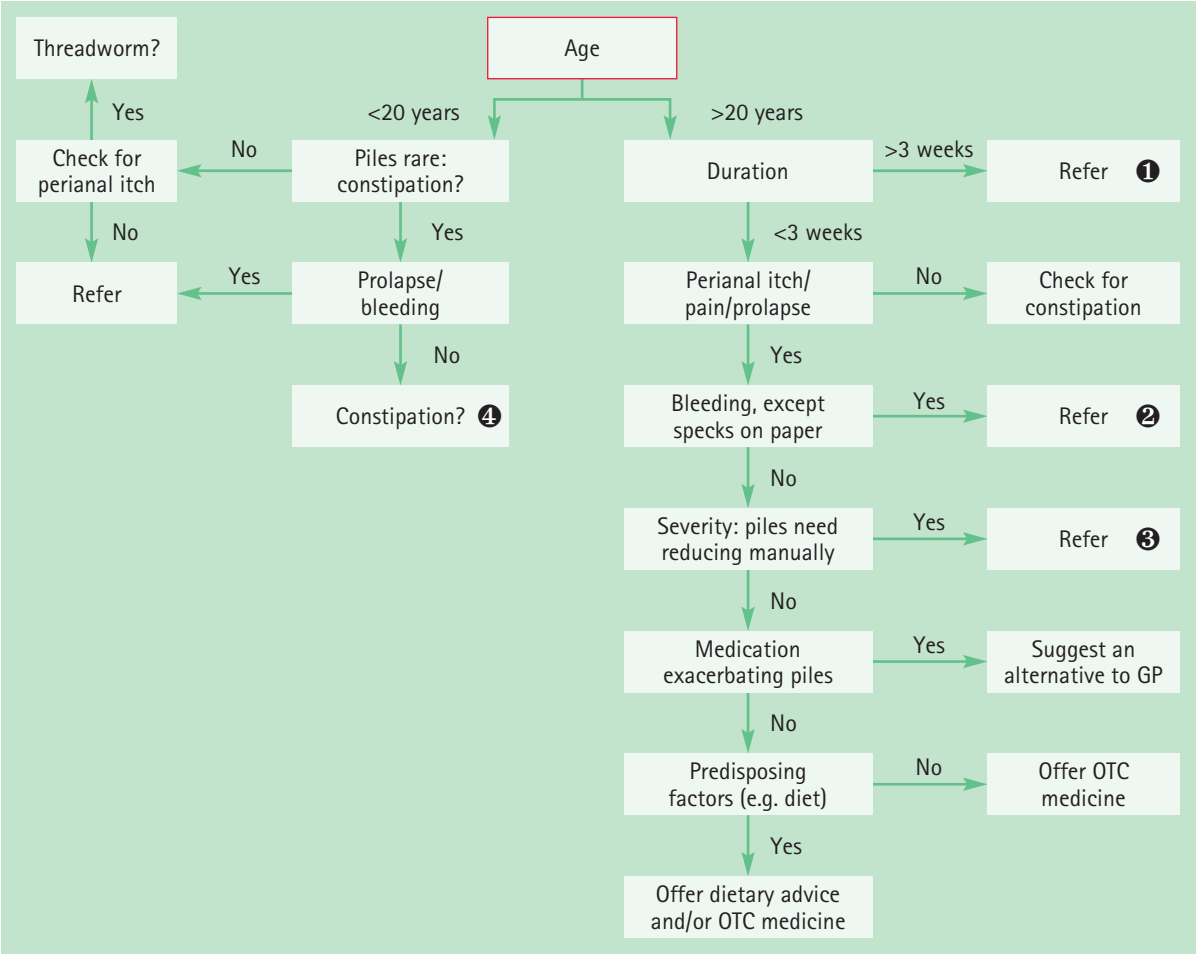


Fig. 6.14 Primer for differential diagnosis of haemorrhoids.

❶ Duration
Patients with long-standing symptoms that have not been seen previously by the GP should be referred to eliminate any underlying pathology. In the vast majority of cases no sinister findings will result.

❷ Rectal bleeding
In the majority of cases rectal bleeding is a sign of referral. However, in cases where sinister pathology has been excluded and only mild local bleeding has occurred the pharmacist could instigate treatment.

❸ Severity
Medication is unlikely to help any patient who has to manually reduce haemorrhoids. Referral for other treatments is recommended.

❹ Constipation
See Fig. 6.12.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Diet

Reviews by Alonso-Coelle et al (2005, 2006a, b) have concluded that general measures to prevent constipation will help to decrease straining during defecation, ease the symptoms of haemorrhoids and reduce recurrence. Patients should therefore be asked about their normal diet to determine fibre intake. Those with diets low in fibre should be encouraged to increase their fibre and fluid intake; this will help produce softer stools and reduce constipation. Patients should try to eat more fruit, vegetables, bran, and wholemeal bread. If this is not possible then fibre supplementation with a bulk-forming laxative could be

recommended. Bulk-forming laxatives will take 2–3 days to relieve constipation and may take up to 6 weeks to improve symptoms of haemorrhoids.

Pharmacological Intervention

Numerous products are marketed for the relief and treatment of haemorrhoids. These include a wide range of therapeutic agents and commonly include anaesthetics, astringents, anti-inflammatories and protectorants. Most products contain a combination of these agents.

The inclusion of such a diverse range of chemical entities appears to be based largely on theoretical grounds rather than any evidence base. Extensive literature searching found only one published trial regarding the efficacy of any marketed product (Ledward 1980); however, this trial suffered from serious methodological flaws.

Anaesthetics (lidocaine, benzocaine and cinchocaine)

No trials appear to have been conducted using local anaesthetics in the treatment and relief of symptoms for haemorrhoids. However, anaesthetics have proven efficacy when used on other mucosal surfaces; their use could therefore be justifiably recommended. Their action is short lived and will produce temporary relief from perianal itching and pain. They require frequent application and might therefore cause skin sensitisation.

Astringents (allantoin, bismuth, zinc, Peru balsam)

Astringents are included in haemorrhoid preparations on the theoretical basis that they precipitate surface proteins thus producing a protective coat over the haemorrhoid. There appears to be no evidence to support this theory. Certain proprietary products only contain astringents and at best will provide a placebo effect.

Anti-inflammatories (hydrocortisone)

Steroids have proven effectiveness in reducing inflammation and would therefore be useful in reducing haemorrhoidal swelling, however trials with OTC products containing hydrocortisone appear not to have taken place.

Protectorants (e.g. shark liver oil)

Protectorants are claimed to provide a protective coating over the skin and thus produce temporary relief from pain and perianal itch. These claims cannot be substantiated and as with astringents any benefit conveyed by a protectorant is probably a placebo effect. In addition, there is also an ethical dimension to using a product with no efficacy sourced from sharks.

Other agents

Sclerosing agents (lauromacrogol), and wound-healing agents (yeast cell extract) can also be found in some products. There is no evidence supporting their effectiveness.

Flavonoids

Dietary supplementation with flavonoids is a common alternative treatment that is popular in continental Europe and the Far East. As an adjunct, their use has been shown to reduce acute symptoms and secondary haemorrhage after haemorrhoidectomy.

Summary

With so little data available on their effectiveness it is impossible to say whether any product is a credible treatment for haemorrhoids, and many medical authorities regard them as little more than placebos. A Cochrane review is underway to assess the efficacy of topical products and may give a more definitive answer (Kopljar et al 2011). Until such time, it seems prudent to recommend products containing a local anaesthetic or hydrocortisone as they do have proven effectiveness in other similar conditions.

Treatment should only be recommended to patients with mild haemorrhoids. Any person complaining of prolapsing haemorrhoids, which need reducing by the patient should be referred, because these patients might require non-surgical intervention with sclerotherapy or rubber band ligation. If these fail to cure the problem then a haemorrhoidectomy might be performed.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used for haemorrhoids reviewed in the section ‘Evidence base for over-the-counter medication’ is discussed and summarised in Table 6.24.

The product licenses of products for haemorrhoids allow all patient groups, except children under 12, to use them. (Note-good practice dictates that people under 20 years old with suspected haemorrhoids should be referred.) They do not interact with any other medicines and can be used in pregnancy and breastfeeding. The standard dose for any formulation is twice daily, plus application after each bowel movement. Minimal side effects have been reported and are usually limited to slight irritation. Products that contain hydrocortisone are subject to several licensing restrictions: they are restricted to use in patients over a certain age (Perinal spray 14 years, Germoloids spray 16

Table 6.24
Practical prescribing: Summary of haemorrhoid products

	Form	Anaesthetics	Astringents	Steroids	Protectorant
Anacal*	Ointment	No	No	No	No
Anodesyn	Ointment or suppository	Yes	Yes	No	No
Anusol	Cream, ointment or suppository	No	Yes	No	No
Anusol Plus HC	Ointment or suppository	No	Yes	Yes	No
Germoloids	Cream, ointment or suppository	Yes	Yes	No	No
Germoloids HC	Spray	Yes	No	Yes	No
Hemocane	Cream	Yes	No	No	No
Nupercainal	Ointment	Yes	No	No	No
Perinal	Spray	Yes	No	Yes	No
Preparation H**	Ointment	No	No	No	Yes
Preparation H	Gel	No	Yes	No	No

*contains a sclerosing agent.
**contains yeast cell extract.

years and Anusol Plus products 18 years); no longer than a week's duration and not for use in pregnant or lactating women.

References

Alonso-Coello P, Guyatt GH, Heels-Ansdell D, et al. Laxatives for the treatment of hemorrhoids. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2005, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD004649. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004649.pub2.

Alonso-Coello P, Mills E, Heels-Ansdell D, et al. Fiber for the treatment of hemorrhoids complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Gastroenterol 2006a;101:181–8.

Alonso-Coello P, Zhou Q, Martinez-Zapeta MJ, et al. Meta-analysis of flavonoids for the treatment of haemorrhoids. Br J Surg 2006b;93(8):909–20.

Ledward RS. The management of puerperal haemorrhoids: A double blind clinical trial of Anacal rectal ointment. The Practitioner 1980;224:660–1.

Kopljar M, Balduzzi S, Patrlj L, et al. Topical treatment for hemorrhoids. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 11. Art. No.: CD009443. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD009443. (Protocol).

Further reading

Nisar PJ, Scholefield JH. Managing haemorrhoids. Br Med J 2003: 327; 847–51.

Sneider EB, Maykel JA. Diagnosis and management of symptomatic hemorrhoids. Surg Clin North Am 2010;90(1):17–32.

Abdominal pain

Background

Abdominal pain is a symptom of many different conditions, ranging from acute self-limiting problems to life threatening conditions such as ruptured appendicitis and bowel obstruction. However, the overwhelming majority of cases will be of a non-serious nature, self-limiting and not require medical referral. The most common conditions that present to community pharmacies are dyspepsia affecting the upper abdomen and IBS affecting the lower abdomen. These are covered in more detail on pages 146 and 168. However, other conditions will present with abdominal pain (Fig. 6.15 and Table 6.25) and these are covered in this chapter.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The prevalence and epidemiology of abdominal pain within the population is determined by those conditions that cause it. As so many conditions can give rise to

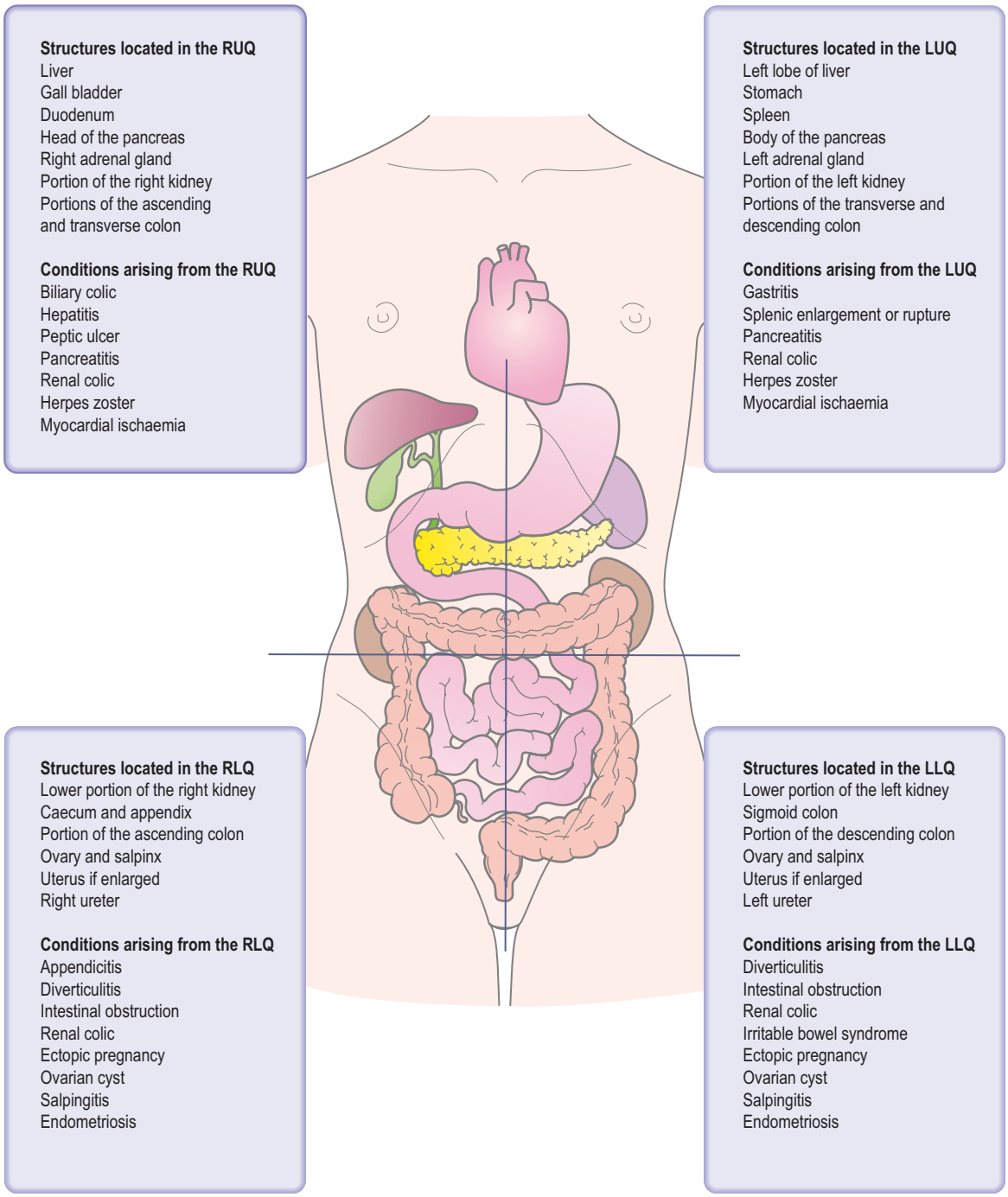


Fig. 6.15 Anatomical location of organs and conditions that can cause abdominal pain.

abdominal pain it is likely that the majority of the population will, at some point, suffer from abdominal pain. For example, one study found that 40% of the UK population had suffered from dyspepsia during the previous 12 months and gastroenteritis, which is commonly associated with abdominal pain, is extremely common.

Aetiology

Abdominal pain does not only arise from the GI tract but also from the cardiovascular and musculoskeletal system. Therefore the aetiology of abdominal pain is dependent on its cause. GI tract causes include poor muscle tone leading

Table 6.25
Causes of abdominal pain

Probability	Cause		
	Upper abdomen	**Lower abdomen**	**Diffuse**
Most likely	Dyspepsia	Irritable bowel syndrome	Gastroenteritis
Likely	Peptic ulcers	Diverticulitis (elderly)	Not applicable
Unlikely	Cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, renal colic	Appendicitis, Endometriosis, renal colic	Not applicable
Very unlikely	Splenic enlargement, hepatitis, myocardial infarction	Ectopic pregnancy, salpingitis, intestinal obstruction	Pancreatitis, Peritonitis

Table 6.26
Specific questions to ask the patient: Abdominal pain

Question	Relevance
Location of pain	Knowing the anatomical location of abdominal structures is helpful in differential diagnosis of abdominal pain (Fig. 6.13)
Presence only of abdominal pain/discomfort	In general, patients without other symptoms rarely have serious pathology. The symptoms are usually self-limiting and often no cause can be determined
Nature of the pain	Heartburn is classically associated with a retrosternal burning sensation Cramp-like pain is seen in diverticulitis, IBS, salpingitis and gastroenteritis Colicky pain (pain that comes and goes) has been used to describe the pain of appendicitis, biliary and renal colic and intestinal obstruction Gnawing pain is associated with pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer and boring pain with ulceration
Radiating pain	Abdominal pain that moves from its original site should be viewed with caution Pain that radiates to the jaw, face and arm could be cardiovascular in origin Pain that moves from a central location to the right lower quadrant could suggest appendicitis Pain radiating to the back may suggest peptic ulcer or pancreatitis
Severity of pain	Non-serious causes of abdominal pain generally do not give rise to severe pain. Pain associated with pancreatitis, biliary and renal colic and peritonitis tends to be severe (subjective scores higher than 6 out of 10)
Age of patient	With increasing age, abdominal pain is more likely to have an identifiable and serious organic cause. Appendicitis is the only serious abdominal condition that is much more common in young patients
Onset & duration	In general, if no identifiable cause can be found, abdominal pain with sudden onset is generally a symptom of more serious conditions. For example, peritonitis, appendicitis, ectopic pregnancy, renal and biliary colic. Pain that lasts more than 6 hours is suggestive of underlying pathology
Aggravating or ameliorating factors	Biliary colic can be aggravated by fatty foods Vomiting tends to relieve pain in gastric ulcers Pain in duodenal ulcer is relieved after ingestion of food Pain in salpingitis, pancreatitis and appendicitis are often made worse by movement
Associated symptoms	Vomiting, weight loss, melaena, altered bowel habit and haematemesis are all symptoms that suggest more serious pathology and require referral

to reflux (e.g. lower oesophageal sphincter incompetence), infections that cause peptic ulcers (from *H. pylori*) and mechanical blockages causing renal and biliary colic. Cardiovascular causes include angina and myocardial infarction whereas musculoskeletal problems often involve tearing of abdominal muscles.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The main role of the community pharmacist is to identify patients in whom symptoms suggest more serious pathology, so that they can be further evaluated. This is not easy, as many abdominal conditions do not present with classical textbook symptoms and patients tend to present to the pharmacist early in the course of the disease, often before the presenting symptoms have assumed the more usual description. The low prevalence of serious disease and overlapping symptoms with minor illness makes the task even more difficult. Single symptoms are poor predictors of final diagnosis (except for reflux oesophagitis, in which the presence of heartburn is highly suggestive). It is therefore important to look for 'symptom clusters' and to use knowledge of the incidence and prevalence of conditions to determine if referral is needed. This necessitates taking a very careful history and not relying on a single symptom to label a patient with a particular problem. Specific questions relating to abdominal pain should be asked (Table 6.26).

Conditions affecting the upper abdomen

Left upper quadrant pain

Dyspepsia/gastritis

Patients with dyspepsia present with a range of symptoms that commonly involve vague abdominal discomfort (aching) above the umbilicus (Fig. 6.16) associated with belching, bloating, flatulence, feeling of fullness and heartburn. It is normally relieved by antacids and aggravated by spicy foods or excessive caffeine. Vomiting is unusual. For further information on dyspepsia see page 146.

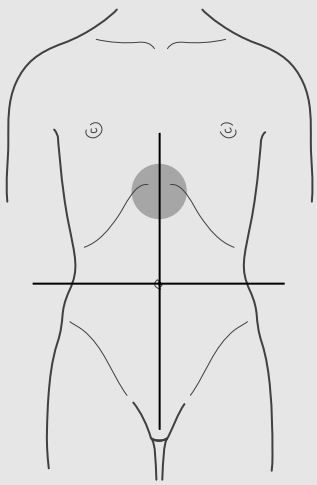


Fig. 6.16 The position of pain in gastritis and dyspepsia.

Splenic enlargement or rupture

If the spleen is enlarged, generalised left upper quadrant pain associated with abdominal fullness and early feeding satiety is observed (Fig. 6.17). Referred pain to the left shoulder is sometimes seen. The condition is rare and is nearly always secondary to another primary cause, which might be an infection, a result of inflammation or haematological in origin.

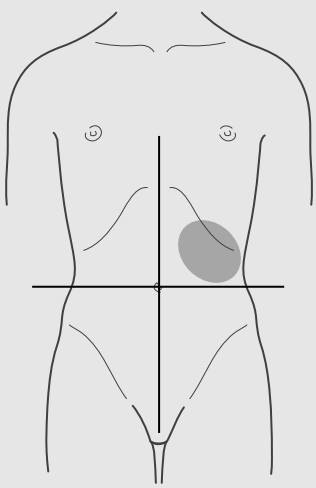


Fig. 6.17 The position of pain associated with splenic enlargement.

Right upper quadrant pain

Acute cholecystitis and cholelithiasis

Acute cholecystitis (inflammation of the gall bladder) and cholelithiasis (presence of gall stones in the bile ducts, also called biliary colic) are characterised by persistent, steady severe pain (Fig. 6.18). Pain can vary from sharp, cramping or dull in nature. Classically, the onset is sudden and starts a few hours after a meal and frequently waking the patient in the early hours of the morning. The pain can also be felt in the epigastric area and radiate to the tip of the right scapula in cholelithiasis. Fatty foods often aggravate the pain. The incidence increases with increasing age and is most common in people aged over 50. It is also more prevalent in women than men.

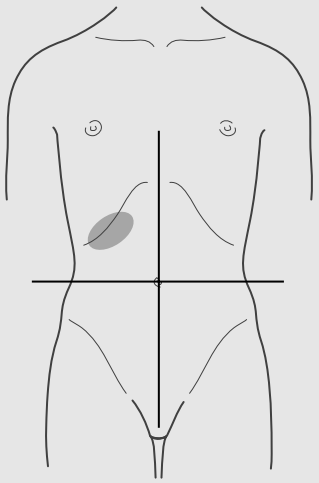


Fig. 6.18 The position of pain associated with acute cholecystitis and cholelithiasis.

Hepatitis

Liver enlargement from any type of hepatitis will cause discomfort or dull pain around the right rib cage (Fig. 6.19). Associated early symptoms are general malaise, tiredness, skin rash and nausea. The most common causes of acute hepatitis are alcohol abuse and viral infection.

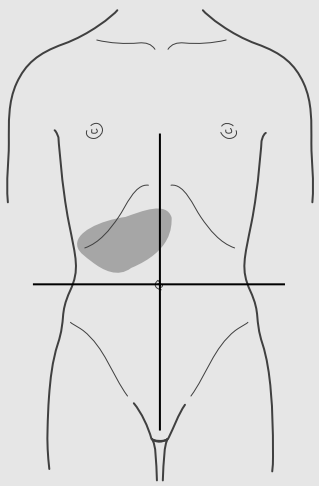


Fig. 6.19 The position of pain associated with hepatitis.

Ulcers

Ulcers are classed as either gastric or duodenal. They occur most commonly in patients aged 30 to 50 years old and are more common in men than women. Symptoms are variable but typically the patient will have localised mid epigastric pain (Fig. 6.20) described as 'constant', 'annoying' or 'gnawing/boring'.

With gastric ulcers, symptoms are inconsistent but the pain usually comes on whenever the stomach is empty – usually 15 to 30 minutes after eating – and is generally relieved by antacids or food and aggravated by alcohol and caffeine. NSAID use is associated with a three- to fourfold increase in gastric ulcers.

Duodenal ulcers tend to be more consistent in symptom presentation. Pain occurs 2 to 3 hours after eating and pain that wakes a person at night is highly suggestive of duodenal ulcer.

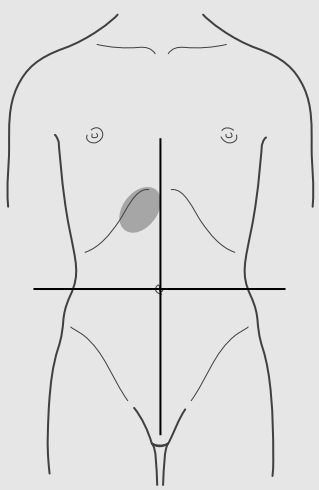


Fig. 6.20 The position of pain associated with ulcers.

Pain affecting both right and left upper quadrants

Acute pancreatitis

Pain of pancreatitis develops suddenly and is described as agonising with the pain being centrally located that often radiates into the back (Fig. 6.21). Pain reaches its maximum intensity within minutes and can last hours or days. Vomiting is common but does not relieve the pain. Early in attack patients might get relief from the pain by sitting forwards. It is commonly seen in alcoholics and it is likely that the patient will have a history of long-term heavy drinking. Patients are very unlikely to present in a community pharmacy due to the severity of the pain but a mild attack could present with steady epigastric pain sometimes centred close to the umbilicus and can be difficult to distinguish between other causes of upper quadrant pain.

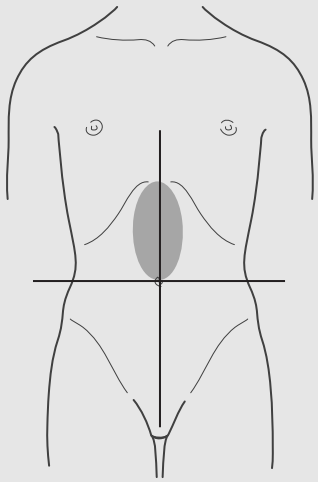


Fig. 6.21 The position of pain associated with pancreatitis.

Renal colic

Urinary calculi (stones) can occur anywhere in the urinary tract, although most frequently stones get lodged in the ureter. Pain begins in the loin, radiating round the flank into the groin and sometimes down the inner side of the thigh (Fig. 6.22). Pain is severe and colicky in nature. Attacks are spasmodic and tend to last minutes to hours and often leave the person prostrate with pain. Symptoms of nausea and vomiting might also be present. It is more common in men and usually occurs between the ages of 30 and 50 years old.

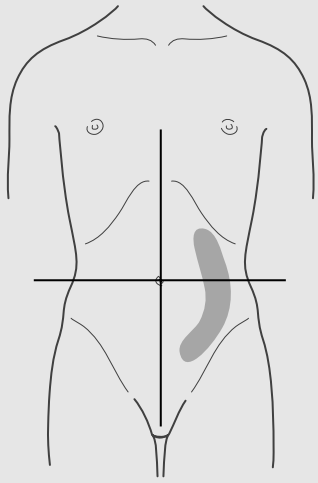


Fig. 6.22 The position of pain in renal colic.

Myocardial ischaemia

Angina and myocardial infarction (MI) cause chest pain that can be difficult to distinguish initially from epigastric/retrosternal pain caused by dyspepsia (Fig. 6.23). However, pain of cardiovascular origin often radiates to the neck, jaw and inner aspect of the left arm. Typically, angina pain is precipitated by exertion and subsides after a few minutes once at rest. Pain associated with MI will present with characteristic deep crushing pain. The patient will appear pale, display weakness and be tachycardic. Cardiovascular pain should respond to sublingual glyceryl trinitrate therapy.

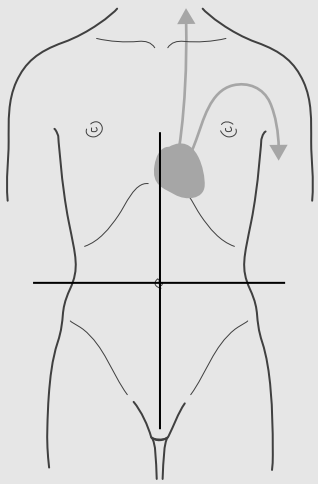


Fig. 6.23 The position of pain associated with myocardial ischaemia.

Herpes zoster (shingles)

Pain associated with herpes zoster typically occurs once the rash has erupted, although it can precede the rash by several days. Pain that precedes the rash and is right sided can be confused with appendicitis (Fig. 6.24).

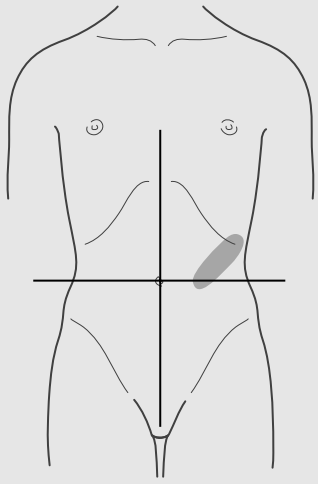


Fig. 6.24 The position of pain in herpes zoster.

Conditions affecting the lower abdomen

The most common causes of lower abdominal pain are muscle strains, IBS, appendicitis, and salpingitis in women. Apart from appendicitis, all these conditions can present in either quadrant.

Irritable bowel syndrome

Pain is most often observed in the left lower quadrant (Fig. 6.25); however, the discomfort can be vague and diffuse and about one-third of patients exhibit upper abdominal pain. The pain is described as 'cramp-like' and is recurrent. Alternating diarrhoea and constipation and mucus coating the stools is also often present. For further information on IBS see page 168.

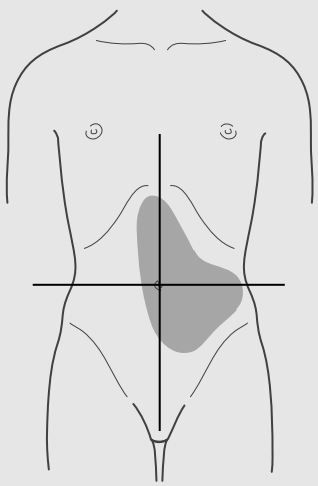


Fig. 6.25 The position of pain associated with irritable bowel syndrome.

Diverticulitis

The incidence of diverticulitis increases with increasing age. It is most prevalent in the elderly and is characterised by constant pain and local tenderness. Pain is more commonly seen in the left lower quadrant (Fig. 6.26) but can be suprapubic and occasionally right lower quadrant. Pain tends to be cramp-like in nature. Fever is a prominent feature and altered bowel habit is usual with diarrhoea more common than constipation.

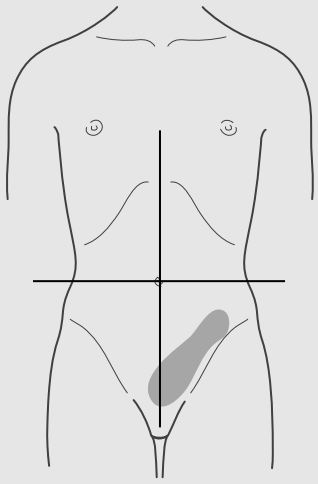


Fig. 6.26 The position of pain associated with diverticulitis.

Intestinal obstruction

Intestinal obstruction is most prevalent in people over the age of 50. It has sudden and acute onset. The pain is described as colicky and can be experienced anywhere in the lower abdomen. Constipation and vomiting are prominent features.

Appendicitis

Classically, the pain starts in the mid-abdomen region, around the umbilicus, before migrating to the right lower quadrant after a few hours (Fig 6.27), although right-sided pain is experienced from the outset in about 50% of patients. The pain of appendicitis is described as colicky or cramp-like but after a few hours becomes constant. Movement tends to aggravate the pain and vomiting might also be present. Appendicitis is most common in young adults, especially young men.

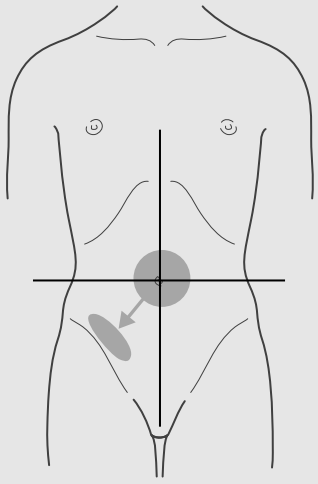


Fig. 6.27 The position of pain associated with appendicitis.

Conditions affecting women

Generalised lower abdominal pain (Fig. 6.28) can be experienced in a number of gynaecological conditions:

- Ectopic pregnancy: these are usually experienced between weeks 5 and 14 of the pregnancy. Patients suffer from persistent moderate to severe pain that is sudden in onset. Referred pain to the tip of the scapula is possible. Most patients (80%) experience bleeding ranging from spotting to the equivalent of a menstrual period. Diarrhoea and vomiting is often also present.
- Salpingitis (inflammation of the fallopian tubes): occurs predominantly in young, sexually active women, especially those fitted with an IUD. Pain is usually bilateral, low and cramping. Pain starts shortly after menstruation and can worsen with movement. Malaise and fever are common.
- Endometriosis: patients experience lower abdominal aching pain that usually starts 5 to 7 days before menstruation begins and can be constant and severe. The pain often worsens at the onset of menstruation. Referred pain into the back and down the thighs is also possible.

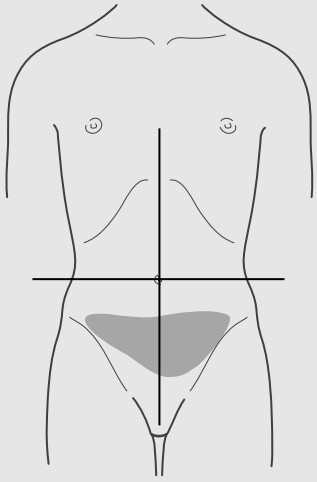


Fig. 6.28 The position of pain associated with women's conditions.

Diffuse abdominal pain

A number of conditions will present with diffuse abdominal pain over the four quadrants. The most common cause of diffuse pain seen by the pharmacist is gastroenteritis. Other causes include peritonitis and pancreatitis.

Gastroenteritis

Other symptoms of nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea will be more prominent in gastroenteritis than abdominal pain. The patient might also have a fever and suffer from general malaise.

Peritonitis

Although the pain of acute peritonitis can be diffuse, severe pain in the upper abdomen is often present. This is accompanied by intense rigidity of the abdominal wall producing a 'board like' appearance; fever and vomiting might also be present. Urgent referral is required due to associated complications.

Figure 6.29 will aid in the differentiation of the different types of abdominal pain.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Abdominal pain

- Abdominal pain with fever
- Elderly
- Pregnancy or suspected pregnancy
- Abdominal pain associated with trauma
- Severe pain or pain that radiates
- Vomiting

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication and practical prescribing and product selection

The two conditions that have abdominal pain/discomfort as one of the major presenting symptoms and can be treated OTC are dyspepsia and IBS. For further information on products used to treat these conditions, please refer to pages 151 and 171.

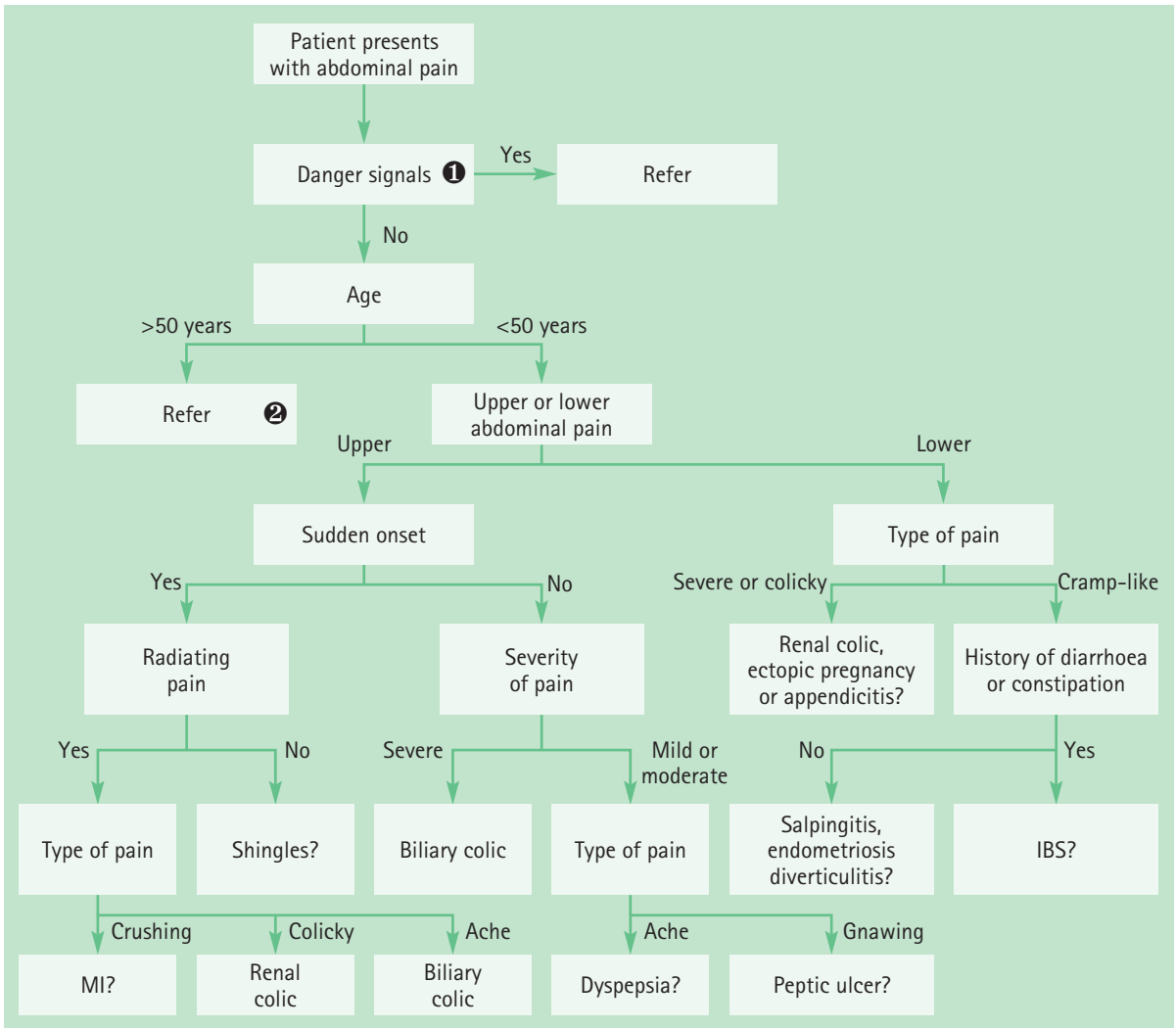


Fig. 6.29 Primer for differential diagnosis of abdominal pain.

❶ Danger signals are significant bleeding, vomiting and fever.

❷ Organic disease is more likely to be the cause of abdominal pain in patients aged over 50, especially if symptoms are new or more severe than normal.

Further reading

Bagshaw EJ. Abdominal pain protocol: right upper quadrant pain. Lippincotts Prim Care Pract 1999;3:486–92.

Guthrie E, Thompson D. Abdominal pain and functional gastrointestinal disorders. Br Med J 2002;325:701–3.

Kalloo AN, Kantsevoy SV. Gallstones and biliary disease. Prim Care 2001;28:591–606.

Lucenti MJ, Nadel ES, Brown DF. Right lower quadrant pain. J Emerg Med 2001;21:431–4.

Miiller SK, Alpert PT. Assessment and differential diagnosis of abdominal pain. Nurse Pract 2006 Jul;31(7):38–45, 47.

Web sites

The Pancreatitis Supporters' Network: http://www.pancreatitis.org.uk/

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

6.1 Which one of the following symptoms is most indicative of renal colic

- **a.** Loin pain radiating to the groin
- **b.** Left lower quadrant pain radiating to loin area
- **c.** Right lower quadrant pain radiating to loin area
- **d.** Back pain radiating to loin area
- **e.** Localised loin pain only

6.2 In the treatment of constipation which one of the following statements is true?

- **a.** Bulk-forming laxatives usually act within 12 to 24 hours
- **b.** Senna tablets should be avoided in nursing mothers
- **c.** Fybogel is not suitable for a patient with coeliac disease
- **d.** Lactulose should not be taken by diabetics
- **e.** Liquid paraffin has been linked with causing lipid pneumonia

6.3 A man asks for the best thing to stop diarrhoea as he is going on holiday and he doesn't want to be caught short. Which of the following is the first-line treatment to be recommended?

- **a.** Kaolin and morphine
- **b.** Rehydration solution
- **c.** Antibiotics
- **d.** Antispasmodics
- **e.** Loperamide

6.4 Antacids that contain aluminium, calcium or magnesium salts inhibit the intestinal absorption of which of the following?

- **a.** Chloramphenicol
- **b.** Cephalexin
- **c.** Erythromycin
- **d.** Tetracycline
- **e.** Phenoxymethylpenicillin

6.5 What condition predisposes patients to oral thrush?

- **a.** Heart failure
- **b.** Asthma
- **c.** Diabetes mellitus
- **d.** Hyperlipidaemia
- **e.** Parkinson's disease

6.6 Abdominal pain that starts centrally then moves to the right lower quadrant is indicative of?

- **a.** Irritable bowel syndrome
- **b.** Pancreatitis
- **c.** Pyelonephritis
- **d.** Appendicitis
- **e.** Renal colic

6.7 Which condition is least likely to cause rectal bleeding?

- **a.** Haemorrhoids
- **b.** Crohn's disease
- **c.** Colorectal cancer
- **d.** IBS
- **e.** Anal fissure

6.8 Mrs Jones, a 44-year-old woman, asks for advice on a sore spot on the inside of her cheek. Based solely on the sex of the patient and age, what is the most likely diagnosis?

- **a.** Oral thrush
- **b.** Lichen planus
- **c.** Herpetiform ulcers
- **d.** Leukoplakia
- **e.** Minor aphthous ulcers

Questions 6.9 to 6.11 concern the following conditions:

- **A.** Irritable bowel syndrome
- **B.** Constipation
- **C.** Diarrhoea
- **D.** Haemorrhoids
- **E.** Dyspepsia

Select, from A to E, which statement best relates to the conditions above:

6.9 Is characterised with epigastric pain

6.10 Can be treated with antispasmodics

6.11 Is associated with left lower quadrant pain

Questions 6.12 to 6.14 concern the following OTC medications:

A. Gaviscon Liquid
B. Asilone suspension
C. Milk of Magnesia
D. Sodium bicarbonate powder
E. Aludrox liquid

6.12 Is most suitable for treating heartburn, which tends to get worse when lying down

6.13 Is most suitable to treat abdominal discomfort caused by trapped gas

6.14 Could be used to relieve constipation, as well as indigestion

Questions 6.15 to 6.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

6.15 When questioning a patient seeking advice for nausea and gastrointestinal upset, which of the following symptoms would indicate the need for direct referral to the general practitioner?

a. Feeling of impending vomiting.
b. Loss of appetite over the last 24 hours.
c. Dark coloured vomit.

6.16 A common presentation of minor aphthous ulcers is

a. Pain
b. Ulcers on the buccal mucosa and tongue
c. Occur in crops of between 1 and 5

6.17 Which symptoms in a patient presenting with constipation should be referred?

a. Melaena
b. Greater than 7 days duration
c. Abdominal pain

Questions 6.18 to 6.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false.

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
6.18	IBS is common in people under the age of 40	It can be caused by stress
6.19	Gingivitis is caused by plaque build up	It is characterised by swollen and red gums
6.20	Heartburn causes retrosternal pain	Sphincter incompetence is responsible for symptoms

Case Study

CASE STUDY 6.1

Mrs SJ, a 28-year-old women, asks to speak to the pharmacist because she wants something for stomach ache. You find out that the pain is located in the lower and upper left quadrant, but mainly the upper quadrant.

a. From which conditions might she be suffering?

Reflux, non-ulcer dyspepsia, gastritis, primary dysmenorrhoea, endometriosis irritable bowel syndrome, pancreatitis, renal colic, MI and herpes zoster.

Further questioning reveals Mrs SJ to be suffering with pain she describes as 'an ache.'

b. Name the likely conditions that she could be suffering from?

The use of the word 'ache' means you can rule out those conditions that present with severe, stabbing, burning or gnawing pain:

- *pancreatitis, renal colic: severe*
- *reflux: burning*
- *herpes zoster: severe, lancing.*

But it could still be any of: non-ulcer dyspepsia, gastritis, primary dysmenorrhoea, irritable bowel syndrome, endometriosis and MI.

However, as the pain is primarily upper quadrant this makes primary dysmenorrhoea, endometriosis and irritable bowel syndrome less likely.

This leaves non-ulcer dyspepsia, gastritis and MI as possibilities.

c. Which questions would now allow you to differentiate between these conditions?

MI is the most unlikely of the three conditions and one would expect the patient to have more severe symptoms. Questions asking about radiation of pain, previous history of similar symptoms and precipitating/relieving factors should be asked.

You reach the differential diagnosis of non-ulcer dyspepsia but before you make any recommendations, you ask if she takes any medication from the GP, her response is as follows:

- *Paracetamol prn: She has taken this for 6 months for knee pain.*
- *Atorvastatin 40 mg od: She has taken for the last 3 years for familial hyperlipidaemia.*
- *Naproxen 500 mg bd prn: She has taken this for 6 months for knee pain.*

d. Which of these medications, if any, do you consider are contributing to Mrs SJ's pain? Explain your rationale.

Of the three medicines that Mrs SJ is taking, the one most likely to cause GI irritation is naproxen. However, she has been taking this for the last 6 months and you would expect that dyspepsia symptoms would have been experienced already if she was going to have a reaction to naproxen. It is then unlikely that naproxen has caused the problem, unless the dose has recently been changed. Atorvastatin can also cause GI side effects but has been taken for the last 3 years and is therefore almost certainly not the cause of the symptoms. Paracetamol is not known to cause GI irritation so can also be ruled out. In conclusion it is likely that none of the medicines have caused Mrs SJ's symptoms.

CASE STUDY 6.2

Mr LR, a male patient (approximately 50–60 years old) presents to the pharmacy at lunch time asking for something for diarrhoea. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
Describe symptoms	Going to the toilet 3 or 4 times a day. Normal habit is once or twice.
Nature of movements	Very watery
Duration	4 or 5 days
Other symptoms/ provokes	Generally feels a bit rough. Headache and has a temperature. Been getting some cramping pains
Blood noticed	No
Eaten any thing different in day or so before diarrhoea appeared	No
Additional questions	No foreign travel Doesn't seem to be worse at any time of day
Previous history of presenting complaint	Has had the odd bout of diarrhoea before but usually clears up after a couple days
Past medical history	RA, HT, mild stroke 2 yrs ago
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Ibuprofen 600 mg tds; aspirin 75 mg od; Dipyridamole 200 mg bd; atenolol 25 mg od No change to medicines for last 6–9 months
Allergies	None known
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Alcohol mostly at weekends. Does not smoke. Tries to exercise twice a week. Married
Family history	No one in family with similar symptoms
On examination	General appearance is of a healthy person. No obvious signs of dehydration. Pinch test normal

Epidemiology dictates that the most likely cause of diarrhoea seen in primary care is bacterial or viral infection. However, other conditions are possible and are noted below,

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Viral and bacterial infection
Likely	Medicine induced
Unlikely	Irritable bowel syndrome, giardiasis, faecal impaction
Very unlikely	Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, colorectal cancer, malabsorption syndromes

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

The expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists are summarised below.

CASE STUDY 6.2 (Continued)

	Age	Acute or chronic	Timing	Periodicity	Weight loss	Blood in stools
Infection	Any	Acute	Any	Acute	No	Unusual
Medicines	Any	Acute or chronic	Any	No	No	No
IBS	<45 years	Acute	Mornings?	Recurs	No	No
Giardiasis	Any	Acute	Any	Acute	No	No
Faecal impaction	Elderly	Chronic	Any	No	No	No
ulcerative colitis	Young adults	Acute	am and pm	Recurs	No	Yes
Crohn's disease	Young adults	Acute	am and pm	Recurs	No	Yes
Coeliac disease	Infants or middle aged	Chronic	Any	No	Yes	No
Carcinoma	>50 years	Chronic	Any	No	Yes	Unusual

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that the questions asked that the most likely cause of his symptoms is infection.

	Age	Acute or chronic	Timing	Periodicity	Weight loss (not asked)	Blood in stools
Infection	✓	✓	✓	✓	?	✓?
Medicines	✓	✓	✓	✗	?	✓
IBS	✗	✓	✗?	✓	?	✓
Giardiasis	✓	✓	✓	✓	?	✓
Faecal impaction	✗	✗	✓	✗	?	✓
Ulcerative colitis	✗	✓	✗	✓	?	✗
Crohn's disease	✗	✓	✗	✓	?	✗
Coeliac disease	✓	✗	✓	✗	?	✓
Carcinoma	✓	✗	✓	✗	?	✓?

CASE STUDY 6.2 (Continued)

Danger symptoms/signs (trigger points for referral)

As a final double check it might be worth making sure the person has none of the 'referral signs or symptoms'; this is the case with this patient.

Change in bowel (long term) habit in patients over 50	✗
Diarrhoea following recent travel to tropical or sub-tropical climate	✗
Duration longer than 2 to 3 days in children and elderly	N/A
Patients unable to drink fluids	?
Presence of blood or mucous in the stool	✗
Signs of dehydration	✗
Severe abdominal pain	✗
Steatorrhoea	✗
Suspected faecal impaction in the elderly	N/A

The question mark against 'unable to drink fluids' should be determined during advice and product selection, and so in this context is not applicable.

CASE STUDY 6.3

Mrs RH, an elderly patient (about 75) picks her prescription up and at the same time says she wants something to help get rid of funny patch on the inside of her cheek. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
Describe symptoms	White patch about the size of a 10 pence piece
How long had the symptoms	Had for a couple of weeks
Type/severity of pain	Not really painful
Other symptoms/ provokes	No other obvious symptoms
Additional questions	No systemic symptoms (e.g. fever, chills)
Previous history of presenting complaint	Had something similar a couple of years ago and the other chemist gave me some cream
Past medical history	RA, HT, stroke 2 years ago
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Ibuprofen 600 mg tds; aspirin 75 mg od; Atenolol 25 mg od
Allergies	None known
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Lives on her own and watches TV most of the time–Loves quiz shows
Family history	
On examination	Discrete white patch. No underlying redness

Epidemiology dictates that the most likely cause of white patches in the oral cavity seen in primary care is thrush. However, other conditions are possible and are noted below.

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Thrush
Likely	Minor aphthous ulcers, medicine induced, ill-fitting dentures
Unlikely	Lichen planus, underlying medical disorders, e.g. diabetes, xerostomia (dry mouth) and immunosuppression, major & herpetiform ulcers, herpes simplex
Very unlikely	Leukoplakia, squamous cell carcinoma

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

CASE STUDY 6.3 (Continued)

	Number	Location	Size & shape	Age	Pain
Thrush	'Singular patch'	Anywhere	Irregular and variable size	Young and elderly	No
Minor ulcers	Up to 5 or so ulcers	Lips and inside cheeks	Less than 1 cm and round	10–40 years most common	Yes
Major ulcers	Numerous	Anywhere	Large (and variable shape)	All ages	Yes
Herpetiform	Very numerous	Back of the mouth	Pinpoint and round	All ages	Yes
Herpes simplex	Numerous	Anywhere	Small	Children	Yes
Lichen planus	Diffuse	Tongue, cheek, gums	'Spiders web'	Adults	No
Leukoplakia	Singular patch	Tongue or cheek	Irregular and variable size	Elderly	No
Carcinoma	Singular lesion	Tongue, mouth, lower lip	Irregular and variable size	Elderly	No, but latter stages yes

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that from the questions asked the diagnosis is either thrush, lichen planus or leukoplakia. Lichen planus can be ruled out because of the appearance of the white patch (plus lichen planus also commonly has rash, but not always). This leaves a diagnosis between thrush and leukoplakia. Although the lady is not really complaining of pain, there is a possibility that this 'white patch' has to be deemed potentially sinister, especially as she is of an age where leukoplakia is more likely. A positive smoking history would make leukoplakia even more of a possibility. This person must be referred.

	Number	Location	Size & shape	Age	Pain
Thrush	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Minor ulcers	✗	✓	✗	✗	✗
Major ulcers	✗	✓	✗	✗?	✗
Herpetiform	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗
Herpes simplex	✗	✓	✗	✗	✗
Lichen planus	✓?	✓	✓	✓	✓?
Leukoplakia	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Carcinoma	✗?	✓	✓	✓	✓?

Answers

1 = a	2 = e	3 = b	4 = d	5 = c	6 = d	7 = d	8 = e	9 = e	10 = a
11= a	12 = a	13 = b	14 = c	15 = e	16 = a	17 = d	18 = b	19 = b	20 = a

Chapter 7

Dermatology

In this chapter

Background 195
General overview of skin anatomy 195
History taking 196
Physical examination 196
Hyperproliferative disorders 197
Psoriasis 197
Dandruff (pityriasis capitis) 204
Seborrhoeic dermatitis 207
Fungal skin infections 210
Fungal nail infection (onychomycosis) 216
Hair loss (androgenetic alopecia) 218
Warts and verrucas 222
Corns and calluses 227
Scabies 229
Acne vulgaris 232
Cold sores 236
Eczema and dermatitis 239
Sun exposure and melanoma risk 245
Self-assessment questions 250

Background

The skin is the largest organ of the body. It has a complex structure and performs many important functions. These include protecting underlying tissues from external injury, overexposure to ultraviolet light, barring entry to micro-organisms and harmful chemicals, acting as a sensory organ for pressure, touch, temperature, pain and vibration and maintaining the homeostatic balance of body temperature.

It has been reported that dermatological disorders account for up to 15% of the workload of UK GPs, with similar findings reported from community pharmacy. It is therefore important that community pharmacists are able to differentiate between common dermatological conditions that can be managed appropriately without referral to the GP and those that require further investigation or treatment with a prescription-only medicine.

General overview of skin anatomy

Principally the skin consists of two parts, the outer and thinner layer called the epidermis and an inner, thicker layer named the dermis. Beneath the dermis lies a subcutaneous layer, known as the hypodermis (Fig. 7.1).

The epidermis

The epidermis is the major protective layer of the skin and has four distinct layers when viewed under the microscope. The basal layer actively undergoes cell division, forcing new cells to move up through the epidermis and form the outer keratinised horny layer. This process is continual and takes approximately 35 days. Pathological changes in the epidermis produce a rash or a lesion with abnormal scale, loss of surface integrity or changes to pigmentation.

The dermis

The dermis is the layer below the epidermis. The majority of the dermis is made of connective tissue; collagen for strength, and elastic fibres to allow stretch. It provides support to the epidermis as well as its blood and nerve supply. Also located in the dermis are the hair follicle, sebaceous and sweat glands and arrector pili muscle. Under cold conditions the arrector pili muscle contracts, pulling the hair in to a vertical position and causing 'goosebumps'.

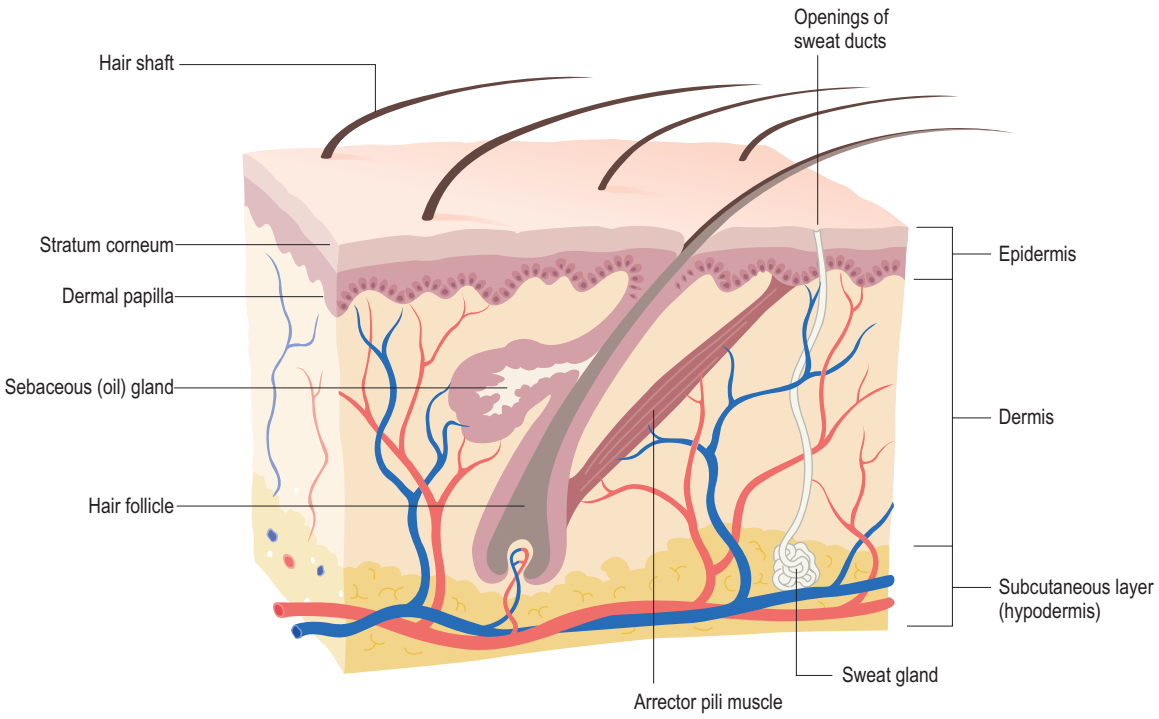


Fig. 7.1 The epidermis, dermis and associated structures.

Conditions of the dermis usually result in changes in the elevation of the skin, e.g. papules and nodules.

The hair

The primary function of hair is one of protection. Each hair consists of a shaft, the visible part of the hair, and a root. Surrounding the root is the hair follicle, the base of which is enlarged into a bulb structure.

Sebaceous glands

Sebaceous glands are found in large numbers on the face, chest and upper back. Their primary role is to produce sebum which keeps hair supple and the skin soft. During puberty these glands become large and active due to hormonal changes. Frequently, sebum will accumulate in the sebaceous gland, and is one of the factors that lead to acne formation.

Sweat glands

These are the most numerous of the skin glands and are classed as apocrine or eccrine. Eccrine glands are located all over the body and play a role in elimination of waste products and maintaining a constant core temperature. Apocrine sweat glands are mainly located in the axilla and begin to function at puberty.

History taking

Unlike internal medicine, the majority of dermatological complaints presenting in community pharmacy can be seen. This affords the community pharmacist an excellent opportunity to base his or her differential diagnosis not only on questioning but also on physical examination. General questions that should be considered when dealing with dermatological conditions are listed in Table 7.1. Terminology describing skin lesions can be confusing and the more common terms used are shown in Table 7.2.

Physical examination

A more accurate differential diagnosis will be made if the pharmacist actually sees the person's athlete's foot or 'rash' on the back. Providing adequate privacy can be obtained there is no reason why the majority of skin complaints cannot be seen. If examinations are performed, clearly explain the procedure you want to perform and gain their

Table 7.1
Questions to consider when taking a dermatological history

Question	Relevance
Where did the problem first appear?	Certain skin problems start in one particular location before spreading to other parts of the body, e.g. impetigo usually starts on the face before spreading to the limbs Patients might need prompting to tell you where the problem started as they are likely to want help for the most obvious or large skin lesion but neglect to tell you about smaller lesions that appeared first
Are there any other symptoms?	Many skin rashes are associated with itch and/or pain Mild itch is associated with many skin conditions including, psoriasis and medicine eruptions. Severe itch is associated with conditions such as, scabies, atopic and contact dermatitis.
Occupational history (relevant to adults only)	This is particularly pertinent for contact dermatitis, e.g. do symptoms improve when away from work?
General medical history	Many skin signs can be the first marker of internal disease, e.g. diabetes can manifest with pruritus; fungal or bacterial infection and thyroid disease can present with hair loss and pruritus
Travel	More people are taking long-haul holidays and therefore expose themselves to tropical diseases that can manifest as skin lesions
Family and household contact history	Infections such as scabies can infect relatives and others with whom the patient is in close contact
The patient's thoughts on the cause of the problem	Ask for the patient's opinion. This might help with the diagnosis or alternatively shed light on anxieties and theories as to the cause of the condition

consent. Examinations should be conducted in consultation rooms. It is worth remembering that many patients will be embarrassed by skin conditions and might be ashamed of their appearance. When performing an examination of the skin, a number of things should be looked for (Table 7.3). There is no substitute for experience when recognising skin problems. This is normally gained through seeing multiple cases; however, a free image bank (http://www.dermnet.com/) is available where familiarity can be gained of different presentations of skin conditions.

Hyperproliferative disorders

Background

Hyperproliferative disorders are characterised by a combination of increased cell turnover rate and a shortening of the time it takes for cells to migrate from the basal layer to the outer horny layer. Typically, cell turnover rate is ten times faster than normal and cell migration takes 3 or 4 days rather than 35 days.

Psoriasis

Background

Psoriasis is a chronic relapsing inflammatory disorder characterised by a variety of morphological lesions that present in a number of forms. The commonest form of psoriasis is plaque psoriasis and will be the form most familiar to pharmacists. Depending on the extent and severity of lesions, psoriasis can have a profound affect on the person's work and social life.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Psoriasis is a common skin disorder with an estimated worldwide prevalence between 1 and 3%. In the UK it has been reported to affect 1–2% of the population. However, this is probably an underestimate, as many patients with mild psoriasis do not present to their GP.

Psoriasis can present at any time in life, although it appears to be more prevalent in the second and fifth

Table 7.2
Common terms used to describe skin lesions

Term	Description
Macule	A flat lesion which is less than 1 cm in diameter
Patch	A flat lesion which is greater than 1 cm in diameter
Papule	A raised solid lesion less than 1 cm in diameter
Nodule	A raised solid lesion greater than 1 cm in diameter
Vesicle	A clear fluid filled lesion lasting a few days which is less than 1 cm in diameter
Bulla	A clear fluid filled lesion lasting a few days which is greater than 1 cm in diameter
Pustule	A pus filled lesion lasting a few days which is less than 1 cm in diameter
Comedone	A papule which is 'plugged' with keratin and sebum
Erythema	Redness due to dilated blood vessels that blanch when pressed
Excoriation	Localised damage to the skin due to scratching
Lichenification	Thickening of the epidermis with increased skin markings due to scratching

Table 7.3
Things to consider when performing a dermatological examination

Lesions	Relevance
Temperature	Use the backs of your fingers to make the assessment. This should enable you to identify generalised warmth or coolness of the skin and note the temperature of any red areas, e.g. generalised warmth can indicate fever whereas local warmth might indicate inflammation or cellulitis
Lesions	**Distribution** – many skin diseases have a 'typical' or 'classic' distribution Symmetrical – e.g. acne and psoriasis Asymmetrical – e.g. contact dermatitis Unilateral – e.g. shingles Localised – e.g. nappy rash **Arrangement** Discrete (with healthy skin in between) – e.g. psoriasis Coalescing (merging together) – e.g. eczema Grouped – e.g. insect bites **Feel of lesions** Remember that very few skin conditions are infectious, so do not be afraid to touch the patient's skin Smooth – e.g. urticaria Rough – e.g. solar keratosis
Recent trauma	Is there any sign that individual lesions have developed on a site of trauma or injury such as a scratch? This is seen in a number of conditions such as psoriasis and viral warts

decade. It is rare in infants and uncommon in children. The sexes are equally affected but it is more common in Caucasians.

Aetiology

The exact aetiology of psoriasis still remains unclear but it is known that inherited factors are important. For example, if the patient has one parent with psoriasis then they have a 25 to 30% chance of developing psoriasis and if both parents suffer from psoriasis then the figure rises to 50–60%. However, studies in twins also suggest that environmental factors might be needed for clinical expression of the disease because only 70% of genetically identical twins both develop the condition. Studies have identified a region on chromosome 6 as a contributor to psoriasis susceptibility (known as *PSORS1*) and has been associated with at least 50% of psoriasis cases in several populations.

Psoriasis lesions also develop at sites of skin trauma, such as sunburn and cuts (known as the Koebner phenomenon), following streptococcal throat infection and during periods of stress.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Psoriasis can be located on various parts of the body (Fig. 7.2) and presents in a variety of different forms. Plaque and scalp psoriasis are the only forms of the condition

Table 7.4
Specific questions to ask the patient: Psoriasis

Question	Relevance
Onset	Psoriasis can develop in patients of any age, although it first occurs most commonly in early adult life. However, in young and elderly patients the lesions tend to be atypical, which can make the diagnosis more difficult
Distribution of rash	Psoriasis often presents in a symmetrical distribution and most commonly involves the scalp and extensor aspects of the elbows and knees. The gluteal cleft and umbilicus can also be affected (Fig. 7.2) Conditions that resemble psoriasis, such as lichen planus (often inside of the wrists) and pityriasis rosea (thighs and trunk) have a different distribution to psoriasis
Other symptoms	Itch is not normally the predominant feature of psoriasis, unlike other conditions such as dermatitis and fungal infections Nail involvement in the form of pitting and onycholysis (separation of the nail plate from the nail bed) is often seen and can involve one or more of the nails. This is normally observed in patients with longstanding psoriasis and is therefore of little value in patients presenting with rash of recent onset
Look of rash	Scalp and plaque psoriasis usually show scaling as an obvious feature. This is not seen with other common skin conditions (e.g. dermatitis) or other forms of psoriasis When scalp involvement is mild, psoriasis can be impossible to distinguish from seborrhoeic dermatitis
Previous history of lesions	Psoriasis is a chronic relapsing and remitting disease and it is likely that the patient will have had lesions in the past. Other skin diseases, such as fungal infections, are acute and patients do not normally have a history of the problem

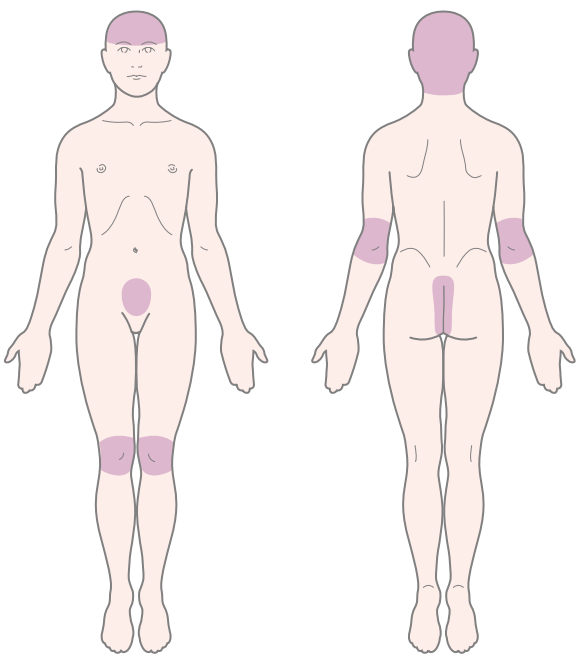


Fig. 7.2 Typical distribution of psoriatic plaques.

that can be managed by the community pharmacist. It is therefore necessary that other forms of psoriasis, and conditions that look like psoriasis, can be recognised and distinguished. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.4).

Clinical features of plaque psoriasis

Plaque psoriasis classically presents with characteristic salmon-pink lesions with slivery-white scales and well defined boundaries (Fig. 7.3). Lesions can be single or multiple and vary in size from pinpoint to covering extensive areas. If the scales on the surface of the plaque are gently removed and the lesion is then rubbed, it reveals pinpoint bleeding from the superficial dilated capillaries. This is known as the Auspitz' sign and is diagnostic.

Clinical features of scalp psoriasis

Scalp psoriasis can be mild, exhibiting slight redness of the scalp through to severe cases with marked inflammation and thick scaling (Fig. 7.4). The redness often extends beyond the hair margin and is commonly seen behind the ears.

Fig. 7.3 Typical psoriatic plaques. Reproduced from D J Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Fig. 7.4 Scaly plaques of psoriasis in the scalp, with localised hair loss. Reproduced from D J Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Conditions to eliminate for plaque psoriasis

Pustular psoriasis

In this rare form of psoriasis sterile pustules are an obvious clinical feature. The pustules tend to be located on the advancing edge of the lesions and typically occur on the palms of the hands and soles of the feet (Fig. 7.5).

Seborrhoeic psoriasis (also known as flexural psoriasis)

Seborrhoeic psoriasis refers to classic lesions that affect the scalp but with less typical lesions (lack scaling) in the body folds, especially the groins and axillae. Often, in mild cases the scalp might be the only part of the body involved. Itch, in this form, can be prominent.

Fig. 7.5 Pustular psoriasis. Reproduced from J Wilkinson et al 2004, Dermatology in Focus, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Guttate psoriasis (also known as raindrop psoriasis)

Guttate psoriasis is characterised by crops of scattered small lesions (less than 1 cm) covered with light flaky scales that often affects the trunk and proximal part of the limbs (Fig. 7.6). This form of psoriasis usually occurs in adolescents and often follows a streptococcal throat infection and in people genetically predisposed to psoriasis. The condition is usually self-limiting.

Erythrodermic psoriasis

Erythrodermic psoriasis presents as an extensive erythema and shows very few classical lesions. It is therefore difficult to diagnosis. The condition is serious and can even be life threatening. Systemic symptoms can be severe and include fever, joint pain and diarrhoea. Patients are extremely unlikely to present at a community pharmacy.

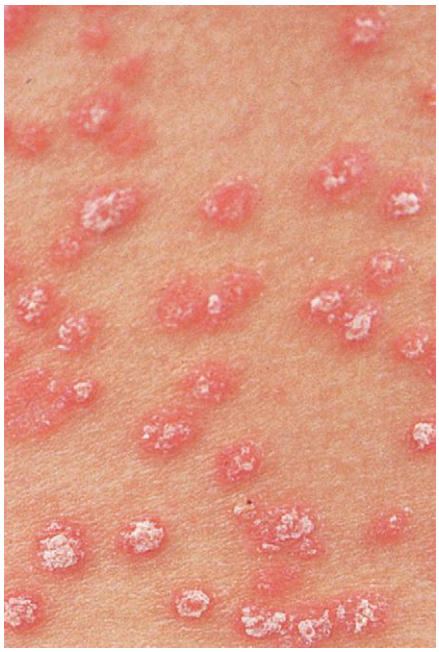


Fig. 7.6 Guttate psoriasis. Reproduced from J Wilkinson et al 2004, Dermatology in Focus, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Tinea corporis

Tinea corporis can superficially look like plaque psoriasis. For further information on tinea infection see page 210.

Lichen planus

Lichen planus is an uncommon condition and is reported to only account for 0.2 to 0.8% of dermatological outpatient consultations. The lesions are similar in appearance to plaque psoriasis but are itchy and are normally located on the inner surfaces of the wrists and on the shins, an atypical distribution for psoriasis. Additionally, oral mucous membranes are normally affected with white, slightly raised lesions that look a little like a spider's web. The person will not have a family history of psoriasis.

Pityriasis rosea

The condition is characterised by erythematous scaling mainly on the trunk, but also on the thighs and upper arms. The colour of the rash tends to be a lighter pink colour than psoriasis and can be mildly itchy. A 'target' disc lesion, often misdiagnosed as ringworm, is followed 1 week later with an extensive rash. It most commonly affects young adults. The condition usually remits spontaneously after 4 to 8 weeks. An accurate history will normally eliminate pityriasis rosea from psoriasis, as the condition is acute in onset and the patient can often identify the initial 'target' lesion.

Medication-exacerbated psoriasis

A number of medicines can worsen or aggravate existing psoriasis. Medication most commonly associated are lithium, antimalarials and beta-blockers. Other less commonly implicated include digoxin, amiodarone, clonidine, penicillin, tetracycline, terbinafine, bupropion and sulphonamides. In addition systemic corticosteroids have been shown to induce flares in psoriasis patients.

Conditions to eliminate for scalp psoriasis

Seborrhoeic dermatitis

Mild scalp psoriasis can be very difficult to distinguish from seborrhoeic dermatitis. However, in practice this is rarely a problem since treatment for both conditions is often the same. For further information on seborrhoeic dermatitis see page 207.

Tinea capitis (fungal infection of the scalp)

Tinea capitis is an uncommon infection but if the patient has scaling skin, broken hairs and a patch of alopecia then a tinea infection should be considered.

Figure 7.7 will aid in the differentiation of plaque psoriasis.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Psoriasis

- Lesions that are extensive, follow recent infection or cause moderate to severe itching
- Patients with psoriatic-type lesions but who have no family history or past personal history of psoriasis
- Pustular psoriatic lesions

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Before any treatment is offered to the patient it is first worth noting that simple OTC remedies should be limited to mild to moderate plaque psoriasis and scalp psoriasis, as these are most likely to respond to such measures. A patient who presents with severe plaque psoriasis or another form of psoriasis should be referred.

Any treatment recommended should also be in conjunction with patient education. Reassurance should be given about its benign, non-contagious nature but it should be emphasised that the condition is chronic and long-term that has periods of remission and relapse.

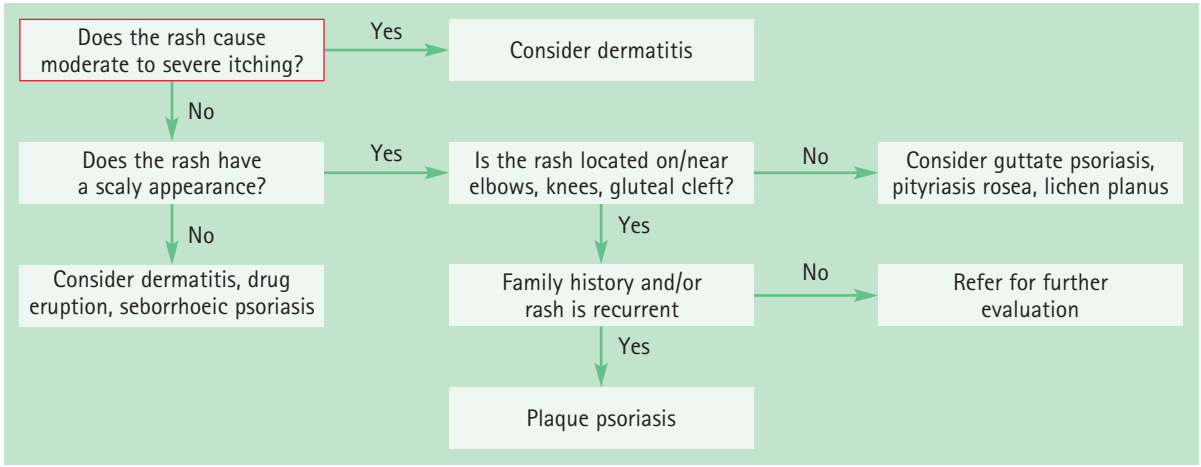


Fig. 7.7 Primer for differential diagnosis of plaque psoriasis.

Treatment OTC is limited to the use of emollients, keratolytics, coal tar (or dithranol), although there is limited published literature supporting efficacy of these treatments. Other topical treatments and systemic agents available on prescription have evidence of efficacy if OTC options are ineffective. A future candidate for deregulation to Pharmacy status is calcipotriol (Dovonex) as it has proven efficacy for mild to moderate plaque psoriasis and has few side effects.

Emollients

No published literature appears to have addressed either emollient efficacy or whether one emollient is superior to another in treating psoriasis. Subjective evidence over a long period of time has shown that emollients are useful and are an important aspect of psoriasis treatment. Emollients are frequently prescribed and used to help soften scaling and soothe the skin so reducing irritation, cracking and dryness. On current evidence there is no way of knowing if one emollient is superior to another. Patients might have to try several emollients before finding one that is most effective for their skin.

Keratolytics

Keratolytics, such as salicylic acid and lactic acid have been incorporated into emollients to aid clearing scale and are often used for scalp psoriasis where very thick scaling can occur. Although there appears to be no published evidence for their efficacy in clearing scale, clinical practice suggests that they should be used first when significant scaling is present before using other treatments.

Coal tar

Goeckerman demonstrated the effectiveness of coal tar as early as 1925. This remained the mainstay of treatment until the introduction of dithranol, corticosteroids, and more recently, vitamin D and A analogues. A number of clinical studies have confirmed the beneficial effect coal tar has on psoriasis, although a major drawback in assessing the effectiveness of coal tar preparations is the variability in their composition making meaningful comparisons between studies difficult. Comparisons between coal tar and other treatment regimens have been conducted. Tham et al (1994) compared the effectiveness of calcipotriol 50 µg twice daily versus 15% coal tar solution each day. Both treatments were shown to be effective, although calcipotriol was significantly better than the coal tar solution. Harrington (1989) compared two pharmacy-only products, Psorin and Alphosyl. Findings showed that both helped in the treatment of psoriasis but Psorin (which includes 0.11% dithranol) was significantly more effective.

Dithranol

Dithranol was first used in the 1950s and has become an established treatment option as clinical trials have established its efficacy. A systematic review in 2009 identified three placebo-controlled trials with dithranol, all demonstrating a statistically significant improvement over placebo (Mason et al 2009). There appears to be no definitive answer as to which strength is most appropriate, however, current practice dictates starting on the lowest possible concentration and gradually increasing the concentration until improvement is noticed. In addition, short contact regimens are advocated. However, one review of

published studies involving short-contact dithranol therapy concluded that due to methodological flaws in many of the trials it is impossible to objectively determine the efficacy of this regimen (Naldi et al 1992).

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the medicines used to treat psoriasis discussed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is summarised in Table 7.5; useful tips relating to patients presenting with psoriasis are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.1.

Emollients

All emollients should be regularly and liberally applied with no upper limit on how often they can be used. All are chemically inert and can therefore be safely used from birth onwards by all patients. They do not have any interactions with other medicines. For more information on emollients see page 242.

Tar-based products

All patient groups, including pregnant and breastfeeding women, can use the majority of products on either the skin

Table 7.5
Practical prescribing: Summary of tar-based products

	Scalp, Skin or both	Salicylic acid	Sulphur	Other ingredients	Children	Application
Alphosyl 2 in 1 Shampoo	Scalp	No	No	No	All ages	Every 2 to 3 days
Capasal	Scalp	Yes	No	Coconut oil 1%	All ages	Daily
Carbo-Dome	Cream	No	No	No	All ages	Two or three times a day
Cocois	Scalp	Yes	Yes	No	>6 years	Weekly
Exorex	Scalp	No	No	No	>12 years	2 to 3 times a day
Pentrax shampoo	Scalp	No	No	No	All ages	Twice weekly
Pinetarsol	Skin	No	No	No	All ages	Can be used as a soap substitute
Polytar & Polytar Plus	Scalp	No	No	No	All ages	Once or twice weekly
Psoriderm	Both	No	No	No	All ages	Once or twice a day
SebCo	Scalp	Yes	Yes	No	>6 years	Daily when needed
T/Gel	Scalp	No	No	No	All ages	2 to 3 times a week

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.1: PSORIASIS

Problems with tar and dithranol products	Coal tar and dithranol share common problems of patient compliance. Both are messy to use, have an unpleasant odour and can stain skin and clothing
UV Light	90% of patients with psoriasis improve when exposed to sunlight and most patients notice an improvement when they go on holiday
Emollient use	Remind patients that these should be used regularly and liberally
Emollient bath additives	Some bath additives, for example oilatum, will make the bath slippery and patients should be warned to exercise care when getting out of the bath

or scalp. They have no drug interactions but can cause local skin or scalp irritation and stain skin and clothes. There has been recent concern over topical tar products association with an increased risk of skin cancer, although there is at present no firm epidemiological evidence (http://www.bad.org.uk/site/1114/default.aspx; accessed 13 November 2012).

Dithranol (e.g. Dithrocream)

Dithranol preparations are pharmacy-only medicines so long as the strength does not exceed a maximum of 1.0%. Although dithranol has evidence of efficacy, recommendation is not advocated in a pharmacy context due to its adverse effects, even at low concentrations. When used, short-contact therapy is often advocated because prolonged exposure can lead to irritation and burning skin. This involves using the lowest strength for the shortest period, which controls symptoms.

References

Harrington CI. Low concentration dithranol and coal tar (Psorin) in psoriasis: a comparison with alcoholic coal tar extract and allantoin (Alphosyl). Br J Clin Pract 1989;43:27–9.

Mason AR, Mason J, Cork M, et al. Topical treatments for chronic plaque psoriasis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2009, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD005028. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005028.pub2.

Naldi L, Carrel CF, Parazzini F, et al. Development of anthralin short-contact therapy in psoriasis: survey of published clinical trials. Int J Dermatol 1992;31:126–30.

Tham SN, Lun KC, Cheong WK. A comparative study of calcipotriol ointment and tar in chronic plaque psoriasis. Br J Dermatol 1994;131:673–7.

Further reading

Clark C. Psoriasis: first-line treatments. Pharm J 2004;274:623–6.

Dodd WA. Tars. Their role in the treatment of psoriasis. Dermatol Clin 1993;11:131–5.

Freeman K. Psoriasis: not just a skin disease. The Prescriber 2007;5th June:42–5, 49.

Gelfand JM, Weinstein R, Porter SB, et al. Prevalence and treatment of psoriasis in the United Kingdom: a population-based study. Arch Dermatol 2005;141:1537–41.

Leary MR, Rapp SR, Herbst KC, et al. Interpersonal concerns and psychological difficulties of psoriasis patients: effects of disease severity and fear of negative evaluation. Health Psychol 1998;17:530–6.

MacKie RM. Clinical Dermatology. Hong Kong: Oxford University Press; 1999.

Nevitt GJ, Hutchinson PE. Psoriasis in the community: prevalence, severity and patients' beliefs and attitudes towards the disease. Br J Dermatol 1996;135 (4):533–7.

Scon P, Henning-Boehncke W, Psoriasis. N Engl J Med 2005;352:1899–912.

Tristani-Firouzi P, Kruegger CG. Efficacy and safety of treatment modalities for psoriasis. Cutis 1998;61:11–21.

Web sites

The Psoriasis Association: http://www.psoriasis-association.org.uk/

Psoriatic Arthropathy Alliance: http://www.paalliance.org/

Dandruff (pityriasis capitis)

Background

Dandruff is a chronic relapsing non-inflammatory hyperproliferative skin condition that is often seen as socially unsightly and a source of embarrassment. Consequently, there are many products marketed to help with the problem.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Dandruff is very common and affects both sexes and all age groups, although it is unusual in pre-pubescent children. It has been estimated to affect 1–3% of the population (Gupta et al, 2004).

Aetiology

Increased cell turnover rate is responsible for dandruff but the reason why cell turnover increases is unknown. Increasingly, research has focused on the role that microorganisms have on the pathogenesis of dandruff, and in particular the yeast *Malassezia* (previously known as *Pityrosporum*) *ovale,* although the evidence is inconclusive as to whether *M. ovale* is the primary cause of dandruff or is a contributory factor. It has been shown that *M. ovale* makes up more of the scalp flora of dandruff sufferers and might explain why dandruff improves in the summer months (fungal organisms thrive in warm and moist environments that exist on the scalp due to wearing of hats and caps). Further evidence to support a role of *M. ovale* in the aetiology of dandruff is the positive effect that antifungal therapy has on the resolution of dandruff.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Most patients will diagnose and treat dandruff without seeking medical help. However, for those patients that do ask for help and advice it is important to differentiate dandruff from other scalp conditions. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.6).

Table 7.6
Specific questions to ask the patient: Dandruff

Question	Relevance
Presence of erythema	Dandruff is not associated with scalp redness unless the person has been scratching. Redness is characteristic of psoriasis and is common in adult seborrhoeic dermatitis
Itch	Dandruff tends to cause itching of the scalp unlike psoriasis and seborrhoeic dermatitis
Presence of other skin lesions	An adult with scalp involvement only is likely to have dandruff, especially in the absence of erythema Many patients who have scalp psoriasis also have plaque psoriasis affecting arms, legs and the back

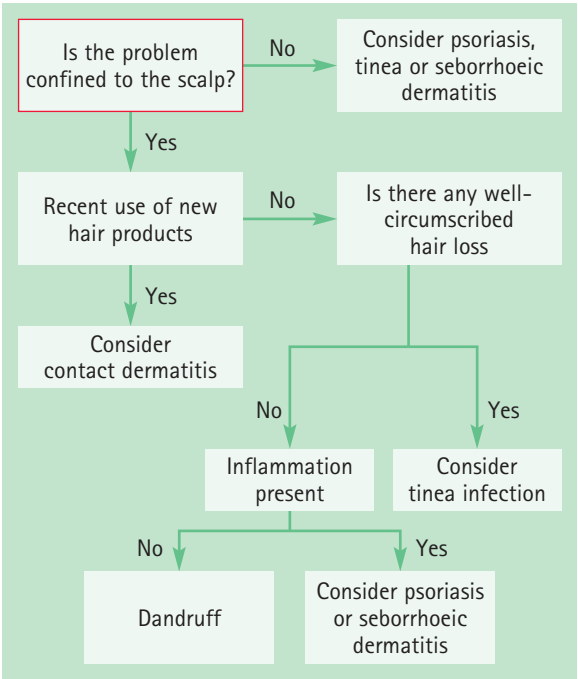


Fig. 7.8 Primer for differential diagnosis of dandruff.

Clinical features of dandruff

The scalp will be dry, itchy and flaky. Flakes of dead skin are usually visible in the hair close to the scalp and are visible on the shoulders and collars of clothing.

Conditions to eliminate

Seborrhoeic dermatitis

Typically, seborrhoeic dermatitis will affect areas other than the scalp. In adults, the trunk is commonly involved, as are the eyebrows, eyelashes and external ear. If only scalp involvement is present then the patient might complain of severe and persistent dandruff and the skin of the scalp will be red. For further information on seborrhoeic dermatitis see page 207.

Contact dermatitis

Enquiry should be made to the use of new hair products such as dyes and perms. These can cause irritation and scaling. Avoidance of the irritant should see an improvement in the condition. If improvement is not observed after avoidance of 1 to 2 weeks then a re-assessment of the condition is needed.

Tinea capitis

If the problem is persistent and associated with hair loss then fungal infection of the scalp should be considered.

Figure 7.8 will aid the differentiation of dandruff from other scalp disorders.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Dandruff

- OTC treatment failure with a 'medicated shampoo'
- Suspected fungal infection

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

The use of a hypoallergenic shampoo on a daily basis will usually control mild symptoms. In more persistent and severe cases a 'medicated' shampoo can be used to control the symptoms. Treatment options include coal tar, selenium sulphide, zinc pyrithione and ketoconazole.

Coal tar

The mechanism of action for crude coal tar in the management of dandruff is unclear, although it appears that tars affect DNA synthesis and have an antimitotic effect. There are virtually no published studies in the literature to assess the efficacy of coal tars in the treatment of dandruff. A review in *Clinical Evidence* identified one study comparing coal tar to placebo (Manrìquez & Uribe 2007). The study involving 111 people with seborrhoeic dermatitis or dandruff found coal tar reduced dandruff scores and redness

Table 7.7
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for dandruff

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug Interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & Breastfeeding
Coal tar products	All ages	Local irritation and dermatitis reported but rare	None	None	OK
Selenium	>5 years				Manufacturers state to avoid in first trimester but safety data shows it to be OK when used on small areas over a limited time No evidence to say it would be absorbed into breast milk
Zinc pyrithione	All ages				OK
Ketoconazole	All ages				

compared to placebo at 29 days. Despite the lack of evidence, tar derivatives are found in a plethora of OTC medicated shampoos and have been granted FDA approval in America as an antidandruff agent.

Selenium sulphide

Selenium is thought to work by its antifungal action. It is accepted that selenium is effective as an antidandruff agent and studies have shown it to be significantly better than placebo and non-medicated shampoos.

Zinc pyrithione

Zinc pyrithione, like selenium, exhibits antifungal properties but also reduces cell turnover rates. It is believed that one or both of these properties confers its effectiveness in treating dandruff. Few trials have been conducted with zinc pyrithione although trials have shown significant improvement in dandruff severity scores.

Ketoconazole

Ketoconazole, an azole antifungal, inhibits *M. ovale* replication by interfering with cell membrane formation. It helps in controlling the itching and flaking associated with dandruff. Studies have shown it to be an effective treatment. It has been demonstrated that ketoconazole is significantly better than zinc pyrithione and has similar efficacy to selenium, although it is better tolerated than selenium. Ketoconazole has also been shown to act as a prophylactic agent in preventing relapse.

In addition to the ingredients listed, salicylic acid is an ingredient in some combined products (e.g. Capasal and Meted) and included for its keratolytic properties, although trials are lacking to substantiate its effect.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.2: DANDRUFF

Selsun Shampoo	Gold, silver and other metallic jewellery should be removed prior to use, because it can be discoloured. It also has an unpleasant odour

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to the specific products used to treat dandruff and discussed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 7.7; useful tips relating to dandruff shampoo are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.2.

All antidandruff shampoos can cause local scalp irritation. If this is severe the product should be discontinued. Any patient group can use them, although some manufacturers state products should be avoided during the first 3 months of pregnancy. However, there appears to be no data to substantiate this precaution during pregnancy.

Coal tar products

Products containing coal tar are discussed under practical prescribing for psoriasis. For further information on coal tar products see page 203.

Selenium sulphide (e.g. Selsun)

Adults and children over the age of 5 should use the product twice a week for the first 2 weeks and then once a week for the next 2 weeks. The hair should be thoroughly wet before applying the shampoo and left in contact with

the scalp for 2 to 3 minutes before rinsing out. Selenium should be avoided if the patient has inflamed or broken skin because irritation can occur. Selenium can also cause discolouration of the hair and alter the colour of hair dyes.

Zinc pyrithione (e.g. Head and Shoulders)

Zinc-based products can be used by all patients and at any age. It should be used on a daily basis until dandruff clears. Dermatitis has been reported with zinc pyrithione and should be borne in mind when treating patients with pre-existing dermatitis.

Ketoconazole (Nizoral Dandruff and Nizoral Anti-Dandruff Shampoo)

Nizoral can either be used to treat acute flare-ups of dandruff or as prophylaxis. To treat acute cases adults and children should wash the hair thoroughly, leaving the shampoo on for 3 to 5 minutes before rinsing it off. This should be repeated every 3 or 4 days (twice a week) for between 2 and 4 weeks. If used for prophylaxis, the shampoo should be used once every 1 to 2 weeks. It can cause local itching or a burning sensation on application and may rarely discolour hair.

References

Gupta AK, Batra R, Bluhm R, et al. Skin diseases associated with Malassezia species. J Am Acad Dermatol 2004;51:785–98.

Manriquez JJ, Uribe P. Seborrhoeic dermatitis. 2007; Clinical Evidence. BMJ Publishing Group Ltd. www.clinicalevidence.com.

Further reading

Arrese JE, Pierard-Franchimont C, De-Doncker P, et al. Effect of ketoconazole-medicated shampoos on squamometry and Malassezia ovalis load in pityriasis capitis. Cutis 1996;58:235–7.

Danby FW, Maddin WS, Margesson LJ, et al. A randomized double-blind controlled trial of ketoconazole 2% shampoo versus selenium sulfide 2.5% shampoo in the treatment of moderate to severe dandruff. J Am Acad Dermatol 1993;29:1008–12.

Nigam PK, Tyagi S, Saxena AK, et al. Dermatitis from zinc pyrithione. Contact Dermatitis 1988;19:219.

Orentreich N. Comparative study of two antidandruff preparations. J Pharm Sci 1969;58:1279–84.

Pereira F, Fernandes C, Dias M, et al. Allergic contact dermatitis from zinc pyrithione. Contact Dermatitis 1995;33:131.

Peter RU, Richarz-Barthauer U. Successful treatment and prophylaxis of scalp seborrheic dermatitis and dandruff with 2% ketoconazole shampoo: Results of a multicentre, double blind, placebo-controlled trial. Br J Dermatol 1995;132:441–5.

Pierard-Franchimont C, Goffin V, Decroix J, et al. A multicenter randomized trial of ketoconazole 2% and zinc pyrithione 1% shampoos in severe dandruff and seborrhoeic dermatitis. Skin Pharmacol Appl Skin Physiol 2002;15(6):434–41.

Rigoni C, Toffolo P, Cantu A, et al. 1% econazole hair shampoo in the treatment of pityriasis capitis; a comparative study versus zinc pyrithione shampoo. G Ital Dermatol Venereol 1989;124:67–70.

Van Custem J, Van Gerven F, Fransen J, et al. The in vitro antifungal activity of ketoconazole, zinc pyrithione and selenium sulfide against *Pityrosporum* and their efficacy as a shampoo in the treatment of experimental pityrosporosis in guinea pigs. J Am Acad Dermatol 1990;22:993–8.

Seborrhoeic dermatitis

Background

There are two distinct types of seborrhoeic dermatitis: an infantile form, often referred to as cradle cap, and an adult form. Seborrhoeic dermatitis can present with varying degrees of severity, ranging from mild dandruff to a severe and explosive form in acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) patients.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Estimates of the prevalence of clinically significant seborrhoeic dermatitis range from 1 to 5% of the population, although cradle cap is reported to be more prevalent than the adult form (Naldi & Rebora 2009). Cradle cap usually starts in infancy, before the age of 6 months and is usually self-limiting; the adult form tends to be chronic and persistent. Seborrhoeic dermatitis is more common in adult men than women, and also more common in people with underlying neurological illness, for example, Parkinson's disease (Johnson & Nunley 2000).

Aetiology

Despite its name, there appears to be no changes in sebum secretion. Like psoriasis and dandruff, seborrhoeic dermatitis is characterised by an increased cell turnover rate. The precise cause of seborrhoeic dermatitis remains unknown and several theories have been put forward, ranging from immunological, hormonal and nutritional mechanisms. Like dandruff, *Malassezia ovale* plays an important role in the development of seborrhoeic dermatitis; however, it has not yet been established whether it has a primary or

Table 7.8
Specific questions to ask the patient: Seborrhoeic dermatitis

Question	Relevance
Itching	In cradle cap the rash does not itch. This is useful in differentiating cradle cap from atopic dermatitis as there is often overlap in the age at which they present.
Location	Infantile and adult forms of seborrhoeic dermatitis do present in different locations (Fig. 7.9). Additionally, the distribution in the adult form varies from other similar skin conditions (e.g. psoriasis – typically involves knees, elbows and sacral area).
Positive family history	Patients tend not to have a family history in seborrhoeic dermatitis. This is in contrast to patients with psoriasis and those patients suffering from atopic dermatitis.
Other symptoms	Ear and eyelid problems are associated with seborrhoeic dermatitis. The general health of a child with seborrhoeic dermatitis will be unaffected. In contrast a child who is fractious and miserable is more likely to have atopic dermatitis. Seborrhoeic dermatitis usually has yellow greasy scale, unlike psoriasis, which has a silvery scale.
Physical signs	If you run your fingers through the hair of someone with seborrhoeic dermatitis little is felt. In psoriasis, accumulation of scales give the scalp an uneven, lumpy feel.

secondary role in the clinical presentation of seborrhoeic dermatitis.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Infantile seborrhoeic dermatitis is relatively easy to recognise but can sometimes be confused with atopic dermatitis. Arriving at a differential diagnosis of the adult form is more problematic as the condition can affect different areas and present with different degrees of severity. In mild cases it needs to be differentiated from dandruff and in more severe forms from allergic contact dermatitis, psoriasis and pityriasis versicolor. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.8).

Clinical features of seborrhoeic dermatitis

Cradle cap appears as large yellow, greasy scales and crusts on the scalp. This can become thick and cover the whole scalp (Fig. 7.10). Other areas can be involved such as the face and napkin area.

The adult form of seborrhoeic dermatitis is characterised by a history of intermittent skin problems. The distribution of rash is synonymous with skin areas with high numbers of sebaceous glands, typically the central part of the face, scalp, eyebrows, eyelids, ears, nasolabial folds and mid chest (Fig. 7.11). The rash is red with greasy looking scales and is mildly itchy. Blepharitis and otitis externa are also common secondary complications.

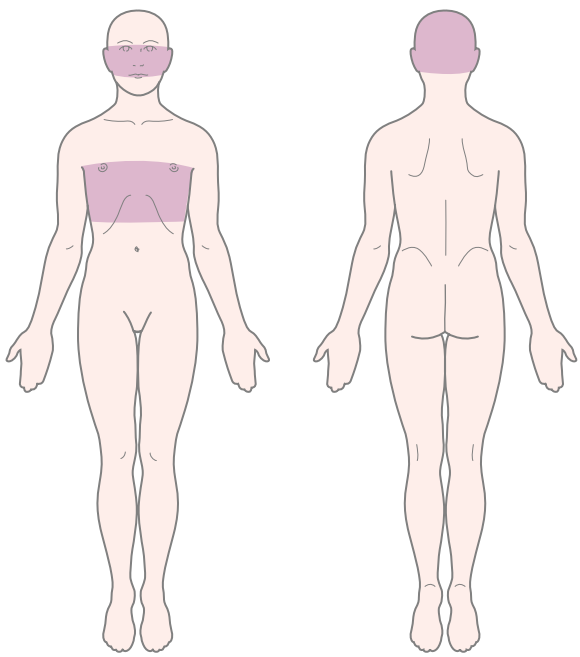


Fig. 7.9 Typical distribution of seborrhoeic dermatitis.

Conditions to eliminate

Atopic dermatitis

In infants, atopic dermatitis usually presents as itchy lesions on the face and trunk. Scalp involvement is less common and the nappy area is usually spared. A positive

Fig. 7.10 Infantile seborrhoeic dermatitis. Reproduced from R Kliegman, R E Behrman, W Emerson Nelson and H B Jenson, 2007, Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics, Saunders Elsevier with permission.

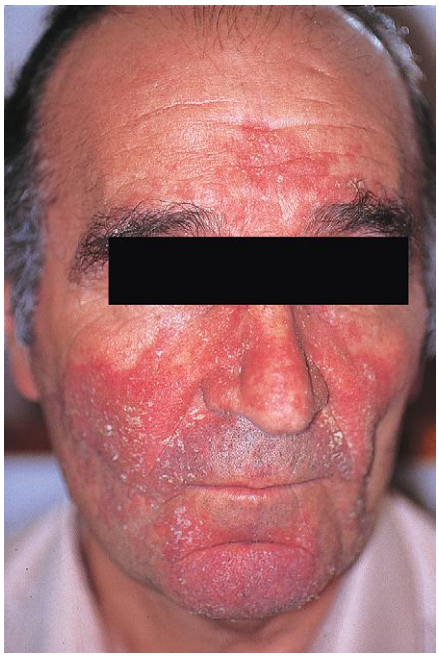


Fig. 7.11 Seborrhoeic dermatitis affecting the face. Reproduced from D J Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

family history of the atopic triad of dermatitis, asthma or hay fever is common. For further information on differentiating atopic dermatitis see page 291.

Psoriasis

Adults with scalp psoriasis can be confused with those patients who present with severe and persistent dandruff caused by seborrhoeic dermatitis. However, in scalp psoriasis the plaques tend to be crusty and extend away from the hairline where as seborrhoeic dermatitis causes scaling with underlying redness. It also affects the eyebrows and eyelids, unlike psoriasis.

Pityriasis versicolor (meaning bran-like scaly rash of various colour)

Pityriasis versicolor, a yeast infection, can be mistaken for adult seborrhoeic dermatitis because the lesions exhibit fine superficial scale and are located on the upper trunk. The lesions are usually small (less than 1 cm) but can join together to form larger plaques. The condition is associated with warm climates and most people will have picked the infection up when on holiday. The rash does not itch significantly and the face is usually spared. It can be treated with antifungal lotions and shampoos (see Dandruff page 206), or if a small number of lesions with imidazole creams (see Fungal infections page 213). Antifungal shampoos such as ketoconazole, and selenium sulphide (2.5%) are applied for 10 minutes and then washed off, and this is repeated daily for 10 days. Imidazole creams are applied daily for 10 days.

Rosacea

Rosacea predominately affects the face – an area usually involved in adult seborrhoeic dermatitis. For more information on rosacea see page 233 under the acne section.

Medication that can trigger or aggravate seborrhoeic dermatitis

A number of medicines are associated with triggering or aggravating existing seborrhoeic dermatitis. These include: buspirone, cimetidine, gold, griseofulvin, haloperidol, interferon alfa, lithium, methyldopa and phenothiazines.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Seborrhoeic dermatitis

- Treatment failure with OTC medicines
- Lesions that appear after holiday to warm climates

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Treatment options for seborrhoeic dermatitis are the same as dandruff. Unfortunately, seborrhoeic dermatitis tends to be more resistant to therapy and often recurs whatever treatment is chosen.

For infants with cradle cap simple measures are usually only required in most cases. Daily use of a baby shampoo

Table 7.9
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for cradle cap

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Dentinox Cradle Cap Shampoo	Birth onwards	None reported	None	None	Not applicable

followed by gentle brushing will improve the condition. If this fails, the scales can be removed by applying olive oil to the scalp overnight followed by using a baby shampoo the next morning. If symptoms persist a medicated shampoo containing a keratolytic (e.g. Meted) or keratolytic-tar combination (e.g. Capasal) could be tried. If this fails the child should be referred to the GP.

In adults, OTC preparations should only be used on mild to moderate seborrhoeic dermatitis involving the scalp. In mild cases of scalp involvement zinc pyrithione can be tried, reserving selenium and ketoconazole for resistant or more moderate disease. For involvement on the face and torso antifungals and corticosteroids are effective but OTC product licences preclude their use.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to specific products used to treat seborrhoeic dermatitis is discussed under 'Dandruff' on page 206. In addition, at least one product is marketed specifically for cradle cap and is discussed and summarised in Table 7.9.

Dentinox Cradle Cap Shampoo

This contains sodium lauryl ether sulphosuccinate 6% and sodium lauryl ether sulphate 2.7%. The shampoo should be applied twice during each bath time until the scalp clears, after which it can be used when needed.

References

Johnson BA, Nunley JR. Treatment of seborrheic dermatitis. Am Fam Physician 2000;61:2703–10.

Naldi L, Rebora A. Seborrhoeic dermatitis. N Engl J Med 2009;360(4):387–96.

Further reading

Bergbrant IM, Faergemann J. The role of *Pityrosporum ovale* in seborrheic dermatitis. Semin Dermatol 1990;9:262–8.

Danby FW, Maddin WS, Margesson LJ, et al. A randomized double-blind controlled trial of ketoconazole 2% shampoo versus selenium sulfide 2.5% shampoo in the treatment of moderate to severe dandruff. J Am Acad Dermatol 1993;29:1008–12.

Go IH, Wientjens DP, Koster M. A double-blind trial of 1% ketoconazole shampoo versus placebo in the treatment of dandruff. Mycoses 1992;35:103–5.

Gupta AK, Bluhm R. Seborrhoeic dermatitis. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 2004;18:13–26

McGrath J, Murphy GM. The control of seborrhoeic dermatitis and dandruff by antipityrosporal drugs. Drugs 1991;41:178–84.

Fungal skin infections

Background

Two main groups of fungi infect man: *Candida* yeasts and the dermatophytes. However, in this section only dermatophyte infections are considered. Fungal infections are commonly and inaccurately referred to as ringworm. Dermatophyte skin infections are classed by anatomical location, for example: Athlete's foot (tinea pedis); groin infection (tinea cruris or 'jock itch'); 'ringworm' of the skin (tinea corporis) and scalp 'ringworm' (tinea capitis).

Prevalence and epidemiology

Globally, dermatophytic fungi are more prevalent in tropical and subtropical areas because fungal organisms prefer high temperatures and high humidity. Having said this, dermatophyte infections are commonly met in more temperate Western countries. Tinea pedis (athlete's foot) is the most common fungal infection, although prevalence rates vary depending on the population studied and whether diagnosis is made by clinical symptoms or culture confirmation. Athlete's foot is said to affect about 15% of the UK population and is common in people of all ages.

Other tinea infections such as tinea corporis and tinea cruris might present in the community pharmacy but are uncommon Tinea unguium (nail infection) is covered separately on page 216. Tinea capitis is the commonest infection in children Worldwide but in Western nations is rare (for further information on fungal scalp infection see page 203).

Aetiology

Dermatophyte infections are contagious and transmitted directly from one host to another. They invade the stratum corneum of the skin, hair and nails but do not generally infiltrate living tissues. The fungus then begins to grow and proliferate in the non-living cornified layer of keratinised tissue of the epidermis. Transmission of athlete's foot is thought to be commonly acquired from communal rooms (e.g. changing rooms) whereas infection of the groin can be acquired from contaminated towels and bed sheets, or by autoinoculation from an existing foot infection.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Dependent on the area affected the infection will manifest itself in a variety of clinical presentations (Fig. 7.12). Recognition of symptoms for each site affected will facilitate recognition and accurate diagnosis. All forms of tinea infection should be relatively easy to recognise, perhaps with the exception of isolated lesions on the body.

Patients with athlete's foot will often accurately self-diagnose the condition. However, the pharmacist should still confirm this self-diagnosis through a combination of questions (Table 7.10) and inspection of the feet. This is important as it also provides an opportunity to check for fungal nail involvement.

Clinical features of tinea infections

Athlete's foot

Athlete's foot is characterised by itching, flaking and fissuring of the skin and will appear white and 'soggy' due to maceration of the skin (Fig. 7.13). The feet often smell. The usual site of infection is in the toe webs, especially the fourth web space (web space next to the little toe).

Once acquired the infection can spread to other sites including the sole and instep of the foot. Over time this can infect the nails (see page 216 for fungal nail infection). Cases of tinea infection where the plantar surface has become involved may be persistent and difficult to treat.

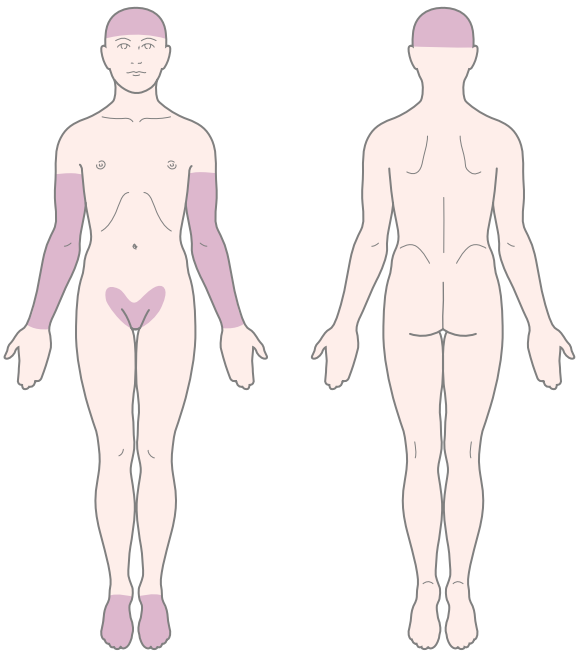


Fig. 7.12 Distribution of fungal infections.

Table 7.10
Specific questions to ask the patient: Fungal infections

Question	Relevance
Age and sex of patient	Athlete's foot is most prevalent in adolescents and young adults, especially men Nail involvement usually occurs in older adults Infection in the groin is much more common in men than women
Presence of itch	Fungal infections usually cause itch, irritation or burning sensations. This usually eliminates conditions such as psoriasis but not dermatitis/eczema
Associated symptoms	Fungal lesions tend to be dry and scaly (except athlete's foot) and have a sharp margin between infected and non-infected skin
Previous and family history	Fungal infections are usually acute in onset with no previous episodes, although athlete's foot may become recurrent For lesions that do not show a classic textbook description, a positive family history of dermatitis or psoriasis might influence your differential diagnosis

Fig. 7.13 Athlete's foot. Reproduced from AB Fleischer et al 2000, 20 Common Problems, with permission of the McGraw-Hill Companies.

Fig. 7.14 Tinea corporis. Reproduced from DJ Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Tinea corporis

Tinea corporis is defined as an infection of the major skin surfaces that do not involve the face, hands, feet, groin or scalp. The usual clinical presentation is of itchy pink or red scaly slightly raised patches with a well-defined inflamed border (Fig. 7.14). Over time the lesions often show 'central clearing' as the central area is relatively resistant to colonisation. This appearance led to the term ringworm. Lesions can occur singly, be numerous or overlap to produce a single large lesion and appear polycyclic (several overlapping circular lesions).

Tinea cruris

The rash is usually isolated to the groin and inner thighs, but can spread to the buttocks. It is often bilateral and is normally intensely itchy, reddish brown and has a well-defined edge.

Conditions to eliminate

Tinea faciei

Fungal infections on the face are rare and are consequently often mistaken for other facial skin conditions. The lesions are similar in appearance to tinea corporis in that they will normally have a sharp well-defined border, show scaling and be itchy. Conditions such as acne, rosacea and lupus need to be considered in its differential diagnosis.

Tinea manuum

Tinea manuum is often misdiagnosed as eczema or psoriasis due to its atypical tinea appearance. The patient usually suffers from chronic diffuse scaling of one palm. Often athlete's foot will be present, as the infection has spread to the hands from the feet due to the patient scratching their feet. The condition is not common and if no foot involvement is implicated then the diagnosis strongly points to dermatitis.

Psoriasis

Isolated fungal body lesions can be difficult to distinguish from plaque psoriasis. However, if the patient has psoriasis there will normally be a family history of psoriasis and the lesions tend not to itch, exhibit more scaling and do not show central clearing.

Dermatitis-allergic and contact forms

Both fungal infections and dermatitis exhibit red itchy lesions and therefore can be difficult to distinguish from one another. Patients with dermatitis will often have a family and personal history of dermatitis or be able to describe an event that triggered the onset of the rash. Misdiagnosis of a fungal infection for dermatitis and subsequent treatment with a steroid-based cream will diminish the itch, redness and scaling but the infecting organism will proliferate. On withdrawal of the steroid cream the visible signs of the infection will return and be worse than before, often in a papular form (tinea incognito).

Discoid eczema

This presents as round, raised, coin shaped lesions that particularly affects the arms and legs. It can itch and show superficial scale. It occurs mainly in middle aged people.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Tinea infections

- Involvement of large areas of the trunk (possible oral treatment needed)
- OTC treatment failure
- Suspected facial or scalp involvement

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Superficial dermatophyte infections can be treated effectively with topical OTC preparations. Six classes of medicines have proven efficacy in their treatment.

Allylamines

Terbinafine has been exempt from POM control in the UK since 2000. It inhibits the biosynthesis of ergosterol – an essential component of fungal cell membranes. Reviews have shown terbinafine to have high cure rates, slightly better than the imidazoles (Crawford & Hollis 2007).

Benzoic acid

Benzoic acid acts by lowering intracellular pH of dermatophytes and is combined with salicylic acid (Whitfield's ointment). Although Whitfield's ointment has been on the market for nearly a century it still has a role to play as an effective antifungal, but newer products, with higher cure rates, quicker resolution and more cosmetically acceptable formulations have replaced its widespread use in Western society.

Imidazoles

Imidazoles, like allylamines, act by inhibiting ergosterol production but at a later stage in the ergosterol biosynthesis pathway. They have largely replaced benzoic acid, undecenoates and tolnaftate, because they have greater efficacy and an excellent safety record (Crawford & Hollis 2007). There appears to be no clinically significant differences in cure rates between the different imidazoles and treatment choice will probably be driven by patient acceptability and cost.

Griseofulvin

Griseofulvin (as a 1% spray) works by inhibiting cellular mitosis. It has proven effectiveness when taken orally but has only limited trial data as a topical formulation. One trial reported an 80% mycological cure rate after 4 weeks with once daily application (Aly et al 1994).

Tolnaftate

Tolnaftate is thought to work by distorting fungal hyphae. It appears to have the least amount of trial data supporting its efficacy. Low patient numbers involved in the studies further compounds the difficulty in assessing its efficacy.

Undecenoates

The exact mechanism of action for undecenoates is not understood. They have been used to treat athlete's foot for over 30 years and features in the most recent United States Pharmacopoeia. In a recent Cochrane review, undecenoic acid was said to be efficacious in treating fungal infections for skin and nail infections of the foot (Crawford & Hollis 2007).

Summary

On current evidence, an imidazole or terbinafine would be first-line treatment for superficial fungal infection. Both have similar mycological and symptom cure rates, although terbinafine might be preferred because it clears symptoms in a shorter space of time, although it is more expensive.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to specific products used to treat fungal infections and discussed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is summarised in Table 7.11 and products available summarised in Table 7.12; useful tips relating to patients presenting with fungal infections are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.3.

Imidazoles

All topical imidazoles have excellent safety records and can be used by all patient groups, including pregnant and breastfeeding women. They do not have any drug interactions and the major side effect associated with their use is irritation on application. To prevent reinfection, imidazoles should be used after the lesions have cleared, although, the length of time varies from product to product.

Clotrimazole (e.g. Canesten range)

Clotrimazole-containing products can be used for all dermatophyte and candida infections. Canesten and Canesten AF cream should be applied two or three times a day, where as Canesten Hydrocortisone can only be used twice a day.

Bifonazole (Canesten Bifonazole Once Daily 1% w/w Cream)

Bifonazole is licensed for athlete's foot. For all patients the cream should be applied once daily.

Ketoconazole (Daktarin Gold)

Ketoconazole has a license for athlete's foot, groin infection and candidal intertrigo. For athlete's foot the cream should be applied twice a day for 1 week. For groin infections and candidal intertrigo, the cream should be applied once or twice daily. If no improvement in symptoms is experienced after 4 weeks treatment then the patient should be referred to the GP. For all conditions treatment should be continued for 2 to 3 days after all signs of infection have disappeared to prevent relapse.

Table 7.11
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for tinea infections

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Imidazoles					
Bifonazole	All ages	Mild burning or itching	None	None	OK
Clotrimazole					
Miconazole					
Ketoconazole					
Imidazole/steroid combination	>10 years				
Tolnaftate					
Mycil	No lower age stated	None reported	None	None	OK
Tinaderm					
Undecenoates					
Mycota	No lower age stated	None reported	None	None	OK
Benzoic acid					
Whitfield's Ointment	No lower age stated	None reported	None	None	OK
Terbinafine					
Lamisil range & Scholl Advance Athlete's Foot Cream	>16 years (>18 yrs for Lamisil Once)	Redness, itching	None	None	OK
Griseofulvin (Grisol AF)	No lower age stated	Stinging	None	None	OK

Miconazole (e.g. Daktarin range, Daktacort Hydrocortisone)

Products containing miconazole only are suitable for patients of all ages and should be used twice a day. Treatment should continue for 10 days after all lesions have disappeared to prevent relapse. Daktacort hydrocortisone is suitable for children aged over 10 and is licensed for sweat rash and athlete's foot.

Tolnaftate (e.g. Mycil, Tinaderm, Scholl Athlete's Foot Powder, liquid & cream)

Products containing tolnaftate have no interactions or side effects and can be used by all patients. They can be used for athlete's foot and infections of the groin and should be used twice a day with treatment continuing for at least 1 week after the infection has cleared up.

Undecenoates (e.g. Mycota)

Products containing undecenoates have no interactions and can be used by all patients. They are licensed for athlete's foot and should be used twice a day and treatment continued for at least 1 week after the infection has cleared up. Local irritation has been reported.

Benzoic acid (e.g. Whitfield's ointment)

Benzoic acid (in combination with salicylic acid) is now rarely used. However, it is a safe medicine and can be used by all patients.

Terbinafine (Lamisil range & Scholl Advance Athlete's Foot Cream)

Terbinafine can be used to treat athlete's foot, groin infection and tinea corporis. The cream should be applied once or twice a day whereas the spray and gel should be used only once daily. It has no interactions, has few reported side effects and can be used by all patients. All products are licensed for people aged over 16, except Lamisil Once, which is for use in people aged over 18 years of age.

Griseofulvin (Grisol AF spray)

Licensed for athlete's foot, Grisol should be applied to the area once daily. Each spray delivers 400 µg of griseofulvin

Table 7.12
Summary of antifungal products and formulations

Active ingredient	Brand	Formulations
Bifonazole	Canesten Bifonazole Once Daily	Cream
Clotrimazole 1%	Canesten AF	Cream, spray
	Canesten	Cream, spray, solution
Clotrimazole 1% & Hydrocortisone 1%	Canesten Hydrocortisone	Cream
Miconazole 2%	Daktarin Activ	Cream, spray, powder
	Daktarin	Cream and powder
Miconazole 2% & hydrocortisone 1%	Daktacort Hydrocortisone	Cream
Ketoconazole	Daktarin Gold	Cream
Terbinafine	Lamisil AT	Spray, cream, gel
	Lamisil Once	Solution
	Scholl Advance Athlete's Foot Cream	Cream
Tolnaftate	Mycil	Ointment, spray, powder
	Scholl Athlete's foot	Cream, spray, powder
	Tinaderm	Cream
Undecenoic acid	Mycota	Cream, spray, powder

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.3: FUNGAL INFECTION

Reinfection and transmission

It is not known if improving foot hygiene or changing footwear can help to cure athlete's foot but measures to reduce transmission include:

1. Dry the skin thoroughly after showering or having a bath. Keep a personal towel and do not share it to prevent the infection spreading from person to person
2. Wear cotton socks and change at least once a day
3. Avoid the use of occlusive non-breathable shoes
4. Dust shoes and socks with antifungal powder
5. Avoid scratching infected skin
6. Use flip-flops (or equivalent) when using communal changing rooms

Steroid containing products

The license states that the maximum period of treatment is 7 days. This limits their usefulness, as many fungal infections will take longer to clear than 7 days, especially as products need to be used after the lesions have cleared to prevent reinfection. Therefore they are probably best used to control initial symptoms of redness and itch before switching to an imidazole only product after the initial 7 days of treatment

with a maximum of three sprays in 24 hours for more extensive or severe infection. The spray should be used for 10 days after the lesions clear to prevent reinfection. It has no interactions, has few reported side effects and can be used by all patients.

References

Aly R, Bayles CI, Oakes RA, et al. Topical griseofulvin in the treatment of dermatophytoses. Clin Exp Dermatol 1994;19:43–6.

Crawford F, Hollis S. Topical treatments for fungal infections of the skin and nails of the foot. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD001434. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001434.pub2.

Further reading

Drake LA, Dinehart SM, Farmer ER, et al. Guidelines of care for superficial mycotic infections of the skin: tinea corporis, tinea cruris, tinea faciei, tinea manuum, and tinea pedis. Guidelines/Outcomes Committee. American Academy of Dermatology. J Am Acad Dermatol 1996;34:282–6.
Elewski B. Tinea capitis. Dermatol Clin 1996;14(23–31).
Moriarty B, Hay R, Morris-Jones R. The diagnosis and management of tinea. BMJ 2012;345:e4380.

Fungal nail infection (onychomycosis)

Background

The deregulation of amorolfine in the UK and other Western countries (e.g. Australia) now makes it possible for community pharmacists to treat infection affecting the toenails. Onychomycosis is defined as a chronic fungal infection of the fingernails or toenails, although only infection of the toenail is covered in the text. The infection is common but is probably under reported because of patient embarrassment or ignorance that they have an infection. If left untreated it can lead to pain and discomfort, which can make wearing shoes difficult. Nails, over time, will disfigure and crumble away.

Prevalence and epidemiology

It is estimated that over 10% of the general population suffer from onychomycosis (Thomas et al 2010). The incidence of infection increases with increasing age and is particularly common in people aged over 70 years of age (e.g. estimated at up to 50%).

Aetiology

Over 90% of cases are caused by dermatophytes (*Trichophyton rubrum* and *T. interdigitale*), with the remainder caused by yeasts and moulds. In most cases predisposing factors can be determined in the development of nail infection: for example, an initial skin infection (tinea pedis), in immunocompromised patients, or poor peripheral circulation and neuropathies (e.g. diabetes).

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

There are a number of different types of onychomycosis and it is important to be able to differentiate between them because amorolfine is only licensed for the treatment of distal lateral subungual onychomycosis. Taking a history of the presenting symptom will be helpful but a visual inspection of the toenails is strongly advocated.

Fig. 7.15 Tinea unguium. Reproduced from D J Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Clinical features of distal lateral subungual onychomycosis (DLSO)

DLSO is usually asymptomatic and people often seek medical help because of concerns about the appearance of the nail. The nail takes on a dull opaque and yellow appearance. Over time the nail thickens and distorts and as infection spreads and worsens the nail becomes brittle and crumbles away or falls off (Fig. 7.15). The key clinical symptoms that differentiate DLSO from other types of onychomycosis are summarised in Table 7.13. (For more images of fungal nail infection visit http://www.dermnetnz.org/fungal/onychomycosis.html; accessed 13 November 2012.)

Other conditions to eliminate

Psoriasis, eczema and trauma can affect the nail and need to be considered; in psoriasis, nail pitting is visible; for trauma there should be an identifiable event which affected the nail; and in eczema and psoriasis the skin should be affected, either near and around the feet (eczema) or remotely (psoriasis plaques on areas such as knees and elbows).

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: DLSO

- Fungal infection other than DLSO
- OTC treatment failure
- Suspected poor compliance

Table 7.13
Main types of onychomycosis

Type	Key characteristics	Spread of infection
DLSO	Mainly big toe	Note yellowing starts at distal part of toe or side of nail
Proximal subungual onychomycosis (PCO)	Immunocompromised patients	Yellow spots appear at the base of the nail (i.e. in the half-moon area of the nail)
Superficial white onychomycosis	Often occurs in previously damaged nails Chalky-white in appearance and can be scraped off the nail surface	Located on the surface of the nail

Table 7.14
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for fungal nail infections

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Amorolfine	>18 years	Skin irritation (rare)	None	None	Manufacturers state avoid, although evidence suggests it is safe to use

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Amorolfine is a broad-spectrum antifungal agent that works by inhibiting ergosterol synthesis. An open-labelled, non-randomised trial has shown it to be effective, producing clinical cure in 37% of toenail infections (Zaug 1992). However, the study suffered from large drop-out rates (nearly 30%), and there was no comparisons with other available topical antifungal treatments. A further trial, comparing once versus twice weekly application of amorolfine reported similar cure rates (46%) with weekly application (Reinel 1992). A Cochrane review found limited evidence for the efficacy of any topical treatments for nail infections, but suggested that cure rates may be better with amorolfine, although based on small trials (Crawford & Hollis 2007). Prodigy guidance (July 2012) advocate the use of amorolfine when the infection is mild and superficial.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to amorolfine is summarised in Table 7.14; useful tips relating to patients presenting with fungal nail infection are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.4.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.4: CURANAIL

Why only two nails?	This is in line with UK guidance as more severe infections require systemic treatment (e.g. terbinafine)
Hygiene measures	• Keep the area clean • Change socks regularly • Avoid trauma to the nails • Avoid sharing towels

Amorolfine (Curanail)

Amorolfine is available as a 5% nail lacquer. It is used weekly and treatment lasts until the affected nail(s) have regrown and are clear of infection. This takes approximately 6 months for fingernails and 9 to 12 months for toenails. Each pack of Curanail gives 3 months treatment which affords the pharmacist an opportunity to review treatment before further medication is given. The product licence restricts use to no more than two nails in people aged 18 or over and have no underlying medical conditions that predispose them to fungal infection (e.g.

immunocompromised and diabetics). The manufacturer states it should not be used in pregnant or breastfeeding women. To apply amorolfine the nail must be first filed and cleaned. Files and cleaning pads are provided in the treatment pack and are not reusable. The lacquer should then be evenly applied and left to dry. Amorolfine is unlikely to cause side effects, but skin irritation has been reported.

References

Crawford F, Hollis S. Topical treatments for fungal infections of the skin and nails of the foot. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD001434. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001434.pub2.

Reinel D. Topical treatment of onychomycosis with amorolfine 5 per cent nail lacquer: comparative efficacy and tolerability of once and twice weekly use. Dermatology 1992;184(Suppl):21–4.

Thomas J, Jacobson GA, Narkowicz CK, et al. Toenail onychomycosis: an important global disease burden. J Clin Pharm Ther 2010;35(5):497–519.

Zaug M, Bergstraesser M. Amorolfine in the treatment of onychomycosis an dermatomycoses (an overview). Clin Exp Dermatol 1992;179(Suppl. 1):61–70.

Further reading

Seebacher C, Brasch J, Abeck D, et al. Onychomycosis. JDDG 2007;1:61–6.

Finch JJ, Warshaw EM. Toenail onychomycosis: current and future treatment options. Dermatol Therapy 2007;20:31–46.

Web sites

For more images of fungal nail infection visit: http://www.dermnetnz.org/fungal/onychomycosis.html

Hair loss (androgenetic alopecia)

Background

Each hair consists of a shaft, made up of dead keratinised cells, and a root (Fig. 7.1) and is found on most skin surfaces (hands, feet and lips being notable exceptions). Each hair follicle goes through a growth cycle, which consists of a long growing phase (anagen) followed by a short resting phase (telogen). At the end of resting phase, the hair falls out (catagen) and a new hair starts growing in the follicle, beginning the cycle again. The hair cycle occurs randomly for each follicle so that normal hair loss from the adult scalp is approximately 100 hairs per day; where the rate is greater than this then the clinical signs of hair loss can be observed. Hair loss affects both men and women and is associated with strong emotional and psychological consequences. People have been socialised to link a full head of hair with youth and vitality, whereas baldness portrays a feeling of unattractiveness and loss of youth. Hair loss can be due to a number of aetiologies; however, this section concentrates on androgenetic alopecia (male pattern baldness) because it is the most common cause of hair loss.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Men are more susceptible than women to androgenetic alopecia and usually experience more severe hair loss. Men tend to be affected from the second decade onwards (30% of men by 30 years old will be affected to some degree) and the prevalence of male pattern baldness in Caucasians who reach old age approaches 100%. In women the condition becomes more pronounced after menopause.

Patients usually have a positive family history. The nature and extent of hair loss will follow identical patterns to those seen in the patient's immediate parents and grandparents, which can be used as a predictor to the patient's potential hair-loss pattern.

Aetiology

Hair is classed as either terminal or vellus hair. Terminal hair is longer and thicker and found on the scalp and eyebrows. Vellus hair covers the remainder of the body and is shorter and downy. In androgenetic alopecia terminal hair follicles transform in to more vellus-like hair follicles as a result of preferential binding by dihydrotestosterone (produced from the conversion of androgen by 5-alpha-reductase) to hair follicle receptors. Eventually the follicle ceases activity completely with resulting hair loss.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Hair loss is obviously easy to detect. Empathy and understanding toward the patient needs to be exercised. Although androgenetic alopecia is the most common form of hair loss, other causes need to be eliminated (Fig. 7.16). Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.15).

Clinical features of androgenetic alopecia

Men initially notice a thinning of the hair and a frontal receding hairline that might or might not be accompanied with hair loss at the crown. In women the frontal hairline is maintained with diffuse hair loss that is somewhat accentuated at the crown.

Table 7.15
Specific questions to ask the patient: Hair loss

Question	Relevance
Hair loss accompanied with other symptoms	Androgenic alopecia is not associated with other symptoms. Itch and/or erythema are indicators that another cause, e.g. fungal scalp infection, psoriasis or seborrhoeic dermatitis, might be responsible for the hair loss
Pattern of hair loss	In men, hair loss begins at the front of the head and recedes backwards or at the crown. In women, hair loss tends to be generalised and diffuse. Presentations that differ to this or are sudden in onset suggest another cause of hair loss
Deficiency states	There is now strong evidence that iron deficiency in women can cause hair loss
Underlying pathology	A number of endocrine conditions can cause hair loss, most notably thyroid disorders
Medicine induced hair loss	A number of medicines can cause hair loss (Table 7.16)
Hair loss triggered by a specific event	Hair loss can be caused by a stressful event or following surgery or after childbirth

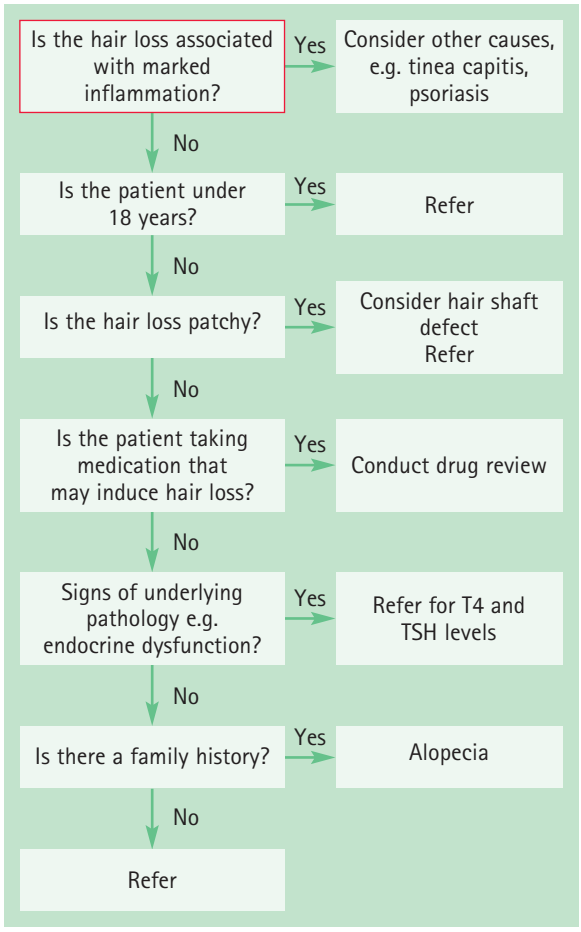


Fig. 7.16 Primer for differential diagnosis of hair loss.

Conditions to eliminate

Telogen effluvium

Telogen effluvium represents a shift of more hairs in to the resting phase (telogen) of the hair cycle, which results in shedding of hair. This can be caused by a number of factors:

Postpartum

During pregnancy, circulating levels of oestrogen increase, with a resulting rise in the number of follicles in anagen (growth phase); the hair therefore thickens. However, after delivery the hair follicles return to the resting phase and the hair is shed. Women might believe that they are experiencing hair loss when in reality the hair is returning to the normal pre-pregnancy state. Reassurance should be given that this is a temporary and self-limiting problem.

Stress

Stress is known to induce hair loss. The reason behind this is poorly understood. Enquiry to ascertain lifestyle factors that might have caused recent stress and anxiety to the patient should be explored.

Nutritional factors

Iron deficiency is associated with female hair loss. If iron deficiency is the cause, a 2-month course of iron supplementation should result in thickening of the hair. If the patient fails to respond to treatment then the patient should be reassessed.

Underlying endocrine disorder

Diabetes mellitus and hypothyroidism can result in poor hair growth. In hypothyroidism the hair is thin and brittle and the patient might be lethargic and have a history of recent weight gain. Referral to the GP for blood tests should be considered.

Fungal scalp infection (tinea capitis)

The first signs of infection are the appearance of a well-circumscribed round patch of alopecia that is associated with itch and scaling. Common areas of involvement include the occipital, parietal and crown region. Inspection of the area might reveal erythema and 'black dots' on the scalp as a result of infected hairs.

Alopecia areata

Refers to hair loss of unknown origin, although there is often an association with atopy and autoimmune disease and a positive family history is found in up to 25% of patients. It is relatively uncommon affecting 0.1 to 0.2% of the UK population. Unlike androgenetic alopecia the hair loss is sudden and mainly affects children and adolescents (60% will have had their first episode before the age of 20). It most commonly involves only small patches of hair loss although the whole scalp can be affected. The condition is usually self-limiting and regrowth of hair is often observed but repeated episodes are not unusual.

Traction alopecia

Most commonly seen in women, traction alopecia refers to hair loss due to excess and sustained tension on the hair, usually as a result of styling hair with rollers or a particular type of hairstyle. It is reversible if the tension on the hair is removed.

Medicine-induced causes

Many medicines can interfere with the hair cycle and cause transient hair loss, cytotoxic medicines being one of the most obvious examples. However, many medicines have been associated with hair loss. Table 7.16 lists some of the more commonly implicated medicines. If medicines other than cytotoxics are suspected of causing hair loss, the prescriber should be contacted to discuss other possible treatment options.

Trichotillomania

Trichotillomania is a psychiatric disorder, which refers to patients who have an impulsive desire to twist and pull scalp hair, but often deny it. Hair loss is asymmetrical and an unusual shape. It would be very unusual for such patients to present to a community pharmacy.

Table 7.16
Medicines known to cause hair loss

Medicine or medicine class	Incidence of hair loss
Antineoplastics	Almost 100% (to varying degrees)
Anticoagulants	Telogen effluvium in approximately 50%
Lithium carbonate	Telogen effluvium in approximately 10%
Interferons	Telogen effluvium in 20 to 30%
Oral contraceptives	Seen 2 to 3 months after stopping
Retinoids	Approximately 20% of patients
Colchicine, carbimazole	Rare

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Hair loss

- Fungal infection of the scalp
- Patients under 18 years old
- Possible endocrine cause
- Sudden onset
- Suspected iron deficiency for blood test
- Trichotillomania

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Currently, minoxidil is the only product marketed for androgenetic alopecia. It is available as either a 2 or 5% solution.

A number of clinical trials have investigated the efficacy and safety of minoxidil at 2 and 5% concentrations. The majority of these have been conducted on precisely the population that would respond the best to treatment; men aged between 18 to 50, with mild to moderate thinning of the hair at the vertex. Despite this, trial results are not totally convincing. Minoxidil is superior to placebo (although placebo does invoke a large initial response) and promotes a small increase in re-growth of vellus hair and increases the diameter of the hair shaft. However, longitudinal studies show that less than half of patients treated

experience moderate to marked hair growth. Hair counts appear to be greatest after 12 months of treatment but, by 30 months, hair counts have decreased (albeit still above baseline) and the bald area increases back in size to its initial diameter.

Minoxidil therefore appears to delay and slow down hair loss in less than half of its target patient population. Furthermore, if treatment is stopped any hair growth achieved is lost within 6 to 8 weeks on discontinuation of therapy and baldness returns to pretreatment levels.

The situation in women is not too dissimilar, although the 5% solution offers no advantage over the 2% solution and has therefore not been granted a product licence at that strength.

Summary

Minoxidil will not significantly help the majority of balding individuals. It will promote hair growth in approximately 50% of minimally balding young men but, over time, the effect tails off. After 30 months the effect is still greater than baseline but, on the whole, will not achieve cosmetically acceptable hair growth. In other words the use of minoxidil is useful for specific patients who want to 'buy' themselves time from the inevitable balding process.

Oral finasteride (1 mg per day) can be used to treat androgenic alopecia in men but currently there is no good quality evidence that it is superior to minoxidil.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to minoxidil is discussed and summarised in Table 7.17; useful tips relating to the treatment of patients with minoxidil are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.5.

Minoxidil (e.g. Regaine range as either solution or foam)

The dose for minoxidil is 1 mL of solution (or 1 g of foam – equivalent to half a capful) applied to dry hair to the total affected areas of the scalp twice daily. If fingertips are used to facilitate drug application, hands should be washed afterwards. Although minoxidil is applied topically, absorption into the systemic circulation can occur and result in chest pain, rapid heartbeat, faintness or dizziness, although these are rare. If these occur the patient should stop using the product immediately. Other less important adverse effects associated with topical minoxidil are local irritation, redness and itching but these appear to be related to the vehicle – propylene glycol – rather than minoxidil. Changes in blood pressure should not occur because the serum level of minoxidil after topical application is below that needed to cause changes to blood pressure, however as a precaution minoxidil should be avoided in hypertensive patients if possible. Some patients also report a temporary increase in hair shedding 2 to 6 weeks after beginning treatment. This subsides and is most likely due to the action of minoxidil, shifting hairs from the resting telogen phase to the growing anagen phase.

Further reading

Burke KE. Hair loss. What causes it and what can be done about it. Postgrad Med 1989;85:52–8, 67–73, 77.

Gilhar A, Etzioni, A, Paus R. Alopecia areata. N Engl J Med 2012;366:1515–25.

Table 7.17
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for hair loss

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Minoxidil (Regaine)	Not applicable	Skin irritation, headache	None	Avoid in hypertensive patients	Avoid

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.5: HAIR LOSS

Changes to hair colour and texture	Some patients have experienced changes in hair colour and/or texture with Regaine use. The patient should be warned of this possible problem before using the product
How long should the patient use Regaine?	It can take 4 months or more before evidence of hair growth can be expected. Users should discontinue treatment if there is no improvement after 1 year

Katz HI, Hien NT, Prawer SE, et al. Long-term efficacy of topical minoxidil in male pattern baldness. J Am Acad Dermatol 1987;16:711–18.
Koperaki JA, Orenberg EK, Wilkinson DL. Topical minoxidil therapy for androgenetic alopecia: a 30 month study. Arch Dermatol 1987;123:1483–7.
Price VH, Menefee E, Strauss PC. Changes in hair weight and hair count in men with androgenetic alopecia, after application of 5% and 2% topical minoxidil, placebo, or no treatment. J Am Acad Dermatol 1999;41:717–21.
Rietschel RL, Duncan SH. Safety and efficacy of topical minoxidil in the management of androgenetic alopecia. J Am Acad Dermatol 1987;16:677–85.
Roberts JL. Androgenetic alopecia in men and women: an overview of cause and treatment. Dermatol Nurs 1997;9:379–88.
Tosti A, Misciali C, Piraccini BM, et al. Drug-induced hair loss and hair growth: incidence, management and avoidance. Drug Saf 1994;10:310–17.

Web sites

British Association of Dermatologists' guidelines for the management of alopecia areata (2012): http://www.bad.org.uk/Portals/_Bad/Guidelines/Clinical%20Guidelines/Alopecia%20areata%20guidelines%202012.pdf

Warts and verrucas

Background

Warts and verrucas are benign growths of the skin caused by the human papilloma virus (HPV). Certain types of HPV have an affinity for certain body locations, for example hands, face, anogenital region and feet. Spontaneous resolution is seen in 30% of people within 6 months and two-thirds of cases within 2 years. Despite their self-limiting nature they are cosmetically unacceptable to many patients and with nearly 60% of people trying an OTC treatment before visiting a GP the pharmacist has a major role to play in their management.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The prevalence of warts has not been accurately documented and published prevalence data varies widely. However, it is clear children are most affected, having been reported to affect between 2 and 20% of schoolchildren, with a peak incidence between 12 and 16 years old. Warts are uncommon in infants and the elderly and caution should be exercised if an elderly patient presents to the pharmacy with a self-diagnosed wart.

Aetiology

HPV gain entry to the host by epithelial defects in the epidermis. It is transmitted by direct skin-to-skin contact, although contact with an infected person's shed skin can also transmit the virus. Infection via the environment is more likely to occur if the skin is macerated and in contact with roughened surfaces, for example in swimming pools and communal washing areas. Once established in the epithelial cells, the virus stimulates basal cell division to produce the characteristic lesion.

Patients, especially children, should be warned not to pick, bite or scratch warts as this can allow viral particle shedding to penetrate skin breaks. This process is known as autoinoculation and is responsible for multiple lesions becoming established and transferred to other parts of the body.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Warts and verrucas are not difficult to diagnose. However, pharmacists must be able to recognise other similar conditions that superficially look like warts and verrucas. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.18). HPV infections involving the anogenital area are outside the remit of community pharmacists and must be referred.

Clinical features of warts and verrucas

Warts

Warts most often occur on the backs of the hands, fingers and knees, either singly or in crops. When examined the wart appears as a raised, hyperkeratotic papule with thrombosed, black vessels often visible as black dots within the wart. They tend to be rough textured, skin-coloured and are usually less than 1 cm in diameter (Fig. 7.17).

Verrucas

Verrucas are found on the sole of the foot, usually in weight-bearing areas, for example on the metatarsal heads or heel. Owing to constant pressure imparted on the sole of the foot the normal outward expansion of the wart is thwarted and instead grows inward. Pressure on nerves can then cause considerable pain and patients often complain of pain when walking. Inspection of the lesion will normally reveal tiny black dots (thrombosed capillaries) on the surface (Fig. 7.18). Owing to keratin build-up this characteristic sign might not be visible unless the hardened skin is first shaved away. Verrucas, like warts, are rarely larger than 1 cm in diameter and can occur singly or in crops. A number of closely located plantar warts can

Table 7.18
Specific questions to ask the patient: Human papilloma virus

Question	Relevance
Age of patient	Warts are unusual in very young children, e.g. infants. Young children and adolescents are most likely to get warts but this is also the age group in which molluscum contagiosum is most prevalent The likelihood that nodular lesions are caused by seborrhoeic warts or carcinoma increases with increasing age
Location	Warts are common on the hands and knees; verrucas are usually on the weight-bearing parts of the sole Warts can occur on the face but so too can plane warts and carcinoma. Referral is always needed as all OTC treatment can cause scarring
Associated symptoms	Itching and bleeding is not associated with warts and verrucas and must be viewed with suspicion, especially in older patients Pain on walking is often associated with verrucas
Colour/appearance	Typically warts have a 'cauliflower' appearance and are raised and pale Warts with a reddish hue or change colour should be referred Lesions that are raised, smooth and have a central 'dimple' suggests molluscum contagiosum

Fig. 7.17 Common wart. Reproduced from J Wilkinson et al 2004, Dermatology in Focus, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Fig. 7.18 Verruca. Reproduced from D J Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

coalesce to form a large single plaque and is termed a mosaic wart.

Conditions to eliminate

Plane warts (flat warts or verruca plana)

These most frequently occur in groups on the face and the back of the hands. They are small in size (1 to 5 mm in diameter), slightly raised and can take on the skin colour of the patient (Fig. 7.19). As drug treatment is destructive in nature, plane warts located on the face should be referred to avoid the risk of scarring.

Fig. 7.19 Plane warts. Reproduced from D J Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Fig. 7.20 Seborrhoeic wart. Reproduced from D J Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Molluscum contagiosum

Molluscum contagiosum primarily affects children under 5 years old. It is not particularly common and a GP with a list size of 2000 will probably see 5 new cases per year. It is caused by a pox virus and patients present with multiple lesions usually on the face and neck, although the trunk can be involved. The lesions resemble common warts but each raised papule tends to be smooth and have a central dimple, the latter is a useful diagnostic point (see Fig. 9.6, page 301). Lesions tend to be between 1 to 5 mm in diameter. The condition is self-limiting and will resolve without medical intervention. Patients should be told this, but if they believe treatment is necessary, referral to the GP is advisable.

Corns

Corns and plantar warts can be confused. The reader is referred to page 228 on corns and calluses for information on differentiating corns from verrucas.

Basal cell papilloma (seborrhoeic wart)

Basal cell papillomas are benign growths that are increasingly common with increasing age. They usually occur on the trunk and present as raised often multiple lesions that have a superficial 'stuck on' or waxy appearance (Fig. 7.20). Lesions are usually brown but can range in colour from pink to black.

Basal cell carcinoma

Basal cell carcinoma is the commonest form of skin cancer and its incidence is related to sunlight exposure. It typically occurs in older people especially where there is a history of prolonged skin exposure. Men are twice as likely to be affected. The usual site where lesions develop is the face. Any wart-like lesion that is itchy, has an irregular outline, prone to bleeding and exhibits colour change should be referred to eliminate serious pathology. For more information on skin cancers see page 245.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Warts and verrucae

- Anogenital warts
- Multiple and widespread warts
- Diabetic patients
- Lesions on the face
- Patients aged over 50 presenting with a first-time wart
- Warts that itch or bleed without provocation
- Warts that have grown and changed colour
- Outside scope of OTC treatment
- Treatment options can cause skin damage
- Potential sinister pathology, e.g. BCC

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

A number of ingredients are used to treat warts and verrucas, although salicylic acid is the most commonly used

agent and can be found in many OTC treatments, both alone and combined with lactic acid.

A recent Cochrane review (Gibbs & Harvey 2006) investigated topical treatments for the cure of warts. This review identified 60 trials that met their inclusion criteria. Overall, the quality of the trials was low due to poor methodology and reporting. However, placebo was found to have a substantial effect although salicylic acid in comparison was significantly more effective. Cure rates for salicylic acid (from pooled data) showed 73% cure rates compared to control cure rates of 48% over a 6 to 12 week period. However, there appears to be no evidence to suggest which concentration of salicylic acid is most effective.

In addition, there is some evidence to show that common warts are more responsive to keratolytic therapy than plantar warts and resolution might be enhanced by soaking the wart or verruca prior to application and/or occlusion of the site (by use of plasters or collodion-like vehicle) to aid penetration.

Compliance with treatment has been identified as a limiting factor in the cure rate for warts and verrucas. One study that investigated Occlusal reported an 80% cure rate after only 2 weeks of therapy. This might be an alternative option for patients whose compliance could be questioned. However, the study suffered from poor design and had only a small number of patients and the results must be viewed with caution.

Salicylic acid is often combined with other ingredients, in particular lactic acid. However, there is no evidence to support additionally efficacy when lactic acid is added. Monochloroacetic acid has also been combined with salicylic acid. Cure rates for this combination are comparable to cure rates of salicylic acid alone or when monochloroacetic acid is used singly. It therefore appears that the combination has no additional benefit than when active ingredients are used as monotherapy. As far as the author is aware, no commercially available preparation contains monochloroacetic acid.

Other agents commercially available include, formaldehyde, glutaraldehyde and silver nitrate pencils. Information regarding their effectiveness stems from small-scale or poorly designed studies, and they should not be routinely recommended.

Cryotherapy using liquid nitrogen has been used for many years as a treatment of recalcitrant or widespread warts. However, the limited comparisons between topical salicylic acid and cryotherapy have failed to show any difference in response rates (Gibbs et al 2002). OTC products containing volatile hydrocarbons are marketed as home cryotherapy solutions for the treatment of warts (e.g. Wartner). There is a lack of data comparing salicylic acid preparations with home cryotherapy. However, comparisons between home cryotherapy solutions and cryotherapy with liquid nitrogen have suggested liquid nitrogen is superior (Gibbs et al 2002).

Summary

Any salicylic acid-based product should have modest success rates in clearing warts and verrucas after a 12-week treatment period, providing patient compliance is good. If treatment has been unsuccessful with salicylic acid then a second-line medicine such as glutaraldehyde or formaldehyde could be tried. Cryotherapy is probably best left to the GP to perform rather than the patient due to its destructive action on skin.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to specific products used to treat warts and verrucas in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is summarised in Table 7.19; useful tips relating to patients presenting with warts and verrucas are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.6.

As the majority of warts and verrucas will spontaneously resolve treatment is not necessarily needed. Pharmacists should determine from the patient how much the wart or verruca affects day-to-day life and also what social impact the lesions have on the patient. It is also worth assessing patient motivation to comply with medication regimens because treatment is over a period of months not days or weeks.

Salicylic acid products (e.g. Compound W (17%), Bazuka Extra Strength (26%), Occlusal (50%), Verrugon (50%), Wartex (50%)) & Salicylic acid/lactic acid combinations (Bazuka, Cuplex, Duofilm, Salactol, Salactac).

There is a wide choice of salicylic acid-based products for the removal of warts, verrucas (and corns). Prior to using a salicylic acid-based product the affected area should be soaked in warm water and towelled dry. The surface of the wart or verruca should be rubbed with a pumice stone or emery board to remove any hard skin. This should be done at least once per week. A few drops of the product should be applied to the lesion, taking care to localise the application to the affected area. The procedure should be repeated daily. Salicylic acid can be recommended to most patients, although diabetics are a notable exception. Salicylic acid does not interact with any medicines. It can cause local skin irritation and because of its destructive action should be kept away from unaffected skin.

Glutaraldehyde (Glutarol)

Application of glutaraldehyde is the same as salicylic acid but it should be used twice a day. It can cause skin irritation and stains the outer layer of the skin brown.

Table 7.19
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for warts and verrucas

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Salicylic acid					
Compound W	>6 years	Local skin irritation	None	Avoid in diabetic patients	OK
Bazuka Extra Strength	>2 years				
Occlusal	No lower age stated				
Verrugon					
Wartex					
Salicylic acid and lactic acid					
Bazuka	No lower age stated	Local skin irritation	None	Avoid in diabetic patients	OK
Cuplex					
Duofilm	>2 years				
Salactol	No lower age stated				
Salatac					
Glutaraldehyde					
Glutarol	No lower age stated	Local skin irritation. Skin will be stained brown	None	Avoid in diabetic patients	OK
Formaldehyde					
Veracur	No lower age stated	No local affects reported	None	Avoid in diabetic patients	Pregnancy Manufacturer advises avoidance, although there are no reports of teratogenicity Breastfeeding OK
Silver nitrate (Avoca)	No lower age stated	Local skin irritation	None	Avoid in diabetic patients	OK

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.6: VERRUCAS AND WARTS

Is it a verruca or a corn?	If diagnosis is uncertain then removal of the top layer of skin from the lesion can be performed. If black spots are not visible this implies the lesion is a corn and not a verruca
Length of treatment	Patients should be told that it is a slow process. Treatment commonly lasts 3 months. If OTC medication has been unsuccessful after this time then the patient could be referred to the GP
Salatac gel	The gel forms an elastic film after application. This has to be removed each time before the gel can be reapplied
Bazuka and Bazuka Extra Strength	Don't be fooled into thinking the extra strength has better cure rates. It has a higher concentration of salicylic acid (26% as opposed to 12%) but this does not necessarily equate to a more efficacious product

Formaldehyde (Veracur)

Veracur is marketed particularly for verrucas and, like glutaraldehyde, is applied twice a day. In all other respects it has same side effects and precautions for use as salicylic acid.

Silver nitrate (e.g. Avoca)

To use silver nitrate pencils the tip must be first moistened and then applied to the wart or verruca for 1 to 2 minutes. This should be repeated after 24 hours. It is recommended that 3 applications are used for warts and six applications for verrucas. Like other treatments the process is destructive and the surrounding skin should be protected.

References

Gibbs S, Harvey I. Topical treatments for cutaneous warts. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD001781. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001781.pub2.

Gibbs S, Harvey I, Sterling J, et al. Local treatments for cutaneous warts: systematic review. Br Med J 2002;325:461–4.

Further reading

Dall'oglio F, D'Amico V, Nasca MR, et al. Treatment of cutaneous warts: an evidence-based review. Am J Clin Dermatol 2012;13(2):73–96.

Johnson LW. Communal showers and the risk of plantar warts. J Fam Pract 1995;40:136–8.

Hirose R, Hori M, Shukuwa T, et al. Topical treatment of resistant warts with glutaraldehyde. J Dermatol 1994;21:248–53.

Steele K, Irwin WG. Liquid nitrogen and salicylic/lactic acid paint in the treatment of cutaneous warts in general practice. J R Coll Gen Pract 1988;38:256–8.

Steele K, Shirodaria P, O'Hare M, et al. Monochloroacetic acid and 60% salicylic acid as a treatment for simple plantar warts: effectiveness and mode of action. Br J Dermatol 1988;118:537–43.

Yazar S, Basaran E. Efficacy of silver nitrate pencils in the treatment of common warts. J Dermatol 1994;21:329–33.

Web sites

British Association of Dermatologists – information on cutaneous warts: http://www.bad.org.uk/Portals/_Bad/Guidelines/Clinical%20Guidelines/Cutaneous%20Warts.pdf

Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of salicylic acid and cryotherapy for cutaneous warts. An economic decision model-A Health Technology Assessment Monograph: http://www.hta.ac.uk/fullmono/mon1025.pdf

Corns and calluses

7

Background

It is estimated that on average a person walks the equivalent of 1000 miles a year. It is therefore hardly surprising that people experience foot problems. Foot disorders can be broadly subdivided in to either those that result from opportunistic infection or those resulting from incorrect distribution of pressure. This section discusses the latter.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of corns and calluses is not known. Surveys have indicated that up to 18% of working people complain of corns and calluses (Springett et al 2003). Corns and calluses tend to more often be seen in older patients, (useful tips relating to patients presenting with corns is given in Hints and Tips Box 7.7).

Aetiology

Corns form due to a combination of friction and intermittent pressure against one of the bony prominences of the feet (e.g. heel and metatarsal heads). Inappropriate footwear is frequently the cause. Continued pressure and friction results in hyperkeratoses (excessive skin growth of the keratinised layer) leaving even less space between the shoe and the foot and therefore the corn is pressed even more firmly against the underlying soft tissues and bone.

Callus formation is also caused by constant friction and pressure. Calluses can be beneficial, providing a natural barrier to objects and protecting underlying tissues; however, when such a thickened mass of skin occurs in abnormal places (e.g. border of the big toe) pain is experienced.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Diagnosis of corns and calluses is best done by appearance. Pharmacists should therefore ask to inspect the person's feet because trying to take a description of what the problem looks like can be difficult.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.7: CORNS

Shoes to relieve pressure	Patients should be encouraged to wear open shoes such as sandals or thongs

Table 7.20
Specific questions to ask the patient: Corn/callus

Question	Relevance
Location	Lesions on the tops or between the toes suggest a corn compared with verrucas, which are on the plantar surface of the foot
Aggravating or relieving factors	Pain experienced with corns is a result of pressure between footwear and the toes. If footwear is taken off then the pain is relieved Pain associated with verrucas will be felt irrespective if footwear is worn
Appearance	Corns and calluses appear as white or yellow hyperkeratinised areas of skin unlike verrucas that show black thrombosed capillaries seen as black dots on the surface of the verruca
Previous history	Patients with corns will often have a previous history of foot problems. The cause is usually due to poorly fitting shoes, such as high heels. Prolonged wear of such footwear can lead to calluses and permanent deformity of bunions

Differential diagnosis should be straightforward and is usually between corns, calluses and verruca. Most patients will accurately self-diagnose and seek advice and help to remedy the situation. The pharmacist's role will be to confirm the self-diagnosis and give advice and/or treatment where appropriate. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine the best course of action (Table 7.20).

Clinical features of corns

Corns (helomas) have been classified in to a number of types, although only soft and hard corns are commonly met in practice. Hard corns (heloma durum) are generally located on the top of the toes. Corns exhibit a central core of hard grey skin surrounded by a painful, raised, yellow ring of inflammatory skin. Any of the toes can be affected but is commonest on the second toe. Soft corns (heloma molle) form between the toes rather than on the tops of toes and are due to pressure exerted by one toe against another. They have a whitened appearance and remain soft due to moisture being present between the toes causing maceration of the corn. Soft corns are most common in the fourth web space.

Clinical features of calluses

Calluses, depending on the cause and site involved, can range in size from a few millimetres to centimetres. They appear as flattened, yellow–white and thickened skin. In women, the balls of the feet are a common site. Other sites that can be affected are the heel and lower border of the big toe. Patients frequently complain of a burning sensation resulting from fissuring of the callus.

Conditions to eliminate

Verrucas

Verrucas can be mistaken for a corn or callus, although verrucas tend to have a spongy texture with the central area showing tiny black spots. They are also rarely located on or between the toes and commonly occur in younger patients than corns and calluses. For further information see page 222.

Bunions

Bunions are 10 times more common in women than men and are directly related to wearing tight shoes. Initially, irritation of skin by ill-fitting shoes causes bursitis of the big toe. Over time the inflamed area begins to harden and subsequently bursal fluid solidifies into a gelatinous mass. The result will be a bunion joint (the first metatarsal phalangeal joint). Patients often complain of pain, have difficulty in walking and wearing normal shoes. Referral to a podiatrist is recommended.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Corns and calluses

Initially a patient should be referred to a podiatrist if:
- Discomfort/pain is causing difficulty in walking
- There is impaired peripheral circulation, e.g. diabetes
- Soft corns are present
- There is treatment failure

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Corns and calluses are due to friction and pressure. Removal of the precipitating factors will result in

resolution of the problem. Therefore preventative measures should form the mainstay of treatment. Correctly fitting shoes are essential to help prevent corn and callus formation. If pressure and friction still persist when correctly fitted shoes are worn then patients can obtain relief by shielding or padding. Moleskin or thin podiatry felt placed around the corn allows pressure to be transferred from the corn to the padding. Specific proprietary products are available for such purposes. In callus formation a 'shock absorbing' insert such as a metatarsal pad is useful to relieve weight off the callus and so reduce stress on the plantar skin.

Treatment should be avoided if possible, but if deemed appropriate keratolytics can be used although there is no evidence to suggest that they are effective.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Products used to treat corns and calluses are exactly the same as those used for warts and verrucas. Prescribing information relating to specific products used to treat corns and calluses is therefore discussed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication for warts and verrucas on page 224–225. However, a number of proprietary products are marketed for sufferers with corns and calluses, for example products in the Carnation and Scholl range. These products contain high concentrations of salicylic acid (usually 50%) that are surrounded by a non-medicated self-adhesive ring.

Reference

Springett K, Whiting M, Marriott C. Epidemiology of plantar forefoot corns and callus, and the influence of dominant side. The Foot 2003;13:5–9.

Further reading

Robbins JM. Recognizing, treating and preventing common foot problems. Cleve Clin Jnl Med 2000;67:45–56.

Silfverskiold JP. Common foot problems. Relieving the pain of bunions, keratoses, corns and calluses. Postgrad Med 1991;89:183–8.

Scabies

Background

Scabies can be defined as a pruritic skin condition caused by the mite *Sarcoptes scabiei*. It is easily missed or misdiagnosed as dermatitis. The diagnostic burrows are small and difficult to locate because they are often obscured by the effects of scratching.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Scabies is not gender or age specific. Infants to the elderly can acquire the infestation, although it is more common in the elderly. Outbreaks in schools and care homes are not uncommon. The incidence of scabies in the UK is low but epidemics can occur on a cyclical basis approximately every 15 years. In temperate climates (e.g. the UK), it appears to be more prevalent in urban areas and in the winter months.

Aetiology

The mite is usually transmitted by direct physical contact (e.g. holding hands, hugging or sexual contact). Rarely, it can be caught from bed linen because the mite can survive away from human skin for 24 to 36 hours at room temperature. The female mite burrows into the stratum corneum to lay eggs. The faecal pellets she leaves in the burrow cause a local hypersensitivity reaction and is assumed to cause the release of inflammatory mediators that triggers an allergic reaction invoking intense itching. This normally takes 15 to 20 days in a primary infestation but can take up to 6 weeks to develop. In subsequent infestations this hypersensitivity reaction develops much more quickly. During the asymptomatic period the mite can be passed onto others unknowingly. The eggs hatch and mature in 14 days after which the cycle can begin again.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The diagnosis of scabies is confirmed by extraction of the mite from its burrow, although in primary care this is rarely performed and a differential diagnosis is made on clinical appearance, patient history and symptoms reported by close family. Confusion can arise from mistaking scabies for other pruritic skin disorders such as allergic contact dermatitis or dermatitis herpetiformis, especially when the condition is extensive. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine the best course of action (Table 7.21).

Clinical features of scabies

Severe pruritus, especially at night is the hallmark symptom of scabies. Besides classic location of lesions, in men the penile and scrotal skin and in women beneath the breasts and nipples can be affected. Infants who are not yet walking may have marked sole involvement. The rash is usually made up of small red papules that over time can change into vesicles.

Table 7.21
Specific questions to ask the patient: Scabies

Question	Relevance
Visible signs of the mite	Burrows, which are up to 1 cm long and blue–grey in colour, might be visible although in practice this characteristic is often not present. For the pharmacist, who will only see a limited number of cases, it is best to concentrate on other clinical signs rather than attempt to look for signs of burrows
Location of rash	Scabies classically affects the finger webs, the sides of the fingers and wrists.
History of presenting complaint	If contact dermatitis is suspected then questioning should reveal a past history of similar skin lesions Often people with scabies will be care workers looking after institutionalised people A positive history in other family members increases the likelihood that the patient has scabies

Conditions to eliminate

Insect bites

A host of insects, fleas and mites can inflict a bite or sting. This usually results in an itchy papule that can become firm and last several days. Occasionally, the rash can become blistered, normally as a result of scratching, and secondary bacterial infection can occur. Bites often tend to be in groups and are asymmetrical. See page 325 for further information.

Allergic contact dermatitis

The condition presents as an area of inflamed, itchy skin with either papules or vesicles being present. However, enquiry in to the patient's history should reveal a past history of similar lesions in allergic contact dermatitis. For further information on dermatitis see page 239.

Dyshidrotic eczema (pompholyx)

Pompholyx simply means bubble, and refers to the presence of intensely itchy vesicles or blisters on the palms of the hands and occasionally on the soles of the feet. Stress is known to precipitate the condition.

Dermatitis herpetiformis

Dermatitis herpetiformis is a condition characterised by intense itchy clusters of papules and vesicles. It is more often seen in middle-aged people, especially men. It commonly involves the buttocks, elbows, knees and sacral region. The lesions usually exhibit a symmetrical distribution and hand involvement is rare. On investigation up to 90% of patients are found to have a gluten enteropathy.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Scabies

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Secondary infection of the skin	May require antibiotics
Severe and extensive symptoms Institutional outbreaks	Outside scope of community pharmacy.
Suspected dermatitis herpetiformis	For institutional outbreaks the Health Protection Agency need to be notified.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

The efficacy and safety of scabicidal agents is difficult to determine due to limited trial data. Benzyl benzoate, crotamiton, permethrin and malathion have all been used. A Cochrane review (Strong et al 2007) found permethrin to have high cure rates and more effective than any other scabicidal agent.

The efficacy of malathion is questionable as no random controlled trials appear to have been conducted. However, case reports have suggested malathion is effective in curing scabies with a cure rate of approximately 80%.

Benzyl benzoate has been used to treat scabies for many years. However, its efficacy has not been demonstrated in randomised controlled trials. In uncontrolled trials benzyl benzoate has been shown to provide cure rates of approximately 50%. Unfortunately, up to 25% of patients experience side effects such as burning, irritation and itching on application.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to specific products used to treat scabies in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 7.22; useful tips relating to patients presenting with scabies are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.8.

Table 7.22
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for scabies

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Permethrin	>2 months	Burning, stinging or tingling	None	None	OK
Benzyl benzoate	>12 years	Burning, irritation			
Malathion	>6 months	Skin irritation but rare			

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.8: SCABIES

Application	UK guidelines state that treatment should be applied to the whole body including the scalp, neck, face, and ears. This is at odds with some manufacturer's data
Itching after treatment	Pruritus can persist for 2 to 3 weeks after treatment and the patient might benefit from crotamiton. Antihistamines appear to have a limited role in relieving itch but their sedative effect (e.g. chlorphenamine) might be useful for temporary help in aiding sleep
Hygiene measures	Clothes, towels, and bed linen should be machine-washed (at 50°C or above) after the first application of treatment, to prevent reinfestation and transmission to others
Bathing	Treatment should not be applied after a hot bath because this increases systemic absorption and removes the drug from its treatment site

It is important that all people in the same household and close contacts are treated at the same time to prevent reinfection even though they might be asymptomatic (latent period before itch develops). Permethrin is the drug of choice, although all products used to treat scabies can be given to all patient groups and have no drug interactions.

Permethrin (Lyclear Dermal Cream)

Permethrin is suitable for use by adults and children over 2 months of age, although the summary of product characteristics (SPC) states that for children under the age of 2 years medical supervision is required. General guidance for application of Lyclear is that adults and children over 12 should use up to a full tube as a single application. Some adults might need to use more than one tube to ensure total body coverage, but a maximum of two tubes (60 g in total) is recommended for a single application. For children under 12 the manufacturers suggest the following; 2 months to 1 year should use up to ⅛ of a tube, children aged between 1 and 5, up to ¼ of a tube and for those aged between 6 and 12 years, ½ a tube. After application the whole body should be washed thoroughly 8 to 12 hours after treatment. Treatment should be repeated after 7 days.

Malathion (Derbac M)

The liquid can be used on adults and children over 6 months old and is left on for 24 hours. If hands, or any other parts of the body must be washed during this period, the treatment must be re-applied to those areas immediately. Treatment should be repeated after 7 days.

Benzyl benzoate

Benzyl benzoate should only be used in adults. Dosing (as per BNF 63) is that it should be applied to the whole body and repeated the following day. A third application may be required in some cases. It causes skin irritation and a transient burning sensation. This is usually mild but can occasionally be severe in sensitive individuals. In the event of a severe skin reaction the preparation should be washed off using soap and warm water. It is also irritating to the eyes, which should be protected if it is applied to the scalp.

Reference

Strong M, Johnstone P. Interventions for treating scabies. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD000320. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000320.pub2.

Further reading

Angarano DW, Parish LC. Comparative dermatology: parasitic disorders. Clin Dermatol 1994;12:543–50.

Buffet M, Dupin N. Current treatments for scabies. Fundam Clin Pharmacol 2003;17:217–25.

Burgess I, Robinson R, Robinson J, et al. Aqueous malathion 0.5% as a scabicide: clinical trial. Br Med J 1986;292:1172.

Chosidow O. Clinical practices. Scabies. N Engl J Med 2006;354:1718–27.

Glaziou P, Cartel JL, Alzieu P, et al. Comparison of ivermectin and benzyl benzoate for treatment of scabies. Trop Med Parasitol 1993;44:331–2.

Hanna NF, Clay JC, Harris JR. Sarcoptes scabiei infestation treated with malathion liquid. Br J Vener Dis 1978;54:354.

Heukelbach J, Feldmeier H. Scabies. Lancet 2006;367:1767–74.

Johnston G, Sladden M. Scabies: diagnosis and treatment. Br Med J 2005;331:619–22.

Web sites

Prodigy guidance: http://www.prodigy.clarity.co.uk/scabies

Acne vulgaris

Background

Acne can be defined as an inflammatory disease of the pilosebaceous follicles causing comedones, papules and pustules on the face (99% of cases), chest (60%) and upper back (15%). It affects virtually all adolescents, to varying degrees of severity, and usually appears at the time of puberty. Diagnosis is usually straightforward and most patients presenting in the community pharmacy will generally be seeking appropriate advice on correct product selection rather than wanting someone to put a name to their rash. The majority of cases seen in the pharmacy setting will be mild and can be managed appropriately without referral to the GP. However, more persistent and severe cases need referral for more potent topical or systemic treatment. Acne often causes significant psychological impact such as lack of confidence, low self-esteem and depression.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Acne lesions develop at the onset of puberty. Girls therefore tend to develop acne at an earlier age than boys. The peak incidence for girls is between the ages of 14 and 17 compared with 15 to 19 years of age for boys. Recent evidence shows that the average when acne develops has decreased by 1 year over the last 30 years (from 15.8 years old in 1979 to 15 in 2007) (Goldberg et al 2011). Although acne is closely associated with adolescence up to 5% of women and 1% of men aged 25 to 40 either continue to get acne or develop acne (late-onset acne) after adolescence. There might be a familial tendency to acne and it is slightly more common in boys, who also experience more severe involvement. In addition, white patients are more likely to experience moderate to severe acne than black patients; although black skin is prone to worse scarring.

Aetiology

At the onset of puberty a cascade of events takes place resulting in the formation of non-inflammatory and inflammatory lesions. In response to increased testosterone levels, the pilosebaceous gland begins to produce sebum (if the sebaceous glands become oversensitive to testosterone they produce excess oil and the skin becomes greasy; a hallmark of acne). At the same time epithelial cells lining the follicle undergo change. Prior to puberty dead cells are shed smoothly out of the ductal opening but at puberty this process is disrupted and in patients with acne these cells develop abnormal cohesion and partially block the opening and effectively reduce sebum outflow. Over time the opening of the duct becomes blocked trapping oil in the hair follicle. Bacteria, particularly *Propionibacterium acnes*, proliferate in the stagnant oil stimulating cytokine production, which in turn produces local inflammation leading to the appearance of a spot. In response to the proliferation of bacteria white blood cells infiltrate the area to kill the bacteria and in turn die leading to pus formation. The pustule eventually bursts on the skin surface, carrying the plug away. The whole process then starts again.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Up to 60% of affected people seek treatment for acne with a substantial proportion self-medicating rather than consulting their GP. Differential diagnosis of acne is routine and should not be difficult. The pharmacist will, however, need to assess the severity of the acne. Several rating scales have been developed with the aim of trying to grade the severity of an individual's condition. None have gained universal acceptance although most dermatology texts simply grade the severity of acne into mild, moderate or severe. Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.23).

Clinical features of mild acne vulgaris

Patients suffering from mild acne characteristically have predominately open and closed comedones with a small number of active lesions normally confined to the face

Table 7.23
Specific questions to ask the patient: Acne vulgaris

Question	Relevance
Severity	Mild acne consists mainly of non-inflammatory comedones. Moderate acne can be described as having many inflammatory spots that are not confined to the face. Lesions are often painful and there is a real possibility of scarring. Severe acne has all the characteristics of moderate acne plus the development of nodules and cysts. Lesions are often widespread involving the upper back and chest. Scarring will usually result.
Age of onset	Patients presenting with acne-type lesions who fall outside the normal age range should be closely questioned as an alternative diagnosis is more likely.
Occupation	Certain jobs can predispose patients to acne-like lesions and is commonly associated with long-term contact with oils

Fig. 7.21 Mild acne. Reproduced from A B Fleischer et al, 2000, 20 Common Problems in Dermatology, with permission of the McGraw-Hill Companies.

(Fig. 7.21). Mild acne will not cause permanent scarring. Acne can sometimes consist predominately of blackheads and whiteheads with very few inflammatory lesions. This is termed comedonal acne and occurs most commonly in Asian and Afro-Caribbean patients.

Fig. 7.22 Rosacea. Reproduced from J Wilkinson et al 2004, Dermatology in Focus, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Conditions to eliminate

Rosacea

Rosacea is an inflammatory disease of the skin follicles. It is uncertain what causes rosacea although successful treatment with antibiotics suggests that bacterial pathogens play a significant role in the disease. It is normally seen in patients over 40 years of age and is classically characterised by recurrent flushing and blushing of the central face especially the nose and medial cheeks. Crops of inflammatory papules and pustules are also a common feature, although comedones are not present (Fig. 7.22). Eye irritation and blepharitis is present in about 20% of rosacea patients.

Medicines causing acne-like skin eruptions

A number of medicines can produce acne-like lesions and include lithium, oral contraceptives (especially those with high progestogen levels), phenytoin, azathioprine, rifampicin and steroids.

Perioral dermatitis

Perioral dermatitis tends to affect young women aged between 25 and 40 and exhibits an acne-like rash generally around the mouth and nasolabial folds (Fig. 7.23). Itching and burning can also be present and the rash can take on a dermatitis-like quality.

Fig. 7.23 Perioral dermatitis. Reproduced from J Wilkinson et al 2004, Dermatology in Focus, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Polycystic ovary syndrome

A clinical manifestation of this condition can be acne vulgaris. Any patient that also exhibits hirsuitism, is overweight and has menstrual irregularity must be referred for further investigation.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Acne

- Moderate or severe acne
- Occupational acne
- OTC treatment failure
- Patients over 25 years old presenting for the first time
- Rosacea

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

The aim of treatment must be to clear the lesions and prevent scarring. Mild acne can be managed OTC but it is important to show understanding and empathy when advising patients. Acne is predominantly a condition that affects adolescents; a time when appearance is all-important. It is worth taking a few minutes to counsel patients about their condition, ally fears and make sure their expectations of treatment are realistic.

OTC acne treatments contain either benzoyl peroxide, salicylic acid, sulphur, nicotinamide or an antibacterial.

Benzoyl peroxide

Benzoyl peroxide exerts its main effect by reducing the concentration of *Propionibacterium acnes*. Additionally, it has slight anti-inflammatory and mild anticomedogenic effects. Many studies have investigated the efficacy of benzoyl peroxide. It has been proven to be effective, especially in mild to moderate acne. However, there is no evidence to suggest that 10% benzoyl peroxide is more effective than lower strengths. Therefore, because of its potential to cause erythema and irritation, concentrations of 10% should probably be avoided.

A variety of other agents have been compared against or in combination with benzoyl peroxide. None of these products has been shown to be significantly better than benzoyl peroxide alone. For example, the addition of miconazole 2% (Acnidazil – now discontinued in the UK) was shown to be no more effective than benzoyl peroxide. Likewise, when Quinoderm was compared to Quinoderm HC (benzoyl peroxide and hydrocortisone) no significant differences in efficacy were observed.

Evidence of efficacy for salicylic acid and sulphur is poor. Both agents have been used for many years on the basis of their keratolytic action but on current evidence they are best avoided. Nicontinamide (Nicam, Freederm), is a more recent addition to the OTC market. Data from cohort studies for nicotinamide suggest it is as effective as clindamycin 1% gel but because of the lack of randomised controlled trials UK guidance currently does not recommend its use.

Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) treatments

Evidence is lacking to support the use of CAM. Reviews of CAM to treat acne report studies, which were small in size and poor quality. In one trial, the herb *Ocimum gratissimum* was compared with benzoyl peroxide and placebo. However, because various concentrations were investigated, the number of patients in each group was too small to allow any firm conclusions. A further trial that compared tea tree oil with benzoyl peroxide lacked a placebo group and was underpowered, yet benzoyl peroxide was more effective than tea tree oil. Another study, which compared gluconolactone versus benzoyl peroxide, found gluconolactone to be better than placebo but not significantly different than benzoyl peroxide.

Summary

First line treatment of acne should be benzoyl peroxide 2.5 or 5%. Patients should see an improvement in their symptoms after 6 weeks. If the patient's symptoms fail to improve in this time then referral to the GP would be appropriate. However, if beneficial, treatment should be continued for at least 4 to 6 months.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.9: ACNE

Myths surrounding acne	Sun shine helps reduce acne – there is no convincing evidence that this is the case Chocolate causes spots. There is no proof that any food causes acne Stress causes acne. Stress cannot cause acne although it can make it worse
Applying benzoyl peroxide	Benzoyl peroxide has a potent bleaching effect. It has the ability to permanently bleach clothing and bed linen. Patients should be advised to always wash their hands after applying the product

Table 7.24
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for acne

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Benzoyl peroxide	Not appropriate	Skin irritation, burning or peeling	None	None	OK

Table 7.25
Products available in the UK containing benzoyl peroxide

Name	Form	Strength	Other ingredients
Acnecide	Gel & wash	5%	
Brevoxyl	Cream	4%	
PanOxyl	Aquagel	2.5%, 5%, 10%,	
	Cream	5%	
	Gel & wash	10%	
Quinoderm	Cream	5, 10%	Antimicrobial hydroxyquinoline sulphate 0.5%,
Oxy 10	Lotion	10%	

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to benzoyl peroxide is discussed and summarised in Table 7.24 and Table 7.25; useful tips relating to patients presenting with acne are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.9.

Benzoyl peroxide

Benzoyl peroxide is licensed for use in adults and children (for products see Table 7.25). However, acne is very uncommon in children under 12 and should not be given to this age group. Benzoyl peroxide is usually applied once or twice daily depending on patient response, although once daily application is often sufficient. It should be applied to all areas of the skin where acne occurs and not just to the active lesions. It can cause drying, burning and peeling on initial application. If this occurs the patient should be told to stop using the product for a day or two before starting again. Patients should therefore start on the lowest strength commercially available, especially if the patient suffers from sensitive or fair skin. Occasionally, patients will experience contact dermatitis, although it has been reported to affect only 1 to 2% of patients. Apart from local adverse effects benzoyl peroxide is safe.

Reference

Goldberg JL, Dabade TS, Davis SA, et al. Changing age of acne vulgaris visits: Another sign of earlier puberty? Pediatr Dermatol 2011;28(6):645–8.

Further reading

Bassett IB, Pannowitz DL, Barnetson RS. A comparative study of tea-tree oil versus benzoyl peroxide in the treatment of acne. Med J Aust 1990;153:455–8.

Burke B, Eady EA, Cunliffe WJ. Benzoyl peroxide versus topical erythromycin in the treatment of acne vulgaris. Br J Dermatol 1983;108:199–204.

Fluckiger R, Furrer HJ, Rufli T. Efficacy and tolerance of a miconazole-benzoyl peroxide cream combination versus a benzoyl peroxide gel in the topical treatment of acne vulgaris. Dermatologica 1988;177:109–14.

Hunt MJ, Barnetson RS. A comparative study of gluconolactone versus benzoyl peroxide in the treatment of acne. Aust J Dermatol 1992;33:131–4.

Table 7.26
Specific questions to ask the patient: Cold sores

Question	Relevance
Appearance	Patients with cold sores will often experience prodromal symptoms prior to the skin eruption whereas no 'warning' symptoms are present with impetigo or angular cheilitis.
Location	Cold sores typically occur around the mouth and for this reason are known as herpes simplex labialis. They can also occur around and inside the nose, but this is less common Impetigo also occurs in the same areas but is more prone to spread to other areas of the face or move to other parts of the body, for example the arms. Angular cheilitis occurs at the corners of the mouth and can be mistaken for cold sores due to their similar locations.
Trigger factors	Stress, ill health, sunlight, viral infection (e.g. the common cold) and menstruation are all implicated in triggering cold sore attacks. These triggers are not associated with other similar conditions and the patient should be asked if they can identify what brought on the lesions.

Johnson BA, Nunley JR. Topical therapy for acne vulgaris. How do you choose the best drug for each patient? Postgrad Med 2000;107:69–70, 73–76, 79–80.
Kligman AM. Acne vulgaris: tricks and treatments. Part II: The benzoyl peroxide saga. Cutis 1995;56:260–1.
Magin P, Pond D, Smith W, et al. A systematic review of the evidence for 'myths and misconceptions' in acne management: diet, face washing and sunlight. Fam Pract 2005;22:62–70.
Magin PJ, Adams J, Pond CD, et al. Topical and oral CAM in acne: A review of the empirical evidence and a consideration of its context. Complement Ther Med 2006;14(1):62–76.
Marks R. The enigma of rosacea. J Dermatol Treat 2007;18(6):326–8.
Purdy S, de Berker D. Clinical review: Acne. Br Med J 2006;333:949–53.
Sagransky M, Yentzer BA, Feldman SR. 2009 Benzoyl peroxide: a review of its current use in the treatment of acne vulgaris. Exp Opin Pharmacother 2009;10(15):2555–62.
Shalita AR, Smith JG, Parish LC, et al. Topical nicotinamide compared with clindamycin gel in the treatment of inflammatory acne vulgaris. Int J Dermatol 1995;34:434–7.

Web sites

Acne Support Groups: http://www.m2w3.com/acne/, http://www.stopspots.org/ and http://www.talkacne.com/

Cold sores

Background

A cold sore is an infection caused by the herpes simplex virus (HSV). There are two main subtypes of the virus: HSV1 and HSV2. Cold sores are caused by HSV1, whereas HSV2 is most commonly implicated in genital lesions.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Herpes simplex virus infection is one of the most commonly encountered human viral infections. It is estimated that more than 50% of adults in the Western world show serologic evidence of having been infected by HSV1, although this might not manifest as symptoms. When first contracted, the virus is known as the primary infection. This is often asymptomatic, and is most commonly contracted by preschool children. It is reported that 20 to 40% of people have experienced cold sores at some time.

Aetiology

Infection is spread by viral shedding into saliva and results from direct mucous membrane (e.g. kissing) contact at sites of abraded skin between an infected and an uninfected individual. The virus then infects epidermal and dermal cells, causing skin vesicles. At the same time, nerve endings are also infected with the virus, which travels to the sensory ganglia where it lies dormant in the dorsal root ganglia of the trigeminal nerve until reactivation. The virus remains dormant until triggered by a stimulus (Table 7.26). During reactivation the virus actively replicates, leading to lesions in the distribution of the affected nerve. Once contracted the infection lasts the lifetime of the host.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Cold sores should not be too difficult to diagnose, although conditions such as impetigo can look similar to cold sores.

Fig. 7.24 Cold sore. Reproduced from G White, 2004, Color Atlas of Dermatology 3rd edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.26).

Clinical features of cold sores

Patients with cold sores typically experience prodromal symptoms of itching, burning, pain or tingling symptoms prior to vesicle eruption. These symptoms might be noticed from a few hours to a couple of days before the lesions develop. The lesions appear as blisters and vesicles with associated redness (Fig. 7.24). These crust over – usually within 24 hours – and tend to itch and be painful. The lesions spontaneously resolve in 7 to 10 days, therefore most outbreaks last 14 days from the recognition of prodromal symptoms to the resolution of lesions.

Many patients can identify a cause of their cold sore, with sunlight (UV light) reported to induce cold sores in 20% of sufferers. Recurrence is common and lesions tend to occur in the same location. Patients will often experience two or three episodes each year. Immunocompromised patients, or patients taking immunosuppressive medication can experience severe symptoms and should be referred.

Conditions to eliminate

Impetigo

Impetigo usually starts as a small, red, itchy patch of inflamed skin that quickly develops into vesicles that rupture and weep. The exudate dries to a brown, yellow sticky crust. Currently, referral is needed for either topical (e.g. fusidic acid) or systemic (flucloxacillin) therapy. However, patient group directions for supply of topical antibiotics by community pharmacists are in use in certain areas of the UK. It is possible that deregulation of topical antibiotics will occur in the future.

Fig. 7.25 Angular cheilitis. Reproduced from R Cawson et al 2002, Essentials of Oral Pathology and Oral Medicine, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Angular cheilitis

Angular cheilitis can occur at any age. It is more common in patients who wear dentures. The corners of the mouth become cracked, fissured and red. The lesions can become boggy and macerated and are slow to heal because movement of the mouth hinders healing of the lesions (Fig. 7.25). It is painful but generally does not itch or crust over as is typical with cold sores.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Cold sores

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Duration longer than 14 days	Unlikely to be cold sores
Cold sores located within the mouth Severe and widespread lesions	Outside scope of community pharmacy
Lesions that spread rapidly over the face	Impetigo more likely
Patients who are immunocompromised or take immunosuppressive medicines	Generally they experience more severe symptoms and should be managed by their doctor

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

A number of products are marketed for the relief and treatment of cold sores. None have shown conclusively to be effective in both its prevention and treatment. Products containing ammonia, zinc and phenol appear to have no evidence of efficacy. However, they might be useful in drying lesions and preventing secondary bacterial infections. Local anaesthetics (e.g. lidocaine) and choline salicylate might also be useful for mildly painful lesions. For information on these products see page 138.

Only the antivirals, aciclovir and penciclovir – which work by inhibiting the herpes virus DNA polymerase – have demonstrated clinical effectiveness against the herpes virus. Orally, antivirals such as aciclovir are highly effective but the evidence for topical administration is less conclusive. Trial data have failed to show any significant effects on speeding the resolution of established cold sores when using aciclovir, although there is some data to support its use as a prophylactic agent. If applied in the prodromal stage the total healing time of subsequent lesions is reduced by a ½ to 1 day. However, the results of the studies in this review were mixed, with several failing to find any difference compared to placebo.

A hydrocolloid patch has been released for the treatment of cold sores (Compeed Cold Sore Patch). Hydrocolloid dressings are available for wounds, and enhance healing by providing a moist environment. A study comparing Compeed patch with aciclovir 5% cream found similar efficacy in terms of self-reported global assessment of efficacy and time until healing (7.57 days for Compeed vs 7.03 days for aciclovir; $p = 0.37$) (Karlsmark et al 2008). However, the study was not blinded for the primary outcome (self-reported global assessment), casting some doubts on the findings. Further, the study was not set up as an equivalence study, and therefore the lack of difference in the outcomes could be due to too small a sample size. Given the uncertainty in the benefit of aciclovir, the small additional healing time seen with Compeed in this trial (approximately ½ a day) could mean Compeed is no better than placebo.

Summary

Aciclovir and penciclovir are first-line therapy for the treatment and prevention of cold sores. However, they should be used as soon as the patient experiences symptoms for them to have any effect.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to antivirals is discussed and summarised in Table 7.27. For completeness the table also contains some of the other commonly used cold-sore products; useful tips relating to patients presenting with cold soles are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.10.

Aciclovir (e.g. Cymex Ultra, Lypsyl cold sore cream, Virasorb, Zovirax)

Aciclovir can be used topically by all patient groups, including pregnant and breastfeeding women, although the manufacturers advise caution because of limited data regarding the exposure of pregnant women to aciclovir. It has no drug interactions and causes only transient stinging after first application in the minority of patients. Aciclovir should be applied five times daily at approximately 4-hourly intervals and treatment should be continued for 5 days.

Penciclovir (Fenistil cold sore cream)

Penciclovir, like aciclovir, has the same side-effect profile, cautions and contraindications although the manufacturers advise avoidance in pregnancy and breastfeeding, presumably on lack of safety data. However, there appears to be no evidence to suggest it causes any problems in these groups. For people aged over 12 years it should be applied every 2 hours and treatment continued for 4 days.

Reference

Karlsmark T, Goodman JJ, Drouault Y, et al. Randomized clinical study comparing Compeed cold sore patch to acyclovir cream 5% in the treatment of herpes simplex labialis. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 2008;22(10):1184–92.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.10: COLD SORES

Sun-induced cold sores	For those patients in whom the sun triggers cold sores, a sun block would be the most effective prophylactic measure
Applying products	Patients should be encouraged to use a separate towel and wash their hands after applying products because viral particles are shed from the cold sore and can be transferred to others
Decrease transmission	Risk of transmission is highest during the first 1-4 days of symptoms and people should be advised not to kiss others

Table 7.27
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for cold sores

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Aciclovir	All (except Lypsyl product) state can be used in children but no lower age limit stated	Stinging	None	OK	OK
Lypsyl cold sore cream					
Cymex Ultra					
Virasorb					
Zovirax					
Penciclovir (Fenistil)	>12 years	None	None	None	Manufacturers recommend avoidance
Ammonia Blistex	Yes, but no lower age stated	None	None	None	OK
Phenol Colsor	Yes, but no lower age stated	None	None	None	OK
Zinc & lidocaine Lypsyl cold sore gel	>12 years	Stinging	None	None	OK
Urea Cymex	Yes, but no lower age stated	None	None	None	OK

Further reading

Emmert DH. Treatment of common cutaneous herpes simplex virus infections. Am Fam Physician 2000;61:1697–704.

Raborn QW, McGaw WT, Grace M, et al. Treatment of Herpes Labialis with acyclovir. Am J Med 1988; 85:39–42.

Spruance SL, Nett R, Marbury T, et al. Acyclovir cream for treatment of herpes simplex labialis: results of two randomized, double-blind, vehicle-controlled, multicenter clinical trials. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2002;46:2238–43.

Scully C, Gorsky M, Lozada-Nur F. The diagnosis and management of recurrent aphthous stomatitis: a consensus approach. J Am Dent Assoc 2003; 134:200–7.

Whitley RJ, Kimberlin DW, Roizman B. Herpes simplex viruses. Clin Infect Dis 1998;26:541–55.

Web sites

Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research: http://www.mayoclinic.com/invoke.cfm?id=DS00358

Eczema and dermatitis

Background

The terms ‘eczema’ and ‘dermatitis’ are often used interchangeably. Dermatitis simply means inflammation of the skin whereas eczema has no universally agreed definition but in some countries indicates a more acute condition. Many authorities subdivide eczema and dermatitis into either exogenous (due to an obvious external cause) or endogenous (assumed to be of a genetic cause), however, the distinction is not clear. The condition is also referred to as either acute – a single exposure to an irritant, or chronic – repeated exposure. In this section, for consistency, the term dermatitis will be used.

Dermatitis is characterised by sore, red, itching skin. In primary care, the two commonest forms of dermatitis are irritant and allergic dermatitis.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence and incidence of irritant and allergic contact dermatitis (ICD and ACD) is unclear, although ICD

is much more common than ACD and has been reported to account for 80% of all occupational skin disorders. ACD is said to affect 1 to 2% of the population with certain patient groups, such as patients with leg ulcers at higher risk of developing ACD.

Aetiology

Different physiological mechanisms are responsible for ICD and ACD. In ICD, an agent must penetrate the outer layer of skin – the stratum corneum – to invoke a physiological response. The type of irritant, the concentration, quantity involved and length of exposure will affect the severity of reaction. This can occur with a single exposure, or more commonly, with frequent exposures when the irritant accumulates in the stratum corneum. For example strong acids and alkaline substances can produce ulceration on a single exposure, whereas other agents (e.g. zinc oxide tape) potentially require multiple exposure and tend to invoke a weaker reaction and cause a prickly heat type of dermatitis.

ACD first requires sensitisation to occur. This leads to specific cell-mediated sensitisation. Once the skin has become sensitised to an allergen, re-exposure to the allergen triggers memory T cells to initiate an inflammatory response 24 to 48 hours after re-exposure. Because these T cells are distributed throughout the body the reaction is not limited to the site of exposure and explains why lesions are seen away from the site of exposure. The risk of sensitisation can depend on the individual's susceptibility as well as the particular allergen's concentration and quantity. Re-exposure can occur days and sometimes years after initial exposure. A list of common irritants and allergens is shown in Table 7.28.

Many causes of dermatitis are occupationally related. Questions about exposure to irritants and allergens at work can often identify the cause of symptoms.

Table 7.28
Irritants and allergens known to precipitate dermatitis

Irritants that can precipitate ICD	Allergens that can precipitate ACD
Detergents and soaps	Nickel (especially jewellery in women) Chromate in cement
Solvents and abrasives	Topical corticosteroids (5% of patients)
Oils	Cosmetics – particularly fragrances, hair dyes, preservatives, and nail varnish resin.
Acids and alkalis, including cement	Rubber, including latex
Reducing agents and oxidizing agents	Dyes, formaldehyde and epoxy resins

Table 7.29
Specific questions to ask the patient: Dermatitis

Question	Relevance
Location	The distribution of rash for contact dermatitis is closely associated with clothing and jewellery (Fig. 7.26)
Exposure	A history of when the rash occurs gives a useful indication as to the cause, e.g. a construction worker might complain of sore hands whilst at work but when on holiday the condition improves only for it to worsen when they go back to work

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Many patients will present in the pharmacy with an itchy red rash. Gaining an accurate diagnosis can be difficult as identification of the cause is difficult and clinical features are similar. Generally speaking treatment is the same for both forms of dermatitis so making a definitive diagnosis is less important. However, asking symptom-specific questions will help the pharmacist to determine if referral is needed (Table 7.29).

Clinical features of ACD and ICD

In both cases rash develops at the site of exposure. In the acute phase, lesions appear rapidly – within 6 to 12 hours – of contact. The skin appears red, itchy, inflamed and might show papules and vesicles. Itching is a prominent feature and often causes the patient to scratch, which results in broken skin with subsequent weeping. In chronic exposure, the skin becomes dry, scaly and can crack and fissure (Fig. 7.27). The rash in ICD tends to be well demarcated. In ACD, the rash tends to be less well defined; milder involvement away from the site of exposure is seen on repeated exposure and can reactivate at previously exposed sites.

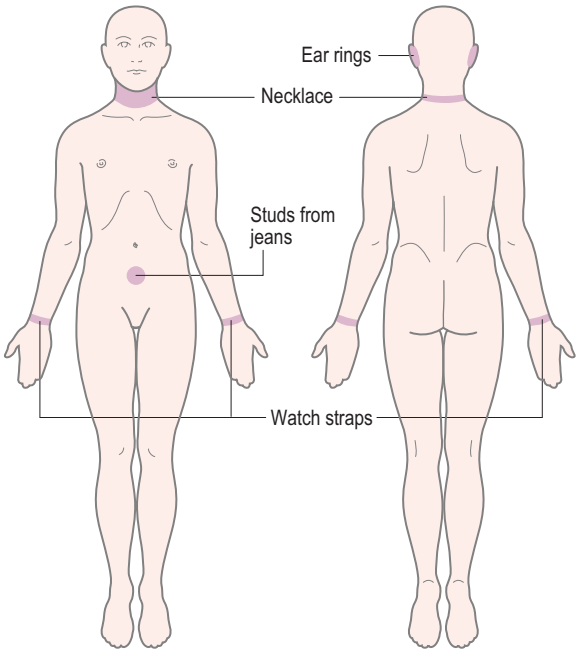


Fig. 7.26 Distribution of contact dermatitis.

Fig. 7.27 Irritant dermatitis. Reproduced from G White, 2004, Color Atlas of Dermatology, 3rd edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Conditions to eliminate

Psoriasis

Isolated lesions of psoriasis can be superficially similar to dermatitis; they appear red and scaly, although a key difference is the general lack of itch in psoriasis. The distribution of lesions is also usually different, and psoriasis is not precipitated by exposure to certain irritants or allergens. For further information on psoriasis see page 197.

Fungal infections

Fungal infections exhibit the classical dermatitis-type symptoms of itchy red rash and can therefore be easily confused. Very clear lesion demarcation along with differing location, and central clearing all point toward fungal infection. For further information on fungal infections see page 210.

Discoid dermatitis

This differs from other forms of eczema as the lesions have clearly demarcated edges and are circular or oval. Lesions tend to affect the arms and legs and are often distributed symmetrically. It is more common in middle-aged people.

Dyshidrotic eczema (pompholyx)

Pompholyx simply means 'bubble' and refers to the presence of intensely itchy vesicles or blisters on the palms of the hands and occasionally on the soles of the feet. Stress and heat are known to precipitate the condition.

Urticaria

Urticarial rashes can result from many causes, most notably due to food allergies, food additives (Table 7.30) and medicines. Like dermatitis, the rash is itchy and red but resembles the rash seen when stung by a stinging nettle (Fig. 7.28). In addition, the skin can be oedematous and blanches when pressed. Urticarial reactions often respond well to systemic antihistamines.

Figure 7.29 will aid the differentiation of dermatitis.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Dermatitis

- Children under 10 in need of corticosteroids
- Lesions on the face unresponsive to emoillients
- OTC treatment failure
- Widespread or severe dermatitis

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

All forms of dermatitis cause redness, drying of the skin and irritation/pruritus to varying degrees. Treatment should include three steps: managing the itch, avoiding irritants and maintaining skin integrity.

Non-pharmacological interventions include avoidance of the causative agent, however determining the cause is often difficult and avoidance is sometimes impractical. Sweating intensifies the itching so strategies to keep the person cool will help; cotton and loose fitting clothing can be worn.

Table 7.30
Food additives known to cause allergic reaction

Sulphites (E220–E227)	Sulphites are used to preserve smoked and processed meats, dried fruit (apricots) and salads. They are commonly found in liquid form in cold drinks and fruit juice concentrates, and wine and sprayed onto foods to keep them fresh and prevent discolouration or browning.
Benzoic acid and parabens (E210–E219)	Benzoates and parabens have antibacterial and antifungal properties for prevention of food spoilage. These agents are added to pharmaceutical and food products and occur naturally in prunes, cinnamon, tea and berries.
Antioxidants (E320–E321)	Fat and oils in food turn rancid when exposed to air. Synthetic phenolic antioxidants butylated hydroxyanisole and butylated hydroxytoluene prevent this spoilage happening but can trigger asthma, rhinitis and urticaria.
Flavour enhancers (E620–E635)	These are used to enhance food palatability, most notably aspartame which can trigger urticaria and swelling and monosodium glutamate (E620) which can trigger the 'Chinese restaurant syndrome' of headache and burning plus tightness in the chest, neck and face.
Colourings (E100–E180)	Colourings are used to make food visually more attractive, the azo dyes (Tartrazine, E102, Sunset Yellow, E110) and non-azo dyes (erythrocine) have been associated with triggering urticaria, asthma and generalised allergic reactions.

Fig. 7.28 Urticarial reaction to grass.

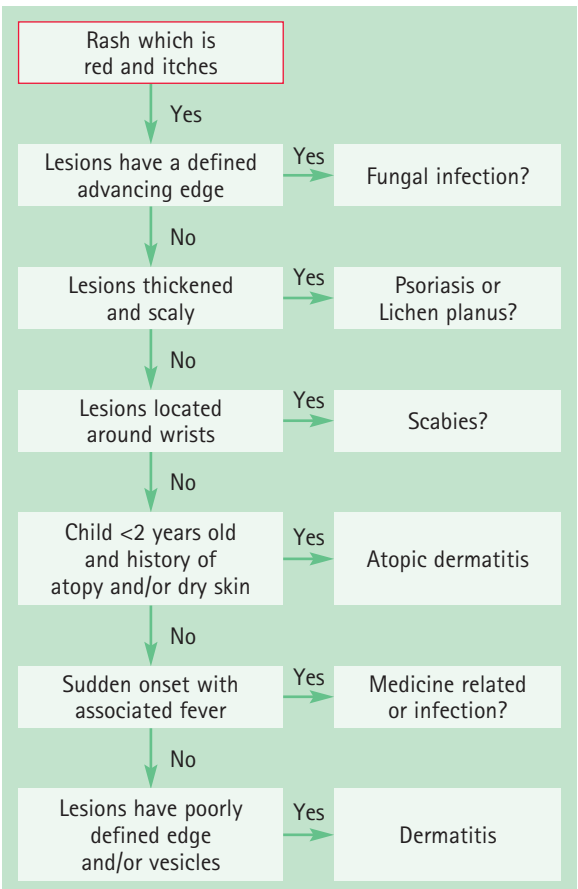


Fig. 7.29 Primer for differential diagnosis of dermatitis.

Pharmacological treatment of dermatitis should be managed with a combination of emollients and steroid based products.

Emollients

Emollients should be used on a regular basis to keep the condition under control and flare-ups can then be treated with corticosteroids. Choosing the most efficacious emollient for an individual is difficult due to the lack of comparative trial data between products and the variable nature of patient response. In general, patients respond to a thicker emollient rather than an elegant cosmetic brand because these allow greater retention of water, for example

Table 7.31
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for dermatitis

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Emollients	From birth onwards	None	None	None	OK
Corticosteroids					
Hydrocortisone	>10 years	None	None	None	OK
Clobetasone	>12 years				

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.11: DERMATITIS

Patch testing	If the rash persists despite avoiding likely irritants and allergens then patch testing could be tried
How much to apply?	Patients should be instructed to use a fingertip unit. This is the distance from the tip of the adult index finger to the first crease. One unit is sufficient to cover an area twice the size of an adult flat hand
Quantity required?	The BNF gives the following guidance for a weeks use: Both hands, 15 to 30 g Both arms, 30 to 60 g Both legs or trunk, 100 g
When to apply emollients and corticosteroids?	After using a corticosteroid an emollient can be applied to the same area 30 minutes later

50% liquid paraffin and 50% white soft paraffin. However, patient acceptability of such products needs to be considered. Cream formulations rather than ointments tend to be more readily accepted by patients, as they are easier and less messy to use. In general, skin which is moderately dry to very dry will respond best to an ointment and skin which is mildly dry, a cream. If the skin is broken or weeping then a water soluble cream can be useful. To avoid the drying effects of soap, a soap substitute should be used.

Steroids

In the UK, two steroids are commercially available OTC; hydrocortisone and clobetasone. Both have proven efficacy in treating dermatitis and should be considered first-line treatment for acute dermatitis. Once symptoms are controlled then the patient should be instructed to revert back to emollient therapy.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to specific products used to treat dermatitis discussed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is summarised in Table 7.31; useful tips relating to using products to treat dermatitis are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.11.

Emollients

There are a large number of emollients on the market. They come in a range of formulations to suit all skin types and patient preference (Table 7.32). Patients should be instructed to apply emollients both liberally and whenever needed. They are pharmacologically inactive and so can be used by all patients regardless of age or medical status. A number of ingredients incorporated into emollients do have the potential to sensitise skin and patients should be advised to patch test the product on the back of the hand before starting to routinely use it.

Cortiocsteroids

Although corticosteroids can be sold to patients OTC, there are a number of restrictions to their sale. In the UK these are:

Table 7.32
Summary of proprietary emollient products

Product name	Formulation	Combination product	Contains potential sensitising agents
Aveeno	Cream, bath oil, and lotion		Yes
Aquadrate	Cream	Urea	No
Aquamol	Cream		Yes
Balneum	Bath oil		Yes
Balneun Plus	Bath oil, cream	Urea (cream)	Yes
Calmurid	Cream	Urea, lactic acid	No
Cetraben	Cream, bath oil		Yes
Dermatonics Heel Balm	Cream	Urea	Yes
Dermamist	Spray		No
Dermalo	Bath oil		No
Dermol	shower and bath emollient, wash emulsion	Antimicrobials	Yes
Diprobase	Cream, ointment		Yes (cream)
Diprobath	Bath oil		No
Doublebase	Bath oil, gel		No
E45	Cream, lotion, bath oil, emollient wash cream		Yes (cream and lotion only)
E45 Itch relief	Cream	Urea	Yes
Emollin	Spray		No
Emulsiderm	Bath emulsion	Antimicrobials	Yes
Epaderm	Cream, ointment		Yes
Eucerin	Cream, lotion	Urea	Yes
Hewletts	Cream		Yes
Hydromol Intensive	Cream	Urea	No
Hydromol	Cream, ointment, bath and shower emollient		Yes (cream and ointment)
Imuderm	Bath oil		Yes
Linola Gamma	Cream		Yes
Lipobase	Cream		Yes
Neutrogena	Cream		Yes
Nutraplus	Cream	Urea	Yes
Oilatum	Cream, junior, shower emollient, bath oil		Yes
Oilatum Plus	Bath oil	Antimicrobials	Yes
QV	Cream, ointment, lotion, wash, bath oil		Yes (except oil)

Table 7.32 (Continued)

Product name	Formulation	Combination product	Contains potential sensitising agents
Ultrabase	Cream		Yes
Unguentum M	Cream		Yes
Vaseline Dermacare	Cream, lotion		Yes
ZeroAQS	Cream		Yes
Zerobase	Cream		Yes
Zerocream	Cream		Yes
Zeroguent	Cream		Yes
Zerolatum	Bath oil		No
Zerolatum Plus	Bath oil		Yes
Zeroneum	Bath oil		Yes

- the patient must be over 10 for hydrocortisone (over 2 years in Australia) and 12 for clobetasone;
- duration of treatment is limited to a maximum of 1 week;
- a maximum of 15 g can be sold at any one time;
- they cannot be used on facial skin, the anogenital region, broken or infected skin.

In the opinion of the author, these restrictions limit their usefulness and mean that many patients, who could be otherwise treated successfully if the product licenses were not so prohibitive, must be referred to a GP. For example, 1% hydrocortisone cream, if used short-term, is an ideal steroid to use on the face with no adverse events; also, 15 g of product is often insufficient for surface areas such as limbs and the body, even if used only for a week.

Hydrocortisone

Hydrocortisone can either be bought alone (e.g. Hc45,) or in combination with other ingredients (e.g. Eurax HC, Canesten Hydrocortisone). It is prudent to use products solely containing hydrocortisone for dermatitis, applying them twice a day for a maximum of 7 days. If secondary infection is suspected, for example with a fungal infection, then products such as Canesten Hydrocortisone can be used.

Clobetasone (Eumovate eczema and dermatitis cream)

Clobetasone is classed as moderately potent, whereas hydrocortisone is classed as mild. This affords the pharmacist choice in tailoring treatment to the severity of the condition. It would seem reasonable to reserve clobetasone for more severe flare-ups of dermatitis, or those patients in which hydrocortisone has in the past failed to control symptoms. Like hydrocortisone, it should be applied twice a day.

Further reading

Bellingham C. Proper use of topical corticosteroids. Pharm J 2001;267:377.
Clark C, Hoare C. Making the most of emollients. Pharm J 2001;266:277–9.
Cunliffe B. Eczema. Pharm J 2001;267:855–6.

Web sites

National Eczema Society: http://www.eczema.org/
National Eczema Association: http://www.nationaleczema.org/

Sun exposure and melanoma risk

Background

The ultraviolet spectrum is subdivided in to three regions: UVA (320 to 400 nm); UVB (290 to 320 nm); and UVC (200 to 290 nm). Light from the UVA spectrum causes skin tanning and UVB light sunburn, whereas UVC light is effectively filtered out by the ozone layer. It is now well recognised that excessive or prolonged exposure to

the sun's rays and inadequate skin protection can result in pre-cancerous and cancerous neoplasms. There are many types of skin cancer, but three types are associated with sun exposure – squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), basal cell carcinoma (BCC) and malignant melanoma (MM) – and are responsible for more than 95% of all skin cancers. SCC and BCC result from chronic long-term exposure to sunlight whereas MM is associated with acute, intense, and intermittent blistering sunburns. BCC and SCC are often grouped together as non-melanoma skin cancer (NMSC).

Prevalence and epidemiology

The incidence of cancers related to skin damage has dramatically increased since the 1980s, and are greatest in white skinned people living in equatorial regions. In 2010, there were just under 13 000 new cases of MM in the UK. MMs are slightly more common in women, although the incidence in both sexes has been steadily increasing. Affluent women appear to be at highest risk of developing MM, whereas men from lower socioeconomic groups are at greatest risk of developing NMSC.

Aetiology

The body's response to the effects of UVA and UVB light is protective. On exposure to ultraviolet light melanocytes increase production of melanin, thus causing a darkening of the skin, the all-important suntan! Melanin absorbs both UVA and UVB and effectively protects the skin from damage, unfortunately melanin synthesis is slow and skin damage might well have already occurred manifested as sunburn. Sunburn is an inflammatory response to excessive exposure to ultraviolet light whereby an increase in inflammatory mediators results in capillary vasodilatation and increased capillary permeability. In addition to melanin production, epidermal hyperplasia occurs, causing the skin to thicken; this provides further protection against the skin.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Pharmacists have a major role to play in dealing with patients who have been exposed to excessive amounts of sunlight. They can promote sun safety messages, both passively and actively (when dealing with requests for sunburn) and make appropriate referrals with regard to suspicious lesions. Pharmacists must be able to recognise suspicious lesions, especially those resembling MM because it has the highest mortality of skin cancers, but if treated early is curable.

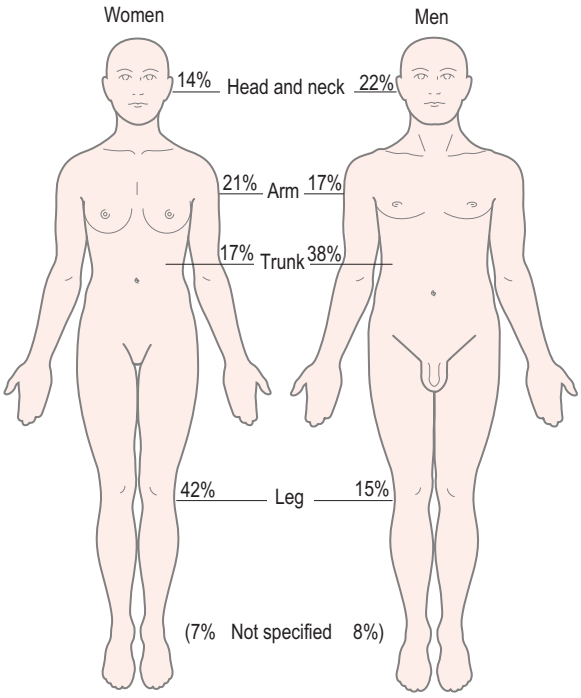


Fig. 7.30 Distribution of malignant melanoma.

Clinical features of malignant melanoma

MM is one of the few cancers which is associated with young adults. It can appear on all body sites yet their distribution between men and women does differ (Fig. 7.30). In the UK population the most common site is the lower leg in women, and on the back in men. Risk factors include early childhood sun exposure, people with multiple moles and those with susceptible sunburn skin types. The first sign of melanoma is often a change in the size, shape, or colour of a mole, although melanoma can also appear on the body as a new mole (Fig. 7.31). Early identification is essential and two commonly used checklists are used to aid diagnosis; the '7 point' check list and the 'ABCDE' list.

1. The 7 point list

This checklist consists of 3 major and 4 minor points:

Major (scores 2)

1. Change in shape
2. Change in size
3. Change in colour

Minor (scores 1)

1. Largest diameter 7 mm or more
2. Inflammation

Fig. 7.31 Superficial spreading melanoma. Irregular in colour and shape. Reproduced from J Wilkinson et al 2004, Dermatology in Focus, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

3. Oozing
4. Change in sensation (e.g. itch or irritation)

Any lesion should be suspected as MM with a score of 3 or more.

2. The ABCDE Rule

In this checklist 5 points are used:

- Asymmetry – Ordinary moles are usually symmetrical in shape. Melanomas are likely to be irregular or asymmetrical.
- Border – Moles usually have a well-defined regular border. Melanomas are more likely to have an irregular border with jagged edges.
- Colour – Moles are usually a uniform brown. Melanomas tend to have more than one colour. They may be varying shades of brown mixed with black, red, pink, white or a bluish tint.
- Diameter – Moles are normally no bigger than the blunt end of a pencil (about 6mm across). Melanomas are usually more than 7mm in diameter.
- Evolution – the symmetry, border, colour, or diameter of a mole has changed over time.

It is likely that patients will ask for advice and reassurance on skin lesions which they are concerned could be melanoma. It is essential that these people are given information, ideally both orally and written, regarding the changes that might subsequently suggest MM and instructed to seek medical help as soon as they notice changes.

NMSC

NMSC are the most common cancers in the UK. They are associated with older people, with the average age of diagnosis in the early 70s. The cancers are rarely fatal but can cause substantial morbidity. Both cancers commonly occur on skin surfaces that are exposed to a lifetime accumulation of UV radiation such as the hands, face and scalp. They are more common in people who have worked outdoors, in fair skinned people and those living in tropical and subtropical climates. BCC and SCC vary in their appearance. SCC initially present as raised lesions that exhibit a horny or scaly appearance that later become non-healing lesions often larger than 1 cm which can ulcerate; BCC starts as small translucent papule with obvious telangiectasia over the surface. Over time (growth can be very slow) the size of the papule increases and can ulcerate and crust over.

Conditions to eliminate

Actinic keratoses

Actinic keratoses is the most common pre-malignant skin condition and affects the same group of people as SCC, with approximately 1 in 1000 cases progressing to SCC. Lesions occur on parts of the body that are exposed to long-term sun exposure (e.g. head, forearms, hands). They begin as small rough spots. Roughness is a key feature – often referred to as feeling like rubbing sandpaper. They are generally flat and brown and have well demarcated edges. Over a period of years they enlarge and often become red and scaly.

Seborrhoeic warts

These are benign flat or raised lesions that vary in colour. Initially, they take on the colour of the person's skin but gradually darken. They range in colour from light brown to jet black (Fig. 7.20). They are more usual on the trunk

and increase in incidence from 40 years onwards. Over time they can become wart-like and have a stuck on waxy appearance. Occasionally, they can become inflamed, itchy or bleed but this is normally because they have been caught on clothing.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Sunburn/damage

- Facial lesions, especially in people over 40
- Lesions that have become itchy, irritated or are prone to bleeding
- Moles that have changed in size, shape or colour

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Avoidance measures

The most effective strategy for preventing skin damage/sunburn and reducing the chance of developing cancers is avoidance of UV light. Cancer research UK has promoted a Sun SMART cancer prevention programme which highlights the key sun avoidance measures that should be promoted to the public:

S Spend time in the shade between 11 am and 3 pm
M Make sure you never burn
A Aim to cover up with a T-shirt, hat and sunglasses
R Remember to take extra care with children
T Then use factor 15+ sunscreen

It is also worth stressing to people that people can still burn on cloudy days.

Sunscreens

While sunscreens play an important role in sunburn protection, they should never replace minimising sun exposure. Sunscreens use the sun protection factor (SPF) system to indicate the level of protection against UV radiation. It is a measure of the protection from UVB radiation. This is calculated under experimental conditions using four times the amount of sunscreen usually applied by consumers. It is important that patients and consumers do not assume a linear increase in protection as the SPF increases. For example, a sunscreen with an SPF of 15 blocks 93% of UVB, whereas a doubling to SPF 30 only increases protection by 4 to 97%.

In the UK a controversial star rating also exists to indicate the level of protection offered against UVA relative to protection against UVB. A five star rating indicates the product has a balanced amount of UVA and UVB protection. The lower the star rating then the greater the protection offered against UVB compared to UVA.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to sunscreen products reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 7.33; useful tips relating to patients asking for advice about protection from the sun are given in Hints and Tips Box 7.12.

All products should be applied 20 minutes before exposure to the sun, and reapplied every 2 to 4 hours and after swimming to ensure maximum protection. Standard practice until recently was to match skin type with the level of SPF protection the person required. However, this approach whilst preventing sunburn does not prevent long-term skin damage. Rather than selecting a specific sunscreen for skin type it is advocated that all white skinned people should use a sunscreen with an SPF of at least 15 because this level of protection is effectively a sun block.

Chemical sunscreens

Chemical sunscreens work by absorbing UV energy and give protection against either UVA or UVB, although they

Table 7.33
Practical prescribing: Summary of sun protection products

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Chemical sunscreens	Infant upwards but some manufacturers do have lower age limits	Allergic reactions but may be linked to the vehicle and not the active ingredients	None	None	OK
Physical sunscreens		None, but may be cosmetically unacceptable			

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 7.12: SUN DAMAGE

Water-resistant sunscreens	These are claimed to be effective after immersion in water. However, studies have shown that sunscreen effectiveness decreases after water exposure. It would be prudent therefore to re-apply sunscreens after swimming
Eye protection	Prolonged (over years) sun exposure can contribute to age-related macular degeneration. Therefore wraparound sunglasses and lenses that effectively filter UV light should be worn
Treatment of sunburn?	Mild sunburn can be managed with a combination of topical cooling preparations, such as calamine, moisturisers and systemic analgesia
Medicine-induced photosensitivity	Piroxicam, tetracyclines, chlorpromazine, phenothiazines and amiodarone can cause pruritus and skin rash when the skin is exposed to natural sunlight, primarily due to UVA radiation. Patients on photosensitive drugs should use a broad-spectrum sunscreen as these filter both UVA and UVB radiation
Sun protection and vitamin D deficiency	In February 2012 the DoH issued guidance to healthcare professionals on the danger of vitamin D deficiency. This, in part, has been caused by the use of sunscreens. Guidance is not to stop using sunscreen but certain patient groups should take supplements http://www.dh.gov.uk/health/2012/02/vitamin-d/ (accessed 22 November 2012) http://www.npa.co.uk/resources/information-leaflets-and-factsheets/clinical/preventing-vitamin-d-deficiency-in-at-risk-groups/ (accessed 22 November 2012)

tend to be more effective against UVB radiation. The majority of marketed products contain a combination of agents including benzophenones, cinnamates, dibenzoylmethanes and *para*-aminobenzoic acid. The latter is now infrequently used, as para-aminobenzoic acid was frequently associated with contact sensitivity.

Physical sunscreens

Physical sunscreens are opaque reflective agents and offer protection against UVA and UVB radiation. Examples of physical sunscreens include zinc and titanium oxide.

Web sites

Charities

http://www.skincancer.org/ (The Skin Cancer Foundation)
http://www.cancerresearchuk.org/home/ (Cancer Research UK)

Guidance

Prodigy guidance: http://www.prodigy.clarity.co.uk/melanoma_and_pigmented_lesions
NICE guidance on skin tumours including melanoma: http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/csgstim/?c=91528
SIGN guidance No. 72-Cutaneous melanoma July 2003: http://www.sign.ac.uk/guidelines/fulltext/72/index.html
British Association of Dermatologists guidelines on 'The prevention, diagnosis, referral and management of melanoma of the skin', 2007: http://www.bad.org.uk/Portals/_Bad/Guidelines/Clinical%20Guidelines/RCP%20Melanoma%20Guidelines%202007.pdf

General sites

http://www.sunsmart.com.au/ (Sunsmart website)
http://www.cancer.org.au/ (Cancer Council Australia)
http://www.melanoma.org/ (Melanoma Research Foundation)
http://www.melanoma.com/

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

7.1 Which medicine has *not* been proven to be efficacious in treating dandruff?

a. Coal tar
b. Cetrimide
c. Ketoconazole
d. Zinc pyrithione
e. Selenium sulphide

7.2. Which form of psoriasis can be managed OTC?

a. Guttate
b. Pustular
c. Plaque
d. Seborrhoeic
e. Erythrodermic

7.3. Which medicine is known to cause hair loss?

a. Nifedipine
b. Simvastatin
c. Ranitidine
d. Ibuprofen
e. Warfarin

7.4. What symptom is least associated with psoriasis?

a. Itch
b. Redness
c. Scaling
d. Papules
e. Raised plaques

7.5. Which form of tinea infection are imidazoles ineffective?

a. Athlete's foot
b. Jock itch
c. Infection involving the body
d. Infection involving the nail
e. Infection on the hand

7.6. A corn is caused by?

a. Sweating feet
b. Excessive pressure caused by ill-fitting shoes
c. Too much pressure caused by anatomical deformity
d. Human papilloma virus
e. None of the above

7.7. In which condition is itching the least prominent?

a. Allergic dermatitis
b. Scabies
c. Fungal infection
d. Psoriasis
e. Lichen planus

7.8. What skin condition is characterised by silvery-white scaly lesions of salmon-pink appearance with well defined boundaries?

a. Contact dermatitis
b. Rosacea
c. Plaque psoriasis
d. Seborrhoeic dermatitis
e. Pityriasis versicolor

Questions 7.9 to 7.11 concern the following conditions:

A. Dermatitis
B. Plaque psoriasis
C. Fungal infection
D. Acne
E. Cold sores

Select, from A to E, which of the above conditions:

7.9. Is characterised by itching and scaling

7.10. Often has prodromal symptoms prior to the rash appearing

7.11. Has a strong genetic link

Questions 7.12 to 7.14 concern the following medicines for fungal infection:

A. Hydrocortisone
B. Clotrimazole
C. Amorolfine
D. Tolnaftate
E. Bifonazole

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

7.12. Is applied once daily

7.13. Is applied once weekly

7.14. Should be used for no longer than 1 week

Questions 7.15 to 7.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

7.15. For the following statements about cradle cap which is/are true?

a. There is normally a family history
b. Ear and eye involvement is common
c. The rash tends not to itch

7.16. Warts and verrucas are:

a. Caused by the human papilloma virus
b. Infections that never affect adults
c. Can develop in to pre-cancerous growths if left untreated

7.17. When supplying aciclovir, patients should be told to:

a. Use the product 5 times a day
b. Apply as soon as symptoms are experienced
c. Wash their hands after application

Questions 7.18 to 7.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
7.18	Benzoyl peroxide should be used to treat mild acne	It should be used for at least 6 weeks
7.19	Scabies is intensely itchy	The mite's faeces cause a hypersensitivity reaction
7.20	Minoxidil is used to treat hair loss	It works on over 80% of patients

Case study

CASE STUDY 7.1

Mr RJ and his 9-year-old son Jimmy want to buy something for Jimmy's verruca. Mr RJ thinks that Jimmy has had the verruca for about 4 to 6 weeks. He describes it as a circular discoloured piece of skin that looks like the verrucas he used to get.

a. What course of action are you going to take?

Try and directly question Jimmy. See if Jimmy knows how long the suspected verruca has been there. Ask if the lesion is causing any pain when walking. Instead of asking for further descriptions of what the lesion looks like and where it is positioned ask if you can actually look at the lesion. Remember to wash your hands before and after inspecting the foot.

On further questioning and examination you concur with the self-diagnosis of a verruca. The lesion is small (less than 0.5 cm in diameter) and causes no pain when direct pressure is applied.

b. What are you going to recommend?

A salicylic-acid based product is the most suitable product, and you recommend Bazuka after first making sure Jimmy is not diabetic.

Six weeks later Mrs J returns with Jimmy and demands to see the pharmacist. She says the stuff you recommended is rubbish and Jimmy's verruca is bigger than it was before!

c. How are you going to respond?

First, you must stay calm and not be defensive. Ask open questions to find out why Mrs J is unhappy; this approach will generally reveal what the problem is. Second, if the reason is not obvious then you must find out about compliance. Who has been responsible for applying the product? If the parents have told Jimmy to use it, has he been using the product correctly and at the correct dosage frequency? In addition, many patients have unrealistic expectations on how quickly the verruca will resolve with therapy. Did you tell them how long it would take before an affect will be seen? This is a vital piece of information to ensure patients realise that treatment is not a quick cure.

You find out that Mrs J has been applying the Bazuka and doing everything the instruction leaflet says. You inspect Jimmy's feet again and from what you can remember the lesion does look slightly larger.

d. Why might this be the case?

Salicylic acid is destructive in nature and if the product comes in to contact with non-affected skin then it can damage skin and appear to the patient that the lesion has indeed got bigger.

Mrs J wants to try Bazuka Extra Strength since the normal Bazuka isn't helping.

e. What are you going to do?

You must try to stress to Mrs J that she continues with the normal Bazuka because 6 weeks of therapy is not long enough to make a decision to alter therapy.

Reluctantly, Mrs J accepts your advice and leaves the pharmacy promising she will try for a bit longer. One week later she presents a prescription for Cuplex gel for Jimmy.

f. What are you going to do?

It appears that Mrs J was not satisfied or convinced with your advice and has decided to see the GP. You do not know whether Mrs J told the GP about using an OTC product. You could ring the GP to tell him or her that Mrs J has been using a salicylic-acid-based product already, however, this is likely to have little bearing on the outcome of product selection as Jimmy will still need to continue treatment with something for a few more weeks. The prescription should be dispensed and Mrs J counselled appropriately. It would be unprofessional to point out that Cuplex is unlikely to be any better than Bazuka.

When you hand Mrs J the Cuplex she mentions that the doctor said this was stronger than Bazuka and should do the trick.

g. How do you reply?

Be diplomatic and non-judgemental. It is likely that the GP knows that Cuplex is no better than Bazuka but if the parent is convinced that what she is now getting is superior to the previous product then her motivation to comply with directions might be better and hence the outcome for Jimmy will be eradication of the verruca. It might be worth asking the GP, next time you have a conversation, what his or her rationale for prescribing Cuplex was.

CASE STUDY 7.2

Ms AH is the mother of an infant son aged 4 months. She asks for your help in treating her son's flaky skin on his scalp. She says he has had the problem on and off for the last 6 weeks. She hasn't yet tried anything except baby shampoo, as recommended by the health visitor. However, she now wants a cream or something to get rid of the problem once and for all.

a. What further information do you require to be in a position to help her?

You need to know more about the severity of the problem, for example whether any other parts of the baby's skin is affected. Does the baby appear to scratch at the rash and what were the previous episodes like? Were they the same as this time or different? Also is there a family history of atopy or other dermatological conditions in the family.

You decide the child has cradle cap.

b. What treatment are you going to recommend?

The use of a mild tar-based product every other day until the scalp clears would be appropriate. In between using the tar-based product the mother should be instructed to use the baby shampoo.

Ms AH returns to the pharmacy 2 weeks later with another of her children. Impressed that her son's scalp is now clear she now wants some advice for her 7-year-old daughter. She has a sore on the corner of her mouth.

c. What further information do you require to be in a position to help her?

You need to know:

- *How long has the sore been present*
- *How the sore first developed*
- *What symptoms are associated with the sore*
- *The progression of the sore. Has it spread?*
- *Previous history of the rash and a family history*

You find out the sore appeared overnight and is now itchy. On inspection the lesion appears to be weeping a clear exudate.

d. What is the most likely diagnosis?

Based on this information the likely diagnosis is a cold sore.

e. What treatment, if any, are you going to recommend?

No treatment necessary but if the parent insists on therapy then any product could be given, although antiviral therapy is expensive and the cost difficult to justify. In addition, advice on minimising transmission could be given such as not sharing towels and trying to avoid kissing (e.g. mum and dad).

CASE STUDY 7.3

Mr RT, an elderly man asks for some cream to help get rid of a rash he has over part of his chest. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint How long had the symptoms	Rash started 3 days ago
What does it look like	Red and angry
Where exactly	Started on his left side below his armpit and now spread under the arm pit.
Other symptoms/ provokes	Felt a bit unwell, slight loss of appetite & headache.
Any itching or pain?	Some pain – rated as 4 on scale of 1-10
Additional questions Previous history of presenting complaint	None similar
Past medical history	Slight stroke 1 year ago. Hypertension controlled with medication Eczema, Contact dermatitis, urticaria to some plants
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Warfarin, Bendroflumethiazide, Adalat LA Double Base cream Occasional use of clobetasone (Eumovate) for dermatitis
Allergies	Unknown
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Wife died 6 months ago, finding it difficult to cope at times. Does not like to bother children who live locally. Feels very low
Family history	Not asked
On examination	Clusters of papules & vesicles unilaterally along dermatome affecting left chest and back.

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

For skin rash seen on the trunk in the area observed then herpes zoster seems likely. The expected findings for questions when related to the possible conditions that could be confused with herpes zoster that are seen by community pharmacists are summarised below.

	Vesicles	Unilateral	Recurrent	Pain	Other symptoms
Herpes zoster	Yes	Yes	Unusual	Yes	Tingling/burning prior to eruption General malaise
Contact dermatitis	Possible	Yes	Yes	Possible	Itch
Herpes simplex	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	None of note
Eczema	Possible	Possible	Yes	Possible	Itch
Trauma	No	Possible	No	Yes	Should be an obvious cause

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that his symptoms fit with herpes zoster.

CASE STUDY 7.3 (Continued)

	Vesicles	Unilateral	Recurrent	Pain	Other symptoms
Herpes zoster	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Contact dermatitis	✓	✓	✗	✗?	✗
Herpes simplex	✓	✓	✗	✓	✗
Eczema	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗
Trauma	X	✓	✗	✓	✗

Shingles information

Shingles is an acute infection caused by reactivation of latent varicella zoster virus. Following primary chickenpox infection, the virus lies dormant in the dorsal root ganglia of the spinal cord. When reactivated, it travels along the sensory nerve to affect one or more dermatomes, causing the characteristic shingles rash. Reactivation of the virus probably occurs following a decrease in cell-mediated immunity (e.g. with increasing age, HIV infection, illness). A diagnostic question to ask is previous history of chicken pox. If the patient has never had chicken pox then they cannot develop shingles.

Course of action

The patient could be given analgesics to help with pain but referred for possible antivirals. (e.g. Famciclovir 250 mg tds for 7 days) and warned about postherpetic neuralgia. The patient also seems to be showing signs of depression which needs further investigation. It would be good practice, in this case, to try and speak with the GP to arrange an urgent appointment for the patient to treat the rash but also mention your concerns over the patient exhibiting signs of depressive illness.

CASE STUDY 7.4

Mr AC, a man in his late 20s/early 30s presents with a very itchy rash on his left hand. He asks if you can give him a cream to stop the itching. The following questions are asked, and responses received.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
How long had the symptoms	Few days
Rash anywhere else	No
Other symptoms/ provokes	Not really - just really itchy!
Additional questions	No exposure to chemicals or new tasks involving hand work
Previous history of presenting complaint	No
Past medical history	Epileptic
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Na. valproate 500 mg bd. Well controlled.
Allergies	None
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Works for the NHS doing patient transports
Family history	Dad has eczema
On examination	Left hand and wrist very sore. Obvious red papules in places but look like they have been scratched (this is confirmed by patient)

Marked itching involving the hands is most likely to be scabies. However, other conditions are possible and are noted below:

Probability	Cause
Most Likely	Scabies
Likely	Dermatitis, insect bites, pompholyx
Very unlikely	Dermatitis herpetiformis

Using the information gained from questioning and linking this with known epidemiology, it should be possible to make a differential diagnosis.

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

The expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists are summarised below.

	Location other than hands & wrists	Lesion appearance	Itch	Positive family or social history
Scabies	Unusual	Red papules through to vesicles	Intense	Yes
Dermatitis	Often (depends on type of dermatitis)	Red scaling rash that might crust over due to scratching	Moderate to intense	No
Insect bites	Often	Red papules through to vesicles	Moderate to intense	Possible
Pompholyx	Unusual	Vesicles	Intense	No
Dermatitis herpetiformis	Usual	Red papules through to vesicles	Intense	No

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that his symptoms most closely match scabies.

CASE STUDY 7.4 (Continued)

	Location other than hands & wrists	Lesion appearance	Itch	Positive family or social history
Scabies	✓	✓	✓ (intensity points more to scabies than other conditions)	✓ (occupation exposes person to higher risk)
Dermatitis	✗?	✗	✓	✗
Insect bites	✗	✓	✓	✗?
Pompholyx	✓	✗?	✓	✗
Dermatitis herpetiformis	✗	✓	✓	✗

Therapy could be started with permethrin cream, although it is expensive and referral to the GP might be considered. It is also important to try and trace the contact from which he has contracted scabies from and also inform work.

Severe and extensive symptoms	✗
Suspected dermatitis herpetiformis	✗

Danger symptoms/signs (trigger points for referral)

As a final double check it might be worth making sure the person has none of the 'referral signs or symptoms'; this is the case with this patient.

Answers

1 = b	2 = c	3 = e	4 = d	5 = d	6 = b	7 = d	8 = c	9 = c	10 = e
11 = b	12 = e	13 = c	14 = a	15 = c	16 = d	17 = a	18 = b	19 = a	20 = c

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 8

Musculoskeletal conditions

In this chapter

Background 259
General overview of musculoskeletal anatomy 259
History taking 259
Acute low back pain 260
Activity-related/sports-related soft tissue injuries 271
Self-assessment questions 277

Background

The musculoskeletal system comprises of hard (bone and cartilage) and soft (muscles, tendons, ligaments) tissues. It is responsible for mobility and provides protection to vital structures. Most musculoskeletal problems occur as a result of injury or organic illness. The majority of patients presenting to a community pharmacist will have an acute and self-limiting problem, which will resolve spontaneously. Chronic conditions such as osteoarthritis will be encountered routinely when issuing prescriptions to patients.

The key role of the pharmacist when dealing with patients with a musculoskeletal problem is to establish the cause, its severity and whether it can be self-managed appropriately or requires further investigation.

General overview of musculoskeletal anatomy

The skeletal system of the human body is composed of 206 bones. At the point of contact between two or more bones an articulation (joint) is formed. This system of bones and joints maximises movement whilst maintaining stability. There are two basic types of joints:

- synovial joints: allow considerable movement (e.g. shoulder or knee)
- fibrocartilaginous joints: are completely immoveable (e.g. the skull) or permit only limited motion (e.g. spinal vertebrae).

Bones and joints cannot move by themselves. The integrity of the musculoskeletal system depends on the interaction between skeletal muscle and bones, and co-ordinated movement is only possible because of the way muscle is attached to bone. Tendons attach the end of the muscle to the bone or another structure upon which the muscle acts. To perform such a function tendons are composed of very dense fibrous tissue.

Joints require additional stability and support. Strong bands of fibrous tissue known as ligaments bind together bones entering a joint to provide this additional support and stability. It is often the integrity of the connecting structures that are damaged in a musculoskeletal injury. The simplified diagram of the medial aspect of the knee joint in Fig. 8.1 illustrates the relationship of the connective structures to the skeleton and musculature.

The knee joint is an example of a synovial joint. The femur, tibia and fibula do not touch each other because they are covered with articular cartilage and separated by the synovial cavity. The knee joint also contains bursae – small fluid sacs – that provide protection at points in the joint where friction or pressure is great. These can become inflamed, leading to bursitis.

History taking

Gaining an accurate history from the patient should provide enough information to determine if their injury is within the scope of a community pharmacist. By the very nature of musculoskeletal injuries, if someone manages

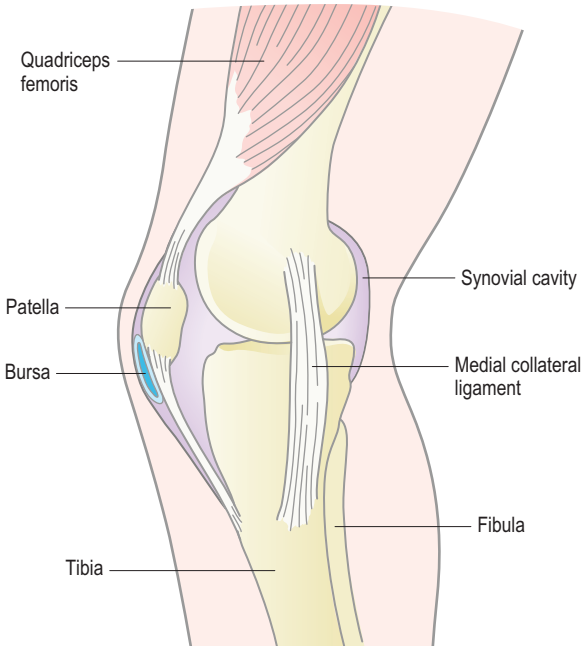


Fig. 8.1 The knee joint: medial view.

to come into the pharmacy then the injury is unlikely to be serious. Information gathering should concentrate on when the injury occurred, what precipitated the injury, the level of discomfort, any restriction in range of motion and whether the injury appears to be worsening, and finding out what expectations the patient has.

In general, any patient who presents with an injury that is causing extreme discomfort or the pain is worsening, adversely affects mobility and has been present for more than a week would probably be better managed by a GP or physiotherapist/sports therapist and referral should be made.

Acute low back pain

Background

Acute low back pain is self-limiting. Over 90% of patients will get better within 6 weeks, although up to two-thirds of patients will have a recurrence within one year after initial onset but fewer than 5% of patients go on to develop back pain classed as chronic (persists for more than 12 weeks).

Low back pain is extremely common. For example, in the US it is the fifth common reason patients see a medical practitioner and in the UK 7–8% of all adult GP consultations are for low back pain. In 2004–2005, 4.5 million working days were lost through back pain in the UK.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Back pain is most common between the ages of 30 and 55 years with prevalence rates similar for men and women, although 50 to 90% of pregnant women develop low back pain. Studies and statistical data have shown that in developed countries 60 to 90% of adults will experience an episode of low back pain at some point in their adult lives. Back pain is most common in those with skilled manual, partly skilled and unskilled jobs. Occupational risk factors in developing back pain include those who perform heavy manual labour, frequent bending, twisting and lifting and people who remain in static positions for long periods of time such as truck and car drivers who drive long distances each year. Sports, which involve excessive twisting, such as, golf and gymnastics can also lead to back pain.

Aetiology

In the majority of cases an exact cause cannot be determined for the patient's symptoms and is often referred to as simple, non-specific or uncomplicated low back pain. Pain originates from the lumbosacral region and is often mechanical in origin (Fig. 8.2) and includes problems caused by muscles, tendons, ligaments and discs. Contributory factors in the cause of low back pain are a general lack of fitness, occupational (as above) and psychosocial, for example anxiety and depression. Serious underlying pathology is very rare with infection and malignancy accounting for less than 1% of cases.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The vast majority of patients (95%) who present in the pharmacy will have simple back pain that will, in time, resolve with conservative treatment. The remaining cases will have back pain with associated nerve root compression. It is extremely unlikely that a pharmacist will encounter a patient with serious spinal pathology, such as infection or malignancy. However, pharmacists should be mindful that age can affect the diagnosis. Table 8.1 highlights those conditions that can be encountered by community pharmacists and their relative incidence.

Taking a thorough history is of key importance when evaluating a patient with low back pain. Begin questioning the patient with traditional questions regarding the pain: location, radiation, evidence of trauma, the effect pain has on mobility and factors which aggravate or relieve the pain. Asking a number of symptom-specific questions will aid differential diagnosis (Table 8.2).

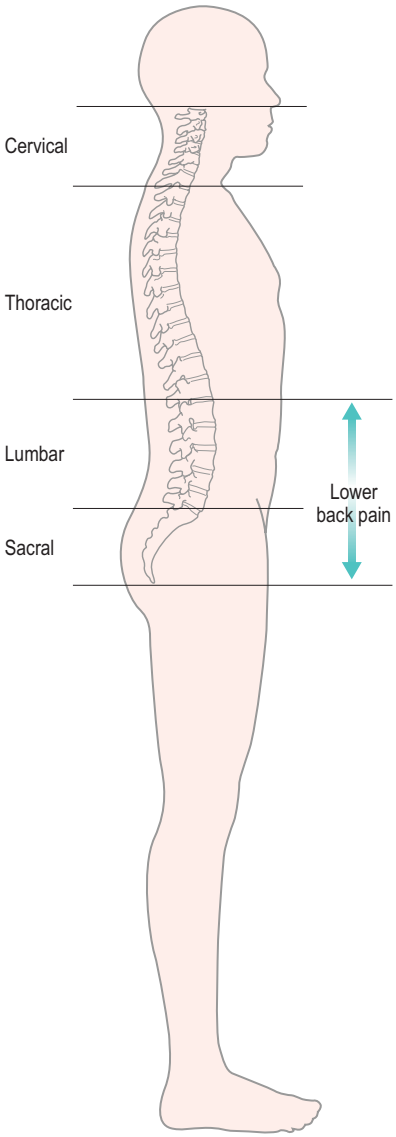


Fig. 8.2 Location and distribution of lower back pain: L4–L5, pain radiates down outer calf and onto the top of the foot; L5–S1, pain radiates to the outside and sole of the foot.

Clinical features of acute low back pain

Pain in the lower lumbar or sacral area is usually described as aching or stiffness. Depending on the cause, pain might be localised (e.g. lumbosacral strains following physical activity) or more diffuse (e.g. from postural backache after sitting incorrectly for a prolonged period). In cases of acute injury the symptoms come on quickly and there will be a reduction in mobility.

Table 8.1
Causes of back pain and their relative incidence in community pharmacy

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Simple back pain (usually associated with physical activity)
Likely	Nerve root compression (e.g. sciatica), pregnancy, (osteoarthritis)
Unlikely	Osteomyelitis, ankylosing spondylitis
Very unlikely	Malignancy

Bad posture when seated and poor lifting technique when performing day-to-day tasks, such as, cleaning or gardening are very common predisposing factors.

Conditions to eliminate

Likely causes

Sciatica

Sciatica typically occurs in the healthy middle-aged adult. Pain is acute in onset and radiates to the leg. Pain starts in the lower back and as it intensifies radiates into the lower extremity. Disc herniation usually involves those between L4 and L5 and L5–S1 vertebrae (Fig. 8.2), although most occur between L5 and S1. If disc herniation is minimal pain is characterised by being dull, deep and aching. It is usually felt in the upper part rather than the lower part of the leg and spreads from the lumbar spine. If the disc ruptures or herniates under strain then the pain is usually lancinating in quality, shooting down the leg like an electric shock. Valsalva movements, for example coughing, sneezing or straining at stool, often aggravate pain. Referral is needed for confirmation of the diagnosis. GPs can perform a straight-leg raising test whereby the pain of sciatica can be induced by elevating the leg of the patient when lying down. Prognosis is good, although improvement and recovery is often slower than in low back pain alone.

Osteoarthritis

Patients in whom pain lasts longer than 12 weeks are said to suffer from chronic back pain. In the context of low back pain pharmacists should only manage acute problems; however patients will present with chronic symptoms and seek advice, especially on drug management. Degenerative joint disease is the most common cause of chronic low back pain in people older than fifty. It is associated

Table 8.2
Specific questions to ask the patient: Back pain

Question	Relevance
Age	Age does influence the relative incidence of conditions seen in the population Under 15: Although back pain is uncommonly reported in children, children do have higher incidence of identifiable and potentially serious causes, for example spondylolysis, malignancy and Scheuermann's disease (although pain is experienced in upper back and neck, rather than the lower back). Also recent studies have linked weight of school bags to back pain. It would seem prudent to refer all children unless backache is associated with recent participation in sport 15 to 30: prolapsed disc, trauma, fractures, pregnancy and ankylosing spondylitis most likely. 30 to 50: degenerative joint disease (osteoarthritis), prolapsed disc, and malignancy most likely. Older than 50: the incidence of serious underlying disorders increases, such as osteoporosis, malignancy and metabolic bone disorders (Paget's disease)
Location	Pain that radiates into the buttocks, thighs and legs implies nerve root compression. If pain is felt below the knee, this is highly suggestive of sciatica
Onset	Low back pain that is acute and sudden in onset is likely to be muscle strain in the lumbosacral region and not serious. However, acute low back pain in the elderly should be referred as even slight trauma can result in compression fractures The patient will normally remember performing some recent exertion (playing sport, gardening etc) or say the pain started when they bent forward Low back pain that is insidious in onset should be viewed with caution
Restriction of movement	People with disc herniation usually have difficulty in sitting down for long periods Mechanical causes of pain is exacerbated with physical activity and relieved by rest Systemic causes of back ache are usually worse with rest and disturb sleep
Weakness or numbness	Progressive muscle weakness must be referred for further evaluation

with advancing age, and affects up to one-third of people aged over 65 and is twice as common in women. It can be localised to a single joint or involve multiple joints and most commonly affects the hands, knees, hips, neck, and low back. It is thought that an imbalance of synthesis and degradation of cartilage is responsible for the disease, which affects the whole joint. It is characterised by pain of insidious onset that progressively increases over months or years and is exacerbated by exertion and relieved by rest. Stiffness in the affected joint occurs typically in the morning and after prolonged rest but usually only lasts for 15 to 30 minutes.

Unlikely causes

Infection (osteomyelitis)

Symptoms of osteomyelitis include bone pain, general malaise and presence of high fever. There may be local swelling, redness and warmth at the site of the infection. Patients also usually exhibit a loss of range of motion to the affected body part.

Ankylosing spondylitis

Spondylitis is characterised by thinning or loss of elasticity of the discs that cushion the vertebrae of the spine. It is three times more common in men and tends to run in families. Symptoms gradually worsen over a period of several months and experience periods of flare ups and remission. Patients commonly have marked stiffness on awakening and pain that alternates from side to side of the lumbar spine. Pain is worse at rest but improves with physical activity. Pain can be made worse by bending, lifting and prolonged sitting in one position (e.g. long car journeys). Up to 40% of patients may also show inflammation of the eye.

Very unlikely causes

Malignancy

Malignancy is very rare; it is more prevalent in patients over 50, although rates are still low – 0.14% in under 50 and 0.56% in patients over 50. A history of significant and unexplained weight loss, presence of anaemia, and failure

of symptoms to improve over a 4-week period all warrant referral.

Causes of low back pain not related to back pathophysiology

It must be remembered that acute illness, for example colds and influenza, can give rise to generalised aching or pain. Likewise, pre-rash pain associated with shingles and referred pain from abdominal organs (e.g. pyelonephritis) can present as low back pain. A careful history of the presenting symptoms should enable exclusion of such conditions.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral

Symptoms/signs	Possible danger/reason for referral
Fever	Infection
Pain that radiates away from lower back area	Sciatica
Young or older people (<20, and >55 years old) Numbness Persistent and progressively worsening pain Weight loss Feeling unwell	Possible sinister spinal pathology
Bowel or bladder incontinence	Cauda equina syndrome (rare and very unlikely to be seen by a pharmacist)
Back pain from structures above the lumbar region	Outside scope of community pharmacist
Failure of symptoms to improve after 4 weeks	Requires further investigation as pain becoming subacute (approx. 6 weeks duration) and requires medical intervention

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Pharmacists can appropriately treat patients with uncomplicated acute low back pain. The goal of treatment is to provide relief of symptoms and a return to normal mobility.

Conservative treatment

Bed rest was once widely prescribed for patients with low back pain. However, systematic reviews have now proven that prolonged bed rest is counter-productive (Dahm et al 2010). The review found two trials ($n = 401$) that showed improvements in pain relief and functional status in patients with acute lower back pain (LBP) that were advised to stay active compared to bed rest. The authors conclude:

Moderate quality evidence shows that patients with acute LBP may experience small benefits in pain relief and functional improvement from advice to stay active compared to advice to rest in bed.

Exercise programmes can help with acute back pain and have been shown to reduce recurrence.

Analgesics (paracetamol, aspirin, NSAIDs, e.g. ibuprofen, diclofenac)

All systemic analgesics when prescribed as monotherapy have proven efficacy in pain relief at standard doses. However, the use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) for 7 to 10 days is widely advocated. A systematic review of NSAIDs in acute or chronic low back pain found treatment with an NSAID produced significant short-term improvement compared with placebo (Roelofs et al 2008). The review identified 65 trials, 28 of which were rated as 'high quality'. The study failed to find any difference among the various NSAIDs. It also found that NSAIDs were no better than paracetamol for LBP. The authors did note that paracetamol had fewer side effects. Based on this observation, paracetamol may be the best first-line choice for most people. Patients must be advised to see their GP if symptoms fail to improve after 7 days.

Compound analgesics (paracetamol/codeine, aspirin/codeine or paracetamol/dihydrocodeine)

It is recognised that combination analgesics with high doses of opioids are effective in acute and chronic pain. However, in the UK, codeine and dihydrocodeine can only be prescribed OTC provided their respective maximum strengths do not exceed 1.5% and the maximum dose does not exceed 20 or 10 mg, respectively. In practice, this equates to commercially available products with a maximum dose of 12.8 mg of codeine and 7.46 mg of dihydrocodeine. At these doses their painkilling effect has been called into question and a number of papers have concluded that OTC doses are too low to produce statistically significant reductions in pain compared to single agents. However, the opioid dose might be sufficient to cause side effects such as constipation. Elderly patients are particularly susceptible to opioid side effects and might, in rare circumstances, experience drowsiness even at OTC doses.

Antihistamines (doxylamine)

Doxylamine is available in combination with paracetamol and codeine (Syndol). It is a first-generation antihistamine and is claimed to enhance the analgesic efficacy. However, this is largely unsubstantiated. The main effect of doxylamine is to produce sedation, and while this can be helpful in some forms of headache (e.g. migraine) it would have no additional effect in LBP, and therefore these products are best avoided.

Caffeine

It has long been claimed that caffeine enhances analgesic efficacy and a number of proprietary products contain caffeine in doses ranging from 15 to 110 mg. A Cochrane review (Derry et al 2012) identified 19 studies ($n = 7238$), which involved mainly paracetamol or ibuprofen, with 100 to 130mg caffeine. Findings showed that there was a small but statistically significant benefit with caffeine used at doses of 100 mg or more, which was not dependent on the pain condition or type of analgesic. The authors concluded that the addition of caffeine (100 mg) to a standard dose of commonly used analgesics provides a small but important increase in the proportion of participants who experience a good level of pain relief. In light of this new data, if recommending caffeine-containing products, only those with 100 mg or more of caffeine should be given.

Topical NSAIDs

Topical NSAIDs have been available OTC in the UK since ibuprofen was deregulated in 1988. Since then, a number of other NSAIDs have been deregulated from prescription only control. For NSAIDs to work they must penetrate the skin, be absorbed into tissues and be in sufficiently high concentration to inhibit COX enzymes. Experimental results suggest that NSAIDs do penetrate the skin but peak plasma concentrations are greatly lower than oral NSAIDs (approximately 5% of oral plasma levels). A recent systematic-review identified 47 studies comparing topical NSAIDs to placebo (Massey et al 2010). The review found topical NSAIDs to be significantly better than placebo, with achieving 50% pain relief with topical NSAIDs compared to 43% for placebo. The authors stated that there was insufficient data to reliably compare topical NSAIDs to each other, or to oral NSAIDs, but concluded that NSAIDs can provide good pain relief in acute musculoskeletal conditions, without the adverse events seen with oral NSAIDs.

Rubefacients

Rubefacients (also known as counter irritants) have been incorporated in topical formulations for decades. They cause vasodilation, producing a sensation of warmth that distracts the patient from experiencing pain. It has also been hypothesised that increased blood flow might help disperse chemical mediators of pain, although this in unsubstantiated. Numerous chemicals are listed as being rubefacients. Bandolier (http://www.medicine.ox.ac.uk/bandolier/) have produced a detailed summary of topical analgesics, and within this document usefully reviewed what constituted a rubefacient. Their effect in controlling acute and chronic pain was reviewed by Matthews et al (2009). Seven studies ($n = 697$) for acute pain involved use of salicylates. Data showed there was no difference between topical salicylates and a topical placebo.

Capsaicin

Two POM products in the UK have been granted licences for postherpetic neuralgia and painful diabetic neuropathy (Axsain, capsaicin 0.075%) and symptomatic relief in osteoarthritis (Zacin, capsaicin 0.025%). Clinical efficacy has been proven for both products when used to treat chronic pain. Whilst these are not available OTC, a number of OTC products do contain capsaicin (e.g. Balmosa, 0.035%, Ralgex cream, 0.12% and stick 1.96% capsaicin) at concentrations equivalent or higher than those found in the POM products. Its effect on acute low back pain is largely unknown; however the Cochrane review by Gagnier (2006) did show capsicum to have an effect (see herbal medicine entry below).

Enzymes

Heparinoid and hyaluronidase are included in a number of products. Theoretically they are supposed to disperse fluids in swollen areas, reducing swelling and bruising but this is unproven.

Complementary therapies

Back pain accounts for more visits to a complementary practitioner than any other pain condition. In one study, 10% of people complaining of back pain had visited a complementary practitioner (osteopath, chiropractor, acupuncturist).

A limited, but growing body of clinical evidence exists to assess whether complementary therapies are effective. In light of the growing public interest and the expanding volume of literature, four Cochrane reviews have been conducted on heat and cold therapy (French et al 2006), herbal remedies (Gagnier et al 2006), acupuncture (Furlan et al 2005) and massage (Furlan et al 2008) respectively.

Herbal remedies

Several herbal medicines are promoted as treatments for various types of pain, some of which have been tested for

the relief of symptoms of low back pain. A Cochrane review (Gagnier et al, 2006) reviewed three active constituents; *Harpagophytum procumbens* (Devil's Claw), *Salix alba* (white willow bark), and *Capsicum frutescens* (cayenne). Devil's Claw (standardised daily dose of 50 mg or 100 mg harpagoside) reduced pain more than placebo and a standardised daily dose of 60 mg was equally effective as 12.5 mg of rofecoxib (Vioxx, now withdrawn from the market). Similarly, Willow Bark (standardised daily dose of 120 mg and 240 mg of salicin) was also more effective than placebo and 240 mg of salicin was as effective as 12.5 mg of Vioxx. Cayenne (as a plaster) reduced pain more than placebo. It therefore appears that these products can be used as viable alternatives to conventional medicine.

Acupuncture

The available evidence for acupuncture in acute low back pain does not support its use, although if used in chronic back pain acupuncture is more effective for pain relief than no treatment in the short term.

Massage therapy

Thirteen RCTs ($n = 1596$) were identified for the review, of which only five were considered of reasonable quality. Overall, the review concluded that massage might be beneficial in non-specific back pain, especially when combined with exercise and education. Acupuncture massage (applying pressure, tension or motion to specific points on the body) may be better than traditional massage. However, more evidence is required to confirm this.

Superficial heat and cold

Applying heat or cold to superficial musculoskeletal injuries such as non-specific back pain is a popular lay recommendation. These range from hot water bottles, heat pads and infrared lamps to ice packs. The Cochrane review identified nine trials that met their inclusion criteria (six trials involved heat and three trials cold therapy). The authors concluded that many of the studies were of poor methodological quality but evidence exists that continuous heat wrap therapy reduces pain and disability in the short-term to a small extent. No conclusions could be drawn on cold therapy due to the limited nature of the three trials reviewed.

Glucosamine

Although glucosamine is not used for acute low back pain it is widely advertised to the general public as a treatment for osteoarthritis. Glucosamine is naturally found in the body, especially in cartilage, tendons and ligaments and must be synthesised by the body because significant amounts are not found in the diet. Its active form, D-glucosamine is used in the manufacture of glycosaminoglycan, a precursor to cartilage tissue. Early reviews of glucosamine reported favourable decreases in pain and increase in joint function. However, a review by Towheed and others (2005) including 20 studies with 2570 patients with osteoarthritis found mixed results. When studies of sound methodological quality were used the review failed to find any difference between glucosamine and placebo with regards to pain and changes in the Western Ontario and McMaster Osteoarthritis Index (WOMAC) function score. However, when all 20 trials were included in the review, they found significant improvements in pain and in functionality as measured by the Lequesne index. It still remains uncertain whether the two salts of glucosamine available, sulphate and hydrochloride, are equally active. Also studies so far have been relatively short (2 to 3 months) and any long-term benefits are still uncertain.

Chondroitin

Early research into the benefit of chondroitin in reducing pain and improving functionality in people with osteoarthritis showed chondroitin to be beneficial. Recent research that involved larger trials, have shown no significant benefit. Patients should be advised that if they use chondroitin then benefits are likely to be modest at best and if they want to use a natural product that glucosamine would be a better choice.

Summary

Based on evidence, patients with acute low back pain should be encouraged to keep active and be given either paracetamol or a 7 day course of a systemic NSAID unless contraindicated. Topical NSAIDs could also be recommended for those patients in whom side effects need to be minimised, for example elderly patients or patients who have experienced gastrointestinal (GI) side effects with previous NSAID use. The only complementary therapy that appears to have credible evidence are herbal remedies and their use might be justified.

Compound analgesics should be avoided, although patients might perceive they are getting a stronger pain killer and the placebo response of such medicines should not be underestimated.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to systemic analgesics reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and systemic proprietary products summarised in Table 8.3; useful tips relating to systemic analgesics are given in Hints and Tips Box 8.1.

Table 8.3
Systemic proprietary analgesics available OTC (excludes paediatric formulations and products for period pain)

Product	Aspirin	Paracetamol	Ibuprofen	Codeine	Other	Children
Alka-Seltzer Original	324 mg					>16 years
Alka-Seltzer XS	267 mg	133 mg			Caffeine 40 mg	>16 years
Anadin Extra Tabs; Sol. Tabs.	300 mg	200 mg			Caffeine 45 mg	>16 years
Anadin Ibuprofen; Anadin Joint Pain; Anadin Liquifast 200 mg Caps; Anadin Liquifast Eff. Tabs.			200 mg			>12 years
Anadin Liquifast 400 mg Caps.			400 mg			>12 years
Anadin Paracetamol		500 mg				>6 years
Anadin Original	325 mg				Caffeine 15 mg	>16 years
Askit Powders	530 mg				Aloxiprin 140 mg Caffeine 110 mg	>16 years
Aspro Clear	300 mg					>16 years
Aspro Clear Maximum Strength	500 mg					>16 years
Care ibuprofen tablets			200 mg			>12 years
Care Extra Strength Ibuprofen Tabs. 400 mg			400 mg			>12 years
Codis 500	500 mg			8 mg		>16 years
Cuprofen			200 mg			>12 years
Cuprofen Maximum Strength			400 mg			>12 years
Cuprofen Plus			200 mg	12.8 mg		>12 years
Disprin & Disprin Direct	300 mg					>16 years
Disprin Extra	300 mg	200 mg				>16 years
Double Action Pain Relief 12.5 mg Tablets					Diclofenac K 12.5 mg	>14 years
Feminax Express (ibuprofen lysine 342 mg)			200 mg			>12 years
Galprofen Ibuprofen long lasting capsules			200 mg			>12 years
Feminax		500 mg		8 mg		>12 years
Hedex		500 mg				>6 years
Hedex Extra		500 mg			Caffeine 65 mg	>12 years
Hedex Ibuprofen			200 mg			>12 years
Ibufem			200 mg			>12 years
Mandafen			400 mg			>12 years

Table 8.3 (Continued)

Product	Aspirin	Paracetamol	Ibuprofen	Codeine	Other	Children
Mandanol		500 mg				>6 years
Mandanol Plus		500 mg			Caffeine 65 mg	>12 years
Manorfen			200 & 400 mg			>12 years
Nurofen Extensive formulation range All deliver 200 or 400 mg of ibuprofen as base. Many products now formulated as lysine salt and marketed to show amount of salt which is higher than the base. For example Nurofen Maximum Strength Migraine Pain 648 mg Caplets. Formulations include: tablets, caplets, melt-tabs, liquid capsules			200 & 400 mg			>12 years
Nurofen Back Pain SR Caps			300 mg			>12 years
Nurofen Plus			200 mg	12.8 mg		>12 years
Nuromol		500 mg	200 mg			>18 years
Obifen			400 mg			>12 years
Panadol Original Tabs; Soluble tabs; Panadol advance		500 mg				>6 years
Panadol Actifast		500 mg				>12 years
Panadol Actifast Sol.		500 mg				>6 years
Panadol Extra Advance Tabs & Extra Sol. Tabs.		500 mg			Caffeine 65 mg	>12 years
Panadol Night Pain		500 mg			Diphenhydramine 25 mg	>12 years
Panadol Ultra		500 mg		12.8 mg		>12 years
Paracodol Tabs & Caps		500 mg		8 mg		>12 years
Paramol Tabs		500 mg			Dihydrocodeine 7.46 mg	>12 years
Phensic	325 mg				Caffeine 22 mg	>16 years
Propain		400 mg		10.0 mg	Caffeine 50 mg Diphenhydramine 5 mg	>12 years
Propain Plus		400 mg		10 mg	Caffeine 30 mg Doxylamine 5 mg	

Continued

Table 8.3 (Continued)

Product	Aspirin	Paracetamol	Ibuprofen	Codeine	Other	Children
Solpadeine Plus Tablets; Capsules & Soluble Tablets		500 mg		8 mg	Caffeine 30 mg	>12 years
Solpadeine Max		500 mg		12.8 mg		>12 years
Solpadeine Max Sol. tablets		500 mg		12.8 mg	Caffeine 30 mg	>12 years
Solpadeine Migraine Ibuprofen & Codeine Tablets			200 mg	12.8 mg		>12 years
Solpadeine headache Tabs & sol. Tabs.		500 mg			Caffeine 65 mg	>12 years
Syndol		450 mg		10 mg	Caffeine 30 mg Doxylamine 5 mg	>12 years
Ultramol Sol. Tabs.		500 mg		8 mg	Caffeine 30 mg	>12 years
Veganin Tablets		500 mg		8 mg	Caffeine 30 mg	>12 years
Voltarol Joint Pain Tablets & Voltarol Pain-Eze Tablets					Diclofenac K 12.5 mg	>14 years
Voltarol Pain-Eze Extra Strength 25 mg Tablets					Diclofenac K 25 mg	>14 years

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 8.1: ASPIRIN IN CHILDREN

Children and aspirin	Aspirin-taking in children has been linked to Reyes syndrome; a rare syndrome in which encephalopathy occurs and if not diagnosed early can lead to death
Caffeine containing analgesics	These might have a mild stimulant effect and should therefore be avoided before going to bed

Paracetamol

Paracetamol is the safest analgesic. It can be given to all patient groups, has no significant drug interactions and side effects are very rare. Patients with low back pain will benefit most from taking paracetamol regularly at its maximum dose of 8 tablets per day. It is the drug of choice in pregnancy and breastfeeding.

Aspirin

Unlike paracetamol, aspirin is associated with problems in its use. Children under 16 should avoid any products containing aspirin (although children with low back pain should be referred). It can cause gastric irritation and is associated with gastric bleeds, especially in the elderly. For this reason, aspirin should not be given to this patient group or any patient with a history of peptic ulcer. In a small minority of asthmatic patients, aspirin can precipitate shortness of breath, therefore any asthmatic who has previously had a hypersensitivity reaction to aspirin should avoid aspirin. It should be avoided in patients taking warfarin as bleeding time is increased. Aspirin is best avoided in pregnancy because adverse effects to the mother and foetus have been reported. It should also be avoided in breastfeeding.

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatories

The choice of which NSAID to use OTC is based largely on patient tolerance. All the OTC products are generally well tolerated. The recommended dose of ibuprofen in adults is 200 to 400 mg (one or two tablets) three times a day,

although most patients will need the higher dose of 400 mg three times a day. The dose of diclofenac is 25 mg (two tablets), and then one or two tablets every 4 to 6 hours as needed, with a maximum of 6 tablets per day. Naproxen, is currently only licensed for period pain (see page 119 for more information).

NSAIDs are best avoided in certain patient groups, such as the elderly, because they are more prone to GI bleeds and have reduced renal function, patients with a history of peptic ulcers and those asthmatics who are hypersensitive to aspirin. NSAIDs can be used in pregnancy but may delay labour; the use of NSAIDs, particularly in the last trimester, should be done under medical advice. They can be used in breastfeeding.

For the majority of patients, NSAIDs are well tolerated, although gastric irritation is a well-recognised side effect. They can interact with many medicines and, although most of these interactions are not significant, NSAIDs can alter lithium levels so that, where possible, an alternative should be recommended. If an NSAID is given with lithium then the patient's serum lithium needs to be monitored more closely than normal.

Topical NSAIDs

Topical NSAIDs provide an alternative to those patients who should avoid systemic NSAID therapy. They have fewer side effects than systemic therapy with the most commonly reported adverse events being skin reactions (maculopapular rash or itching) at the site of application. Gastrointestinal side effects have been reported but are rare. Low plasma levels probably explain their low incidence of adverse systemic effects. Most manufacturers recommend avoiding use during pregnancy because of the same potential adverse effects as oral NSAIDs, although the risks should be generally far lower than with oral NSAIDs.

Topical NSAIDs come in a range of formulations, including cream, gel, spray and mousse. Ibuprofen is the market leader, although other NSAIDs are available and include, piroxicam, diclofenac, ketoprofen, felbinac, salicylic acid and benzydamine. Table 8.4 highlights all commercially available NSAIDs and summarises their prescribing information.

Rubefacients (e.g. Deep Heat, Radain B and Ralgex ranges)

Rubefacients should be avoided in young children. Lower age limits vary from manufacturer to manufacturer and from formulation to formulation. Many products are only licensed for people aged over 12, although there are a few which can be used from the age of 5 (e.g. Deep Heat, Heat Rub, Ralgex Heat Spray) or 6 years old (e.g. Radian B Muscle Rub). They have no drug interactions and side effects are localised to excessive irritation at the site of application. The majority of products contain two or more compounds, although most contain nicotinates and/or salicylates. Other compounds in rubefacients include: menthol, camphor, capsaicin and turpentine oil. They can be used in all patient groups.

References

Dahm KT, Brurberg KG, Jamtvedt G, et al. Advice to rest in bed versus advice to stay active for acute low-back pain and sciatica. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 6. Art. No.: CD007612. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007612.pub2.

Derry CJ, Derry S, Moore RA. Caffeine as an analgesic adjuvant for acute pain in adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2012, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD009281. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD009281.pub2.

French SD, Cameron M, Walker BF, et al. Superficial heat or cold for low back pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD004750. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004750.pub2.

Furlan AD, van Tulder MW, Cherkin DC, et al. Acupuncture and dryneedling for low back pain. The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2005, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD001351. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001351.pub2

Furlan AD, Imamura M, Dryden T, et al. Massage for low-back pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD001929. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001929.pub2.

Gagnier JJ, van Tulder MW, Berman BM, et al. Herbal medicine for low back pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD004504. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004504.pub3.

Massey T, Derry S, Moore RA, et al. Topical NSAIDs for acute pain in adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 6. Art. No.: CD007402. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007402.pub2.

Matthews P, Derry S, Moore RA, et al. Topical rubefacients for acute and chronic pain in adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2009, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD007403. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007403.pub2.

Roelofs PDDM, Deyo RA, Koes BW, et al. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for low back pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD000396. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000396.pub3.

Towheed T, Maxwell L, Anastassiades TP, et al. Glucosamine therapy for treating osteoarthritis. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2005, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD002946. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002946.pub2.

Further reading

Bueff HU, Van Der Reis W. Low back pain. Prim Care 1996;23:345–64.

Deyo RA, Weinstein JN. Low Back Pain. N Engl J Med 2001;344:363–70.

Table 8.4
Proprietary topical NSAID analgesics available OTC

Product	Formulation	Strength	Dosage	Children
Ibuprofen				
Care	Gel	5 & 10%	qds	>14 years
Cuprofen	Gel	5%	tds–qds	>12 years
Deep Relief	Gel	5%	tds	>12 years
Fenbid	Gel	5%	Up to qds	>14 years
Fenbid Forte	Gel	10%	Up to qds	>14 years
Ibugel	Gel	5%	No dose stated	>12 years
Ibuleve	Gel	5%	tds–qds	>12 years
Ibuleve Maximum Strength	Gel	10%	tds	>12 years
Ibumousse	mousse			
Ibuleve Speed Relief	Gel	5 & 10%	tds	>12 years
Ibuleve Speed Relief	Spray	5%	tds	>12 years
Ibuspray	Spray	5%	No dose stated	>12 years
Mentholatum	Gel	5%	tds	>14 years
Nurofen Back Pain	Gel	5%	qds	>14 years
Phorpain & Phorpain Forte	Gel	5% & 10%	No dose stated	>12 years
Proflex	Cream	5%	tds–qds	>12 years
Radian B ibuprofen	Gel	5%	qds	>14 years
Other NSAIDs				
Difflam (benzydamine)	Cream	3%	tds but max of six times	No lower age limit stated
Movelat (mucopolysaccharide polysulpahate & salicylic acid)	Cream and Gel	0.2% & 2.0%	qds	>12 years
Oruvail (Ketoprofen)	Gel	2.5%	tds	>12 years
Traxam Pain Relief (Felbinac)	Gel	3%	bd–qds	>12 years
Voltarol Emulgel P & Voltarol Pain-Eze Emulgel (Diclofenac)	Gel	1.16%	tds–qds	>14 years

Henschke N, Maher CG, Refshauge KM. Screening for malignancy in low back pain patients: a systematic review. Eur Spine J 2007;16(10):1673–9.
Koes BW, van Tulder MW, Thomas S. Diagnosis and treatment of low back pain. Br Med J 2006;332:1430–4.
Maniadakis A, Gray A. The economic burden of back pain in the UK. Pain 2000;84:95–103.
Reichenbach S, Sterchi R, Scherer M, et al. Chondroitin for osteoarthritis of the knee or hip. Ann Intern Med 2007;146:580–90.

Web sites

BMJ article on sciatica (June 2007): http://www.bmj.com/cgi/content/extract/334/7607/1313

European guidelines on the prevention and treatment of low back pain: www.backpaineurope.org

BackCare: the charity for healthier backs: http://www.backcare.org.uk/

The National Ankylosing Spondylitis Society: http://www.nass.co.uk/

Activity-related/sports-related soft tissue injuries

This section will discuss common conditions affecting the shoulder, elbow, knee, ankle and foot.

Background

Muscle, tendons, ligaments, fascia and synovial capsules are all soft tissue structures. Damage to any of these structures will result in pain and/or inflammation. The pharmacist will encounter patients with soft tissue injuries, although the majority of patients present to a GP, physiotherapist or casualty department. In a number of small studies, most respondents did not consider the pharmacist as a source of advice or help, although the minority who had consulted a pharmacist were satisfied with the advice received. This suggests that pharmacists could play a greater role in managing patients with activity/sport related problems.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Most injuries are as a direct result of physical activity or accident. Prevalence is therefore higher in people who actively participate in sports and injuries involving the lateral ligaments of the ankle account for 25% of all sports injuries. Beside ankle injuries, the knee is another common site of injury.

Aetiology

The aetiology of soft tissue injury depends on the structures affected. Sprains are caused by forcing a joint into an abnormal position that overstretches or twists ligaments, and can vary from damage of a few fibres to complete rupture. Strains involve tearing of muscle fibres, which can be partial or complete and is usually a result of over exertion when the muscle is stretched beyond its usual limits.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Patients will often state they have sprained or strained something. It is important to confirm their self-diagnosis as these terms are often used interchangeably. Although sprains and strains can be graded according to the severity of the injury, it is of little practical value because it has no therapeutic consequence; therefore the major role of the pharmacist is to determine if the patient can manage the injury or whether referral is needed. This will be primarily based on questions asked (Table 8.5) that can be supported with the aid of a basic physical examination.

Clinical features of soft tissue injury

In general patients will present with pain, swelling and bruising. The extent and nature of symptoms will be determined by the severity of the injury.

Shoulder-specific conditions

The shoulder provides the greatest range of motion of any joint. It is a very mobile and complex interconnected structure (Fig. 8.3), consequently there are a number of commonly encountered shoulder injuries, such as frozen shoulder, impingement syndromes and rotator cuff syndrome. The prevalence of shoulder-related problems is uncertain, although estimates range from 4 to 20%, with rotator cuff syndrome accounting for up to 70% of shoulder problems.

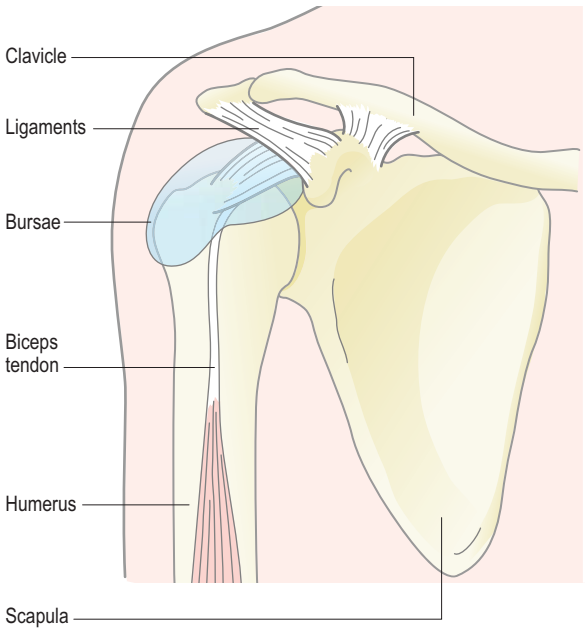


Fig. 8.3 Basic shoulder anatomy.

Table 8.5
Specific questions to ask the patient: Soft tissue injuries

Question	Relevance
When did it happen and when did the patient present	The closer these two events are the more likely the patient will be suffering from a serious problem that is outside the remit of the pharmacist, unless the injury was sustained in close proximity to the pharmacy and the patient has asked for first aid
Presenting symptoms	Marked swelling, bruising and pain occurring straight after injury is suggestive of more serious injury and referral to casualty for X-rays and further tests is needed
Nature of injury	If the injury occurred in which impact forces were great then fracture becomes more likely Sudden onset, associated with a single traumatic event suggests a mechanical problem such as tendon/ligament tearing If the person has a foot injury and is unable to bear their full weight whilst walking then referral is needed
Range of motion	If the affected joint shows marked reduction in normal range of motion this requires referral for fuller evaluation
Nature of pain	Referred pain suggests nerve root compression, for example a shoulder injury in which pain is also felt in the hand Pain that is insidious in onset and progressive is more likely to be due to some form of degenerative disease and requires referral
Age of patient	*Children*: Bones are softer in children and therefore more prone to greenstick fractures (fracture of the outer part of the bone) and should be referred to exclude such problems *Elderly*: Risk factors for fracture, such as osteoarthritis and osteoporosis should be established

Within the confines of the community pharmacy, the patient can be asked to perform certain arm movements that will allow the range of motion of the shoulder to be determined (Fig. 8.4). Patients who show marked loss of motion should be referred.

Rotator cuff syndrome

The rotator cuff refers to the combined tendons of the scapula muscles that hold the head of the humerus in place. Rubbing of these tendons causes pain. It is most often seen in patients over the age of 40 and is associated with repetitive overhead activity. Pain tends to be worse at night and might disturb sleep. Reaching behind the back also tends to worsen pain. Also, the patient cannot normally initiate abduction.

Frozen shoulder

This term is used to describe the shoulder when it has marked restriction in all the major ranges of motion. It is a relatively uncommon cause of shoulder pain accounting for 2% of cases. It often occurs without warning or explanation and can vary in severity from day-to-day. NSAIDs could be offered but if symptoms fail to respond with treatment after 5 days then referral for alternative treatment and physiotherapy should be considered.

Elbow-specific conditions

In primary care, pharmacists are only likely to see three elbow problems; tennis elbow (lateral epicondylitis); golfer's elbow (medial epicondylitis) and student's elbow (bursitis).

Tennis elbow is characterised by pain and tenderness felt over outer aspect of the elbow joint that might also spread up the upper arm. The patient should have a history of gradually increasing pain and tenderness. If the patient tries to extend the wrist against resistance then pain increases. In comparison, the pain of golfer's elbow is noticed on the inner side of the elbow and can radiate down the forearm. Both names are misleading as these conditions are usually related to a repetitive activity, which will often not be associated with sports activity.

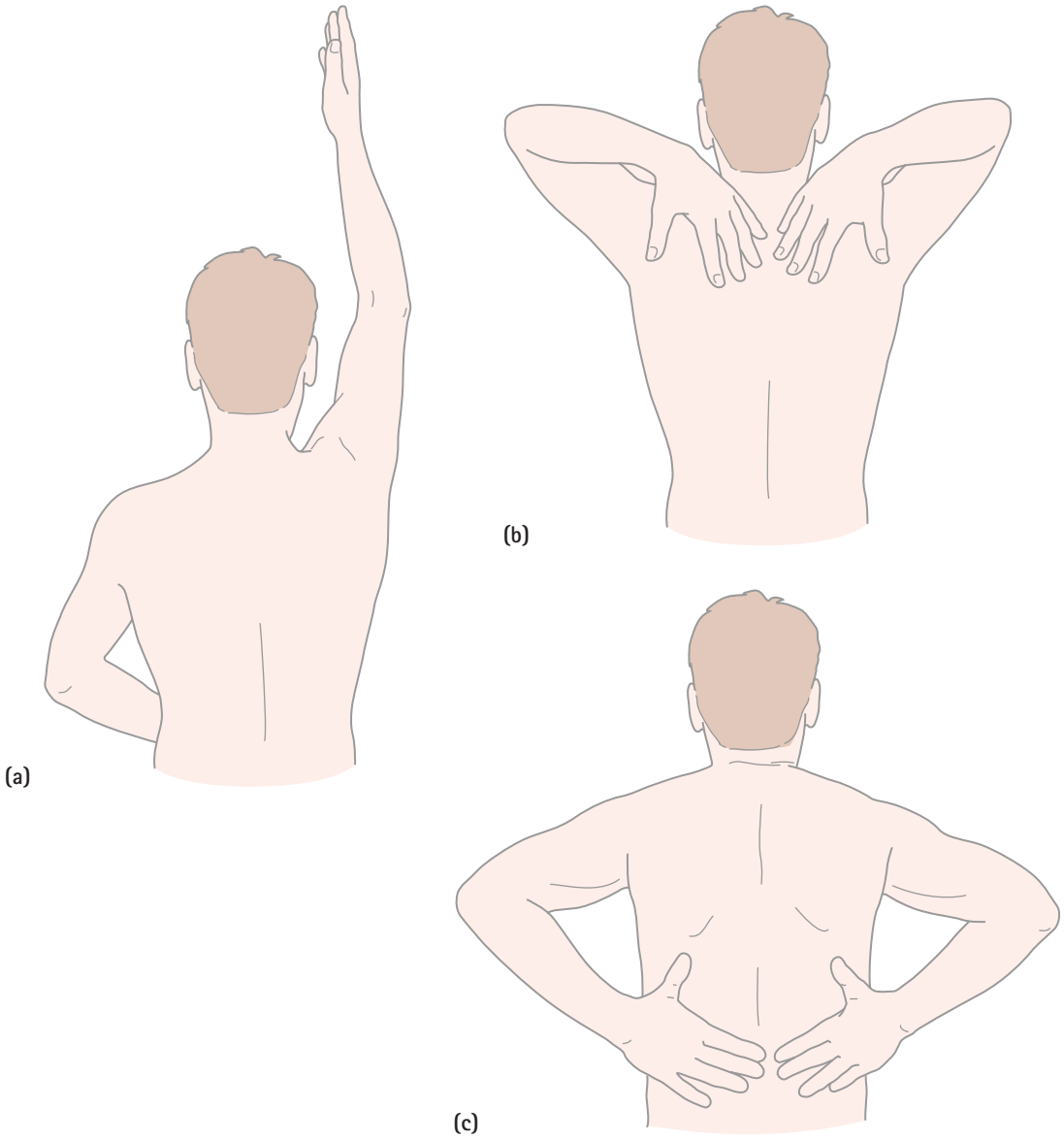


Fig. 8.4 Determining the shoulders range of motion: (a) ask the patient to raise the arm as if going to ask a question at school; (b) ask the patient to touch the back of the neck with both hands; (c) ask the patient to touch the back of the scapulae with both hands.

Knee-specific conditions

The knee is the largest joint in the body and is subject to extreme forces. Unsurprisingly, it is one of the most common sites of sport injuries, especially amongst footballers. To help maintain stability the knee has three main pairs of ligaments: the medial collateral ligament, which connects the femur to the tibia; the lateral collateral ligament, which connects the femur to the fibula and the anterior cruciate ligament, which prevents the tibia from sliding forward on the femur (Fig. 8.5).

Ligament damage

This is most often seen in footballers. Find out from the patient how the injury occurred. If the injury occurred when twisting this implies damage to the medial meniscus (incomplete rings of cartilage that promote joint stability) as the medial collateral ligament is attached to the

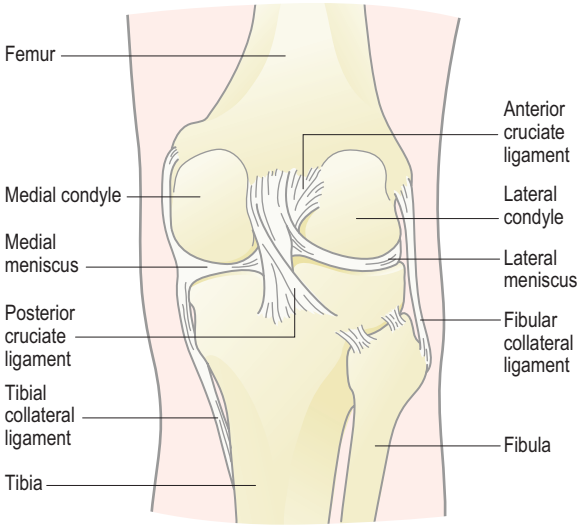


Fig. 8.5 Basic knee anatomy.

meniscus and forces applied to the ligament result in tears of the meniscus. This is less serious than damage to the anterior cruciate ligament, which usually occurs when the person receives a blow to the back of the knee. The former can usually respond to NSAIDs and physiotherapy, whereas the latter can take months to heal and might stop people from playing competitive sport.

Runners knee (chondromalacia)

This is most commonly noted in recreational joggers who are increasing their mileage, for example training to run a marathon. It develops insidiously with pain being the predominant symptom. Pain is experienced usually at the front of the knee or behind the kneecap. Pain can be aggravated by prolonged periods of sitting down in the same position or going up and down stairs. Treatment depends on the severity of pain, from NSAIDs if the pain is mild to total rest and stopping running if severe.

Ankle and foot specific conditions

The majority of injuries involve sprained ankles whether through sporting activity or just as a result of accidents.

Ankle sprains

The ankle acts as a hinge joint permitting up and down motion. Three sets of ligaments provide stability to the joint: the deltoid, lateral collateral and syndesmosis. The majority of ankle sprains involve the lateral ligamentous structures due to inversion of the joint leading to injury (Fig. 8.6). Patients usually describe an accident when they 'went over their ankle'. Most patients will walk with a limp because the ankle cannot support their full weight.

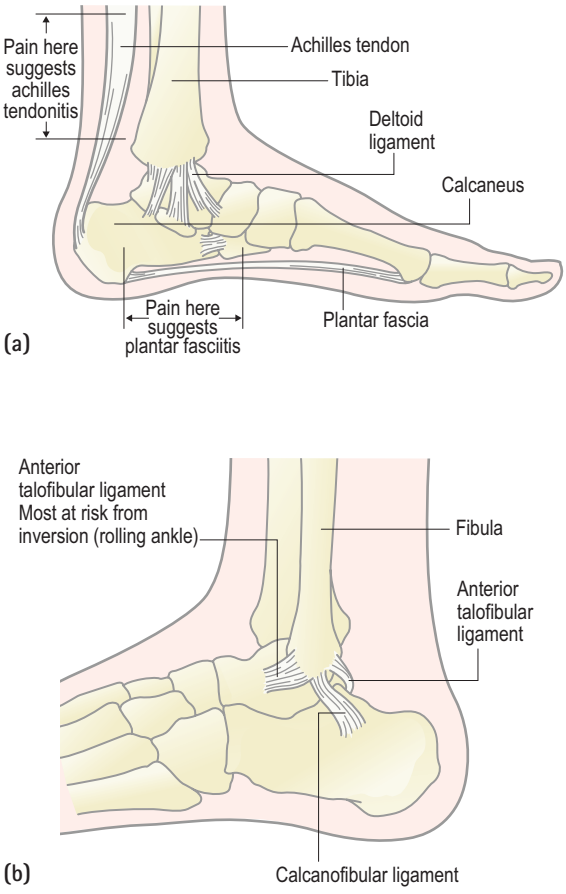


Fig. 8.6 Basic anatomy of the ankle: (a) medial view; (b) lateral view.

Achilles tendon injuries

Injuries to the structures associated with the Achilles tendon are usually seen in runners or athletes involved in jumping sports. Pain is felt behind the heal, just above the calcaneus, and progressively worsens the longer the injury lasts. It often occurs when runners increase their mileage or run over hilly terrain. Depending on the severity of the injury, treatment could be anything from NSAIDs, complete rest or having a cast fitted. If the injury is recent in onset and pain not too severe the pharmacist could suggest NSAID therapy and rest. If this fails then the person should be referred.

Plantar fasciitis

The plantar fascia extends from the calcaneus to the middle phalanges of the toes. Runners are most prone to plantar fasciitis, although it can affect older people. Patients will present with tenderness and pain felt along the plantar surface of the foot and heel. Pain is insidious and progressively worsens, which can limit activity.

Common muscle strains

Thigh strains

Tears of the quadriceps (front of the thigh) and hamstring (back of the thigh) are very common. Patients will not always be able to recall a specific event that has caused the strain. Pain and discomfort is worsened when the patient tries to use the muscle but daily activities can usually be performed. RICE followed by NSAID treatment will usually resolve the problem, however, referral is needed if daily activities are compromised.

Conditions to eliminate

Delayed onset muscle soreness

This is a common problem and follows unaccustomed strenuous activity. For example, the patient might describe playing football for the first time in a long while or just started going to aerobic classes. Pain is felt in the muscles, which feel stiff and tight. Pain peaks within 72 hours. Patients should be encouraged to properly stretch prior to exercising to minimise the problem. No treatment is necessary.

Shin splint syndrome

Recreational runners and people unaccustomed to regular running can experience pain along the front of the lower third of the tibia. Pressing gently on this area will cause considerable pain. It is caused by over stretching the tibial muscle and is usually precipitated by running on hard surfaces. Pain is made worse by continued running or climbing stairs. Treatment involves running less frequently or for shorter distances and NSAID therapy for approximately 1 week.

Bursitis

Bursae can become inflamed that leads to accumulation of synovial fluid in the joint. Housemaid's knee and student's elbow are such examples. Clinically, joint swelling is the predominant feature with associated pain and local tenderness.

Stress fractures

Most commonly associated with the foot. Patients experience a dull ache along the affected metatarsal shaft that changes to a sharp ache behind the metatarsal head. It is often seen in those patients that have a history of increased activity or a change in footwear.

Gout

Acute attacks of gout are exquisitely painful, with patients reporting that even bedclothes cannot be tolerated. Approximately 80% of cases affect the big toe. Gout is more prevalent in men, especially over the age of 50.

Carpal tunnel syndrome

At the base of the palm is a 'tunnel' through which the median nerve passes; this narrow passage between the forearm and hand is called the carpal tunnel. If the median nerve becomes trapped, it can cause numbness and tingling in the hand. Often the patient will wake in the night with numbness and tingling pain that radiates to the forearm, which sometimes extends to the shoulder.

Repetitive strain injury

This condition, also termed chronic upper limb pain syndrome, often results after prolonged periods of steady hand movement involving repeated grasping, turning and twisting. The predominant symptom is pain in all or one part of one or both arms. Usually the person's job will involve repetitive tasks such as keyboard operations.

! TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Soft tissue injury

- Acute injuries which show immediate swelling and severe pain
- Children under 12 and elderly patients
- Decreased range of motion in all direction involving the shoulder
- Excessive range of movement in any joint (may suggest major ligament disruption)
- Patients unable to bear *any* weight on an injured ankle/foot
- Suspected fracture
- Treatment failure

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication and practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medication for soft tissue injuries is the same as acute low back pain. (see page 265). However, non-drug treatment plays a vital and major role in the treatment of soft tissue injuries. Standard advice follows the acronym RICE:

Rest	Rest allows immobilisation, enhancing healing and reducing blood flow
Ice	Ice should be applied whilst the injury feels warm to the touch. Apply until the skin becomes numb and repeat at hourly intervals. Bags of frozen peas wrapped in a towel are ideal to use on the injury as they conform to body shape and provide even distribution of cold

Compression — A crepe bandage provides a minimum level of compression. Tubular stockings (e.g. Tubigrip) are convenient and easy to apply but fail to give adequate compression

Elevation — Ideally the injured part should be elevated above the heart to help fluid drain away from the injury

Further reading

Calmbach WL, Hutchens M. Evaluation of patients presenting with knee pain: Part II. Differential diagnosis. Am Fam Physician 2003;68:917–22.

Donnelly AE, Maughan RJ, Whiting PH. Effects of ibuprofen in exercise induced muscle soreness and indices of muscle damage. Br J Sports Med 1990;24:191–5.

Kayne S, Reeves A. Sports care and the pharmacist-an opportunity not to be missed. Pharm J 1994;253: 66–7.

Knill-Jones R. Survey of activity in Scottish sports medicine centres. Performance 1989;1:4.

Murrell, J. Walton Diagnosis of rotator cuff tears. Lancet 2001;357:769–70.

Polisson RP. Sports medicine for the internist. Med Clin N Am 1986;70:469–89.

Spiegel TM, Crues JV. The painful shoulder: diagnosis and treatment. Prim Care 1988;15:709–24.

West SG, Woodburn J. Pain in the foot. Br Med J 1995;310:860–4.

Web sites

Society of Sports Therapists: http://www.society-of-sports-therapists.org

The Repetitive Strain Injury Association: http://www.rsi.org.uk/

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

8.1 Which of the following is not used in topical formulations for musculoskeletal disorders?

a. Nicotinates
b. Hyaluronidase
c. Choline
d. Menthol
e. Capsaicin

8.2 Which of the following statements is true of osteoarthritis?

a. Morning stiffness usually lasts less than 30 minutes
b. Pain is eased by movement
c. Pain is usually worst in the morning
d. Osteoarthritis commonly affects small joints
e. Inflammation is a key pathological finding

8.3 Which patient group is least at risk of experiencing an adverse event with ibuprofen when taking it for an ankle sprain?

a. Elderly
b. Asthmatics
c. Children under 16
d. Patients with a peptic ulcer

8.4 Vertebrae involved in sciatica are:

a. L1–L2
b. L2–L3
c. L3–L4
d. L4–L5
e. None of the above

8.5 Which ligament is most often damaged in a sprained ankle?

a. Cruciate ligament
b. Deltoid ligament
c. Medial collateral ligament
d. Posterior talofibular ligament
e. Anterior talofibular ligament

8.6 A strain is said to affect which structure?

a. Tendon
b. Ligament
c. Bursa
d. Muscle
e. Cartilage

8.7 From the following list, what common name is given to inflammation of the bursa?

a. Golfer's elbow
b. Student's elbow
c. Tennis elbow
d. Repetitive strain injury
e. Shin splints

8.8 In which of the following conditions does pain often wake the patient?

a. Rotator cuff syndrome
b. Frozen shoulder
c. Hamstring strain
d. Plantar fasciitis
e. Housemaid's knee

Questions 8.9 to 8.11 concern the following groups of people:

A. Runners/Joggers
B. Footballers
C. Squash players
D. Occasional gardeners
E. Swimmers

Select, from A to E, which of the above groups of people are more prone to:

8.9 Anterior cruciate ligament damage

8.10 Plantar fasciitis

8.11 Tennis elbow

Questions 8.12 to 8.14 concern the following OTC medications:

A. Ibugel
B. Codis tablets
C. Panadol tablets
D. Radian B cream
E. Voltarol Emulgel

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

8.12 Can only be given to children older than 16

8.13 Has no evidence of efficacy

8.14 May cause constipation

Questions 8.15 to 8.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

8.15 Which of the following measures should be recommended to a patient who has just suffered an acute soft tissue injury?

a. Heat and massage of the affected area
b. Elevation of the affected area
c. Compression of the affected area by means of an elastic bandage or support

8.16 Acute low back pain is characterised by:

a. Insidious onset and progressively worsening pain
b. Radiating pain toward the thoracic vertebrae
c. Decreased mobility

8.17 Children under 12 with a soft tissue injury should be referred to the GP because:

a. 'RICE' is only suitable for adults
b. OTC medication is contraindicated
c. More prone to greenstick fractures than adults

Questions 8.18 to 8.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
8.18	Carpal tunnel syndrome causes hand numbness	Medial nerve impingement results in symptoms
8.19	Low back pain with associated fever should be referred	Malignancy is the likely cause
8.20	NSAIDs are the mainstay of systemic treatment for soft tissue injuries	They should be used for 7–10 days. If symptoms do not improve referral is needed

Case study

CASE STUDY 8.1

Mrs BB, a 69-year old women, hobbles into your pharmacy, supported by her husband. She has just slipped off the pavement edge and believes she has sprained her ankle.

a. ***To ascertain if referral is necessary, describe the questions you would ask Mrs BB?***

Find out exact nature of pain and its location. It is likely that the anterior talofibular ligament has been damaged. Symptoms that would warrant referral are severe pain in any bone prominence, if Mrs BB is unable to walk unsupported for at least four steps and marked swelling and bruising occurred straight after the fall. Mrs BB should be told to go to casualty if these symptoms are present.

You decide that Mrs BB has indeed sprained her ankle but referral is unnecessary. Mrs BB asks to purchase some OTC analgesia to alleviate her pain. Her regular medication is as follows:

- *Bendroflumethiazide 2.5 mg od: Used to treat hypertension. Taken for 5 years*
- *Fybogel sachets, 1 bd: taken for 4 years for constipation*
- *Lansoprazole 15 mg od: maintenance therapy in treatment of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD) associated with hiatus hernia.*

b. ***Which OTC systemic analgesics would be most suitable for Mrs BB. Explain how you arrived at your choice and why you eliminated others.***

- *Aspirin: can cause GI disturbance; Mrs BB has GORD, therefore, contraindicated.*
- *Ibuprofen: NSAIDs can cause fluid retention and Mrs BB has hypertension. However, this is unlikely to be clinically significant, especially if only NSAIDs are recommended for only a few days. Like aspirin, ibuprofen can cause GI disturbances.*
- *Paracetamol and/or codeine: Cannot be bought as a single agent. Combinations with aspirin need to be avoided. Paracetamol and codeine combinations could be offered but the codeine content is likely to cause constipation, which Mrs BB is already treated for. Therefore codeine is likely to worsen her already existing constipation. Finally, OTC analgesic combinations have been shown not to significantly reduce pain compared to monotherapy. This leaves paracetamol as the medicine of choice for Mrs BB.*

Mrs BB asks if she should also use a topical preparation on her ankle.

c. ***Describe the range of topical preparations available to treat soft tissue injuries and which would be suitable to recommend to Mrs BB, giving the reasons for your decision(s).***

Rubefacients contain essential oils, salicylates, nicotinates, capsicum, camphor, terpentine and menthol. They provide warmth to the injury site, except menthol and camphor which are cooling. Evidence is lacking with regard to their efficacy in decreasing pain but they help in masking pain symptoms. These could be recommended to Mrs BB.

Ideally recommend a product with no salicylate present as there is a low risk of systemic absorption and gastric irritation.

Topical NSAIDs: relatively low doses reach the bloodstream and there is therefore less risk of GI problems than with systemic NSAIDs. Use of topical NSAIDs are unlikely to cause side effects if used for short periods of time (5 to 10 days) and could be given to Mrs BB even though she has GORD. However, she should be told that if she experiences any indigestion-type symptoms to stop using the product.

CASE STUDY 8.2

Mr JD, a 47-year old male, asks you for something for low back pain. On questioning you find out the following:

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
What symptoms have you got/describe the pain	Pain described as aching and dull and spreads to bottom on the right hand side
How long had the symptoms	Came on about 2 days ago. Woke up with the pain
Where is the pain	Pain is diffuse over low back
Any other symptoms	No other symptoms
When do you get the symptoms	Constant
Does the pain move anywhere	Top of the bum (as above)
Does anything make the symptoms better/worse	Pain is made worse if sitting over a period of long time
Additional questions asked	Cannot remember doing anything to precipitate it. Severity – 5/6 out of 10
Previous history of presenting complaint	No
Past medical history	No PMH
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Esomeprazole 1 od for last year to help with indigestion
Allergies	Not known
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Works in an office No lifestyle changes
Family history	Not asked
On examination	Not performed

Using the information gained from questioning and linking this with known epidemiology on back pain (see Table 8.1) it should be possible to make a differential diagnosis.

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

	Age	Radiation of pain	Onset	Absence of systemic or neurological signs	Precipitating factors
Simple back pain	All adults	No	Acute	Yes	Yes
Sciatica	>30 years	Yes (buttocks and leg)	Acute	Yes	Yes
Osteoarthritis	>30 years but more common with increased age	No	Chronic	Yes	No
Osteomyelitis	All ages	No	Acute	No	No
Ankylosing spondylitis	>50 years	Yes (side-to-side of back)	Chronic	Yes	No
Malignancy	>50 years	No	Chronic	No	No

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that his symptoms most closely match sciatica. Acute onset and radiation are very suggestive of this condition despite their being no obvious cause.

CASE STUDY 8.2 (Continued)

	Age	Radiation of pain	Onset	Absence of systemic or neurological signs	Precipitating factors
Simple back pain	✓	✗	✓	✓	✗
Sciatica	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
Osteoarthritis	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓
Osteomyelitis	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓
Ankylosing spondylitis	✗?	✓	✗	✓	✓
Malignancy	✗?	✗	✗	✗	✓

Danger symptoms/signs (trigger points for referral)

As a final double check it might be worth making sure the person has none of the 'referral signs or symptoms'; this is the case with this patient. Referred pain (see below) is usually an indication to refer the patient. However, NSAIDs could usually be given whilst the patient waits to see a GP but as they take a PPI it would be best to recommend paracetamol.

Fever	✗
Pain that radiates away from lower back area	✓
Failure of symptoms to improve after 2 weeks	N/A
Young or elderly people	N/A
Numbness	✗
Persistent and progressively worsening pain	✗
Bowel or bladder incontinence	✗
Back pain from structures above the lumbar region	✗

Answers

1 = c	2 =a	3 = c	4 = d	5 = e	6 = d	7 = b	8 = a	9 = b	10 = a
11 = c	12 = b	13 = d	14 = b	15 = c	16 = e	17 = e	18 = a	19 = c	20 = b

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 9

Paediatrics

In this chapter

Background 283
History taking 283
Head lice 283
Threadworm (*Enterobius vermicularis*) 287
Colic 289
Atopic dermatitis 291
Fever 296
Infectious childhood conditions 300
Nappy rash 302
Self-assessment questions 306

Background

A number of conditions are encountered much more frequently in children than the rest of the population. It is these conditions that this chapter focuses on. A small number of conditions that affect all age groups but are often associated with children are not included, for example middle ear infection. Such conditions are covered in other chapters and where appropriate will be cross-referenced to the relevant sections within the text.

History taking

In the majority of cases pharmacists will be heavily dependent on getting details about the child's problem from their parents or an adult responsible for the child's welfare. This presents both benefits and problems to the pharmacist. Parents will know when their child is not well and asking the parent about the child's general health will help to determine how poorly the child actually is. For example, a child who is running around and lively is unlikely to be acutely ill and referral to a GP is less likely. The major problem faced by all healthcare professionals is the difficulty in gaining an accurate history of the presenting complaint. This poses difficulties in assessing the quality and accuracy of the information as children find it hard to articulate their symptoms. If the child can be asked questions, these often have to be posed in either closed or leading formats to elicit information.

As a rule of thumb, any child who appears visibly ill should always be seen by the pharmacist and referral might well be needed, whereas children who are acting normally and appear generally well will often not need to see the GP and can be managed by the pharmacist.

Head lice

Background

Humans act as hosts to three species of louse; *Pediculus capitis* (head lice), *Pediculus corporis* (body lice) and *Pediculus pubis* (pubic lice). Only head lice are discussed in this section.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Head lice affect all ages, although they are much more prevalent in children aged 4 to 11 years, especially girls. Studies conducted in schools show wide variation of current lice infestation ranging from 4 to 22% of pupils. Head lice can occur at any time and do not show any seasonal variation. Most parents will have experienced a child who has head lice, or received letters from school alerting parents to head lice infestation within the school.

Aetiology

Head lice can only be transmitted by head-to-head contact. Fleeting contact will be insufficient for lice to be

transferred between heads. Once transmitted lice begin to reproduce. The adult louse lives for approximately 1 month. Throughout this time the female louse lays several eggs at the base of a hair shaft each night. Eggs hatch after 7 to 10 days, leaving the egg case attached to the hair shaft (known as a 'nit'). In the course of maturing to adulthood the young louse (the nymph) undergoes three moults. Shortly after maturing, the female louse is sexually mature and able to mate.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Most parents will diagnose head lice themselves or be concerned that their child has head lice because of a recent local outbreak at school. Occasionally parents will also want to buy products to prevent their child contracting head lice. It is the role of the pharmacist to confirm a self-diagnosis and stop inappropriate sales of products. It should also be remembered that an itching scalp in children is not always due to head lice and other causes should be eliminated. Asking a number of symptom-specific questions should enable a diagnosis of head lice to be easily made (Table 9.1).

Clinical features of head lice

Unless live lice have been found, most patients will present with scalp itching. Itching is caused due an allergic response of the scalp to the saliva of the lice and can take weeks to develop. However, only a third of patients experience itching. Head lice are most commonly found in the occipital and auricular areas.

Conditions to eliminate

Dandruff

Dandruff can cause irritation and itching of the scalp. However, the scalp should be dry and flaky. Skin debris might also be present on clothing.

Seborrhoeic dermatitis

Typically, seborrhoeic dermatitis will affect areas other than the scalp, most notably the face. If only scalp involvement is present then the child might complain of severe and persistent dandruff. In infants the child will have large yellow scales and crusts of the scalp (cradle cap).

Table 9.1
Specific questions to ask the patient: Head lice

Question	Relevance
Have live lice been seen	The presence of live lice is diagnostic Pharmacists can advise patients on how best to check for infection. Currently, both wet and dry combing are advocated *Dry combing* Straighten and untangle the dry hair using an ordinary comb Once the hair moves freely, switch to a detection comb. Starting from the back of the head, comb the from the scalp down to the end of the hair After each stroke examine the comb for live lice Continue to comb all the hair in sections until the whole head has been combed This process can take 5 or more minutes in people with shoulder length hair *Wet combing* Wash the hair with a normal shampoo Apply hair conditioner Repeat steps 1 to 4 as for dry combing Rinse out the conditioner Wet combing is more time consuming than dry methods and both should be performed on all family members
Empty egg shells (nits)	This does not constitute evidence of current infection. This is a common misconception held by the general public and the pharmacist must ensure that parents seeking treatment have observed live lice Egg shells are not removed by using insecticides. Patients need to be reassured that the presence of egg shells does not mean treatment failure
Presence of itching	Itching is not always present in head lice. Inspection of the scalp should be made to check for signs of dandruff, psoriasis or seborrhoeic dermatitis

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Head lice

- Parents who find cost of treatment prohibitive

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Treatment options include insecticides, wet combing and physical agents. All treatments available in the UK have shown varying degrees of clinical effectiveness. It is however difficult to assess which treatment is most effective as very few comparative trials have been performed, and insecticidal resistance varies from region to region. No treatment is 100% effective and failure has been linked with poor adherence to each treatment regimen. Of the treatment approaches, insecticides have been most studied. These include malathion, permethrin, carbaryl and phenothrin – the latter two are now not commercially available. Cure rates of 70 to 80% are reported with insecticides in recent clinical trials, although resistance to insecticides is now a serious problem and appears to be increasing. Wet combing is an alternative treatment option, however, cure rates are reported to be only 40 to 60% with the low cure rates attributed to poor adherence (Roberts et al 2000; Hill et al 2005).

Dimeticone is a recent introduction to the market, and is thought to work by coating the lice both internally and externally, which leads to disruption in water excretion causing the gut of the lice to rupture from osmotic stress (Burgess 2009). Its inclusion in treatment options seems to stem from 1 robust trial conducted by Burgess et al (2005). Dimeticone was compared against phenothrin with cure rates determined at days 9 and 14. Dimeticone was shown to have comparable cure rates to phenothrin (69% compared to 78%). The study has been criticised for using dry detection methods and using different detection days (days 5 and 12 as recommended by the department of health), however a further trial in 2007 supports the 2005 trial results. In the latter study, 4% dimeticone lotion, applied for 8 hours or overnight was compared to 0.5% malathion liquid applied for 12 hours or overnight. The results found dimeticone was significantly more effective than malathion, with 30/43 (70%) participants cured using dimeticone compared with 10/30 (33%) using malathion.

Isopropyl myristate is a recent introduction to the UK market. Like dimeticone it is pharmacologically inert but works by blocking the tracheal breathing system and coating the surface of lice with a thin film of fluid (Drugs and Therapeutics Bulletin 2009). Evidence of efficacy comes from 2 trials that compared isopropyl myristate against permethrin. Results found isopropyl myristate was significantly more effective than permethrin (82% vs 19%). Although these results seem impressive, the comparator drug was permethrin – a product not recommended due to its poor efficacy.

Other non-insecticidal methods of eradication are also promoted. These include herbal remedies such as tea tree oil or essential oils (e.g. Lyclear SprayAway), coconut oil (Lice Attack, Nitlotion) and electric combs. No credible evidence exists on the effectiveness of these products and should not be recommended until such time that data supports their use.

In summary, treatment used will be driven by individual preference, the patient's medical history and previous exposure to treatment regimens. Wet combing (available as bug busting kits) is time consuming and requires patient motivation but is helpful in areas of high insecticidal resistance. Insecticides, dimeticone and isopropyl myristate are simpler to use than bug-busting kits and appear to have higher cure rates. Based on current evidence it seems dimeticone is treatment of choice.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for head lice reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 9.2; useful tips relating to patients presenting with head

Table 9.2
Practical prescribing: Summary of head lice medicines

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Permethrin	>6 months	Irritation of scalp (rare)	None	None	OK
Malathion					
Dimeticone					
Isopropyl myristate	>2 years	None reported			OK

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 9.1: HEAD LICE

Who to treat?	Only those individuals with an active head lice infestation should be treated
Products for prevention	No credible evidence exists for any product marketed for prevention. The patient/parent should be counselled on when treatment is required
Treatment failure?	It is recommended that detection combing is performed after any treatment to confirm headlice eradication For wet combing Wet combing should continued if necessary until no full-grown lice have been seen for 3 consecutive sessions For insecticides, dimeticone and Isopropyl myristate Perform detection combing (wet or dry) 2–3 days after completing treatment. If no adult or nymph lice are found, repeat detection combing 8–10 days after treatment. Treatment is successful if no lice are found in both detection combing sessions after treatment
Myths	Public misconception about head lice need to be dispelled Head lice are not only associated with dirty hair Head lice do not only affect children Children should not be kept off school

lice are given in Hints and Tips Box 9.1. All products have to be used more than once; insecticides have to be repeated 7 days after first application (this is based on expert opinion, as the second application is intended to kill nymphs emerging from eggs that have survived the first application); wet combing every 4 days for at least 2 weeks. Coating agents, dimeticone and isopropyl myristate also have to be repeated after 7 days.

All products, except isopropyl myristate, can be used on children older than 6 months. Dimeticone or wet combing is recommended for pregnant and breastfeeding women. When applying all products, pay particular attention to the areas behind the ears and at the nape of the neck, as these areas are where lice are most often found.

Permethrin (Lyclear Creme Rinse)

Before application the hair should be washed with a mild shampoo and towelled dry. Enough Lyclear should be applied to the hair to ensure the hair and scalp is thoroughly saturated. It should be left on the hair for 10 min before rinsing the hair thoroughly with water. One bottle is sufficient for shoulder length hair of average thickness. It rarely causes scalp reddening and irritation.

Malathion (Derbac-M liquid)

Malathion used to be available as a liquid, lotion or shampoo. However, lotions and shampoos are now no longer available. Derbac-M should be applied to dry hair and left for 12 hours before washing off.

Dimeticone 4% Lotion (Hedrin)

Hedrin is applied to dry hair and the scalp ensuring that the scalp is fully covered. The lotion should be spread evenly from the hair root to the tips. It has to be left on for a minimum of 8 hours (over night is preferable) before being washed out with shampoo. (Note, a product containing 92% dimeticone, NYDA spray, is available.)

Isopropyl myristate in cyclomethicone (Full Marks Solution)

This is applied in the same manner as dimeticone but the contact time is only 10 minutes. It is only recommended for adults and children over the age of 2 years.

References

Anon. Update on treatments for headlice. DTB 2009;47:50–2.
Burgess IF. The mode of action of dimeticone 4% lotion against head lice, *Pediculus capitis*. BMC Pharmacol 2009;9(1):3.
Burgess IF, Brown CM, Lee PN. Treatment of head louse infestation with 4% dimeticone lotion: randomised controlled equivalence trial. Br Med J 2005;330:1423–5.
Hill N, Moor G, Cameron MM, et al. Single blind, randomised, comparative study of the Bug Buster kit and over the counter pediculicide treatments against head lice in the United Kingdom. Br Med J 2005;331:384–7.
Roberts RJ, Casey D, Morgan DA, et al. Comparison of wet combing with malathion for treatment of head lice in the

UK: a pragmatic randomised controlled trial. Lancet 2000;356:540–4.

Further reading

Anon. Management of headlice in primary care. MeReC Bulletin 2008;18 (4):2–7.
Burgess IF, Brown CM, Peock S, et al. Head lice resistant to pyrethroid insecticides in Britain. Br Med J 1995;311:752.
Burgess IF, Lee PN, Matlock G. Randomised, controlled, assessor blind trial Comparing 4% dimeticone lotion with 0.5% malathion liquid for head louse infestation. PLoS ONE 2007;2(11):e1127. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0001127
Connolly M. Current recommended treatments for headlice and scabies. The Prescriber 2011;Jan:26–39.
Dodd CS. Interventions for treating headlice. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 4 (Status withdrawn Issue 2, 2012, pending update).

Web sites

Community Hygiene Concern: http://www.chc.org/bugbusting/
Pediculosis.com: http://www.pediculosis.com/
Once a week – take a peek: http://www.onceaweektakeapeek.com/

Threadworm (*Enterobius vermicularis*)

Background

Worm infections are extremely common both in the developed and developing world. In Western countries the most common worm infection is threadworm (known in some countries as pinworm), which is a condition that causes inconvenience and embarrassment. Social stigma surrounds the diagnosis of threadworm, with many patients believing that infection implies a lack of hygiene. This belief is unfounded as infection occurs in all social strata. The patient might benefit from reassurance from the pharmacist, explaining that the condition is very common and is nothing to be ashamed or embarrassed about.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Threadworm is the most common helminth infection throughout temperate and developed countries. Threadworm prevalence is difficult to establish due to the high number of people who self medicate or are asymptomatic. However, UK prevalence rates have been estimated at 20% in the community, rising to 65% in institutionalised settings. Threadworms are much more common in school or pre-school children than adults, because of their inattention to good personal hygiene.

Aetiology

Eggs are transmitted to the human host primarily by the faecal–oral route (autoinfection) but also by retroinfection and inhalation. Faecal–oral transmission involves eggs lodging under fingernails, which are then ingested by finger sucking after anal contact. Retroinfection occurs when larvae hatch on the anal mucosa and migrate back into the sigmoid colon. Finally, threadworm eggs are highly resistant to environmental factors and can easily be transferred to clothing, bed linen and inanimate objects (e.g. toys) resulting in dust-borne infections. Once eggs are ingested, duodenal fluid breaks them down and releases larvae, which migrate into the small and large intestines. After mating, the female migrates to the anus, usually at night, where eggs are laid on the perianal skin folds, after which the female dies. Once laid, eggs are infective almost immediately. Transmission back into the gut can then take place again via one of three mechanisms outlined above and so the cycle is perpetuated.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

Threadworm diagnosis should be one of the more simple conditions to diagnose as patients present with very specific symptoms.

Clinical features of threadworm

Night-time perianal itching is the classic presentation (caused from the mucus produced by females when laying eggs). However, patients might experience symptoms ranging from a local ‘tickling’ sensation to acute pain. Any child with night-time perianal itching is almost certain to have threadworm. Itching can lead to sleep disturbances resulting in irritability and tiredness the next day. Diagnosis can be confirmed by observing threadworm on the stool, although they are not always visible.

Complicating factors such as excoriation and secondary bacterial infection of the perianal skin can occur due to persistent scratching. The parent should be asked if the perianal skin is broken or weeping.

Conditions to eliminate

Other worm infections

Roundworm and tapeworm infections are encountered occasionally. However, these infections are usually contracted by adults when visiting poor and developing countries.

Contact irritant dermatitis

Occasionally, dermatitis can cause perianal itching (especially in adults). If there is no recent family history of threadworm or there is no visible sign of threadworm on the faeces then dermatitis is possible.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Threadworm

- Medication failure
- Secondary infection of perianal skin due to scratching

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Mebendazole and piperazine are available OTC for the treatment of threadworm. There is a large body of evidence to support the effectiveness of mebendazole in roundworm infections but for other worm infections, including threadworm, cure rates are lower. For threadworm, cure rates between 60 and 82% for single-dose treatment of mebendazole have been reported (Rafi et al 1997; Sorensen et al 1996).

Piperazine appears to have less evidence supporting its effectiveness than mebendazole. One study has compared piperazine against mebendazole and found mebendazole to have a higher cure rate than piperazine; although the number of patients in the trial was low.

The difference in cure rates might be, in part, due to their respective mechanism of action. Mebendazole inhibits the worm's uptake of glucose, thus killing them, whereas piperazine only paralyses the worm (if paralysis wears off then the worm might be able to migrate back into the colon and thus treatment would fail). To optimise worm clearance from the gut piperazine formulations also contain senna.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for threadworm reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 9.3; useful tips relating to patients presenting with threadworm are given in Hints and Tips Box 9.2.

Treatment should ideally be given to all family members and not only the patient with symptoms, as it is likely that other family members will have been infected even though they might not show signs of clinical infection. A repeated dose 14 days later is often recommended to ensure worms maturing from ova at the time of the first dose are also eradicated.

Mebendazole and piperazine should be avoided in pregnancy because foetal malformations have been reported but appear safe in breastfeeding. Pregnant women should be advised to practise hygiene measures for 6 weeks to break the cycle of infestation. If treatment is absolutely essential, piperazine has been used, although this should not be in the first trimester.

Table 9.3
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for threadworm

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Mebendazole	>2 years	Abdominal pain, rash	Phenytoin and carbamazepine	None	Avoid in pregnancy; OK in breastfeeding
Piperazine	>3 months	Diarrhoea, rash	None		

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 9.2: THREADWORM

Hygiene measures	Complementary to drug treatment is the need for strict personal hygiene Nails should be kept short and clean. Careful washing and nail scrubbing prior to meals and after each visit to the toilet is essential to prevent autoinfection Bed linen should be washed frequently, ideally every day although this might not be practical Underwear should be worn underneath night clothes to prevent scratching Shower daily, immediately on rising, washing around the anus Damp dusting and daily vacuuming are recommended to remove eggs

Mebendazole (e.g. Ovex, Pripsen Mebendazole)

The dose for adults and children over 2 is 100 mg (either a single tablet or 5 mL of suspension). Young children might prefer to chew the tablet and it has been formulated to taste of orange. Side effects reported include abdominal pain, diarrhoea and rash but are very rare. It does interact with cimetidine, increasing mebendazole plasma levels but this is of little clinical consequence. However, phenytoin and carbamazepine decrease mebendazole plasma levels and the dose of mebendazole may need to be increased.

Piperazine (e.g. Pripsen Piperazine Phosphate Powder)

Piperazine is available as a sachet. It can be given from 3 months of age upwards. The dose for children should be given in the morning (for adults the dose is recommended to be taken at night). From 3 months to 1 year, half a 5 mL spoonful should be taken; for children aged 1 to 6 years the dose is one 5 mL spoonful and for children over 6 years (and adults) 1 sachet should be taken. The sachets can be taken in water or milk.

A number of side effects have been reported with piperazine but all are of GI origin such as diarrhoea or allergic reactions, for example rash.

References

Rafi S, Memon A, Billo AG. Efficacy and safety of mebendazole in children with worm infestation. J Pak Med Assoc 1997;47:140–1.

Sorensen E, Ismail M, Amarasinghe DK, et al. The efficacy of three anthelmintic drugs given in a single dose. Ceylon Med J 1996;41:42–5.

Further reading

Albonico M, Smith PG, Hall A, et al. a randomized controlled trial comparing mebendazole and albendazole against Ascaris, Tric*huris* and *hookworm* infections. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 1994;88:585–9.

Anon. Merec Bulletin. Management of threadworms in primary care. 1998;18:11–13.

Zaman V. Other gut nematodes. In: Weatherall DJ, Ledingham JGG, Warrell DA (eds). Oxford textbook of medicine. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 1987.

Colic

Background

There is no universally agreed definition of colic. A widely used definition of colic is that proposed by Wessel et al (1954) and has come to be known as the 'rule of threes'. Wessel proposed that an infant could be considered to have colic if it cries for more than 3 hours a day for more than 3 days a week for more than 3 weeks. However, the definition by Wessel is arbitrary and few parents are willing to wait 3 weeks to see if the infant meets the criteria for colic. As a result the third criterion is usually dropped in the clinical setting. In addition, some authors have defined crying for as little as 90 minutes per day as excessive. Regardless of which definition is used, persistent crying is a cause of stress and anxiety to parents.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Due to no universally accepted definition of colic its prevalence is difficult to determine, and estimates vary widely from 3 to 40% dependent on which definition is used. Studies reporting lower figures strictly applied Wessel's criteria, whilst higher figures used wider definitions. It is likely that prevalence falls between the two extremes and affects 10 to 20% of infants.

Colic starts in the first few weeks of life and usually resolves by the age of 3 to 5 months.

Aetiology

The cause of colic is poorly understood but seems to be multifactorial. It has been linked to a disorder of the GI tract, where spasmodic contraction of smooth muscle causes pain and discomfort, which might be caused by allergy to cow's milk or lactose intolerance. It has also been suggested that it might stem from emotional, behavioural and social problems that include underdeveloped parenting skills, inadequate social network, postpartum depression, and parental anxiety and stress.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

It can be difficult to determine if the baby has colic or is just excessively crying, as the diagnosis of the condition is dependent on qualitative descriptions. However, the term colic is often wrongly applied to any infant who cries more than usual. Asking a number of symptom specific questions should enable a diagnosis of colic to be made (Table 9.4).

Clinical features of colic

Excessive crying and inconsolable crying are obvious clinical features. Pain may be mild, merely causing the child to be restless in the evenings or severe resulting in rhythmical screaming attacks lasting a few minutes at a time, alternating with equally long quiet periods in which

Table 9.4
Specific questions to ask the patient: Colic

Question	Relevance
Cry quality	High pitched crying, often associated with facial flushing, drawing up the legs and fist clenching are commonly observed in colic
History of crying	Excessive crying is not isolated and will have been present for some time. Acute infections are normally sudden in onset and the baby will not exhibit a long-standing history of excessive crying
Aggravating factors	Infants may excessively cry for reasons other than a medical cause, for example hunger, thirst, being too hot or cold and trapped wind. These should be explored as part of your questioning strategy before diagnosing colic.

the child almost goes to sleep, before another attack starts. Attacks appear to be more common in the early evening, giving rise to the name 6.00pm colic. However, normal infant crying and the crying in colic both peak in the late afternoon and early evening and is therefore of limited value. The infant will be healthy and thriving.

Conditions to eliminate

Acute infection

Colic and acute infections of the ear or urinary tract can present with almost identical symptoms. However, in acute infection the child should have no previous history of excessive crying and have signs of systemic infection such as fever.

Intolerance to cows' milk protein

Colicky pain in infants is sometimes due to intolerance to cows' milk protein. This is far less common than generally believed but should be considered if the infant is failing to thrive.

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD)

Infants frequently have regurgitation that is accompanied with excessive crying. A diagnosis of GORD is usually made if regurgitation happens more than five times a day and is associated with failure to gain weight and refusal to feed.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Colic

- Infants that are failing to put on weight
- Medication failure
- Over anxious parents

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Parents should be reassured that the child's symptoms will subside over time, that their baby is well and they are not doing something wrong. Most parents will want to buy some form of medical treatment. Treatments include simeticone, lactase enzymes, low-lactose milk formulas and gripe mixtures. None have a credible evidence base.

Simeticone is reported to have antifoaming properties, reducing surface tension and allowing easier elimination of gas from the gut by passing flatus or belching. It is widely used yet has very limited evidence of efficacy. Of three trials reported, only one found a small improvement in the number of crying attacks. This trial was small ($n=26$) and suffered from methodological flaws and so results should be viewed with caution.

Lactase enzymes

Lactase breaks down lactose present in milk to glucose and galactose. This reduction in lactose concentration is reported to improve colic symptoms but four small trials investigating its effect were inconclusive.

Low-lactose formulas should not be recommended as studies conducted to date have been of poor methodological quality. No trial data exists for gripe mixtures and therefore should be avoided.

Summary

Although evidence for simeticone and lactase enzymes is not strong it would seem unreasonable not to let parents try either for a trial period of a week if they are finding it difficult to cope. If no response is seen then referral to the GP for an alternative formula feed would be advisable.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to dimethicone is discussed and summarised in Table 9.5; useful tips relating to colic are given in Hints and Tips Box 9.3.

Simeticone (e.g. Infacol and Dentinox)

Simeticone is pharmacologically inert; it has no side effects, drug interactions or precautions in its use and can

Table 9.5
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for colic

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Simeticone	Infant upwards	None	None	None	Not applicable
Lactase					

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 9.3: COLIC

Review feeding technique	Before recommending a product it is worth checking feeding technique. Underfeeding the baby can result in excessive sucking resulting in air being swallowed leading to colic-like symptoms. Additionally the teat size of the bottle should be checked. When the bottle is turned upside down the milk should drop slowly from the bottle

therefore be safely prescribed to all infants. It should be given with or just after each feed. Products contain different strengths of simeticone, however the dose administered to the child is almost equivalent, for example Infacol 0.5 to 1 mL (20 to 40 mg) and Dentinox 2.5 mL (21 mg).

Lactase enzyme (Colief)

The dose of Colief differs depending if the baby is formula or breast fed: if breastfeeding, four drops should be added to a small amount of expressed milk and the baby breast fed as normal; if using an infant formula then the feed should be made up as usual and four drops added to warm, but not hot, formula. If making the formula up in advance then add two drops of Colief and store in the fridge for 4 hours.

Reference

Wessel MA, Cobb JC, Jackson EB, et al. Paroxysmal fussing in infancy, sometimes called 'colic'. Paediatrics 1954;14:421–4.

Further reading

Barr RG, Lessard J. Excessive crying. In: Bergman AB (ed). 20 Common Problems in Paediatrics. USA: McGraw-Hill; 2001.

Garrison MM, Christakis DA. A systematic review of treatments for infant colic. Pediatrics 2000;106:184–90.

Lucassen PL, Assendelft WJ, Gubbels JW, et al. Effectiveness of treatments for infantile colic: systematic review. Br Med J 1998;316:1563–9.

Kanabar D. Current treatment options in the management of infantile colic. The Prescriber 2008;5th April:24–9.

Web sites

NCCPC – Postnatal Care: http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/10988/30146/30146.pdf

CRY-SIS: www.cry-sis.org.uk

The Breastfeeding Network: http://www.breastfeedingnetwork.org.uk/

General sites on colic: http://www.colichelp.com/, http://www.infacol.co.uk/home and http://www.colief.co.uk/

Atopic dermatitis

Background

Atopic dermatitis is a chronic non-infective inflammatory skin condition which is characterised by an itchy red rash. It usually starts within the first 6 months of life and predominantly affects young children. The majority (60–70%) of patients will 'grow out' of the condition by their early teens. However, in a small number of patients atopic dermatitis persists into adulthood where the condition becomes chronic. Atopic dermatitis can impair the quality of life of patients and their families. Typical distribution of atopic dermatitis is illustrated in Fig. 9.1.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The prevalence of atopic dermatitis is unclear. Rates vary from country-to-country. In the UK prevalence rates have been rising, and it now affects 15 to 20% of children,

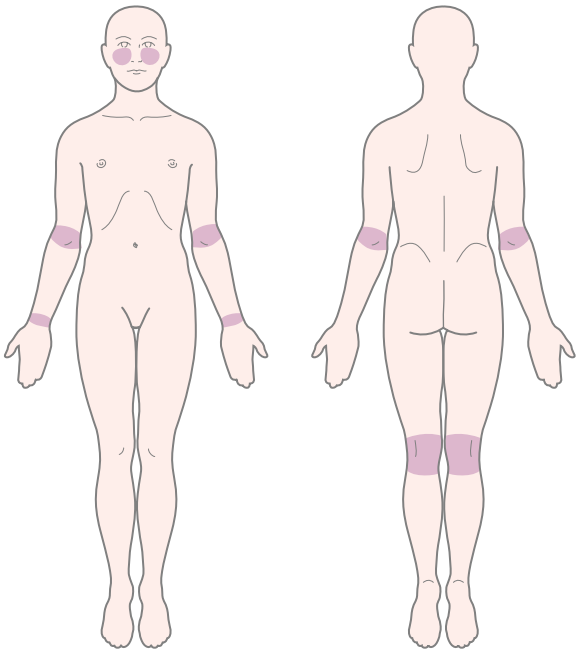


Fig. 9.1 Typical distribution of atopic dermatitis.

Fig. 9.2 Atopic dermatitis in an infant. Reproduced from B J Zitelli, H W Davis, 1997, Atlas of Pediatric Physical Diagnosis, 3rd edition, Mosby, with permission.

although over 80% are reported to have mild disease. The condition usually presents in infants aged between 2 and 6 months, but it can occur in older children. Upward of 60% of children will have onset within the first year, rising to 80% within the first 5 years. Atopic dermatitis is much less common in adults affecting only 1 to 3% of people.

Aetiology

Atopic dermatitis has a strong genetic component, although the precise genetic cause is unknown. Two-thirds of people with the disease have a family history of atopic dermatitis, asthma or hay fever. Atopic dermatitis is present in approximately 80% of children where both parents are affected and in 60% if one parent is affected. In addition a number of environmental factors have been implicated in the development or worsening of the condition and include certain foods (e.g. dairy products), stress, extremes of heat and humidity, and irritants such as detergents and chemicals.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

To help with diagnosis, criteria based protocols are available, for example those produced by the *British Journal of Dermatology* and the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE), which state atopic dermatitis can be diagnosed if the person has had an itchy skin condition in the past 12 months plus three or more of the following:

- onset before age of 2 years (Fig. 9.2)
- history of dry skin
- history of eczema in the skin creases (and also the cheeks in children under 10 years)
- visible flexural eczema (inside elbows, behind knees (Fig. 9.3) or involvement of the cheeks/forehead and outer limbs in children under 4 years)
- personal history of other atopic disease.

Asking a number of symptom-specific questions should enable a diagnosis of atopic dermatitis to be made (Table 9.6).

Clinical features of atopic dermatitis

A typical presentation of a child with atopic dermatitis is an irritable, scratching child with dermatitis of varying severity. Itching is the predominant symptom which can induce a vicious cycle of scratching, leading to skin damage, which in turn leads to more itching - the so called 'itch scratch itch' cycle. The child might have had the symptoms for some time and the parent has often already

Table 9.6
Specific questions to ask the patient: Atopic dermatitis

Question	Relevance
Is itching present	Atopic dermatitis is classically associated with intense itching Psoriasis and seborrhoeic dermatitis are not usually associated with itching
Distribution of rash	Varies according to age (Fig. 9.1) but in infants the nappy area is not involved and is a useful distinction between atopic dermatitis and seborrhoeic dermatitis
Age of child	Presentation varies with age Babies: facial involvement (the cheeks) is common along with patchy red scaly lesions on the wrists and hands (Fig. 9.2) Toddlers and older children: the antecubital (in front or at the bend of the elbow), popliteal fossae (behind the knee), and ankles are more commonly involved (Fig. 9.3)
Family history of atopy	If a parent has eczema, hay fever or asthma then the likelihood of atopic dermatitis rises

Fig. 9.3 Atopic dermatitis in the popliteal fossa (bend of knee). Reproduced from DJ Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

tried some form of cream to help control the itch and rash. Scratching can lead to broken skin, which can become infected. There is a tendency to a dry sensitive skin even in those who have 'grown out' of the disease.

Once a diagnosis has been established and before treatment is considered it is important to make an assessment on the severity and social impact of the condition (Table 9.7).

Conditions to eliminate

Seborrhoeic dermatitis

Seborrhoeic dermatitis in infants typically occurs in the first 6 months. Itching is generally not present and the condition usually spontaneously resolves after a few weeks and seldom recurs. It usually affects the scalp, face and napkin area. Large yellow scales and crusts often appear on the scalp and are often referred to as cradle cap (Fig. 7.10).

Psoriasis

Psoriasis can be mistaken for atopic dermatitis, because the rash is erythematous and can occur on parts of the body such as the scalp, elbows and knees, which is a common location for atopic dermatitis in older children. However, the rash is raised, has well defined boundaries with a silvery-white scaly appearance that are typically symmetrical. Itch, if present, is mild (Fig. 7.3).

Contact dermatitis

Seen as a red itchy skin rash seen at any site related to exposure border (Fig. 7.27).

Fungal infection

The rash is pink or red, itchy, slightly raised annular patch with a well defined inflamed border (Fig. 7.14). It can occur on all body surfaces.

Herpes simplex complications

Children with atopic dermatitis are at risk of developing more extensive and serious herpes simplex infection.

Table 9.7
Severity and social impact of atopic dermatitis

Severity*	Psychological impact*
Clear: normal skin, no evidence of active eczema.	None: no impact on quality of life.
Mild: areas of dry skin, infrequent itching (with or without small areas of redness).	Mild: little impact on everyday activities, sleep, and psychosocial well-being.
Moderate: areas of dry skin, frequent itching, redness (with or without excoriation and localised skin thickening).	Moderate: moderate impact on everyday activities and psychosocial well-being, and frequently disturbed sleep.
Severe: widespread areas of dry skin, incessant itching, redness (with or without excoriation, extensive skin thickening, bleeding, oozing, cracking, and alteration of pigmentation).	Severe: severe limitation of everyday activities and psychosocial functioning, and loss of sleep every night.

*Adapted from NICE guidelines 2007.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Atopic dermatitis

- Children with moderate or severe atopic dermatitis
- Medication failure – patient suffers two or more flare-ups per month
- Presence of secondary infection (weeping and crusting lesions)

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

The mainstay of treatment for atopic dermatitis consists of avoiding potential irritants, managing dry skin, controlling itching and using topical corticosteroids to treat flare ups. Unfortunately, the latter option is not available to children under the age of 10 due to OTC license restrictions.

Avoiding irritants

Where practical, factors that worsen dermatitis should be avoided. The use of highly perfumed soaps and detergents should be discouraged and replaced with soap substitutes (e.g. Alpha Keri, Neutrogena, Dove). Patients should be told to have lukewarm not hot baths, because in some patients hot water can aggravate the problem. In addition a bath additive should be used (e.g. Balneum, Oilatum, Emulsiderm) to help hydration of the skin.

Emollients

It is believed emollients add moisture to the skin and repair the lipid barrier function whilst also helping to prevent penetration by irritants and decrease the need for steroids. Despite a lack of high quality randomised controlled trials, emollients are well established as first line treatment for atopic dermatitis. In addition, no trials appear to have addressed whether one emollient is superior to another. Patients might have to try several emollients before finding one that is most effective for their skin.

Antihistamines

There appears to be no clinical trial data on the use of sedative antihistamine for reducing pruritus in atopic dermatitis; however, they are often prescribed to children to help with itching. The American Academy of Dermatology guidelines on the treatment of atopic dermatitis report there is little evidence for the use of antihistamines; however, they suggest that sedating antihistamines may be useful where there is significant sleep disruption due to itching (Hanifin et al 2004).

Corticosteroids

A substantial body of evidence exists for corticosteroids in controlling all types of dermatitis, including atopic dermatitis. If the symptoms warrant corticosteroid therapy then the patient needs to be referred to the GP. Usually mild steroids such as hydrocortisone (1 to 2.5%), preferably in an ointment base should be prescribed twice daily.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for atopic dermatitis reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 9.8; useful information regarding emollients containing lanolin is given in Hints and Tips Box 9.4.

Table 9.8
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for atopic dermatitis

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Emollients	Birth onwards	None	None	None	Not Applicable
Sedating antihistamines					
Chlorphenamine	>1 year	Sedation	Increased sedation with opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants. However, it is unlikely a child will be taking such medicines	None	Not Applicable
Clemastine	>1 year				
Cyproheptadine	>2 years				
Promethazine	>2 years				

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 9.4: ATOPIC DERMATITIS

General self-help	If possible avoid scratching. Keep nails short and rub with fingers to alleviate itch to minimise skin trauma
Lanolin containing emollients	Emollients that contain lanolin (e.g. Keri Lotion and E45) should be avoided as they are known to cause sensitisation
Applying emollients	They are best applied when the skin is moist, for example during bath times Bath additives will make the bath slippery so care should be taken when getting the child out Apply as frequently as possible The more oily the emollient the more effective they tend to be

Emollients

There are a plethora of emollient products marketed and which one a patient uses will be dictated by patient response and acceptability. All emollients should be regularly and liberally applied with no upper limit on how often they can be used. All are chemically inert and therefore can be safely used from birth upwards. For a summary of emollient products see Table 7.32.

Sedating antihistamines

Although no sedating antihistamine products, except hydroxyzine (POM), have a specific product license for the treatment of pruritus, they are frequently prescribed by GPs and could be given OTC. However, it must be remembered that if recommended then the person concerned is acting outside the product license and will be therefore liable for any clinical consequence associated with the use of the product. The doses that can be given for the various sedating antihistamines are listed below.

Chlorphenamine (Piriton)

Chlorphenamine can be given from the age of 1 year. Children up to the age of 2 years should take 2.5 mL of syrup (1 mg) twice a day. For children aged between 2 and 5 the dose is 2.5 mL (1 mg) three or four times a day and those over the age of 6 should take 5 mL (2 mg) three or four times a day.

Clemastine (Tavegil)

Clemastine is taken twice a day by children over the age of 1 year. Those aged between 1 and 3 should take 250 to 500 µg, children aged between 3 and 6 should take 500 µg and for those over 6 the dose is 500 µg to 1 mg. Tavegil is only available as 1 mg tablets and so dosing in young children is difficult.

Cyproheptadine (Periactin)

Children between 2 and 6 should take 2 mg (half a tablet) and for children over 7 the dose is 4 mg (one tablet) two or three times a day.

Promethazine (Phenergan Elixer 5 mg/5 mL and 10 mg and 25 mg tablets)

Children between 2 and 5 years should take 5 to 15 mg (5 to 15 mL) daily in one to two divided doses and for those over 5 the dose is 10 to 25 mg daily in one to two divided doses.

Reference

Hanifin JM, Cooper KD, Ho VC, et al. Guidelines of care for atopic dermatitis, developed in accordance with the American Academy of Dermatology (AAD)/American Academy of Dermatology Association 'Administrative Regulations for Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines'. J Am Acad Dermatol 2004;50(3):391–404.

Further reading

Brown S, Reynolds NJ. Atopic and non-atopic eczema. Br Med J 2006;332:584–8.

Clark C, Hoare C. Making the most of emollients. Pharm J 2001;266:227–9.

CG57 Atopic eczema in children: NICE guideline 2007. http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11901/38597/38597.pdf

NICE Atopic dermatitis (eczema) – topical steroids (TA81) August 2004. Frequency of application of topical corticosteroids for eczema. http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/TA81/?c=91528

Web sites

National Eczema Society: http://www.eczema.org/

General dermatology site: http://www.dermatologist.co.uk/index.html

Fever

Background

Fever is simply a rise in body temperature above normal. Normal oral temperature is 37°C (98.6°F), plus or minus 1°C, although rectal temperature is about 0.5°C higher and under arm temperature 0.5°C lower than oral temperature. During the course of 24 hours minor fluctuations in temperature are observed. Fever is often classified as being either mild (low-grade) (up to 39°C) or high (above 39°C).

In a practice setting, for those aged under 5 years of age, the best temperature to take is under the arm using an electronic or chemical dot thermometer. Infrared tympanic thermometers are also advocated (NICE guidance No. 47, May 2007) but a systematic review by Dodd et al (2006) questioned their reliability. Forehead strip thermometers are popular because they are easy to use, but should not be used as they are unreliable.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Fever is a common symptom of many conditions, and in children viral, and to a lesser extent bacterial, causes are most commonly implicated. It has been reported that fever is probably the commonest reason for a child to be taken to a doctor.

Aetiology

Body temperature is regulated closely because temperature changes can significantly alter cellular functions and, in extreme cases, lead to death. Thermoregulation is a balance between heat production and heat loss. Cellular metabolism produces heat and this means that energy – in the form of heat – is produced continually by the body. This heat production is lost through the skin by radiation, evaporation, conduction and convection. The thermoregulation centre located in the hypothalamus controls the whole process. When body temperature reaches its 'set point' (approximately 37°C) mechanisms to lose or conserve heat are activated. When a person suffers from a fever this suggests that there is some defect in the temperature regulating control system. In fact the system is functioning normally but with an adjusted higher 'set point'. This process is complex but involves the production of pyrogens (fever-causing substances) that alter the set point.

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The parent, in nearly every instance, will diagnose fever in the child. This is usually a subjective perception by the parent that the child feels warm or is off colour. The importance of the parent's perception should not be underestimated or dismissed if the child's temperature has not been taken. Many healthcare professionals often place too much value on an empirical figure when in many instances the look of the child is more important than the height of the fever. Asking a number of symptom specific questions should enable the pharmacist to treat or refer the child with fever (Table 9.9).

NICE in the UK recommend using a 'traffic light' system to assess the risk of serious disease (Table 9.10). In a pharmacy setting any child that show symptoms or signs of intermediate (amber) or high (red) risk should be referred to the GP

Clinical features of fever

A child with fever will generally be irritable, off his or her food and seek greater parental attention. Other signs that might be seen include facial flushing and shivering.

Table 9.9
Specific questions to ask the patient: Fever

Question	Relevance
How old is the child?	Children under 3 months should be referred automatically because diagnosis can be very difficult and serious complications can arise
How poorly is the child?	The parent will know how poorly the child is relative to normal behaviour. A child might have a high temperature but appear relatively normal whereas a child with a mild temperature might be quite poorly
Associated symptoms	Viral upper respiratory tract infections are usually accompanied with one or more symptoms including cough, cold or sore throat Glandular fever is usually accompanied with fatigue and lymph node enlargement. (usually teenagers) If no other symptoms are present it suggests a bacterial infection, often a urinary tract infection

Table 9.10
Assessment of the seriousness of fever in children under 5 years of age

	Green–low risk	Amber–intermediate risk	Red–high risk
Colour	Normal colour of skin, lips and tongue	Pallor reported by parent/carer	Pale/mottled/ashen/blue
Activity	Responds normally to social cues Content/smiles Stays awake or awakens quickly Strong normal cry/not crying	Not responding normally to social cues Wakes only with prolonged stimulation Decreased activity No smile	No response to social clues Appears ill to the pharmacist Unable to rouse or if roused does not stay awake Weak, high-pitched or continuous cry
Respiratory		Nasal flaring 6–12 months, RR >50 breaths/minute >12 months, RR 40 breaths/minute	Grunting RR >60 breaths/minute
Hydration	Normal skin and eyes Moist mucous membranes	Dry mucous membrane Poor feeding in infants CRT ≥3 seconds Reduced urine output	Reduced skin turgor
Other	NONE of the amber or red signs or symptoms	Fever ≥5 days Swelling of a limb/joint	0–3 months ≥38°C 3–6 months ≥39°C Non-blanching rash Neck stiffness Bulging fontanelle Seizures

CRT, capillary refill time; RR, respiration rate.
Table adapted from NICE. CG 47 Feverish illness in children: assessment and initial management in children younger than 5 years. London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2007. Reproduced with permission. Guidelines are accurate at time of going to press. Latest guidelines are available at http://www.nice.org.uk/CG47

Conditions to eliminate

Urinary tract infection

One of the most common causes of fever in children is urinary tract infection. Often the child will present only with fever. Other symptoms can be present and include irritability, poor feeding, vomiting or abdominal pain. Referral is needed.

Upper respiratory tract infections

It is rare for upper respiratory tract infections to present with fever alone. Cough, cold or sore throat is usually present. Treatment can be offered and referral is generally not needed unless secondary bacterial infection is suspected; earache symptoms might suggest this.

Roseola infantum (sixth disease)

Roseola infantum is probably caused by a neurodermotropic virus and is most prevalent in children under 1 year of age. Onset is with a sudden high fever (40°C) that usually subsides by the third or fourth day once the rash, which blanches when pressed, appears on the trunk and limbs. The condition is self-limiting.

Medicine-induced fever

A number of medicines can elevate body temperature and should be considered if no other cause can be determined. Penicillins, cephalosporins, macrolides, tricyclic antidepressants, anticonvulsants and anti-inflammatory medicines, when associated with hypersensitivity, have all been associated with increasing temperature.

Meningitis

Meningitis should be considered in any child with fever and non-blanching rash, especially if the child looks ill and has other symptoms such as severe headache, photophobia, lethargy, drowsiness and neck stiffness. However, non-blanching rash is often seen late in symptom presentation so children with fever who exhibit decreased levels of consciousness or neck stiffness must be referred. Further information can be found on page 300.

Pneumonia

Children who exhibit increased respiration rates and fever must be referred for further evaluation by the GP as pneumonia is a possibility.

Glandular fever

Glandular fever is most commonly seen in young adults rather than children but any patient who has a long-standing history of fatigue and a low-grade fever should be referred for further evaluation.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Fever

- Any feverish child under 3 months old
- Fever accompanied with no other symptoms
- Fever of 5 days or longer
- Febrile convulsion/seizures
- Joint swelling
- Non-blanching rash
- Obviously ill child or child who fails to respond to stimuli
- Signs of dehydration (see Table 9.10)
- Stiff neck
- Temperature ≥39°C in children aged 3 to 6 months old

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Paracetamol and ibuprofen have been used for many years to treat fever in children. A number of reviews have looked at pharmacological and non-pharmacological intervention in reducing temperature. Two reviews by Meremikwu and Oye-Ita (2002, 2003) looked at the effect of paracetamol and tepid sponging in reducing fever. Conclusions from both reviews were guarded in stating they were effective, due to the small number of trials reviewed that met their inclusion criteria. This of course does not mean to say that these approaches are ineffective but that better, larger trials are required, although Watts et al (2001) concluded sponging does not seem to have a long-term effect. A further review by Perrott et al (2004) compared paracetamol and ibuprofen and concluded that single doses of ibuprofen were superior to paracetamol.

NICE guidance recommends that routine use of antipyretics should be avoided, although if deemed necessary (if the child is unwell or distressed) either paracetamol or ibuprofen can be used as monotherapy. Alternation of paracetamol and ibuprofen is not recommended; however, if the first drug used fails to control the temperature the other drug can be tried.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for fever reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 9.11; useful tips relating to patients presenting with fever are given in Hints and Tips Box 9.5.

Table 9.11
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for fever

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Paracetamol	>3 months Note: Paracetamol from 2 months for post-immunisation pyrexia	None	None	None	Not Applicable
Ibuprofen		GI disturbances		Children with known hypersensitivity to NSAIDs	

Table 9.12
MHRA guidance on a dosing schedule for paracetamol

3 to 6 months	2.5 mL	125 mg/mL	
6 to 24 months	5.0 mL		
2 to 4 years	7.5 mL		
4 to 6 years	10 mL		
6 to 8 years		5 mL	250 mg/mL
8 to 10 years		7.5 mL	
10 to 12 years		10 mL	

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 9.5: FEVER

Drinking Fluids	Children should be told to drink additional fluid to prevent dehydration, as a fever will make them sweat more than usual

Paracetamol (e.g. Calpol, Disprol, Medinol)

Paracetamol is available as liquid, soluble tablets, sachets and melt tabs, although the most frequently purchased formulation is liquid. In addition paracetamol antihistamine combinations (Medised for children (diphenhydramine)) are available.

In 2011, the MHRA issued guidance on an updated dosing schedule for paracetamol. The updated dosing has a larger number of narrower age bands and defined a single dose per age band (Table 9.12).

For all age bands the maximum number of doses per day is four. Paracetamol has no commonly occurring side effects, does not interact with any medicines and so can be safely taken by all children.

Ibuprofen (e.g Nurofen, Calprofen)

Ibuprofen can be given to children over 3 months old. Doses for ibuprofen, like paracetamol, are age dependant as shown below:

- Age 3 months to 5 months: 50 mg three times a day.
- Age 6 months to 1 year: 50 mg three to four times a day.
- Age 1 year to 4 years: 100 mg three times a day.
- Age 4 years to 7 years: 150 mg three times a day.
- Age 7 years to 10 years: 200 mg three times a day.
- Age 10 years to 12 years: 300 mg three times a day.

Ibuprofen can cause gastrointestinal side effects such as nausea and diarrhoea and also interacts with many other medicines, although those medicines that interact with ibuprofen are very unlikely to be taken by children. Any child who has previously taken an NSAID and had an allergic reaction to it should avoid ibuprofen.

References

Dodd SR, Lancaster GA, Craig JV, et al. Sensitivity and specificity of aural compared with rectal thermometers: a meta-analysis. J Clin Epidemiol 2006;59(4):354–7.

Meremikwu MM, Oyo-Ita A. Paracetamol versus placebo or physical methods for treating fever in children. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2002, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD003676. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003676.

Meremikwu M, Oyo-Ita A. Paracetamol for treating fever in children. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2003. Issue 2.

Perrott DA, Piira T, Goodenough B, et al. Review: Efficacy and safety of acetaminophen vs ibuprofen for treating children's pain or fever: a meta-analysis. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2004;158:521–6.

Watts R, Robertson J, Thomas G. The nursing management of fever in children. 2001. Available from http://espace.library.curtin.edu.au/R/?func=dbin-jump-full&object_id=19279&local_base=gen01-era02 (accessed 22 November 2012).

Further reading
NICE Guidance 47 – http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG47 (accessed 29 November 2012).
Nowak TJ, Handford AG. Essentials of Pathophysiology. USA: McGraw-Hill; 2000.

Infectious childhood conditions

Background

A number of infectious diseases are more prevalent in children than the rest of the population. Many of these diseases are now vaccine preventable and the provision of immunisation programmes has almost eradicated them from developed countries. However, some conditions have no vaccine or incomplete vaccine cover is provided, which means contraction of the disease is still possible. This usually results in the child suffering from mild symptoms from which a full and speedy recovery is made but in some circumstances, for example meningitis, infection can result in death. In addition, a report in *The Lancet* (1998) linking the triple vaccine for measles, mumps and rubella (MMR) with autism (subsequently discredited) saw vaccination rates fall in the early 2000s. This has led to an increase in measles cases and even today (2012) vaccination rates in the UK for MMR are lower than for other vaccines. Mention of measles, mumps and rubella is therefore made at the end of this section for completeness.

Meningitis

Meningitis is usually caused by bacterial or viral infection. Viral meningitis is much more common than bacterial meningitis but – thankfully – viral infections are much less serious than bacterial causes. The peak incidence of contracting meningitis is between 6 and 12 months.

Signs and symptoms are non-specific in the early stages of the disease and are similar to flu. Symptoms range from fever, nausea, vomiting, headache and irritability. Symptoms can develop quickly – in a matter of hours - and be unpredictable, especially in infants and young children. Symptoms of fever, lethargy, vomiting and irritability are common in children aged between 3 months and 2 years. In infants, floppiness and the dislike of being handled are also common features. Symptoms which are more common in older children include severe headache, stiff neck and photophobia. Any child who experiences neck pain when asked to place their chin on their chest must be immediately referred.

In the latter stages of the disease a petechial or purpuric non-blanching rash characteristically develops in meningococcal infection.

The number of cases in the UK is now at their lowest ever levels due to the introduction of two vaccines into the UK vaccination schedule. The Hib vaccine was introduced in 1992 (active against *Haemophilus influenzae*) and the meningococcal C conjugate vaccine introduced in 1999 (active against serogroup C *Meningococcus*).

Chicken pox

Chicken pox is very common and is probably the most likely infectious childhood rash seen in community pharmacy. It is the primary infection observed when the patient contracts the varicella zoster virus, which is transmitted either by droplet infection or with contact with vesicular exudates. The incubation period ranges from 10 to 20 days and prior to the rash developing the patient might experience up to 3 days of prodromal symptoms that could include fever, headache and sore throat. The rash typically begins on the face and scalp, and spreads to the trunk and limbs. Initially, they appear as small red lumps that rapidly develop into vesicles, which crust over after 3 to 5 days. New lesions tend to occur in crops of 3 to 5 for the first 4 days so that at its height of infectivity lesions appear in all stages of development (Fig. 9.4). The vesicles are often extremely itchy and secondary bacterial infection due to the vesicles being scratched is not unusual. Chicken pox is highly contagious, from a few days prior to the onset of rash until all lesions have crusted over. Reinfection results in people suffering from shingles (Fig. 9.5). A vaccination has been available since the mid 1990s and shown to be 70 to 90% effective. It is part of standard vaccination schedules in countries such as the USA and Australia but currently not the UK.

Molluscum contagiosum

Caused by a pox virus, molluscum contagiosum is usually transmitted by indirect contact, for example sharing towels, although it is not very contagious. The face and axillae are common sites of infection. They generally appear in crops and appear as pink pearl-like spots usually less than 0.5 cm in diameter. All lesions have a central punctum that is a diagnostic feature (Fig. 9.6). Confusion should not arise with other conditions other than viral warts (for further information on warts see page 222). The condition will spontaneously resolve but if the parent or child is anxious then referral to the GP should be made because liquid nitrogen can be used to remove the lesions.

Impetigo

Impetigo is caused by a bacterial infection, most notably *Staphylococcus aureus* or *Streptococcus pyogenes*. It

Fig. 9.4 Chicken pox. Reproduced from G White, 2004, Color Atlas of Dermatology, 3rd edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Fig. 9.5 Typical dermatomal distribution of herpes zoster. Reproduced from J Wilkinson et al, 2004, Dermatology in Focus, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

presents mainly on the face, around the nose and mouth. It usually starts as a small red itchy patch of inflamed skin that quickly develops into vesicles that rupture and weep. The exudate dries to a brown, yellow sticky crust. (Fig. 9.7) It is contagious and children should be kept off school until

Fig. 9.6 Molluscum contagiosum. Reproduced from DJ Gawkrodger, 2007, Dermatology: An Illustrated Colour Text, 4th edition, Churchill Livingstone, with permission.

Fig. 9.7 Impetigo. Reproduced from TB Habif, 2010, Clinical Dermatology: A Color Guide To Diagnosis And Therapy, Mosby, with permission.

the rash clears. General hygiene measures should include not sharing towels, which will help to stop household contacts contracting the infection. The child's nails should be kept short to stop him or her from scratching the lesions. Treatment involves topical or systemic antibiotics (e.g. fusidic acid or flucloxacillin), which currently are not available OTC in most Western countries.

Measles

Since 1968 all infants in the UK have routinely been offered vaccination against measles. It is caused by an

RNA virus and spread by droplet inhalation. It is the most dangerous of childhood diseases because of the complications that can occur. Approximately 7% of patients develop respiratory complications such as otitis media and pneumonia but encephalitis is seen in about one in every 600 to 1000 cases of measles.

Measles has an incubation period of between 7 to 14 days, which is then followed by 3 or 4 days of prodromal symptoms where the child will have a fever, head cold, cough and conjunctivitis. On the inner cheek and gums small white spots are visible, like grains of salt and are known as Koplik's spots; these are diagnostic for measles. A blotchy red rash appears around the ears before moving on to the trunk and limbs. Immediate referral to the GP is needed.

German measles (rubella)

Rubella is caused by an RNA virus and spread by either close personal contact or airborne droplets. It is less contagious than measles and if contracted many people suffer from mild symptoms and the infection passes undiagnosed. After the incubation period of 14 to 21 days the child experiences up to 5 days of prodromal symptoms, which include cold-like symptoms and swollen glands in the neck before a rash appears on the face that quickly moves on to the trunk and extremities. The rash tends to be pinpoint and macular. The biggest threat posed by rubella is to women in early pregnancy, as foetal damage is possible.

Mumps

Mumps is caused by a paramyxovirus and is transmitted by airborne droplets from the nose and throat. It is the least contagious of the childhood diseases and requires close personal contact before infection can occur. There is an incubation period of 16 to 21 days followed by fever; this is followed by swelling of one or both parotid glands and the child will experience pain when the mouth is opened.

Mumps is much more unpleasant if contracted as an adult and in 20 to 30% of men the disease affects the testicles, with a serious infection possibly causing sterility. The most serious complication from mumps is meningitis (seen in approximately 10% of people).

Erythema infectiosum

Erythema infectiosum is also called 'slapped cheek disease' or 'fifth disease'. It is caused by parvovirus B19 and predominantly affects children between the ages of 3 and 15. Cold-like symptoms appear a couple of days before the rash appears. Typically the rash appears on the cheeks that are red and inflamed (like the person has been slapped). Itch is often present and the rash can spread to the arms and legs.

Glandular fever (infectious mononucleosis)

Glandular fever is caused by the Epstein–Barr virus and is most commonly seen in patients aged between 15 and 24. In Western countries it is rare in children under 5 and less frequent in those aged between 5 and 14.

It is transmitted from close salivary contact and is also known as the kissing disease and has an incubation period of 4 to 7 weeks. Symptoms are vague but characterised by fatigue, headache, sore throat and swollen and tender lymph glands. A macular rash can also occur in a small proportion of patients. The symptoms tend to be mild but can linger for many months.

To aid the differential diagnosis of childhood conditions see Table 9.13.

Web Sites
Charities: www.meningitis.org and www.meningitis-trust.org

Nappy rash

Background

Napkin rash (also known as nappy dermatitis or diaper rash) is a non-specific term used to describe inflammatory eruptions in the napkin area.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The incidence and prevalence of napkin rash is difficult to determine because of variability between studies. Napkin rash is most commonly seen between 6 and 12 months of age and in one UK study 25% of infants aged under 1 month had an episode of nappy rash.

Aetiology

Nappy rash is caused by a number of contributory factors. Friction and maceration of the skin are key to its cause. This is compounded by excessive heat and moisture combined with the effect of faecal and urinary enzymes when in prolonged contact with the skin (faeces breakdown produces ammonia, and is considered a contributory cause, as ammonia is only irritant when in contact with damaged skin). Greater exposure of skin surfaces to moisture impairs the skin's barrier function and makes the skin more susceptible to secondary infection.

Table 9.13
Differential diagnosis of childhood conditions

	Measles	German measles	Meningitis	Glandular fever	Chicken pox	Molluscum contagiosum	Mumps	Impetigo	Erythema infectiosum
Prodromal stage									
Fever	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes, in older individuals	No	Yes	No	No
Swollen glands	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No
Cold-like symptoms	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	Yes
Other signs	Koplik's spots	Malaise	Lethargy, stiff neck, vomiting, photophobia	Malaise & headache	Malaise & headache	None	None	None	No
Rash									
Location	Ears & face progressing to trunk & limbs	Face moving quickly to trunk	Trunk and limbs	Trunk	On trunk & face, rarely on extremities	Face and axillae	Not Applicable	Facial area especially around nose & mouth	Face before moving to arms and legs
Character	Maculopapular	Macules, often pinpoint by 2nd day	Purplish blotches. Do not blanch	Maculopapular About 10% have rash	Lesions discrete and appear in crops	Pink pearl-like spots with central punctum*		Vesicles that exude forming yellow crusts	'Slapped' skin
Epidemiology									
Age group most affected	Children & adolescents	Children under 12	90% before age of 5	15 to 24 year old most at risk	Very common in children	Young children	Children under 12	School aged children	Children & adolescents

*Diagnostic.

Table 9.14
Differences in symptom presentation between the four causes of nappy rash

	Irritant	Candidal	Seborrhoeic	Psoriasiform
Flexure involvement	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Satellite lesions	No	Yes	No	No
Other sites involved	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Rash description	Red raw	Bright red and well demarcated	Shiny/greasy	Atypical for psoriasis as usually no scaling present

Arriving at a differential diagnosis

The diagnosis is straight forward although identifying the cause is slightly more difficult. There are four forms of nappy rash, with irritant nappy rash being the most common. Table 9.14 highlights the key differences in symptom presentation between the four forms.

Clinical features of irritant nappy rash

The rash affects primarily the buttocks (i.e. the area in contact with the irritant) but can involve the lower abdomen, and upper thighs. The flexures, which are protected from exposure, are usually spared.

Conditions to eliminate

Secondary Infection

An environment that is wet and warm creates an ideal breeding ground for opportunistic infections. Most commonly secondary infections are caused by *Candida albicans* (but other pathogens such as *Staphylococcus aureus* are involved). Candidiasis is associated with satellite lesions (i.e. away from the main skin involvement). The lesions tend to be papular or pustular.

Seborrhoeic dermatitis

Seborrhoeic dermatitis presents as a rash, which is bright red and confluent. The flexures are not spared and the rash can take on a diffuse, red shiny or greasy look. It is common for other sites to be involved, such as the scalp and face.

Psoriasiform napkin eruptions

Infants usually develop this form of nappy rash within the first 4 months of life. It presents as well demarcated erythematous plaques. It can show scaling that resembles psoriasis, although this is uncommon. Involvement away from the napkin area is common and affects the limbs, face and scalp. A small proportion, approximately 10%, of infants go on to develop psoriasis.

TRIGGER POINTS indicative of referral: Nappy rash

- OTC treatment failure
- Severe rash requiring corticosteroids

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Management centres on skin care of the nappy area by reducing skin irritation – either by removing occlusion or changing the nappy frequently; applying a protective layer of barrier cream and reducing the inflammation and/or eliminating infection.

Barrier creams are frequently used to help with irritant causes of nappy rash. They are designed to rehydrate and soothe the skin. A number of chemical constituents are formulated into barrier creams, and include silicone, antiseptics and protectorants. Many proprietary products are available and often consist of a combination of ingredients. Secondary infection with *Candida* can be treated with imidazole products.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Before recommending a product it is worthwhile knowing if the nappy rash is causing the baby any obvious discomfort. Nappy rash where the child shows no sign of discomfort should be advised on skin care (see Hints and Tip Box 9.6) and be advised on the use of a barrier-type cream/protectorant. Products marketed as barrier creams/protectorants can be given to all children. They should be applied to all skin surfaces, including the skin folds after each nappy change. They have no side effects, although some products do contain potential sensitising agents and it is best to patch test an area of skin before application.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 9.6: NAPPY RASH

Preventative measures	Leave the nappy off for as long as possible each day Avoiding using soaps for cleaning Washed nappies should be thoroughly rinsed to ensure that they do not contain residues of soap and detergent Change nappies as soon as they have been soiled

Commonly prescribed products include Drapolene, Metanium and Sudocrem.

For cases causing discomfort (in general those that are secondarily infected with *Candida*) the use of an imidazole twice a day is recommended. Parents should be told not to use a barrier cream until the infection has settled. Where the child is distressed, and there are obvious signs of inflammation then referral is needed for steroids.

Further reading

Baer EL, Davies MW, Easterbrook KJ. Disposable nappies for preventing napkin dermatitis in infants. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD004262. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004262.pub2.

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

9.1 The common name of nits refers to:

a. An adult head louse
b. An immature head louse
c. Live eggs
d. Egg cases
e. None of the above

9.2 Which antihistamine has a license for pruritus?

a. Chlorphenamine
b. Clemastine
c. Cyproheptadine
d. Hydroxyzine
e. Azatadine

9.3 A high grade fever is defined as a temperature above?

a. 37°C
b. 37.5°C
c. 38.5°C
d. 39.5°C
e. 40°C

9.4 Which infection is most likely to present with fever as the major symptom in children?

a. Upper respiratory tract infection
b. Lower respiratory tract infection
c. Urinary tract infection
d. Skin infection
e. None of the above

9.5 Fever in children with no associated symptoms or signs is usually due to:

a. Gastroenteritis
b. Urinary tract infection
c. Upper respiratory tract infection
d. Bacterial tonsillitis
e. Impetigo

9.6 What are the usual age children present with atopic dermatitis?

a. In the first month of life
b. Before 6 months
c. Before 1 year
d. Before 2 years
e. Before 5 years

9.7 Mebendazole can be given to patients from what age?

a. 1
b. 2
c. 3
d. 4
e. 5

9.8 How many days after initial treatment should a second application of insecticide be used to eradicate head lice?

a. 3
b. 5
c. 7
d. 10
e. 14

Questions 9.9 to 9.11 concern the following conditions:

A. Chicken pox
B. Measles
C. German measles
D. Glandular fever
E. Impetigo

Select, from A to E, which of the above conditions:

9.9 Is often caused by ***Staphylococcus***

9.10 Is characterised by a vesicular rash

9.11 Is transmitted by close salivary contact

Questions 9.12 to 9.14 concern the following medicines:

A. Piperazine
B. Mebendazole
C. Permethrin
D. Dimeticone
E. Chlorphenamine

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

9.12 Is associated with sedation

9.13 Is contraindicated in all trimesters of pregnancy

9.14 Can cause abdominal pain

Questions 9.15 to 9.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If a, b and c are correct
B. If a and b only are correct
C. If b and c only are correct
D. If a only is correct
E. If c only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

9.15 Napkin dermatitis caused by an irritant presents with

a. Flexural sparing
b. Satellite lesions
c. Skin scaling

9.16 Atopic dermatitis can be defined as itchy skin plus

a. History of dry skin
b. Flexural eczema
c. A personal history of other atopic disease

9.17 Which statement(s) about head lice treatment is/are true

a. Shampoos are not effective
b. Physical agents are current treatment of choice
c. Insecticides can be used prophylactically

Questions 9.18 to 9.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false.

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First Statement	*Second statement*
9.18	Emollients are the mainstay of treatment of atopic dermatitis	Products with lanolin should be avoided
9.19	Oral temperature is the most accurate measure of temperature	Normal body temperature is 37°C
9.20	Measles is vaccine preventable	It is usually given as a triple vaccine

Case study

CASE STUDY 9.1

Ms JP, a young mother of two children comes into the pharmacy one afternoon clutching a letter from the children's primary school. The letter says that there is a head lice outbreak and instructs parents to treat their children for head lice.

a. How do you respond?

You need to find out if her children actually have head lice or she is trying to buy a product to stop them getting head lice. She should be told that products cannot be bought to prevent her children contracting head lice and she should inspect their heads regularly, and only when live lice are found should a product be bought. Ms JP should be told how to inspect her children's hair for signs of head lice.

Ms JP returns to the pharmacy 4 days later and says her youngest daughter does now have head lice. She is 5 and suffers from no medical problems.

b. What product are you going to recommend?

Insecticides or a physical agent would be acceptable treatment options. Due to insecticidal resistance and high cure rates seen with dimeticone it would seem reasonable to use this as treatment of choice.

Ms JP says she has heard that you can use conditioner and that will get rid of the problem.

c. How do you respond?

Ms JP is probably referring to the 'bug busting' technique. She should be told that the effectiveness of bug busting is lower than using dimeticone or insecticides but can be tried. You should stress that it is very important to adhere to the regimen, as poor compliance with the bug busting method is probably why it has been shown to be less effective.

Ms JP then asks you whether her older daughter, Samantha, should also be treated even though she has not got head lice.

d. What do you say?

Only those with a live lice infestation should be treated. Ms JP should be asked to keep checking Samantha's hair on a regular basis.

CASE STUDY 9.2

Mr PB is looking after his grandson for the weekend. He asks for some advice because he has noticed a rash on his grandson's body and wants something to help get rid of it.

a. What do you need to know?

You need to know:

- *The location of rash*
- *What the rash looks like*
- *When the rash appeared*
- *Associated symptoms such as itch*
- *General health of the child*
- *If the child has a temperature*
- *What, if any, symptoms the child had before the rash appeared*
- *The age of his grandson.*

All Mr PB is able to tell you is that his grandson has been with him for the last day and he only noticed the rash this morning when he was dressing him. He is 4 years old and the rash is on his chest and back; Mr PB describes them as spots. He thinks it is probably itchy because he saw his grandson scratching this morning.

b. What do you think could be the problem?

Without seeing the child and the rash it is always difficult to make a differential diagnosis from information from a third party, but it appears the child might have chicken pox.

c. Are there any further questions you could ask the man to confirm your diagnosis?

Further questions you could ask are:

- *Are the spots coming out in groups?*
- *Have any of the spots turned into little blisters?*
- *Has he been exposed to other children with chicken pox?*

Mr PB is unsure and concerned that his grandson is OK.

d. What could you do?

It appears that his grandson is not poorly and unless he deteriorates there is probably no need to call out the GP. You could recommend an antihistamine to help with the itching and reassure him that his grandson will be OK, but if he becomes poorly the GP should be called out. You also tell him that the rash fits the description of chicken pox but without seeing the rash you cannot be sure. It would therefore be useful if you could see the child or if the child could be seen by someone over the next couple of days to confirm your suspicions.

CASE STUDY 9.3

A mother of a 2-month-old girl asks for help with her baby – she seems to be crying all the time.

Information gathering	Data generated
Presenting complaint (possible questions)	
Describe symptoms	Baby cries and will not be consoled, even after feeding, burping and nappy changes. Brings knees to her chest as she cries.
How long had the symptoms	About a month but just not getting better. Usually worse in the evening.
Severity of pain/ distress of child	Difficult to say but she is obviously worse than other babies she knows about
Other symptoms/ provokes	As above
Any symptoms previous	Has always had times where she has cried a lot, but is just far worse in the last month.
Additional questions	Baby is bottle-fed. Baby is gaining weight satisfactorily. No stomach distension and baby is passing stool adequately.
Previous history of presenting complaint	As above
Past medical history	Bought a gripe mixture last week on advice of a relative. This seems to have had no effect
Drugs (OTC, Rx, and compliance)	Gripe mixture
Allergies	No known allergies
Social history Smoking Alcohol Drugs Employment Relationships	Mother has changed formula milk twice in the last month. Mother is frustrated and appears tired.
Family history	None for presenting complaint
On examination	N/A

This case obviously relates to whether the baby has colic. It is difficult to determine if the baby is considered to have colic or is just excessively crying, as the diagnosis of the condition is dependent on qualitative descriptions. Other conditions can cause prolonged crying and are listed below.

Incidence	Cause
Most likely	Colic
Likely	Acute infection
Unlikely	GORD, intolerance to cows' milk protein

Diagnostic pointers with regard to symptom presentation

Below summarises the expected findings for questions when related to the different conditions that can be seen by community pharmacists.

CASE STUDY 9.3 (Continued)

	History	Weight gain	Systemic symptoms	Inconsolability
Colic	Weeks	OK	No	Yes
Infection	Days/hours	OK	Yes	Yes?
GORD	Weeks	OK	No	No
Intolerance to cows' milk protein	Weeks	Poor	No	No

When this information is applied to that gained from our patient (below) we see that everything points to a diagnosis of colic. To further eliminate GORD, questions asked about regurgitation could be asked and also the duration of crying.

	History	Weight gain	Systemic symptoms	Inconsolability
Colic	✓	✓	✓	✓
Infection	✗	✓	✗	✓?
GORD	✓	✓	✓	✗
Intolerance to cows' milk protein	✓	✗	✓	✗

Reassure the parent that symptoms are transient. Although something has already been tried it is probably worth starting with a dimeticone or Colief for 1 week. If that fails to help then referral to the GP is appropriate.

Answers

1 = d	2 = d	3 = e	4 = c	5 = b	6 = b	7 = b	8 = c	9 = e	10 = a
11 = d	12 = e	13 = b	14 = b	15 = d	16 = a	17 = d	18 = b	19 = d	20 = b

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 10

Specific product requests

In this chapter

Background 313
Motion sickness 313
Emergency hormonal contraception 316
Nicotine replacement therapy 318
Malaria prophylaxis 322
Bites and stings 325
Coronary heart disease 328
Weight loss 330
Benign prostatic hyperplasia (symptoms of) 331
Chlamydia treatment 333
Future deregulations 334
Self-assessment questions 335

Background

Many patients will present in the pharmacy requesting a specific product rather than wanting advice on symptoms. They might have seen the product advertised on the television or been told to purchase it from their doctor. Regardless of the reason why they are asking for the product, it is the responsibility of the pharmacist to ensure that the patient receives the most appropriate therapy. This chapter therefore deals with situations where patients ask for a particular product or class of product but the pharmacist needs to elicit more information from the patient before complying with the request.

Motion sickness

Background

Motion sickness is a symptom complex that is characterised by nausea, pallor, vague abdominal discomfort and occasionally, vomiting. Symptoms of fatigue, weakness, inability to concentrate can also be observed prior to nausea. Over prolonged exposure to motion, symptoms tend to resolve. For example, sea sickness at the beginning of a voyage disappears over time – a characteristic called adaptation or habituation. Pharmacists are frequently asked to recommend a product, especially by anxious parents. Motion sickness can affect any individual and involve any form of movement, from moving vehicles to fairground rides.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The exact prevalence of motion sickness is unknown. Children between the ages of 2 and 12 are most commonly affected and it tends to affect women more than men. However, certain sectors of the population understandably show a higher prevalence rate than the normal population, for example naval crew and pilots.

Aetiology

It is widely believed that motion sickness results from the inability of the brain to process conflicting information received from sensory nerve terminals concerning movement and position, the sensory conflict hypothesis. Motion sickness can occur when motion is expected but not experienced, or the pattern of motion differs from that previously experienced.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

First generation antihistamines (cyclizine, cinnarizine, meclozine and promethazine) and anticholinergics (hyoscine and scopolamine) are routinely recommended to prevent motion sickness. All have shown various degrees of effectiveness. A Cochrane review of scopolamine identified 14 studies ($n = 1025$) and found scopolamine to be superior to placebo and some other treatments (metoclopramide), and as good as antihistamines (Spinks et al 2011).

Ginger has long been advocated for use as an antiemetic. A review by Chrubasik and colleagues (2005)

Table 10.1
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for travel sickness

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Cyclizine (Valoid)	>6 years	Dry mouth, sedation	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Angle-closure glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Standard references state OK, although some manufacturers advise avoidance
Cinnarizine (Stugeron 15)	>5 years				
Meclozine (Sea-Legs)	>2 years				
Promethazine (Avomine)	>5 years				
Hyoscine					
Joy-Rides	>3 years	Dry mouth, sedation	Increased anticholinergic side effects with TCAs and neuroleptics	Angle-closure glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Avoid if possible in pregnancy. In breastfeeding, may cause drowsiness, which would lead to poor feeding in long-term use but OK for short journeys
Kwells	>10 years				
Kwells Kids	>4 years				

identified four exploratory studies of ginger in the prevention of motion sickness. The results of these studies suggested ginger was better than placebo, and similar in efficacy to other pharmacological agents. However, the studies were often in small numbers of patients, and of uncertain quality; the authors of the review concluded that further studies are required to confirm the effectiveness of ginger for motion sickness.

Non-pharmacological approaches to the prevention of motion sickness using acupressure are also available OTC. Bruce et al (1990) investigated the use of Sea Band acupressure bands versus hyoscine and placebo. Eighteen healthy volunteers were subjected to simulated conditions to induce motion sickness. The findings showed that whilst hyoscine exerted a preventative effect, Sea Bands were no more effective than placebo. Further trials have confirmed these findings, although 1 small trial by Stern et al (2001) reported positive findings. However, accurate placement of the Sea Band seems to be important, and further trials are needed as acupressure has shown positive effects for nausea and vomiting associated with pregnancy.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for motion sickness reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 10.1. They are most effective when given prior to exposure and products should be selected based on matching the length of the journey with the duration of action of each medicine (see Hints and Tips Box 10.1).

Antihistamines

Antihistamines used in products for motion sickness are first generation H_1 antagonists and are associated with sedation. They therefore have the same side effects, interactions and precautions in use as other first generation antihistamines used in cough and cold remedies. For further information see page 8.

Cyclizine (Valoid)

Cyclizine is prescribed very rarely. It is subject to abuse by drug misusers and many pharmacies do not stock it. If taken, adults and children over 12 should take one tablet (50 mg) three times a day. The dose for children over the age of 6 is half the adult dose.

Cinnarizine (Stugeron 15)

Adults and children over 12 should take two tablets 2 hours before travel. The dose can be repeated every 8 hours (1 tablet) if needed. For children aged between 5 and 12 the dose is half the adult dose.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 10.1: TRAVEL SICKNESS

How to minimise motion	Planes – sit over the wing Ships – sit in the middle close to the water line Cars – sit in the front Avoid rear facing seats in any form of transport Focus on stationary objects Avoid alcohol or overeating before journeys Avoid reading or focusing on games Ensure good ventilation, for example open a window
Dry mouth problems	Many people will complain of a dry mouth with travel sickness medicines. This is easily overcome by sucking a sweet, which will stimulate saliva production
Matching up length of journey with product	Hyoscine should be recommended for journeys up to 4 hours; cinnarizine for journeys over 4 hours but fewer than 8 hours and promethazine and meclozine for journeys longer than 8 hours

Meclozine (Sea-Legs)

Adults and children over 12 years should take two tablets (25 mg) 1 hour prior to travel, however as activity lasts 24 hours the dose can be taken the night before travel. Children aged between 6 and 12 years should take half the adult dose (one tablet, 12.5 mg) and for children over 2, half a tablet (6.25 mg) should be taken. The dose can be repeated every 24 hours if needed.

Promethazine (Avomine)

Avomine can be given for both prevention and treatment of travel sickness. For prevention, adults and children over the age of 10 should take one tablet at least 1 or 2 hours before travel. For treatment, 1 tablet should be taken as soon as sickness is felt followed by a second tablet 6 to 8 hours later. For children over 5 the dose should be half that of the adult dose in both prevention and treatment. Promethazine is also available as Phenergan, and can be given to children from the age of 2 years.

Hyoscine

Hyoscine can be taken either orally (e.g. Joy Rides and Kwells) or transdermally (e.g. Scopolamine patches – although these were discontinued in September 2006). Products should be taken 20 to 30 minutes before the time of travel; because they have a short half life they have a short duration of action and the dose might therefore have to be repeated on journeys longer than 4 hours. Anticholinergic side effects are more obvious than with antihistamines and it does interact with other medicines that have anticholinergic side effects and should therefore not be co-prescribed. Because hyoscine hydrobromide crosses the blood–brain barrier it can cause sedation. It appears to be safe in pregnancy, although the manufacturers state it should be avoided.

Joy-Rides

Joy rides can be given from age 3 upwards. Children aged between 3 and 4 years should take half a tablet (75 µg) and no more than 1 tablet (150 µg) in 24 hours. Children between the age of 4 and 7 should take one tablet (150 µg) with a maximum of 2 tablets (300 µg) in 24 hours and children aged between 7 and 12 should take one to two tablets.

Kwells

Kwells can only be given to children aged 10 and over. Children over 10 should take ½ to 1 tablet. For adults the dose is one tablet. The dose can be repeated every 6 hours when needed. Tablets should be taken 30 min before travel.

Kwells Kids

Kwells Kids contain half the amount of hyoscine (150 µg) than Kwells and are marketed at children under the age of 10, although older children can take them. Children aged between 4 and 10 should take half to one tablet. Like Kwells, the dose can be repeated every 6 hours when needed and be taken 30 minutes before travel.

References

Bruce DG, Golding JF, Hockenhull N, et al. Acupressure and motion sickness. Aviat Space Environ Med 1990;61:361–5.

Chrubasik S, Pittler M, Roufogalis B. Zingiberis rhizoma: a comprehensive review on the ginger effect and efficacy profiles. Phytomedicine 2005;12:684–701.

Spinks A, Wasiak J. Scopolamine (hyoscine) for preventing and treating motion sickness. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 6. Art. No.: CD002851. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002851.pub4.

Stern RM, Jokerst MD, Muth ER, et al. Acupressure relieves the symptoms of motion sickness and reduces abnormal gastric activity. Altern Ther Health Med 2001;7:91–4.

Further reading

Dahl E, Offer-Ohlsen D, Lillevold PE, et al. Transdermal scopolamine, oral meclizine and placebo in motion sickness. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1984;36:116–20.

Klocker N, Hanschke W, Toussaint S, et al. Scopolamine nasal spray in motion sickness: a randomised, controlled and crossover study for the comparison of two scopolamine nasal sprays with oral dimenhydrinate and placebo. Eur J Pharm Sci 2001;13:227–32.

Pingree BJ, Pethybridge RJ. A comparison of the efficacy of cinnarizine with scopolamine in the treatment of seasickness. Aviat Space Environ Med 1994;65:597–605.

Emergency hormonal contraception

Background

Emergency hormonal contraception (EHC) is one of only a handful of deregulated products, which targets preventative health care and fits with UK government public health policy. Like other Western countries, the UK has high teenage pregnancy rates and associated high abortion rates.

The intention of UK government policy on making EHC available through pharmacies was to improve access for patients requiring EHC at times when other providers might be closed, for example at weekends and evenings. This policy appears to have been effective. Since its launch in the UK in 2001 the percentage of EHC provided through community pharmacies has steadily increased (NHS Statistics 2011). Community pharmacists are now the main provider of EHC, and studies have consistently demonstrated that women obtain EHC more quickly from community pharmacies than from other providers. This is relevant as EHC is more effective the sooner it is taken after unprotected sex. The weekend and Mondays are particularly associated with increased demand for EHC services from community pharmacy.

Aetiology

The active ingredient in EHC is levonorgestrel. Its exact mechanism of action is not clear and appears to have more than one mode of action at more than one site. It is thought to work mainly by preventing ovulation and fertilisation if intercourse has taken place in the pre-ovulatory phase, when the likelihood of fertilisation is the highest. It is also suggested that it causes endometrial changes that discourage egg implantation.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

The effectiveness of levonorgestrel is hard to establish because many women will not become pregnant regardless if EHC is taken or not. However, trial data has found it to prevent 86% of expected pregnancies when treatment was initiated within 72 hours. Levonorgestrel is more effective the earlier it is taken after unprotected sex; it prevents 95% of pregnancies if taken within 24 hours of unprotected sex, 85% between 24 and 48 hours, and 58% if used within 48 to 72 hours.

Studies have shown that most women have heard of EHC (>90%), although their knowledge on when it can be taken and its effectiveness is lower; for example, less than half of women are aware of how long EHC remains effective and less than two-thirds are aware it was most effective the sooner it was taken after intercourse.

Some concerns have been raised about women abusing the EHC because of its greater accessibility. However, a review of international experience with pharmacy supply of EHC found only a small proportion of women use EHC repeatedly (6.8% using it twice in 6 months, and 4.1% using it three times) (Anderson & Blenkinsopp 2006). Further, the review found improved access of the EHC through pharmacies resulted in fewer visits to Accident and Emergency, and did not result in increased transmission of sexually transmitted diseases or risky sexual behaviours.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to EHC is discussed and summarised in Table 10.2.

Assessing patient suitability

Prior to any sale or supply of EHC the pharmacist has to be in a position to determine if the patient is suitable to take the medicine. To do this an assessment has to be made on the likelihood that the patient is pregnant:

- First, has the patient had unprotected sex, contraceptive failure or missed taking contraceptive pills in the last 72 hours? EHC can only be given to patients who present within 72 hours. If more than 72 hours have elapsed but less than 120 hours (5 days) then the patient can have an intrauterine device fitted or be prescribed ulipristal.

Table 10.2
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for EHC

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Levonelle® One-Step	>16 years	Nausea, headache, disturbed menstrual cycle	Anticonvulsants, rifampicin, griseofulvin St. John's Wort and ciclosporin	Conditions in which Levonelle® absorption may be impaired, for example Crohn's disease	Pregnancy – not applicable Breastfeeding – safe to use

- Is the patient already pregnant? Details about the patient's last period should be sought. Is the period late, and if so how many days late? Was the nature of the period different or unusual. If pregnancy is suspected a pregnancy test could be offered.
- What method of contraception is normally used? Patients who take combined oral contraceptives might not need EHC. Guidelines from the Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare (2011) state:

For one missed pill (a missed pill is defined as one that is more than 24 hours late)

No additional or emergency contraception is usually necessary. The patient should take the missed pill and continue to take the rest of the pack as usual. Emergency contraception may need to be considered if pills have been missed earlier in the packet or in the last week of the previous packet.

For two or more missed pills:

The patient should take the last pill they missed (even if this means taking two pills in one day) and continue taking the rest of the pack as usual. An additional method of contraception for the next seven days should be used. If the person has had unprotected sex in the previous seven days, and missed two or more pills (i.e. more than 48 hours late) in the first week of a pack, emergency contraception may be needed.

If pills are missed in the first week (Pills 1–7). EHC should be considered if unprotected sex occurred in the pill-free interval or in the first week of pill-taking.

If pills are missed in the second week (Pills 8–14). No indication for EHC if the pills in the preceding 7 days have been taken consistently and correctly (assuming the pills thereafter are taken correctly and additional contraceptive precautions are used).

If pills are missed in the third week (Pills 15–21). OMIT THE PILL-FREE INTERVAL by finishing the pills in the current pack (or discarding any placebo tablets) and starting a new pack the next day.

If the patient uses a progestogen-only form of contraception. After a missed or late pill a woman should be advised to abstain or use additional contraception such as condoms for the next 2 days (48 hours after the pill has been taken). Emergency contraception may be indicated if unprotected sex occurs during this 48-hour period.

A number of useful checklists have been produced and are used in practice. Many pharmacists ask patients to complete one of these forms, instead of asking potentially embarrassing questions in the pharmacy. Once the details of the form are completed, the pharmacist can decide whether EHC can be supplied to the patient.

Levonelle® One Step

Levonelle® should be taken as soon as possible after unprotected sex or contraceptive failure. The dose consists of a single tablet (levonorgestrel 1500 µg). About one in five patients experience nausea but only 1 in 20 go on to vomit. If the patient vomits within 3 hours of the first dose she should be advised that a further supply of EHC would be needed. Taking EHC can affect the timing of the next menstrual period and patients should be told that their period might be earlier or later than usual. However, if the period is different than normal or more than 5 days late then she should be advised to have a pregnancy test. A number of medicines do, theoretically, interact with Levonelle®, most notably those that are enzyme inducers and include anticonvulsants, rifampicin, griseofulvin and St. John's Wort, although the clinical significance of the interactions appear low as only a handful of drug interaction reports have been received by the manufacturers. It seems prudent, until such time that more substantial evidence is available, that patients taking these medicines are best referred to the GP. In such circumstances, increasing the dose of Levonelle® is commonly practised (although not licensed). If this is not the preferred option then an alternative form of EHC can be given.

Advanced sale of EHC is also permitted. However, pharmacists must consider the clinical appropriateness of a supply, and should consider declining repeated requests for advance supply and advise patients to use more reliable methods of contraception. See Hints and Tips Box 10.2.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 10.2: EMERGENCY HORMONAL CONTRACEPTION

Who is eligible?	Only patients over the age of 16 can be supplied with Levonelle®, although family planning services, doctors and pharmacists acting under a patient group direction can supply EHC to patients under 16
Do you have to supply EHC?	The supply of EHC is at the discretion of each pharmacist and some, for religious beliefs, might choose not to supply EHC. However, the patient should be advised on other local sources of supply so that she can obtain Levonelle®.

Reference

Anderson C, Blenkinsopp A. Community pharmacy supply of emergency hormonal contraception: a structured literature review of international evidence. Hum Reprod 2006;21(1):272–84.

Further reading

Randomised controlled trial of levonorgestrel versus the Yuzpe regimen of combined oral contraceptives for emergency contraception. Task Force on Postovulatory Methods of Fertility Regulation. Lancet 1998;352:428–33.

Piaggio G, von Hertzen H, Grimes DA, et al. Timing of emergency contraception with levonorgestrel or the Yuzpe regimen. Task Force on Postovulatory Methods of Fertility Regulation. Lancet 1999;353:721.

Web sites

British Pregnancy Advisory Service: http://www.bpas.org
Brook Advisory Centres: http://www.brook.org.uk/
Family Planning Association: http://www.fpa.org.uk
Marie Stopes International: http://www.mariestopes.org.uk
Bayer site: http://www.levonelle.co.uk/index.htm

Nicotine replacement therapy

Background

Smoking represents the single greatest cause of preventable illness and premature death worldwide. In 2010, over 80 000 people in the UK died as a result of smoking; putting this in context, smoking caused about 30% of all cancer deaths, 14% of all circulatory deaths and over 35% of all respiratory disease deaths.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The number of smokers over the age of 16 in the UK is falling – from a high of 45% in 1974 to 21% (21% of men and 20% of women) in 2010. Smoking is most common in those aged under 35; 32% in people aged between 20 and 24, and 27% in those aged 25 to 34. It is least common (12%) in people over 60. Prevalence of smoking amongst people in the routine and manual socio-economic group continues to be greater than amongst those in the managerial and professional group (29 and 14%, respectively).

Recent legislation changes to ban smoking in public places (the first country was the Republic of Ireland in 2004, and others now include England, Scotland, Finland, Italy, Australia, New Zealand, Norway, France and Malta) has been championed as having potential positive impact on smoking rates; for example, by decreasing exposure to passive smoking and increasing quit rates. To establish any effect will take time but statistical data from Ireland has shown a fall in cigarette sales and surveys in Italy show a decrease in tobacco consumption. A study in England that compared smoking prevalence a year after legislation was passed (2007) found no significant difference in the level of smoking (http://www.ic.nhs.uk/webfiles/publications/003_Health_Lifestyles/Statistics%20on%20Smoking%202011/Statistics_on_Smoking_2011.pdf; accessed 22 November 2012).

Aetiology

Hundreds of compounds have been identified in tobacco smoke, however only three compounds are of real clinical importance:

- tar-based products, which have carcinogenic properties
- carbon monoxide, which reduces the oxygen-carrying capacity of the red blood cells
- nicotine, which produces dependence by activation of dopaminergic systems.

Tolerance to the effects of nicotine is rapid. Once plasma nicotine levels fall below a threshold, patients begin to suffer nicotine withdrawal symptoms and will crave another cigarette. Treatment is therefore based on maintaining plasma nicotine just above this threshold.

Table 10.3
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines used as nicotine replacement therapy

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Nicorette	>12 years*	GI disturbances, headache, dizziness	None	Patients with heart disease and diabetes	OK
Nicotinell					OK but manufacturers of Nicotinell liquorice gum advise it not to be used in pregnancy
NiQuitin					

*Note: some formulations are only licensed for people over 18 years of age, for example Nicotinell and NiQuitin lozenges.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) has established itself as an effective treatment option. A 2008 Cochrane review (Stead et al 2008) found 111 trials (n>40 000) comparing NRT to placebo or non-NRT treatments, and the results indicated that NRT increases rates of quitting smoking by 50-70%. It is not possible to say if one delivery system is better than another because comparative trials between delivery systems have not been conducted. Personal choice will therefore be the determining factor in which is chosen as being most suitable. In addition, the effectiveness of NRT is also affected by the level of additional support provided to the smoker and many smoking cessation services are offered through pharmacy as part of their contractual arrangements with local commissioners.

Numerous intervention strategies have been used involving NRT. These include nurse-led services, workplace interventions, GP services and pharmacy-based services. A Cochrane review (Sinclair et al 2004) of pharmacy intervention assessed two trials that met the authors' inclusion criteria. Findings suggested that trained community pharmacists, providing a counselling and record keeping support programme may have a positive effect on smoking cessation rates. A 2012 review, which included the Cochrane review, reported that there was good evidence that community pharmacists can deliver effective smoking cessation campaigns, and that structured interventions and counselling were better than opportunistic intervention (Brown et al 2012).

It should be noted that relapse is a normal part of the quitting process, and occurs on average three to four times. If a smoker has made repeated attempts to stop and failed, or has experienced severe withdrawal, or has requested more intensive help, then referral to a specialist smoking cessation service should be considered.

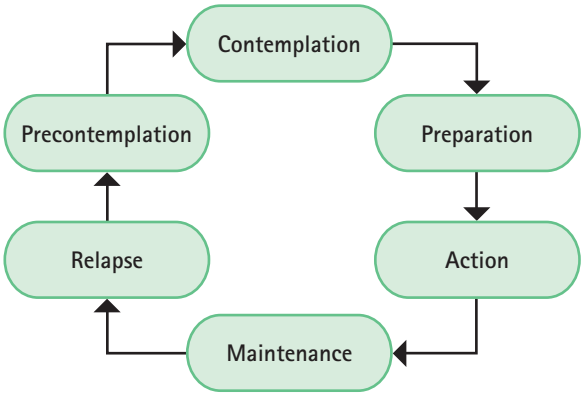


Fig. 10.1 The Prochaska & Diclemente Stages of Change Model.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for NRT reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 10.3.

Prior to instigation of any treatment it is important that the patient does want to stop smoking. Work has shown that motivation is a major determinant for successful smoking cessation and interventions based on the transtheoretical model of change put forward by Prochaska and colleagues have proved effective (Fig. 10.1). The model identifies six stages, progress through which is cyclical, and patients need varying types of support and advice at each stage.

Most patients who ask directly for NRT will be at the preparation stage of the model and ready to enter the action stage. However, a small number of patients may well be buying NRT to please others and are actually in

the precontemplation stage and do not want to stop smoking. Several studies have shown that approximately two-thirds of current smokers want to give up smoking, with three-quarters having tried to give up smoking at some point in the past.

NRT is formulated as gum, lozenges, patches, nasal spray, inhalator and sublingual tablets; therefore there should be a treatment option to suit all patients. When first deregulated, product licence restrictions did not allow OTC sale to certain patient groups such as those with heart disease, diabetes or pregnancy. However, in 2006, the Department of Health decided to lift the restrictions on NRT to these patient groups and people over the age of 12. The recommendation, according to the DoH, was based on strong evidence that it is 'far more harmful' for these groups to continue smoking than to use NRT. For those people under 18 years old treatment is generally limited to no more than 12 weeks, after which they should seek medical advice if treatment is still needed.

A number of approaches to NRT regimens are advocated. In general, the strength of the formulation is tailored to the number of cigarettes smoked and one form of NRT is tried at a time. However, it is possible for patients to use both patches and nicotine gum together, and there is evidence that this produces better results in patients with a high level of dependence. Additionally, patients can now use NRT to 'cut down' on the number of cigarettes smoked.

Side effects with NRT are rare and are either normally limited to gastrointestinal (GI) problems associated with accidental ingestion of nicotine when chewing gum, or local skin irritation and vivid dreams associated with patches. Headache, nausea and diarrhoea have also been reported. NRT appears to have no significant interactions with other medicines.

Nicorette

Nicorette is available as gum (2 and 4 mg), inhalation cartridge (10 and 15 mg), microtab (2 mg), nasal spray (10 mg) patches (5, 10 and 15 mg or 'invisipatches' 10, 15 and 25 mg) mouth spray (1 mg/spray) lozenge (2 mg) and combination packs (patch and gum).

Gum

Nicorette gum is available as either fruit or mint flavours (unflavoured gum leaves a bitter taste in the mouth). The strength of gum used will depend on how many cigarettes are smoked each day. In general, if the patient smokes less than 20 then the 2 mg gum should be used. If more than 20 cigarettes per day, then the 4 mg strength may be needed. A maximum of 15 pieces of gum can be chewed in any 24-hour period.

Inhalation cartridge

The inhalator can be particularly helpful to those smokers who still feel they need to continue the hand-to-mouth movement. Each cartridge is inserted into the inhalator and air is drawn into the mouth through the mouthpiece. Inhalators can be used to either reduce the number of cigarettes smoked or as part of a quit attempt. For the 10 mg inhalator a maximum of 12 cartridges per day can be used. Each cartridge can be used for approximately four sessions, with each cartridge lasting approximately 20 minutes of intense use. For the 15 mg inhalator a maximum of six cartridges can be used. Each cartridge can be used for approximately eight 5-minute sessions, with each cartridge lasting approximately 40 minutes of intense use.

The amount of nicotine from a puff is less than that from a cigarette. To compensate for this it is necessary to inhale more often than when smoking a cigarette.

Microtabs (2 mg)

Microtabs are licensed for either smoking cessation or smoking reduction. For smoking cessation, the standard dose is one tablet per hour in patients who smoke less than 20 cigarettes a day (doubled for heavy smokers). This can be increased to two tablets per hour if the patient fails to stop smoking with the one tablet per hour regimen or for those whose nicotine withdrawal symptoms remain so strong they believe they will relapse. Most patients require between 8 and 24 tablets a day, although the maximum is 40 tablets in 24 hours. Treatment should be stopped when daily consumption is down to 1 or 2 tablets a day.

For those reducing the number of cigarettes smoked, the tablets should be used in between cigarettes to try and prolong the smoke-free period.

Nasal spray (each spray delivers 0.5 mg nicotine)

At the start of treatment one spray should be put into each nostril, twice an hour to treat cravings. The maximum daily limit is 64 sprays; equivalent to two sprays in each nostril every hour for 16 hours. A 3-month treatment programme is advocated in smoking cessation attempts. For the first 8 weeks the patient uses the spray on a when needed basis. After which the patient should aim to reduce usage by half in the next 2 weeks and finally to nothing after a further 2 weeks.

Patches

Nicorette patches are marketed as either Nicorette 'Invisipatches' (strengths of 25, 15 and 10 mg) or Nicorette patches (strengths of 15, 10 and 5 mg). The patches are usually applied in the morning and removed at bedtime (a 16 hour patch). Dosing for either product range is the same. Patients who want to stop smoking should start on the

highest strength patch for 8 weeks before stepping down to the middle strength for a further 2 weeks. The lowest strength patch should be finally worn for another 2 weeks.

Mouth spray (each spray delivers 1 mg nicotine)

The mouth spray can be used for either smoking cessation or smoking reduction. Smokers wanting to reduce the number of cigarettes smoked should use the mouth spray, as needed, between smoking episodes to prolong smoke-free intervals. For smoking cessation, one spray should be used when cravings emerge. If this first spray fails to control cravings a second spray can be used. Most smokers will require one to two sprays every 30 minutes to 1 hour. The maximum number of sprays in a 24 hour period is 64.

Lozenge (2 mg)

Lozenges, like other dose forms, can be used for either smoking cessation or smoking reduction. Most smokers require 8 to 12 lozenges per day (maximum 15 lozenges per day). Reduction strategies are the same as other dose forms in that the lozenges are used when needed between smoking cigarettes to prolong smoke-free intervals and with the intention to reduce smoking as much as possible.

Nicotinell

Nicotinell is available as gum (2 or 4 mg), patches (7, 14 and 21 mg) and lozenge (1 and 2 mg). The Nicotinell range is promoted for smoking cessation rather than smoking reduction.

Nicotinell gum

Nicotinell gum is flavoured and available as fruit, mint or liquorice. The dosage and administration of Nicotinell gum is the same as that for Nicorette gum, except that a maximum of 25 pieces can be chewed in any 24 hour period.

Patches

The patches are worn continuously and changed every 24 hours, thus Nicotinell patches are suitable for those smokers who must have a cigarette as soon as they wake up, as nicotine levels will be above the threshold of nicotine withdrawal. Treatment is based on a stepwise reduction over a maximum period of 3 months. People who smoke more than 20 cigarettes a day should use the highest strength patch (TTS 30 patch, 21 mg) for 3 to 4 weeks, after which the strength of the patch should be reduced to the middle strength (TTS 20 patch, 14 mg) for a further 3 to 4 weeks before finally using the lowest patch (TTS 10 patch, 7 mg). If the patient smokes less than 20 cigarettes a day then they should start on the middle strength patch.

Lozenge

Low strength lozenges (1 mg) are recommended for those who smoke less than 20 cigarettes a day, whilst heavy smokers should use the higher strength (2 mg). Patients should be instructed to suck one lozenge every 1–2 hours when they have the urge to smoke. The usual dosage is 8 to 12 lozenges per day, with a maximum of 15 lozenges in 24 hours. Patients should be advised to gradually reduce the number of lozenges needed until they are only using one to two lozenges per day. At this point they should stop treatment.

Lozenges are mint flavoured and should be sucked until the taste becomes strong and then placed between gum and cheek (similar to the gum) until the taste fades, when sucking can recommence. Each lozenge takes approximately 30 minutes to dissolve completely.

NiQuitin

NiQuitin is available as gum (2 or 4 mg), patches (7, 14 and 21 mg) and lozenge (2 and 4 mg or NiQuitin minis, 1.5 and 4 mg).

Patches

Like Nicotinell, patches are designed to be worn continuously (24 hour patch) and dosing is based on a sequential reduction of nicotine over time. Patients who smoke more than 10 cigarettes a day should use the 21 mg patch (Step 1) for 6 weeks, followed by the 14 mg patch (Step 2) for 2 weeks and finally the 7 mg patch (Step 3) for the last 2 weeks. If the person smokes less than 10 cigarettes each day the patient should start on Step 2 for 6 weeks followed by Step 3 for a final 2 weeks.

NiQuitin lozenge

Lozenges can be used for smoking cessation or smoking reduction. The low strength lozenge (2 mg) is aimed at smokers who have their first cigarette of the day more than 30 minutes after waking up and the higher strength (4 mg) for those who smoke within 30 minutes of waking. Like patches the dose of lozenges are marketed as Steps. For smoking cessation the dosing schedule is:

Step 1 × 6 weeks	1 lozenge every 1 to 2 hours
Step 2 × 3 weeks	1 lozenge every 2 to 4 hours
Step 3 × 3 weeks	1 lozenge every 4 to 8 hours

After this programme patients can use one to two lozenges a day over the next 12 weeks when strongly tempted to smoke.

For smoking reduction, as with other products, the lozenges should be used in between cigarettes to try and prolong the smoke-free period.

Niquitin Minis lozenge

Dosing of this version of the lozenge does vary from NiQuitin lozenges. The low strength (1.5 mg) is marketed for people who smoke less than 20 cigarettes a day and the high strength (4 mg) for those that smoke more than 20 cigarettes a day. For smoking cessation, it is recommended in either strength that the person should use between 8 and 12 lozenges per day (up to a maximum of 15 per day) and stop altogether when only using one or two lozenges per day.

For smoking reduction, as with NiQuitin lozenges, the lozenges should be used in between cigarettes to try and prolong the smoke-free period.

Gum

Gum can be used for smoking cessation or smoking reduction. Like lozenges, the lower strength (2 mg) is aimed at smokers who have their first cigarette of the day more than 30 minutes after waking up and the higher strength (4 mg) for those who smoke within 30 minutes of waking. The 'chew and rest' technique, as with Nicorette and Nicotinell, is used. For smoking cessation, it is recommended in either strength that the person should use between 8 and 12 pieces of gum per day (up to a maximum of 15 per day) and stop altogether when only using one or two pieces of gum per day.

For smoking reduction, as with NiQuitin lozenges, the gum should be used in between cigarettes to try and prolong the smoke-free period.

See Hints and Tips Box 10.3 for tips on nicotine replacement therapy.

Reference

Brown D, Portlock J, Rutter P. Services to support the Healthy Living Pharmacy – a literature review. Int J Clin Pharm 2012;34(3):399–409.

Further reading

Chaplin S, Hajek P. Nicotine replacement therapy options for smoking cessation. The Prescriber 2010;5th October:62–5.

Sinclair HK, Bond CM, Stead LF. Community pharmacy personnel interventions for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2004, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD003698. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003698.pub2.

Stead LF, Perera R, Bullen C, et al. Nicotine replacement therapy for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD000146. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000146.pub3.

Web sites

NHS Information centre: statistics on smoking, 2010: http://www.ic.nhs.uk/webfiles/publications/Health%20and%20Lifestyles/Statistics_on_Smoking_2010.pdf

NICE PH10 Smoking cessation services: http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11925/39596/39596.pdf

NICE Pathways: http://pathways.nice.org.uk/pathways/smoking

Action on Smoking and Health (ASH): http://www.ash.org/

QUIT (UK charity): http://www.quit.org.uk/

Malaria prophylaxis

Background

Malaria is a parasitic disease spread by the female *Anopheles* mosquito. Four species of the protozoan *Plasmodium* produce malaria in humans; *P. vivax*, *P. ovale*, *P. malariae*

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 10.3: NICOTINE REPLACEMENT THERAPY

Application of patches	Patches should be applied to non-hairy skin on the hip, chest or upper arm. The next patch should be placed on a different site to avoid skin irritation
16 or 24 hour patches?	A 16-hour patch will be suitable for most patients, however, if a patient requires a cigarette within the first 20 to 30 minutes after waking then a 24-hour patch should be given If sleep disturbances are experienced with the 24 hour patches the patient can switch to a 16 hour patch or alternatively remove the 24 hour patch when they go to bed
Diabetics	Should monitor their blood sugar levels more closely than usual when NRT started as carbohydrate metabolism can be affected
Gum chewing technique – 'chew and rest' technique	The gum should be chewed slowly until the taste becomes strong, it should then be rested between the cheek and gum until the taste fades. The gum can then be re-chewed. Each piece of gum lasts approximately 30 minutes.

and *P. falciparum*. *P. falciparum* is the most virulent form of malaria and is attributable for the majority of deaths associated with malaria infection.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Malaria is a leading cause of death in areas of the world where the infection is endemic, with an estimated 650 000 deaths in 2010 (http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs094/en/). However, malaria is not only confined to endemic malarial areas and the number of cases reported in Western countries, for example the UK, is on the increase as more and more people travel to countries where malaria is common. There are between 1500 and 2000 cases reported in the UK each year. In 2010, there were 1761 cases that resulted in 7 deaths. Figures for that year show that *P. falciparum* accounted for 71% of cases (1261), *P. vivax* 20% (350), *P. ovale* 6% (99) and just 2% (37) for *P. malariae*.

For people travelling to countries where malaria is present, the risk of contracting malaria varies greatly. It depends on the area visited, the time of year, altitude (parasite maturation cannot take place above 2000 metres) and how many infectious bites are received. In general, risk tends to increase in more remote areas than in urban/tourist areas, after rainy or monsoon seasons and at low altitude. It is therefore possible to have a different risk of contracting malaria within the same country; for example, visiting the southern lowlands of Ethiopia after the rainy season would pose a very high risk whereas trekking in the Simien mountains in the north of the country during the dry season would pose minimal risk.

Aetiology

Malarial parasites are transmitted to humans when an infected female anopheles mosquito bites its host. Once in the human host, the parasites (which at this stage of their life-cycle are known as sporozoites) are transported via the bloodstream to the liver. In the liver they divide and multiply (they are now known as merozoites). After 5 to 16 days the liver cells rupture, to release up to 400 000 merozoites, which invade the human host's erythrocytes. The merozoites reproduce asexually in the erythrocytes before causing them to rupture and release yet more merozoites into the blood stream to invade yet more erythrocytes. Any mosquito that bites an infected person at this stage will ingest the parasites and the cycle will begin again. It is worth noting that *P. vivax* and *P. ovale* parasites can remain dormant in the liver, which explains why malarial symptoms can manifest months after return from an infected region.

Clinical symptoms

The most common symptom is fever, although it may initially present with chills, general malaise, nausea, vomiting and headache. Malaria should be considered as a differential diagnosis in anyone who presents with a febrile illness whilst in or recently left a malarious area. *P. falciparum* is unlikely to present more than 3 months after exposure but symptoms associated with *P. vivax* malaria can take up to a year to manifest themselves.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Effective bite prevention should be the first-line of defence against malarial infection. Total avoidance of being bitten is not practical and patients must ensure that protective measures from being bitten are always taken.

Insect repellents containing *N*,*N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET) in high concentrations is recommended (see Hints and Tips Box 10.4). In controlled laboratory studies DEET provides the longest protection compared to other products. Evidence for other insect repellents suggest they have comparable efficacy to low concentrations of DEET but have shorter duration of protection than DEET (Fradin & Day 2002).

Besides applying DEET, other preventative measures to reduce the chance of being bitten include wearing long, loose-fitting, sleeved shirts and trousers, especially at dawn and dusk. Protection of ankles appears to be particularly important. Hotel windows should be checked to make sure they have adequate screening, windows and doors should remain closed and ideally the bed should have a mosquito net. Mosquito nets do reduce the incidence of being bitten. Ideally they should be impregnated with insecticide as they are more effective than non-impregnated nets (Lengeler 2004). If the person is travelling to more remote areas they should purchase their own mosquito net that has been impregnated with an insecticide. There are a number of travel centres and specialist outdoor shops where such products, including insecticidal impregnated clothes, can be bought.

Chemoprophylaxis

In addition to taking precautions to avoid being bitten, travellers should also take antimalarial medication. Chloroquine and proguanil are licensed for pharmacy sale when used for prophylaxis of malaria and have proven efficacy but drug resistance to these two medicines (e.g. chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum*) is now widespread, and limits their usefulness.

It is important to check current guidelines for the destination the person is travelling to or through. Two easily available UK reference sources in which

Table 10.4
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines for malaria prophylaxis

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Chloroquine	All ages	GI disturbances and visual problems	Amiodarone, ciclosporin, cimetidine, digoxin	Avoid in epilepsy	OK
Proguanil		Diarrhoea	None	Renal impairment	

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 10.4: MALARIA

Application of DEET	The concentration of DEET in commercial products varies widely. Products with concentrations in excess of 50% can cause skin irritation and occasionally skin blistering. It is advisable that these are patch tested first before widespread application The higher the concentration of DEET, the greater length of protection: • 50% DEET provides protection for up to 12 hours • 30% DEET provides protection for up to 6 hours • 20% DEET provides protection for 1 to 3 hours Note-reapplication is necessary after swimming or sweating DEET can damage certain plastics, for example sunglasses. It is important to emphasise to the patient that they wash their hands after applying DEET Make sure exposed areas such as feet and ankles are adequately protected DEET reduces the effectiveness of sunblock but sunblock does not effect the effectiveness of DEET
Electronic mosquito repellents	These products are designed to repel female mosquitoes by emitting high-pitched sounds almost inaudible to the human ear. There is no evidence in field studies to support any repelling effects
Alternative remedies	There is currently insufficient evidence supporting the use of vitamin B_1, garlic, tee tree oil, herbal remedies, Marmite or repellents containing lemon eucalyptus (e.g. Mosi-guard) or picaridin They should not be routinely recommended

recommendations can be found are the *British National Formulary* and *MIMS*. In addition a number of organisations produce reference material (e.g. the National Pharmacy Association's vaccination updates). In most instances the *MIMS* would be a first-line reference source as the guidelines are updated monthly (compared to the *British National Formulary's* biannual publication) and are more likely to be still up to date. For people who are travelling to very high risk areas (usually sub-Saharan Africa or south-east Asia) or for long periods of time it might be better to refer the person to a specialist centre.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to medicines for malaria reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 10.4; useful tips relating to patients travelling to regions where malaria is endemic are given in Hints and Tips Box 10.4.

Medicine regimens

Antimalarials need to be taken at least 1 week before departure, during the stay in the malaria endemic region and for 4 weeks on leaving the area. Taking the medication prior to departure allows the patient to know whether they are going to experience side effects and, if they do, still have enough time to obtain a different antimalarial before departure. It also helps to establish a medicine-taking routine that will, hopefully, help with compliance. Medicine taking for a further 4 weeks after leaving the region is to ensure that any possible infection that could have been contracted during the final days of the stay does not develop into malaria.

Chloroquine (e.g. Avloclor, Nivaquine)

Chloroquine, as a single agent, is now almost obsolete against *P. falciparum* but still remains effective against the other forms of malaria.

Adults and children over 13 should take 300 mg of chloroquine base each week; this is equivalent to two tablets. Chloroquine can be given to children of all ages and is based on a milligram per kilogram basis. Nivaquine is formulated as a syrup (50 mg of base/5 mL) and should be recommended for children because an accurate dose can be given according to their weight.

Chloroquine is associated with a number of side effects including nausea, vomiting, headaches and visual disturbances. Most patient groups, including pregnant women can take chloroquine, although it is contraindicated in epilepsy because it might lower the seizure threshold and tonic-clonics seizure have been reported with prophylactic doses. Patients with psoriasis might notice a worsening of their condition. Chloroquine should be avoided in patients taking amiodarone because there is a risk of QT prolongation and ventricular arrhythmia. It should also be avoided with ciclosporin (increased ciclosporin levels), cimetidine (increased chloroquine levels) and possibly digoxin (increased digoxin levels).

Proguanil (Paludrine)

Proguanil is always used in combination with chloroquine unless the patient is contraindicated from taking chloroquine. Adults and children over the age of 13 should take 200 mg (two tablets) daily. Like chloroquine, it can be given to children of all ages and the dose ideally should be on a milligram per kilogram basis. To aid compliance a travel pack suitable for adults on a 2-week holiday is available that combines 14 chloroquine tablets with 98 proguanil tablets. Side effects associated with proguanil are usually mild and include diarrhoea. Patients with known mild renal impairment should take 100 mg daily and the dose should be further reduced if renal impairment is moderate or severe.

References

Fradin MS, Day JF. Comparative efficacy of insect repellents against mosquito bites. N Engl J Med 2002;347:13–18.

Lengeler C. Insecticide-treated bed nets and curtains for preventing malaria. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2004, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD000363. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000363.pub2.

Further reading

Enayati AA, Hemingway J, Garner P. Electronic mosquito repellents for preventing mosquito bites and malaria infection. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD005434. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005434.pub2.

Web sites

Fit for travel – provided by NHS Scotland: http://www.fitfortravel.nhs.uk/home.aspx

The National Travel Health Network and Centre: http://www.nathnac.org/travel/index.htm

Malaria Reference Laboratory: http://www.malaria-reference.co.uk

Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine: http://www.liv.ac.uk/lstm

Bites and stings

Background

A whole host of animals (and plants) have the capacity to cause injury to the skin, and depending on the severity can result in systemic symptoms. The majority of cases are caused by insects and are of nuisance value.

Prevalence and epidemiology

The prevalence of bites and stings is largely unknown. Most people self-treat and never seek advice. Biting and stinging insects are generally more common in warmer climates, and in warmer months, with summer being the peak time.

Aetiology

Stinging insects are broadly defined as those that use some sort of venom as a defence mechanism or to immobilise their prey. Examples include bees, wasps and ants. The venom is usually 'injected' using a stinger and include proteins and substances that help break down cells and increase the penetration of the venom, e.g. phospholipase A and hyaluronidase. People can develop allergic reactions to these substances and, unlike most biting insects, can occasionally suffer significant reactions, including anaphylaxis, to stings. The severity of the reaction depends on the quantity of the venom injected and the person's predisposition to hypersensitivity.

Biting insects are those that feed off the blood supply of humans and other creatures. They include mosquitoes, ticks, and fleas. Apart from having some sort of apparatus to draw the blood, these insects usually secrete anticoagulant-like substances to facilitate feeding. It is these anticoagulant substances that people will react to. However, it is only after repeated bites that sensitivity occurs.

Clinical features of bites and stings

Itching papules, which can be intense, is the hallmark symptom of insect bites. Weals, bullae and pain can occur, especially in sensitised individuals. Lesions are often localised and grouped together and occur on exposed areas, e.g. hands, ankles and face. Scratching can cause excoriation, which might lead to secondary infection. In contrast, stings are associated with intense burning pain. Erythema and oedema follow but usually subside within a few hours. If systemic symptoms are experienced, they occur within minutes of the sting.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Avoiding bites and stings in the first place is obviously important. This means using an effective insect repellant and avoiding times and places when insects are about. DEET is the most effective insect repellant and found in most commercial preparations. For avoidance measures and more information on DEET see page 323.

Topical OTC treatments for bites and stings include local anaesthetics, corticosteroids and antihistamines. For local anaesthetics, there is a lack of clinical data to support the use for stings and bites, either alone or in combination with antihistamines. However, their use in practice is well established as a local anaesthetic and is appropriate on theoretical grounds. Hydrocortisone, like lidocaine, has a lack of clinical data for bites and stings, but the use could be justified on theoretical grounds. Crotamiton is also marketed for conditions associated with itching. Prodigy guidance (February 2013) recommends crotamiton for local reactions to control itching, but there is a lack of evidence to support this and is based on expert opinion.

Stingose is a 20% aluminium acetate solution marketed for the treatment of bites and stings. The proposed mechanism of action is that aluminium ions cause denaturing of the proteins and bind polysaccharides in bites and stings resulting in inactivation of the venom. There are no randomised comparative or placebo controlled trials. However, a large case series of over 1000 patients found it to be effective in treating a range of marine, plant and animal bites and stings in over 99% of cases (Henderson & Easton 1980).

Antihistamines (both topical and systemic) have been used for their antipruritic properties. There are limited studies in the treatment of insect bites and stings. Some studies, with systemic antihistamines, have shown efficacy of the less sedating antihistamines for mosquito bites (Foëx & Lee 2006). They are probably most useful for their sedating properties when itching is disturbing sleep.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Prescribing information relating to products for bites and stings is reviewed in the section 'Evidence base for over-the-counter medication' is discussed and summarised in Table 10.5.

Before OTC treatment is offered, the severity of symptoms should be assessed, because small local reactions can be managed primarily with topical products whereas large local reactions will generally require systemic treatment. Patients with systemic symptoms should be referred.

If the person has been stung and the stinger is still in situ then this should be removed. The best way of removal is to scrape the stinger away with a sharp edge (e.g. card or knife blade) or alternatively a finger nail.

Small local reactions

Local pain and swelling is best treated with cold compresses/ice and, if needed, oral pain killers (ibuprofen or paracetamol). Local itching can be treated with topical crotamiton or low potency corticosteroids (hydrocortisone 1%). If itching interferes with sleep then an oral sedating antihistamine might be helpful at night.

Large local reactions

Occasionally, severe pain and swelling can extend beyond the immediate surroundings of the lesion. They should be managed with oral pain killers and antihistamines.

Local anaesthetics (e.g. benzocaine (Lanacane), lidocaine (Dermidex & Savlon Vites and Stings Pain Relief Gel))

Local anaesthetics can be used in adults and children over 4 years (see Table 10.5) and are in general applied three times a day. They are safe to use in pregnancy and are generally well tolerated. Local anaesthetics are known to be skin sensitisers and can produce contact dermatitis.

Local anaesthetic/antihistamine combination (Wasp-Eze Spray)

This product contains benzocaine 1% and mepyramine 0.5%. It can be used on people over the age of 2 years. The dose is one spray on to the affected area of skin for two to three seconds. This dose can be repeated after 15 minutes if required.

Hydrocortisone (e.g. Dermacort)

Hydrocortisone is applied once or twice a day to the affected areas. It can be used in adults and children over 10 years of age. It can be used for a maximum of 7 days.

Table 10.5
Practical prescribing: Summary of medicines used for insect bites and stings

Name of medicine	Use in children	Likely side effects	Drug interactions of note	Patients in which care exercised	Pregnancy & breastfeeding
Benzocaine					
Lanacane	>12 years	Can cause sensitisation reactions	None	None	OK
Lidocaine					
Dermidex	>4 years	Can cause sensitisation reactions	None	None	OK
Dermidex & Savlon Bites and Stings Pain Relief Gel	>12 years				
Hydrocortisone	>10 years	None	None	None	OK
Crotamiton	>3 years	None	None	None	OK
Chlorphenamine	>1 year	Dry mouth, sedation and constipation	Increased sedation with alcohol, opioid analgesics, anxiolytics, hypnotics and antidepressants	Glaucoma, prostate enlargement	Pregnancy OK. Standard references state OK, although some manufacturers advise avoidance. This is presumably because it has the potential to cause drowsiness and may lead to poor feeding
Aluminium acetate	Not stated	None	None	None	OK

Sedating antihistamines (e.g. chlorphenamine)

Chlorphenamine, as all antihistamines, are associated with sedation. They interact with other sedating medication, resulting in potentiation of the sedative properties of the interacting medicines. They also possess antimuscarinic side effects, which commonly result in dry mouth and possibly constipation. It is these antimuscarinic properties that mean patients with glaucoma and prostate enlargement should ideally avoid their use, because it could lead to increased intraocular pressure and precipitation of urinary retention.

Chlorphenamine (e.g. Piriton)

Chlorphenamine can be given from the age of 1 year. Children up to the age 2 should take 2.5 mL of syrup (1 mg) twice a day. For children aged between 2 and 5 the dose is 2.5 mL (1 mg) three or four times a day and those over the age of 6 should take 5 mL (2 mg) three or four times a day. Adults should take 4 mg (one tablet) three or four times a day.

Crotamiton (Eurax)

Adults and children over 3 years of age should apply crotamiton two or three times a day. A combination product containing hydrocortisone is available (Eurax HC) but is best avoided if possible. This is to decrease the exposure of patients to unnecessary corticosteroids and their potential adverse effects.

Aluminium acetate (Stingose)

Aluminium acetate is safe to use with any age and comes in a spray and gel. It should be applied as soon as possible after the sting, and is unlikely to be effective if used more than 30 minutes after the sting or bite. It has no significant side effects. However, some local skin reactions are possible.

References

Foëx BA, Lee C. Oral antihistamines for insect bites. Emerg Med J 2006;23:721–2.

Henderson D, Easton RG. Stingose : a new and effective treatment for bites and stings. Med J Aust 1980;2:143–50.

Further reading

Anon. Management of simple insect bites: where's the evidence? DTB 2012;50:45–8.

Web sites

Prodigy guidance: http://www.prodigy.clarity.co.uk/insect_bites_and_stings

Coronary heart disease

Background

Coronary heart disease (CHD) is the biggest preventable cause of mortality in the UK. In 2000, the UK government launched the National Service Framework (NSF) for CHD. This 10-year programme set ambitious targets to reduce the death rate from CHD, stroke and related diseases in people under 75 by at least 40% by 2010. The NSF prioritised interventions to those at greatest risk of CHD – all patients who have had an event (secondary prevention) and those who have a high risk of developing CHD (primary prevention). High risk is defined as a 10-year CHD event risk greater than 30%. The UK government has indicated that as resources permit this value should be lowered to 15%. Standard intervention for CHD includes: smoking cessation, reducing modifiable risk factors, controlling blood pressure to agreed targets and use of medication (especially statins for both primary and secondary prevention).

In 2004 simvastatin (Zocor Heart-Pro) was reclassified to pharmacy sale. The deregulation of simvastatin represented an important milestone for pharmacists because it was the first medicine to become available that targeted a chronic rather than acute condition. The intention of the reclassification was to target the moderate risk group (i.e. those the government have excluded – people with a 10–15% chance of developing CHD in the next 10 years). The deregulation of simvastatin was met with strong resistance from the medical profession and unenthusiastically received by community pharmacists. Consequently, sales of Zocor Heart-Pro were low and presumably was the basis for its discontinuation in 2010. Simvastatin is however still available through some multiple pharmacy chains (July 2012).

Prevalence and epidemiology

Figures for 2010 showed that 65 000 people in England died from CHD. Despite these alarming figures, CHD is in decline in the UK. For example, in people aged under 65 the number of deaths has fallen from approximately 80 deaths per 100 000 in 1980 to approximately 30 deaths per 100 000 in 2000. Much of this fall can be attributed to modifying risk factors (e.g. stopping smoking) and drug intervention. However, within the population there are major health inequalities. For example, people from lower social classes are more likely to suffer from CHD – working men in social class V (unskilled occupations) are 50% more likely to die than men in the population as a whole. People from some ethnic backgrounds have a much higher risk for developing CHD. In the UK, people of south Asian descent have a 40% greater risk of CHD than white people. Geography also plays a part with people from southern England having lower death rates than northern England and Scotland.

Aetiology

Atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries is responsible for CHD. This usually begins before adulthood and is a complex process. Exactly how atherosclerosis begins or what causes it is not known. Current thinking is the innermost layer of the artery (endothelium) becomes damaged. Over time fats, cholesterol, platelets, cellular debris and calcium are deposited in the artery wall. Collagen is synthesised and makes a fibrous cap around damaged tissue and is known as a plaque. This narrows the coronary artery and the reduced supply of oxygen to the heart muscle causes coronary ischaemia. This can present as angina, myocardial infarction, unstable angina, or sudden death.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Simvastatin was deregulated to OTC sale based on POM trial data. There have been no trials conducted with simvastatin on the group of patients that the OTC product is designed to target. However, based on evidence from clinical trials, simvastatin is considered likely to confer benefits in terms of reducing CHD events. It has been shown to lower low-density lipoprotein-cholesterol by about 27% in practice.

Practical prescribing and product selection

The pharmacist has an important role in getting people to understand the risk factors associated with CHD and what they can do to reduce their risk. The main advice to give people is summarised in Table 10.6.

Table 10.6
Lifestyle measures to prevent CHD

Measure	
Smoking cessation	Stopping smoking has been shown in several large cohort studies to decrease associated risks. For CHD, the risk of coronary events declines in 2–3 years to that of people who have never smoked. The risk of stroke declines more slowly
Exercise	People who are moderately physically active have a 30–50% lower risk of CHD than people who are sedentary Moderate-to-high physical activity also reduces the risk of stroke. It also helps control weight, BP, and diabetes; protects against osteoporosis; and increases well-being. Offer advice on gradually increasing exercise, if appropriate; about 60% of men and 70% of women in the UK are considered to be sedentary. Brisk walking for half an hour (or more) per day reduces the relative risk of CHD by about 20%. It is not necessary to participate in sport or weight training activities to achieve exercise targets: brisk walking, climbing stairs, and heavy housework are all moderate-intensity physical activities.
Dietary management Up to 30% of all deaths from CHD have been attributed to unhealthy diets	Replace saturated and *trans*-fats with unsaturated fats (especially monounsaturated and non-hydrogenated polyunsaturated fat). Increase consumption of omega-3 fatty acids from fish oil or plant sources. Consume a diet high in fruits, vegetables, nuts, and whole grains and low in refined grains. Replace butter with olive oil and monounsaturated margarine (e.g. rapeseed- or olive-oil based). Eat less red meat (replace beef, lamb, and pork with poultry). If eating red meat, use lean cuts. Remove the skin from poultry. Eat more fish, including at least one portion of oily fish per week, e.g. mackerel, herring, kipper, pilchard, sardine, salmon, or trout. Eat more bread (especially wholegrain bread). Eat more root vegetables and green vegetables. Eat fruit every day. Eat fewer commercial bakery and deep-fried foods (these contain high levels of *trans*-fats and sugar), Aim to eat five portions of fruit and vegetables every day. Tinned and frozen fruit and vegetables are as good as fresh vegetables. Reduce salt intake.
Weight control Excess weight is associated with raised BP, raised blood cholesterol, Type 2 diabetes, and low levels of physical activity, all of which increase the risk of CHD	Encourage all obese and overweight* people to lose weight, aiming towards a BMI of less than 25. Even if a BMI less than 25 cannot be achieved, a reduction in 5–10% of initial bodyweight still has significant health benefits. The risk of CHD is 2–3 times greater in overweight women than in lean women. The risks are further increased when fat is concentrated mainly in the abdomen (central obesity). Frequent fluctuations in weight are also associated with an increased risk of CHD. Weight-management programmes must therefore aim to maintain weight loss, not just to achieve initial weight loss.

Continued

Table 10.6 (Continued)

Measure	
Alcohol consumption Men should limit their alcohol consumption to a maximum of 21 units per week (i.e. a maximum of 3 units per day). For women, the maximum is 14 units per week (i.e. a maximum of 2 units per day) In the UK 26% of men already drink more than 21 units per week, and 15% of women drink more than 14 units per week.	Up to 2 units of alcohol per day is associated with a 20% relative risk reduction of CHD and all types of alcohol have been associated with lowering the risk of CHD; the effect is not solely confined to red wine. The pattern of drinking is also important. Consumption of alcohol on at least 3–4 days per week has been found to be inversely associated with the risk of myocardial infarction in men. Conversely binge drinking is associated with increased mortality and fatal myocardial infarction. There is not enough information available to justify encouraging those who do not drink alcohol to start doing so. Moderate drinking is likely to have most benefits in people who are at highest risk of CHD, i.e. middle aged and elderly people. In younger people (who are at low risk of CHD) the risks of alcohol-related problems, such as accidents, may outweigh the potential benefits. There are also concerns that moderate drinking may increase the risk of breast cancer in young women (less than 50 years). More information on units available at http://www.alcoholandyou.org.uk/default.html (accessed 27 November 2012).

BP, blood pressure.
*Overweight BMI >25; Obesity >30.

Recommendation of simvastatin is not based on the person's cholesterol measurements but on their risk factors. OTC sale of simvastatin can be made to:

- all men aged between 55 and 70 years
- men aged between 45 and 55, and women aged over 55, who have one or more of the following risk factors: family history of CHD, smoker, overweight or of South Asian family origin.

The dose is one tablet per day, preferably in the evening. It has very few side effects (even at high doses) and are classed as rare (>1/10 000, <1/1000), and include GI upset (e.g. abdominal pain, flatulence, nausea and vomiting) and central nervous system effects such as dizziness, blurred vision and headache. Simvastatin can also cause reversible myositis (unexplained generalised muscle pain, tenderness or weakness not associated with flu, exercise or recent strain or injury) and if suspected treatment should be discontinued. It can interact with other fibrates, azole antifungals, ciclosporin, nefazadone and macrolide antibiotics (increased risk of myopathy). It also can affect warfarin levels and should not be given with grapefruit juice (grapefruit juice inhibits cytochrome P450 3A4 and increases simvastatin levels).

Simvastatin is not intended for those who are known to have existing CHD, diabetes, history of stroke or peripheral vascular disease, familial hypercholesterolaemia or hypertension. These people should be referred to their GP.

Web sites

UK Department of Health information on CHD:
http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Policyandguidance/Healthandsocialcaretopics/Coronaryheartdisease/index.htm

Weight loss

Background

Obesity is a growing epidemic, particularly in Western countries. As a consequence the risk of diseases such as diabetes and cardiovascular disease are also increasing, resulting in a situation where the current and future generations could have a shorter life span than their parents. Although a number of measures of obesity have been proposed, the internationally accepted measure is the body mass index (BMI). This is calculated as the weight (kg) divided by height squared (m^2). A BMI of over 25 is classified as overweight and for obesity the value is 30.

Prevalence and epidemiology

In 2010, just over a quarter of adults (26%) in England were classified as obese and is almost double the values seen in 1993. Figures are even higher for those classed as

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 10.5: WEIGHT LOSS

Realistic weight loss goals	Recommended goals are 1–4 kg per month in the short term, and 10–20% of body weight in the medium to long term.
Exercise	People should be encouraged to start with regular, moderate exercise (e.g. brisk walking) three times a week, with the aim of increasing exercise to a minimum of 80 minutes per day to maintain weight loss

overweight – 42% of men 32% of women. This equates to 63% of adults being overweight or obese. Figures for Wales and Scotland are similar.

Aetiology

Although a number of causes of obesity have been proposed, and genetics may play an important role, for a significant proportion of the population it results from an imbalance between energy intake (food and beverages) and energy expenditure (exercise). Other factors associated with obesity include cultural norms, socioeconomic status, gender and ethnicity. See Hints and Tips Box 10.5 for guidance on weight loss.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Diet and exercise are still considered the first-line treatment of obesity. Orlistat inhibits pancreatic and gastric lipase, which reduces the absorption of fat from the gut. Clinical trials have shown that orlistat produces a modest weight loss of approximately 5–10% of body weight (Hill et al 1999). The best results with orlistat are seen in the short term (6–12 months); long-term results rely heavily on lifestyle changes.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Orlistat (Xenical)

Orlistat is indicated for weight loss in adults (18 or over) who are overweight (body mass index ≥28 kg/m^2) and should be taken in conjunction with a mildly hypocaloric, lower-fat diet.

The recommended dose of orlistat is one 60 mg capsule three times daily. The capsule should be taken immediately before, during or up to 1 hour after each main meal. If a meal is missed or contains no fat, the dose of orlistat should not be taken. If weight loss has not been achieved after 12 weeks then the patient should stop taking orlistat.

Side effects are largely GI and include faecal urgency and incontinence, oily evacuation and spotting, flatus and abdominal pain. These can be minimised by restricting fat intake to less than 20 g per meal. Supplementation with fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E and K) is recommended and can be achieved by taking a multivitamin. Because of the effect on vitamin K levels, patients on warfarin should avoid using orlistat. Orlistat may decrease ciclosporin levels and requires close monitoring. There is limited data of orlistat being used in pregnant and breastfeeding women and is therefore not recommended.

Reference

Hill J, Hauptman J, Anderson J. Orlistat, a lipase inhibitor, for weight maintenance after conventional dieting: a 1-y study. Am J Clin Nutr 1999;69:1108–16.

Further reading

Lindgarde F. The effect of orlistat on body weight and coronary heart disease risk profile in obese patients: the Swedish Multimorbidity Study. J Intern Med 2000;248:245–54.

Benign prostatic hyperplasia (symptoms of)

Background

Tamsulosin was reclassified from POM to P in the UK in spring 2010. This represents the first UK medicine to treat a chronic, progressive symptomatic condition available without a prescription. This deregulation is also notable for the fact that it may encourage men to take more of an interest in their welfare through community pharmacies, especially as the majority of men with benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) do not consult their doctor when experiencing symptoms.

Prevalence and epidemiology

Men over the age of 50, commonly experience lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS). It is estimated that 30% suffer from symptoms, with the commonest cause being benign prostatic enlargement.

HINTS AND TIPS BOX 10.6: TAMSULOSIN

Contraindications	Symptoms less than 3 months duration Prostate surgery Unstable or undiagnosed diabetes Problems with liver, kidney or heart Postural hypotension Eye operation of cataract planned Recent blurred or cloudy vision that has not been investigated
Automatic referral	Men who report dysuria, haematuria, or cloudy urine, in the past 3 months, or who are suffering from a fever that might be related to a urinary tract infection
Symptoms-check questionnaire	This incorporates a quality of life score and the International Prostate Symptom Score. Low scores on both scales suggest mild symptoms and a good quality of life and tamsulosin would not be appropriate

Aetiology

LUTS in men can be caused by structural or functional abnormalities in one or more parts of the lower urinary tract. Often the prostate gland is enlarged, which places pressure on the bladder and urethra. Symptoms can also be caused via peripheral or central nervous system abnormalities that affect control of the bladder and sphincter.

Lower urinary tract symptoms

Patients will present with a range of symptoms, typically symptoms such as hesitancy, weak stream and urgency. Symptoms are often classified as being either 'obstructive' or irritative'. Obstructive symptoms are related to bladder emptying and experienced by the patient as incomplete emptying, intermittency and straining. Patients may use terms such as 'stopping and starting' or 'dribbling'. Irritative symptoms are related to bladder filling and involve increased frequency, urgency and nocturia. These symptoms, along with issues affecting quality of life are used in the manufacturer's 'Symptoms check Questionnaire'.

Evidence base for over-the-counter medication

Studies show that tamsulosin is significantly better than placebo in improving urinary flow and reducing symptoms. Tamsulosin is an alpha$_1$-adrenoceptor antagonist blocker that binds selectively and competitively to postsynaptic alpha$_1$-receptors, in particular to the subtype alpha$_1$a. Alpha$_1$-blockers relax smooth muscle in BPH producing an increase in urinary flow-rate and an improvement in obstructive symptoms.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Tamsulosin (Flomax Relief)

Tamsulosin is indicated for treatment of functional symptoms of BPH in men aged 45 to 75 years old. Men presenting with lower urinary tract symptoms, who appear to be suitable for OTC tamsulosin (see Hints and Tips Box 10.6) can be supplied an initial 14-day supply. Patients must be told that they will have to see a doctor for confirmation of the cause of their symptoms. If this takes longer than the supply of 14 days treatment then the pharmacist can provide a further 28 days treatment. In addition, if symptoms have not improved within 14 days of starting treatment, or are getting worse, the patient should stop taking tamsulosin and be referred to a doctor.

A maximum of 6 weeks treatment of tamsulosin can be supplied without an assessment by a doctor. If long-term OTC treatment is deemed appropriate then every 12 months, the patient should consult a doctor for a clinical review.

The dose is 400 μg daily (one capsule). Dizziness is the most frequently reported side effect (1.3% of patients). Other less common side effects reported include GI disturbances, headache and rash. As it is alpha-blocker it should not be given to patients receiving antihypertensive medicines with significant alpha$_1$-adrenoceptor antagonist activity (e.g. doxazosin, indoramin, prazosin, terazosin and verapamil).

Further reading

Simpson RJ, Lee RJ, Garraway WM, et al. Consultation patterns in a community survey of men with benign prostatic hyperplasia. Br J Gen Pract 1994;44:499–502.

Web sites

Royal Pharmaceutical Society Guidance: http://www.rpharms.com/practice-science-and-research-full-guidance/otc-tamsulosin-full-guidance.asp.

OTC tamsulosin: Information for pharmacists – Implementing NICE guidance: http://www.google.co.uk/url?sa=t&rct=j&q=nice%20tamsulosin&source=web&cd=1&ved=0CFMQFjAA&url=http%3A%2F%2Fwww.nice.org.uk%2Fnicemedia%2Flive%2F12984%2F48572%2F48572.doc&ei=IfcXUM6yL4fl0QX58oD4Dg&usg=AFQjCNEtTWWBC-SsnOoUtpvGMlcxAroX6g

Prostate Help Association: www.prostatehelp.me.uk

Chlamydia treatment

10

Background and prevalence

Chlamydia trachomatis is the most common sexually transmitted bacterial infection in the UK, and the incidence is increasing and in part due to it being asymptomatic. At least 70% of women and 50% of men infected are asymptomatic. In 2010, young people, aged less than 25 years, accounted for 65% of chlamydia diagnoses. In response to the growing problem, the DoH introduced the National Chlamydia Screening Programme (http://www.chlamydiascreening.nhs.uk/; accessed 27 November 2012).

Table 10.7
Possible future deregulated medicines from POM to P

Oral contraception	Low risk of side effects Fits in with government sexual health policies, especially those tackling teenage pregnancy Successful PGD in South London reported on Jan. 2012 (http://ocsotc.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/04/NHS-2012_Evaluation-of-pharmacy-provision-of-OCs-in-London-1-2012.pdf; accessed 27 November 2012)
Salbutamol	Already OTC in some countries, e.g. Singapore, New Zealand ASDA started to sell salbutamol in July 2012 under a PGD
Doxycycline (and possibly others) for malaria prophylaxis	Given current resistance to proguanil and chloroquine deregulation seems likely
Topical antibiotics for impetigo (e.g. fusidic acid, mupirocin)	Strong support from a number of studies gaining GP opinion Condition easy to identify Low risk of side effects
Topical antibiotics (e.g. erythromycin) and azelaic acid for acne	Same reasons as indicated for impetigo
Anti-retrovirals for influenza	Already established PGDs through community pharmacy Fits in with government public health policy
Antihistamines	Desloratadine and fexofenadine available OTC in some countries, e.g. Australia
Steroid-based preparations	Likely that topical and inhaled steroid products will become increasingly available to treat allergic-type conditions
Metoclopramide	Low risk of side effects Available OTC in some countries already
NSAIDs	Now that naproxen and diclofenac have been deregulated and others (e.g. mefenamic acid) are available in other countries then it appears more NSAIDs will become P medicines over time
Insomnia ('Z' drugs)	Low risk of side effects

PGD, patient group direction.

Practical prescribing and product selection

Azithromycin was reclassified in 2008. It is indicated for men and women 16 years of age or older who are asymptomatic and have tested positive for genital chlamydia infection. It is also indicated for treatment of their sexual partners without the need for a test. The dose is a single stat. dose of 1 g (2 × 500 mg tablets). Side effects that might be experienced are GI upset, namely nausea, vomiting and abdominal discomfort.

Future deregulations

Current UK government policy promotes self-care and consistently advocates the greater deregulation of medicines. However, the number of POM to P deregulations in the last few years has slowed. There have been a number of reasons cited for the recent lack of POM to P switches, which include over burdensome regulatory processes. This is evidenced by just nine switches between 2009 and 2012, with only orlistat, tranexamic acid and tamsulosin coming from new therapeutic classes. Recent applications for oral antibiotics (trimethoprim and nitrofurantoin to treat uncomplicated cystitis in women) were ultimately withdrawn in 2010 due to concerns over increasing antibiotic resistance. It appears that, for the time being, oral antibiotics, other than azithromycin will not be deregulated from POM control. Looking to the immediate future, it seems likely that more medicines to treat acute conditions will become P medicines.

Table 10.7 highlights some future candidates that are potential POM to P switches.

Self-assessment questions

The following questions are intended to supplement the text. Two levels of questions are provided; multiple choice questions and case studies. The multiple choice questions are designed to test factual recall and the case studies allow knowledge to be applied to a practice setting.

Multiple choice questions

10.1 Which antihistamine used for motion sickness is subject to abuse?

- **a.** Cinnarizine
- **b.** Cyclizine
- **c.** Promethazine
- **d.** Meclozine
- **e.** Hyoscine

10.2 What is the main side effect of Levonelle® One step?

- **a.** Vomiting
- **b.** Headache
- **c.** Diarrhoea
- **d.** Nausea
- **e.** Dizziness

10.3 In which group of the population is smoking on the increase?

- **a.** Middle-aged males
- **b.** Middle-aged females
- **c.** Teenage females
- **d.** Teenage males
- **e.** Elderly men

10.4 Which patients should use 24-h patches?

- **a.** People who smoke more than 20 cigarettes a day
- **b.** People who smoke more than 40 cigarettes a day
- **c.** People who need a cigarette within 20 minutes of waking up
- **d.** People who need a cigarette before they go to sleep
- **e.** People who smoke cigars

10.5 Which dermatological condition can be worsened by taking chloroquine?

- **a.** Psoriasis
- **b.** Acne vulgaris
- **c.** Eczema
- **d.** Rosacea
- **e.** Atopic dermatitis

10.6 How long after unprotected sex can EHC be given?

- **a.** 24 hours
- **b.** 48 hours
- **c.** 72 hours
- **d.** 96 hours
- **e.** 120 hours

10.7 What is regarded as the most important smoking-related disease?

- **a.** Lung cancer
- **b.** Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- **c.** Throat cancer
- **d.** Motor neurone disease
- **e.** Ischaemic heart disease

10.8 Patients with which condition should care be taken when recommending promethazine for motion sickness?

- **a.** Glaucoma
- **b.** Hypertension
- **c.** Peptic ulceration
- **d.** Diabetes mellitus
- **e.** Parkinson's disease

Questions 10.9 to 10.11 concern the following NRT products:

- **A.** Patch
- **B.** Gum
- **C.** Inhalator
- **D.** Lozenge
- **E.** Microtab

Select, from A to E, which of the above products:

10.9 Is most suitable for patients in which compliance may be an issue

10.10 Delivers constant levels of plasma nicotine

10.11 Is useful for those people who need to have their hands occupied

Questions 10.12 to 10.14 concern the following medicines:

A. Chloroquine
B. Proguanil
C. Hyoscine
D. NRT
E. Levonorgestrel

Select, from A to E, which of the above medicines:

10.12 Causes diarrhoea

10.13 Causes visual disturbances

10.14 Causes dry mouth

Questions 10.15 to 10.17: for each of these questions *one or more* of the responses is (are) correct. Decide which of the responses is (are) correct. Then choose:

A. If 1, 2 and 3 are correct
B. If 1 and 2 only are correct
C. If 2 and 3 only are correct
D. If 1 only is correct
E. If 3 only is correct

Directions summarised

A	B	C	D	E
a, b and c	a and b only	b and c only	a only	c only

10.15 When using DEET, the following rule(s) should be followed:

a. It should be applied regularly
b. It should be kept away from plastic
c. It should never be applied to the face

10.16 *Plasmodium falciparum* is associated with:

a. High levels of drug resistance
b. The highest incidence of death compared to other forms of malaria
c. Widespread distribution on the African continent

10.17 What side effects can be seen in patients chewing nicotine gum?

a. Taste disturbance
b. Sweating
c. GI disturbances

Questions 10.18 to 10.20: these questions consist of a statement in the left-hand column followed by a statement in the right-hand column. You need to:

- decide whether the first statement is true or false
- decide whether the second statement is true or false

Then choose:

A. If both statements are true and the second statement is a correct explanation of the first statement
B. If both statements are true but the second statement is NOT a correct explanation of the first statement
C. If the first statement is true but the second statement is false
D. If the first statement is false but the second statement is true
E. If both statements are false

Directions summarised

	1st statement	2nd statement	
A	True	True	2nd explanation is a correct explanation of the first
B	True	True	2nd statement is not a correct explanation of the first
C	True	False	
D	False	True	
E	False	False	

	First statement	*Second statement*
10.18	Antimalarials have to be taken before travel	Side effects may preclude patients from taking antimalarials
10.19	Malaria can be contracted months after return from an endemic area	The liver holds a reservoir of parasites that are hard to eradicate
10.20	Pregnancy is a contraindication for malaria prophylaxis	Infants cannot take antimalarials

Case study

CASE STUDY 10.1

Mr and Mrs J and their two children, Sammy aged 5 and Jessica aged 12 are going on their summer holidays. They want to know what travel sickness tablets they should take.

a. ***What information do you need to know before recommending a suitable product? For each question state your rationale.***

You need to know:

- *Who is affected by travel sickness: this may influence recommendation, especially if it affects one of the parents who might be driving.*
- *The length of the trip: this will influence which product will be the most appropriate. It is sensible to match up the length of journey with a medicine that has the same duration of action as the trip.*
- *Medication history: patients who are taking medication for glaucoma or prostate enlargement should avoid taking OTC medicines. Additionally, medicines with anticholinergic side effects will potentiate the side effects of OTC travel medication.*
- *Passed medication for similar journeys: it is likely that the family have had to purchase such products in the past. It is worth finding out what they were and how well tolerated they were before potentially recommending the same product.*

You find out they are going to northern France by ferry. This is a 2-hour boat journey followed by a further 2-hour drive. Mr J gets seasick and neither of the children like boats or car journeys. Jessica also suffers from narcolepsy.

b. ***What would be the best drug regimen for the family? State your rationale.***

It appears that the total journey time is relatively short and a hyoscine-based product would be the most suitable product for the two children and their father. Kwells Kids could be used by everyone; Mr J would have to take 2 tablets, Jessica 1 tablet and Sammy ½ a tablet. As Jessica has narcolepsy it is necessary to see if she takes any medication to help with the condition. If she does then checks would have to be made to ensure that Jessica could still take hyoscine.

c. ***What practical advice would you also offer the family?***

Hyoscine will cause dry mouth and potential sedation. Sucking sweets can compensate for a dry mouth. Sedation might be a problem for Mr J because he has to drive after the ferry crossing. He should be told about the possible effects of hyoscine. He might choose not to take the medication, although no alternative is available that does not cause possible sedation.

The two children might experience less nausea if they are kept occupied by playing games.

CASE STUDY 10.2

Ms HS walks into the pharmacy on Saturday morning and asks to buy the morning after pill.

a. ***What questions do you need to ask?***

You need to discover:

- *Her age*
- *How long ago did she have unprotected sex?*
- *Whether she used a form of contraception? If so, what form*
- *The date of her last period and was it different than normal.*

You find out she is 18 and had sex last night. She normally takes Microgynon. Her period was about 3 weeks ago and was the same as previous periods.

b. ***What else do you need to know?***

You also need to know about her pill-taking compliance.

She says that she has not taken her last 2 days tablets (Thursday and Friday) and doesn't know whether she should take today's tablet. She has 3 tablets left before the end of the packet.

c. ***What advice are you going to give her?***

There is no need for EHC as she has forgotten to take her tablets at the end of the cycle. She should be told to continue taking the rest of her tablets but when the last tablet is taken she should not have a 7 day pill free period but go straight on to the next packet.

Answers

1 = b	2 = d	3 = c	4 = c	5 = a	6 = c	7 = e	8 = a	9 = a	10 = a
11 = c	12 = b	13 = a	14 = c	15 = b	16 = a	17 = e	18 = a	19 = a	20 = e

Abbreviations

µg	microgram
ACE	angiotensin-converting enzyme
ADR	adverse drug reaction
CB	chronic bronchitis
CSM	Committee for the Safety of Medicines
DEET	diethyl toluamide
DPH	diphenhydramine
EHC	emergency hormonal contraception
FDA	Food and Drug Administration (equivalent to the Medicines Control Authority in the UK)
GORD	gastro-oesophageal reflux disease
GP	general practitioner
GSL	general sales list
h	hour
IHS	International Headache Society
HMG-CoA	beta-hydroxy beta-methyl glutaryl coenzyme A
HPV	human papilloma virus
HSV	herpes simplex virus
IBS	irritable bowel syndrome
IgE	immunoglobulin E
INR	international normalised ratio
IUCD	intrauterine contraceptive device
KCS	keratoconjunctivitis sicca
L	litre
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor
MAU	minor aphthous ulcers
mEq	milliequivalent
mg	milligram
MI	myocardial infarction
mL	millilitre
mmol	millimole
NRT	Nicotine replacement therapy
NSAID	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug
ORT	oral rehydration therapy
OTC	over-the-counter
P	pharmacy
PD	primary dysmenorrhoea
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PMS	premenstrual syndrome
POM	prescription-only-medicine
PV	per vagina
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
STD	sexually transmitted disease
TB	tuberculosis
TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
UTI	urinary tract infection
WHO	World Health Organization

This page intentionally left blank

Glossary of terms

Chapter 1

Atopy: A form of hypersensitivity characterised by a familial tendency.
Cervical lymphadenopathy: Enlargement of the cervical lymph nodes.
Agranulocytosis: Acute deficiency of neutrophil white blood cells leading to neutropenia.
Auroscopical examination: Examination of the ear drum by means of an apparatus that shines light onto the ear drum.
Haemoptysis: Coughing up blood.
Dyspnoea: Difficulty in breathing.
Malaise: General feeling of being unwell.
Gastro-oesophageal reflux: The back flow of gastric contents into the oesophagus.
Orthopnoea: Difficulty in breathing when lying down.
Pleurisy: Inflammation of the pleural membranes caused by the two pleural membranes adhering to one another.
Purulent: Term used to describe a material containing pus.
Rhinorrhoea: Watery nasal discharge.
Vascular engorgement: An area of tissue that has been excessively perfused with blood.
Vasodilatation: Increase in the diameter of the blood vessels.

Chapter 2

Chalazion: Also referred to as meibomian cyst.
Conjunctivitis medicamentosa: conjunctivitis caused by repeated administration of ocular eye drops, especially sympathomimetic agents. On withdrawal of the medicine the patient suffers from rebound redness of the eyes.
Glands of Zeiss and Moll: Both are located within the eyelid. The gland of Zeiss secretes sebum and the gland of Moll secretes sweat.
Hordeola: Commonly known as styes.
Limbal area: Area where the cornea meets the sclera.
Meibomianitis: Inflammation of the meibomian gland.
Photophobia: A dislike of bright lights.
Visual acuity: The ability to read text. For example, distance visual acuity is the person's ability to read letters across the room and near visual acuity is the person's ability to read letters close to.

Chapter 3

Conductive deafness: Sound waves are hindered from reaching the inner ear (e.g. by ear wax) resulting in distortion of sounds that impairs the understanding of words.
Effusion: Escape of fluid, e.g. exudates, from the ear.
FDA: US Food and Drug Administration (equivalent to the MCA in the UK).
Laceration: A tear in the skin causing a wound.
Oedematous: Abnormal accumulation in intercellular spaces of the body.
Tinnitus: A noise in the ears likened to ringing or buzzing.

Chapter 4

ADRs: Adverse drug reactions.
Amenorrhoea: Absence or the stoppage of menstruation
Haematoma: A localised collection of blood, usually clotted, in an organ, space or tissue.
Myalgia: Muscular pain.
Paraesthesia: An abnormal sensation, for example, a burning or prickling sensation.
Pericranial: Area relating to around the skull.
Purpuric rash: Rash with a distinctive red/purple colouration caused by haemorrhage of small blood vessels in the skin.

Chapter 5

Anovulatory: Term used to describe women that do not ovulate.
Bacteriuria: Bacteria in the urine.
Dyspareunia: Difficult or painful sexual intercourse.
Dysuria: Painful or difficult urination.
Haematuria: Blood in the urine.
Menarche: Onset of menstruation.
Nocturia: Excessive urination at night.
Perianal: The area around the anus.
Perineal: The area around the perineum. The perineum describes the area between the vulva and anus.

Postmenopausal women: Women that have finished menstruating. The average age for women to be postmenopausal is 51.
Prostate gland: The gland that surrounds the neck of the bladder and urethra in men.
Pyelonephritis: Inflammation of the kidney due to bacterial infection.
Suprapubic: Area above the pubic region.

Chapter 6

Annular lesions: Skin lesions that are circular.
Diverticulitis: Inflammation of a diverticulum, which is a pouch or sac. It occurs normally after herniation.
Halitosis: Bad breath.
Suprapubic: Area above the pubis area of the abdomen.
Tenesmus: Cessation of incomplete bowel evacuation.
Ureter: Tube connecting the kidney to the bladder.

Chapter 7

Atopy: Literally means 'strange disease'. The triad of atopic dermatitis, asthma and allergic rhinitis.
Comedone: A plug of oxidised sebaceous material obstructing the surface opening of a pilosebaceous follicle, commonly referred to as a blackhead.
Crust: The term given to dried exudate.
Macules: Flat stains or spots of altered skin colour.
Maculopapular: Literally a papule developed on a macule, i.e. a mixture of the two types of lesion.
Nodule: A solid elevation whose greater part lies beneath the skin surface.
Papules: Raised palpable spots
Punctiform: Pinpoint-like lesions.
Pustule: A pus-filled lesion.
Vesicles: Small, raised, fluid-filled lesions or blisters.
Wheal: Areas of transient dermal oedema. Classically associated with urticaria and also following insect bites.

Chapter 8

Abduction: The term used to describe movement of a part away from the median plane of the body, for example, moving the leg straight out to the side.
Ankylosis: When the joint becomes stiff or fused in a particular position.
Arthropathy: Pathology in a joint.
Articular cartilage: Cartilage occurring in the joint.
Disc herniation: Abnormal protrusion of the nucleus pulposus of the disc, which may impinge on a nerve root.
Epicondylitis: Inflammation of the epicondyle, which is the protuberance above the condyle. The condyle refers to the rounded part at the end of the bone used for articulation with another bone.

Chapter 9

Erythema: Redness of the skin due to capillary vasodilation.
Intertriginous area: Skin eruption on apposed skin surfaces.
Lichenification: Thickening and hardening of the skin.

Chapter 10

Erythrocytes: Alternative name for red blood cells.
Melanocytes: Cells in the skin epidermis responsible for producing melanin.

Index

Page numbers followed by 'f' indicate figures, 't' indicate tables, and 'b' indicate boxes.

A

abdomen, location of organs in, 178f
abdominal pain, 177–186
  aetiology, 178–180
  anatomy in relation to, 178f
  background, 177–185
  case study, 189–194
  causes of, 179t
  conditions affecting women, 185
  differential diagnosis, 180, 186f
  diffuse, 185
  epidemiology, 177–178
  lower abdomen, 183–184
  prevalence, 177–178
  specific questions to ask, 179t
  treatment, 185
  trigger points for referral, 185b
  upper abdomen, 180–185
  upper quadrants
    left, 180
    left and right, 182–183
    right, 181
  see also specific conditions causing
abscess, lung, 6
ACE inhibitors, coughs, 5
acetic acid, 74
Achilles tendon injuries, 274
aciclovir, cold sore treatment, 238, 239t
Acnecide, 235t
acne vulgaris, 196, 232–236
  aetiology, 232
  background, 232–235
  clinical features, 232, 233f
  conditions to eliminate, 233–234
  differential diagnosis, 232–234
  epidemiology, 232
  mild, 232, 233f
  myths surrounding, 235b
  prevalence, 232
  specific questions to ask, 233t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 234
    prescribing and product selection, 235, 235t
  trigger points for referral, 234b
acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), seborrhoeic dermatitis in, 207
acrivastine, allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–30, 31t–32t
actinic keratoses, 247
activity-related soft tissue injuries *see* soft tissue injuries
acupressure, motion sickness prevention, 314
acupuncture
  acute low back pain treatment, 265
  dysmenorrhoea management, 118
acute closed-angle glaucoma, 48, 48f
Adcortyl, 138b
adenovirus, gastroenteritis, 154
adverse drug reactions (ADRs), 5
agranulocytosis
  bleeding gums, 144
  medications causing, 21t
  medicine-induced sore throat, 20
  signs, 20, 22f
ALARM symptoms, 146–147
alcohol
  causing insomnia, 91t
  coronary heart disease prevention, 329t–330t
  excess consumption, 96, 146
alginates, dyspepsia treatment, 149, 151t, 152
alkalinising agents, cystitis treatment, 109–111
allantoin, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
allergens
  allergic conjunctivitis, 50
  allergic rhinitis, 25, 25t
  precipitating dermatitis, 240t
allergic conjunctivitis, 46f, 47t, 50–52, 51t, 62–65
allergic contact dermatitis, 212, 230
  aetiology, 240
  clinical features, 240
  prevalence, 239–240
allergic reactions
  early phase, 25
  peanuts, 71b
allergic rhinitis, 25–34, 30b
  aetiology, 25
  allergens responsible for, 25t
  background, 25–33
  causes, 26–27, 26t
  clinical features, 26
  conditions to eliminate, 26–27
  differential diagnosis, 26–27, 28f
  epidemiology, 25
  evidence base for OTC medicines, 27
  persistent, 26
  prevalence, 25
  specific questions to ask, 26t
  treatment
    allergen avoidance, 27
    medication, 27–30
    prescribing and product selection, 30, 31t–32t
    systemic therapy, 29–33, 31t–32t
    topical therapy, 29–30, 31t–32t
  trigger points for referral, 27b
  viral, 25
allylamines, fungal skin infections treatment, 213
almond oil, 71
alopecia
  androgenetic *see* hair loss
  areata, 220
  traction, 220
aloxiprin, 266t–268t
Alphosyl 2 in 1 Shampoo, 203t
alternative therapies *see* complementary and alternative therapies
aluminium acetate, bites and stings treatment, 327, 327t
aluminium salts, dyspepsia treatment, 149, 151, 151t
alveoli, 2
alverine
  dysmenorrhoea management, 118
  irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 172
amenorrhoea, 118
ammonia
  cold sore treatment, 239t
  in nappy rash, 302
ammonium salts, 6–8
amorolfine, onychomycosis, 216–218, 217b, 217t
Anacal, 177t
anal cushions, 173
anal fissure, 174
analgesia/analgesics
  acute low back pain treatment, 263

aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138, 138t
compound *see* compound analgesics
headache treatment, 85
proprietary, available OTC, 266t–268t
sore throat treatment, 23
anal itching, 174
Anbesol, 139
androgen antagonists, dry eye, 57t
androgenetic alopecia *see* hair loss
angina
atypical, 148
pain, 182
see also coronary heart disease
angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, coughs, 5
angular cheilitis, 237, 237f
ankle
anatomy, 274f
soft tissue injuries, 274
sprains, 274, 279–281
ankylosing spondylitis, 262, 280t
Anodesyn, 177t
Anopheles mosquito, 322–323
antacids, dyspepsia treatment, 148–152, 151t, 152b
antazoline
allergic conjunctivitis treatment, 51t
allergic rhinitis treatment, 29, 31t–32t
anterior chamber angle, 43
anterior cruciate ligament, 273
antibacterial agents/antibiotics
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138, 138t
bacterial conjunctivitis treatment, 48–50
possible future deregulation, 333t
sore throat treatment, 21–23
styes treatment, 55–56
sulphur-containing, 21t
anticholinergics
as a cause of dry eye, 57t
motion sickness prevention, 313
antiepileptics, insomnia-causing, 91t
antifungal agents
fungal skin infections treatment, 213–215
sore throat treatment, 21–23
antihistamines
acute low back pain treatment, 264
allergic conjunctivitis treatment, 51t
allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–33
as antitussives, 8, 10t, 11
atopic dermatitis treatment, 294–296, 295t
bites and stings treatment, 326, 327t
common cold treatment, 15, 17, 17t
insomnia treatment, 92–93
motion sickness prevention, 313–314, 314t
non-sedating, 30–32
possible future deregulation, 333t
in pregnancy, 30
sedating, 32, 295–296, 327
anti-inflammatory drugs
haemorrhoid treatment, 176
sore throat treatment, 23–24, 24t
see also non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
antimalarial medication, 323–324
antioxidants in food, 242t
antipyretics, 298
anti-retrovirals, possible future deregulation, 333t
antispasmodics, irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 169–170
antitussives (cough suppressants), 8–9, 10t, 11
antivirals, cold sore treatment, 238
Anusol, 177t
anxiety, 121
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers), 22f, 134–139
aetiology, 134
background, 134
causes of, 135–137, 135t
clinical features, 135
conditions to eliminate, 135–137
differential diagnosis, 134, 137f
epidemiology, 134
herpetiform, 136, 136f
major, 135, 136f
medicine-induced, 136
minor, 134–135, 135f, 140
prevalence, 134
specific questions to ask, 135t
trauma-related, 136, 136f
treatment, 138b
evidence base for OTC medication, 137–138
prescribing and product selection, 138–139, 138t
trigger points for referral, 137b
apocrine sweat glands, 196
appendicitis, 184
aqueous, 43
arachis ear drops, 70–71
ARIA (Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma) guidelines, 25
arrector pili muscle, 195–196
arteritis, temporal, 84
artificial tears, 57
Aspergillus niger, otitis externa, 72
aspirin
acute low back pain treatment, 263, 268
in children, 268b
gargles, sore throat treatment, 23
headache treatment, 85
proprietary brands, 266t–268t
asthma, 5
astringents, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
atherosclerosis, 328
athlete's foot, 210–211, 212f
atopic dermatitis, 208–209, 291–296, 295b
aetiology, 292
background, 291–296
clinical features, 292–293, 292f–293f
conditions to eliminate, 293
differential diagnosis, 292
distribution, 292f
epidemiology, 291–292
prevalence, 291–292
severity and social impacts of, 294t
specific questions to ask, 293t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 294
prescribing and product selection, 294–296, 295t
trigger points for referral, 294b
atrophic vaginitis, 109, 113
Audax, 74
auricular haematoma, 73
Auspitz' sign, 199
autoinoculation, human papilloma virus, 222
Avloclor, 325
Avoca, 226t, 227
Avomine, 314t, 315
Axsain, 264
azelastine, allergic rhinitis treatment, 29, 31t–32t, 33
azithromycin, chlamydia treatment, 334

B

babies, crying, 289–290, 290t, 310b–311b
Bacillus cereus, diarrhoea, 154
back pain, low *see* low back pain, acute
bacterial infections
conjunctivitis *see* conjunctivitis
diarrhoea, 154
meningitis, 300
pneumonia *see* pneumonia

rhinosinusitis, 13
sore throat *see* sore throats
see also specific infections
bacterial vaginosis, 111, 113
Balmosa, 264
barrier creams, nappy rash, 304–305
basal cell carcinoma, 224, 245–246
eyelid, 55
pinna, 73
basal cell papilloma, 224, 224f
Bazuka, 226b, 226t
Bazuka Extra Strength, 226b, 226t
beclometasone, allergic rhinitis treatment, 31t–32t, 32
Beconase Hayfever, 32
Behcet's syndrome, 137
Bell's palsy as a cause of dry eye, 57
Benadryl Allergy Oral Syrup, 30
Benadryl Allergy Relief, 30
Benadryl One-a-Day, 30
benign prostatic hyperplasia symptoms, 331–333, 332b
Benylin, 9
benzalkonium chloride, 58b
benzocaine
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138t, 139
bites and stings treatment, 326, 327t
haemorrhoid treatment, 176
sore throat treatment, 21, 23–24, 24t
benzoic acid
as a food additive, 242t
fungal skin infections treatment, 213–214, 214t
benzoyl peroxide
acne vulgaris treatment, 234–235, 235t
products containing, 235t
benzydamine, sore throat treatment, 23–24, 24t
benzyl benzoate, scabies treatment, 230–231, 231t
beta-blockers
as a cause of dry eye, 57t
insomnia-causing, 91t
sympathomimetic interaction, 17–18
Bifidobacterium, irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 171
bifozanole, fungal skin infections treatment, 213, 214t
biliary colic, 181
bisacodyl, constipation treatment, 165t, 166b, 167
bismuth, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
bismuth subsalicylate, diarrhoea treatment, 158, 159t, 160
bites *see* insect bites and stings
bladder inflammation *see* cystitis
bleeding
dysfunctional uterine, 118
heavy menstrual *see* menorrhagia
rectal, 173–174, 173t, 175f
upper gastrointestinal tract, 174
blepharitis
aetiology, 53
as a cause of dry eye, 56
clinical features of, 53–54, 54f
treatment, 55
unresponsive to therapy, 54
Blistex, 239t
body lice, 283
body mass index (BMI), 330
body temperature, 296
bone, 259
Bonjela Cool, 138–139
brain, 79
Brevoxyl, 235t
British Thoracic Society Guidelines, cough, 2
Brochlor Eye Ointment, 50
Brolene and Golden Eye drops, 50–51, 52b
bronchi, 2
bronchiectasis, 5
bronchioles, 2
bronchitis
acute, 4
chronic, 4
viral, 2–3
Buccastem M, 87, 88t, 97
buclizine, headache treatment, 85, 87
budesonide, 32
bulk-forming laxatives, 164–165, 165t
bullae, 198t
bunions, 228
bursae, 259
bursitis, 275
Buscopan
dysmenorrhoea management, 118–119
irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 171–172
butterbur, allergic rhinitis treatment, 33

C

caffeine
acute low back pain treatment, 264
and insomnia, 91
proprietary brands, 266t–268t
calcium, premenstrual syndrome management, 121–122, 122t
calcium antacids, 151, 151t
calluses *see* corns and calluses
Calpol, 77b, 299
Calprofen, 299
camphor oil, 71
Campylobacter gastroenteritis, 154
Candida albicans, 112, 139
Candida sp.
oral, 22f
skin, 210
candidiasis
nappy rash, 304, 304t
oral *see* oral thrush
vulvovaginal *see* vulvovaginal candidiasis
Canesten Bifonazole Once Daily 1% w/w Cream, 213
Canesten Oasis, 111t
Canesten oral, 115
Canesten range, fungal skin infections treatment, 213
Capasal, 203t
capsaicin, acute low back pain treatment, 264
Capsicum frutescens, 264–265
captopril, 21t
carbaryl, head lice treatment, 285
carbimazole, 21t
Carbo-Dome, 203t
carbomer 940, dry eye treatment, 58–59, 58t
carbon dioxide, 1
carcinoma
basal cell *see* basal cell carcinoma
endometrial and cervical, 123
gastric, 148
laryngeal, 21
of the lung, 6
oesophageal, 148
oral, 137
rectal, 174
squamous cell *see* squamous cell carcinoma
tonsillar, 21
cardiac arrhythmic drugs, dry eye, 57t
cardiovascular system and abdominal pain, 178–180
carmellose
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138–139, 138t
dry eye treatment, 58–59, 58t
carpal tunnel syndrome, 275
case studies
allergic conjunctivitis, 62–65
central nervous system, 100–105, 103b–105b
children, 308–311
conjunctivitis, 65b
cough, 37–42, 40b–42b
dermatology, 252–257

ear conditions, 77, 77b
gastroenterology, 189–194, 190b–194b
musculoskeletal conditions, 279–281, 280b–281b
ophthalmology, 62–65, 65b
red eye, 63b–65b
respiratory system, 37–42
sore throat, 38b–39b
specific product requests, 337–338
women's health, 127–131, 128b–131b
cauliflower ear, 73
cayenne, 264–265
Celevac, 166
cellulitis, orbital, 54–55
central nervous system (CNS), 79–105
anatomy, 79
background, 79–89
case studies, 100–105
headache *see* headache
history taking, 79
insomnia *see* insomnia
nausea and vomiting *see* nausea and vomiting
self-assessment questions, 98–99
cerumen, 67–68
cerumenolytics, 70–71
ceruminous glands, 67–68
Cerumol Ear Drops, 70
Cerumol Olive Oil Drops, 70–71
cervical carcinoma, 123
cetirizine, allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–30, 31t–32t
chalazion, 54
chemical irritants, vaginal thrush, 113
chemoreceptor trigger zone, 95
chicken pox, 300, 301f, 303t, 309b
children, 283–311
aspirin in, 268b
atopic dermatitis *see* atopic dermatitis
background, 283–287
case studies, 308–311
colic *see* colic
cough medication for, 9
coughs in, 2
fever *see* fever in children
functional constipation, 162
head lice *see* head lice
history taking, 283
infectious diseases, 300–302
insomnia in, 91
laxatives in, 165
nappy rash *see* nappy rash
nausea and vomiting in, 96
self-assessment questions, 306–307
threadworm *see* threadworm
see also infants; neonates
Chlamydia trachomatis, 109, 333–334
chloramphenicol, bacterial conjunctivitis treatment, 50, 51t, 52b
chlorhexidine
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138, 138t
gingivitis treatment, 145
mouthwashes, 144
chloroquine, malaria prophylaxis, 323, 324t, 325
chlorphenamine, 30
allergic rhinitis treatment, 31t–32t, 32
atopic dermatitis treatment, 295, 295t
bites and stings treatment, 327, 327t
cholecystitis, acute, 181
cholelithiasis, acute, 181
choline salicylate, 74
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138–139, 138t
cold sore treatment, 238
chondroitin, acute low back pain treatment, 265
chondromalacia, 274
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 4
ciclosporin, 144
ciliary body, 43
cimetidine, dyspepsia treatment, 149
cinchocaine, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
cinnarizine, motion sickness prevention, 313–314, 314t
Clarityn Allergy, 32
clemastine, atopic dermatitis treatment, 295, 295t
Clinical reasoning, xi–xii
Clinitas Gel, 59
clobetasone, dermatitis treatment, 243, 243t, 245
clotrimazole
fungal skin infections treatment, 213, 214t
vaginal thrush treatment, 114–115
cluster headache, 79–80, 81f, 83
coal tar
dandruff treatment, 205–206
psoriasis treatment, 202, 203t
Cocois, 203t
coconut oil, head lice treatment, 285
codeine, 11
as an antitussive, 8, 10t
headache treatment, 85
proprietary brands, 266t–268t
coeliac disease, 157
coffee and insomnia, 91
colds *see* common cold
cold sores, 236–239, 238b
aetiology, 236
background, 236–238
case study, 253b
clinical features, 237, 237f
conditions to eliminate, 237
differential diagnosis, 236–237
epidemiology, 236
prevalence, 236
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 238
prescribing and product selection, 238, 239t
trigger points for referral, 237b
cold therapy, acute low back pain treatment, 265
colic, 289–291, 291b
aetiology, 289
background, 289–291
case study, 310b–311b
clinical features, 289–290
conditions to eliminate, 290
differential diagnosis, 289
epidemiology, 289
prevalence, 289
rule of threes, 289
specific questions to ask, 290t
treatment
evidence for OTC medication, 290
prescribing and product selection, 290–291, 291t
trigger points for referral, 290b
Colief, 291
Colofac IBS, 172
colorectal cancer, 157, 162, 174
colourings, food, 242t
Colpermin IBS Relief, 172
Colsor, 239t
comedones, 198t
common cold, 12–19, 16b
aetiology, 12
background, 12–18
causes of, 12t
clinical features, 13
conditions to eliminate, 13–14
differential diagnosis, 12–14
epidemiology, 12
prevalence, 12
specific questions to ask, 13t
treatment
alternative therapies, 15–16
antihistamines, 15, 17, 17t
evidence base for OTC medication, 14
multi-ingredient preparations, 15
prescribing/product selection, 16–18, 17t
sympathomimetics, 15, 17–18, 17t
trigger points for referral, 14b

communication skills, ix
community acquired pneumonia, 5
Compeed Cold Sore Patch, 238
complementary and alternative therapies
  acne vulgaris treatment, 234
  acute low back pain treatment, 264–265
  allergic rhinitis treatment, 33
  common cold treatment, 15–16
  insomnia treatment, 93
  irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 170–171
compound analgesics, acute low back pain treatment, 263, 265
Compound W, 226t
conjunctivitis, 44–45
  allergic, 46f, 47t, 50–52, 51t, 62–65
  bacterial, 45, 45f, 47t, 48–52, 51t, 65b
  case study, 65b
  clinical features, 45
  distinguishing between types of, 47t
  prevalence, 45
  treatment, 50–52
  viral, 46f, 47t, 49f, 50, 65b
  see also red eye
constipation, 160–168
  aetiology, 161
  background, 160–167
  causes of, 161t, 162
  in children, 162
  clinical features, 161–162
  conditions to eliminate, 162
  differential diagnosis, 161, 164f, 168
  epidemiology, 160–161
  medicine-induced, 162, 163t
  prevalence, 160–161
  specific questions to ask, 161t
  treatment, 166b
    evidence base for OTC medication, 162–165
    prescribing and product selection, 165–167, 165t
  trigger points for referral, 162b
contact dermatitis, 205, 212, 230
  differential diagnosis, 293
  eyelids, 54
  see also allergic contact dermatitis; irritant contact dermatitis
contact lens wearers
  eye drops for, 52b
  red eye in, 49f
contraception
  emergency hormonal *see* emergency hormonal contraception
  oral *see* oral contraceptives
cornea, 43
corneal ulcer, 47
corns and calluses, 224, 227–229, 227b
  aetiology, 227
  background, 227–229
  clinical features, 228
  conditions to eliminate, 228
  differential diagnosis, 227–228
  epidemiology, 227
  prevalence, 227
  specific questions to ask, 228t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 228–229
    prescribing and product selection, 229
  trigger points for referral, 228b
coronary heart disease, 328–330
  aetiology, 328
  background, 328–330
  epidemiology, 328
  prevalence, 328
  prevention, 329t–330t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 328
    prescribing and product selection, 328–330
Corsodyl, 145
corticosteroids
  allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–30, 31t–32t, 32–33
  aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 137–138
  atopic dermatitis treatment, 294
  bites and stings treatment, 326
  dermatitis treatment, 243–245, 243t
  possible future deregulation, 333t
cough, 2–11
  acute, 2–4
  aetiology, 2
  background, 2
  case studies, 37–42, 40b–42b
  causes of, 3t
  chesty, 2
  chronic, 2
  clinical features (acute viral), 3–4
  conditions to eliminate, 4–6
  differential diagnosis, 2, 4–6, 7f
  dry, 2
  epidemiology, 2
  function of, 2
  medicine-induced, 5
  non-productive, 2
  prevalence, 2
  productive, 2
  reflex, 2
  specific questions to ask, 3t
  tickly, 2
  tight, 2
  treatment
    for children, 9
    combination cough mixtures, 9
    cough suppressants (antitussives), 8–9, 10t, 11
    demulcents, 9, 10t, 11
    evidence base for OTC medicines, 6
    expectorants, 6–9, 10t
    prescribing/product selection, 9, 10t
  trigger points for referral, 6b
cough expectorants, 6–9, 10t
cough suppressants (antitussives), 8–9, 10t, 11
counter irritants *see* rubefacients
Covonia Original Bronchial Balsam, 11
Covonia Throat Spray, 23
cows' milk protein intolerance, 290, 310b–311b
cradle cap
  background, 207
  clinical features, 208, 209f
  differential diagnosis, 208
  prevalence, 207
  treatment, 209–210, 210t
cranberry juice, cystitis treatment, 109
creosote, 6–8
Crohn's disease, 155, 174
crotamiton
  bites and stings treatment, 326–327, 327t
  scabies treatment, 230
croup, 4
crying in babies, 289–290, 290t, 310b–311b
cryotherapy, warts and verrucas treatment, 225
Cryptosporidium gastroenteritis, 154
crystal meth, 18
Cuplex, 226t
Curanail, 217–218, 217b
cyclizine, motion sickness prevention, 313–314, 314t
Cymalon, 109, 111t
Cymex, 239t
Cymex Ultra, 238, 239t
cyproheptadine, atopic dermatitis treatment, 295, 295t
Cystemme, 111t
cystitis, 107–111, 111b
  aetiology, 107–108
  background, 107
  case study, 127–131
  causes of, 108t
  clinical features, 108
  conditions to eliminate, 108–109
  differential diagnosis, 108–109, 110f, 113

epidemiology, 107
medicine-induced, 109
prevalence, 107
recurrent, 107
specific questions to ask, 108t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 109
prescribing and product selection, 109–111, 111t
trigger points for referral, 109b
uncomplicated, 108
Cystopurin, 111t
cytotoxics, 21t

D

Daktacort Hydrocortisone, fungal skin infections treatment, 214
Daktarin, 142–143, 143b
fungal skin infections treatment, 214
oral thrush, 141–142, 141t
Daktarin Gold, 213
dandruff, 204–207
aetiology, 204
background, 204–207
clinical features, 205
conditions to eliminate, 205
differential diagnosis, 204, 205f, 284
epidemiology, 204
prevalence, 204
specific questions to ask, 205t
treatment, 206b
evidence base for OTC medication, 205–206
prescribing and product selection, 206–207
trigger points for referral, 205b
decongestants, allergic rhinitis treatment, 29
Deep Heat, 269
DEET (*N*,*N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide), 323, 324b, 326
delayed onset muscle soreness, 275
demulcents, 9, 10t, 11
dental caries, 143, 145b
dental flossing, 144, 145b
dental plaque, 143–144
dentate line, 173
Dentinox, 290–291
Dentinox Cradle Cap Shampoo, 210, 210t
denture wearers, oral thrush in, 140
depression, 121
constipation in, 162
headaches and, 84
insomnia and, 91–92
Dequaspray, 23
Derbac M
head lice treatment, 286
scabies treatment, 231
deregulations, future, 333t, 334
Dermacort, 326
dermatitis, 239–245, 243b
aetiology, 240
allergic contact *see* allergic contact dermatitis
anal itching, 174
atopic *see* atopic dermatitis
background, 239–245
clinical features, 240, 241f
conditions to eliminate, 241
contact *see* contact dermatitis
differential diagnosis, 240–241, 242f
distribution, 241f
epidemiology, 239–240
external ear, 73
irritant contact *see* irritant contact dermatitis
irritants and allergens, 240t
patch testing, 243b
perioral, 233, 234f
prevalence, 239–240
seborrhoeic *see* seborrhoeic dermatitis
specific questions to ask, 240t
treatment
evidence for OTC medication, 241–243
prescribing and product selection, 243–245, 243t–245t
trigger points for referral, 241b
dermatitis herpetiformis, 230
dermatology, 195–257
anatomy of the skin, 195–196, 196f
background, 195–204
case studies, 252–257
history taking, 196, 197t
physical examination, 196–197, 198t
self-assessment questions, 250–251
terminology, 198t
see also specific conditions
dermatophytes
onychomycosis, 216
skin infections, 210, 213
Dermidex, 326, 327t
dermis, 195–196, 196f
Devil's Claw, 264–265
dextromethorphan as an antitussive, 8, 10t, 11
diabetes mellitus
and hair loss, 220
and nicotine replacement therapy, 322b
and vulvovaginal thrush, 113
Diah-Limit, 159–160
diarrhoea, 154–160
acute, 154
aetiology, 154
background, 154–160
bacterial, 154
case study, 190b–192b
causes of, 154–157, 154t
clinical features, 154
conditions to eliminate, 154–157
definition, 154
differential diagnosis, 154, 157f, 168
epidemiology, 154
medicine-induced, 154–155, 156t
prevalence, 154
specific questions to ask, 155t
traveller's, 158
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 158
prescribing and product selection, 158–160, 159t
trigger points for referral, 157b
viral, 154
dibromopropamidine isethionate, bacterial conjunctivitis treatment, 48–51, 51t
diclofenac
dysmenorrhoea management, 119, 119t
proprietary brands, 266t–268t
diet
coronary heart disease prevention, 329t–330t
dysmenorrhoea management, 118
and haemorrhoids, 175–176
and hair loss, 219
irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 171b
dietary fibre
and constipation, 161–165
and haemorrhoids, 175–176
N,*N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET), 323, 324b, 326
differential diagnosis approaches, ix–x
Difflam spray/sore throat rinse, 24
Diflucan one, 115
digestion, 134
dihydrocodeine, proprietary brands, 266t–268t
dimeticone, head lice treatment, 285–286, 285t
Diocalm Ultra, 159–160
Dioctyl, 167
Dioralyte, 159
Dioralyte Relief, 159
diphenhydramine, 10t
common cold treatment, 17t
effect on sleep, 92–93

insomnia treatment, 93–94, 94t
proprietary brands, 266t–268t
discoid eczema, 212, 241
Disprol, 299
distal lateral subungual onychomycosis (DLSO), 216, 216b, 216f, 217t
dithranol, psoriasis treatment, 202–204, 203b
Dithrocream, 204
diuretics
as a cause of dry eye, 57t
insomnia-causing, 91t
diverticulitis, 184
Docusal, 167
docusate
constipation treatment, 165t
ear wax impaction treatment, 71
docusate sodium, constipation treatment, 167
domperidone, nausea and vomiting management, 95–97, 97t
doxycycline, possible future deregulation, 333t
doxylamine
acute low back pain treatment, 264
proprietary brands, 266t–268t
Drapolene, 304–305
drug-induced conditions *see* medicine-induced conditions
dry eye, 56–59
aetiology, 56
background, 56–59
causes of, 56–57, 56t
clinical features, 56
conditions to eliminate, 56–57
differential diagnosis, 56–57
epidemiology, 56
medicine-induced, 57, 57t
prevalence, 56
specific questions to ask, 57t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 57–58
prescribing and product selection, 58–59, 58t
trigger points for referral, 57b
Dulcobalance, 167
Dulcolax, 167
duodenal ulceration, 146–148
pain in, 181
duodenum, 133
Duofilm, 226t
dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 118
dyshidrotic eczema, 230, 241
dysmenorrhoea, 119b
primary, 117–120
aetiology, 117
background, 117
case study, 128b–129b
causes of, 117t, 118–119
clinical features, 117
conditions to eliminate, 118–119
differential diagnosis, 117–119
epidemiology, 117
prevalence, 117
specific questions to ask, 117t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 118–119
prescribing and product selection, 119, 119t
trigger points for referral, 118b
secondary, 118
dyspepsia, 146–153, 177
aetiology, 146
background, 146–153
case study, 189–194
causes of, 147–148, 147t, 149t
clinical features, 147
conditions to eliminate, 147–148
differential diagnosis, 146–147, 150f
epidemiology, 146
medicine-induced, 148, 149t
non-ulcer, 146–147
pain in, 180
prevalence, 146
specific questions to ask, 147t
treatment, 152b
evidence base for OTC medication, 148–150
prescribing and product selection, 150–153, 151t
trigger points for referral, 148b
dysphagia with sore throat, 22f
dysuria, 109

E

ear
anatomy, 67, 68f
discharge, 72
foreign bodies, 69
infections, 290
Earcalm Spray, 74
ear canal
anatomy, 67
trauma, 69
ear conditions, 67–77
case studies, 77, 77b
causes, 68t
ear wax impaction *see* ear wax impaction
history taking, 67
otitis externa *see* otitis externa
physical exam, 67, 69f
self-assessment questions, 75–76
symptoms, 68t
ear drops
administration, 71b
hypersensitivity reaction to, 71b
product selection, 70–71
eardrum, 67–68
Earex, 71
Earex Advance/Plus, 71, 74
ear wax
functions of, 67–68
types of, 67–68
ear wax impaction, 67–71, 71b
aetiology, 68
background, 67–68
case study, 77
clinical features, 69
conditions to eliminate, 69
differential diagnosis, 69
epidemiology, 68
prevalence, 68
specific questions to ask, 69t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 70
prescribing and product selection, 70–71
trigger points for referral, 70b
eccrine sweat glands, 196
echinacea, common cold treatment, 15–16
econazole, 114–115
ectopic pregnancy, 185
ectropion, 54, 55f
as a cause of dry eye, 57
eczema, 239–245
discoid, 212, 241
dyshidrotic, 230, 241
in nails, 216
see also dermatitis
Effercitrate, 110–111, 111t
elbow injuries, 272
electric combs, head lice treatment, 285
Electrolade, 159
Eludril, 145
emergency hormonal contraception, 316–318, 318b
aetiology, 316
assessing suitability, 316–317
background, 316–317
evidence base for OTC medication, 316
prescribing and product selection, 316, 317t
emollients
atopic dermatitis treatment, 294–295, 295b, 295t
dermatitis treatment, 242–243, 243t–245t
psoriasis treatment, 202–203, 203b

emphysema, 4
endometrial carcinoma, 123
endometriosis, 118, 185
Enterobius vermicularis see threadworm
entropion, 54, 55f
enzymes, acute low back pain treatment, 264
ephedrine, common cold treatment, 18
epidermis, 195, 196f
epiglottis, 1
episcleritis, 46–47, 47f
Epstein–Barr virus, 20, 302
erythema, 198t
erythema infectiosum, 302, 303t
erythema multiforme, 137
erythrodermic psoriasis, 200
Escherichia coli
  cystitis, 107–108
  gastroenteritis, 154
essential oils, head lice treatment, 285
Eumovate eczema and dermatitis cream, 245
Eurax, 327
excoriation, 198t
exercise, coronary heart disease prevention, 329t–330t
Exorex, 203t
expectorants, 6–9, 10t
external auditory meatus, 67, 69f
Exterol, 71
eye drops, 52b
eyelid disorders, 53–56
  aetiology, 53
  background, 53–56
  blepharitis *see* blepharitis
  causes of, 53t, 54–55
  conditions to eliminate, 54–55
  differential diagnosis, 53–55
  epidemiology, 53
  prevalence, 53
  specific questions to ask, 53t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 55
    prescribing/product selection, 55–56
  trigger points for referral, 55b
eyelids
  anatomy, 43
  basal cell carcinoma, 55
eye(s), 43–65
  anatomy, 43–44, 44f
  case studies, 62–65, 63b–65b
  examination, 44
  history taking, 44
  red *see* red eye
  self-assessment questions, 60–61
  strain, 83

F

faecal impaction, 155
fallopian tubes inflammation, 185
famotidine, dyspepsia treatment, 149, 152
fatty stools, 157
feet
  athlete's foot, 210–211, 212f
  corns and calluses *see* corns and calluses
  injuries, 274
Feminax Ultra, 119
feminine hygiene products, vaginal thrush, 113
Femstrual, 124
Fenistil cold sore cream, 238, 239t
fever in children, 296–300
  aetiology, 296
  background, 296–299
  clinical features, 296
  conditions to eliminate, 298
  differential diagnosis, 296, 303t
  epidemiology, 296
  fluid consumption in, 299b
  medicine-induced, 298
  prevalence, 296
  seriousness assessment, 297t
  specific questions to ask, 297t
  traffic light system, 296, 297t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 298
    prescribing and product selection, 298–299, 299t
  trigger points for referral, 298b
Fibrerelief, 165–166
fibrocartilaginous joints, 259
fifth disease, 302
finasteride, hair loss treatment, 221
fingernails, fungal infection *see* onychomycosis
flat warts, 223, 224f
flavonoids, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
flavour enhancers, 242t
flexural psoriasis, 200
Flomax Relief, 332
flossing, 144, 145b
flu, 14
fluconazole, vaginal thrush treatment, 115, 115t
fluid intake and constipation, 162–165
flunisolide, 32
fluoride supplementation, 145b
flurbiprofen lozenges, 23–24, 24t
fluticasone, allergic rhinitis treatment, 31t–32t, 32–33
food additives, 242t
food colourings, 242t
foreign bodies
  ear, 69
  nasal, 27
formaldehyde, warts and verrucas treatment, 226t, 227
fractures, stress, 275
frozen shoulder, 272
Full Marks Solution, 286
fungal infections
  differential diagnosis, 241, 293
  nail *see* onychomycosis
  of the scalp, 201, 220
  of the skin, 210–216
    aetiology, 211
    background, 210–215
    clinical features, 211–212
    conditions to eliminate, 212
    differential diagnosis, 211, 211f, 211t
    distribution, 211f
    epidemiology, 210
    prevalence, 210
    specific questions to ask, 211t
    treatment, 213–215, 214t–215t, 215b
  trigger points for referral, 212b
future deregulations, 333t, 334
Fybogel, 165–166

G

gall bladder
  anatomy, 133
  inflammation, 181
gall stones, 181
Gardnerella vaginalis, 113
gastric carcinoma, 148
gastric ulceration, 146–148, 181
gastritis, 95, 146–147, 180
gastroenteritis
  clinical features associated with, 95
  diarrhoea, 154
  pain in, 185
gastroenterology, 133–194
  anatomy relating to, 133–134
  background, 133–139
  case studies, 189–194, 190b–194b
  history taking, 134
  physical exam, 134
  self-assessment questions, 187–188
  see also specific conditions
gastrointestinal tract
  and abdominal pain, 178–180
  anatomy, 133–134
  function of, 133
  upper, bleeding, 174
gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD), 6, 146–147
  causes of, 146

in infants, 290, 310b–311b
treatment, 149
Gavilast, 152–153
Gavilast P, 152–153
Gaviscon, 152
GelTears, 58–59
German measles, 302, 303t
Germoloids, 177t
Giardia gastroenteritis, 154
giardiasis, diarrhoea, 155
ginger, motion sickness prevention, 313–314
gingivitis, 143–146, 145b
aetiology, 143
background, 143–145
clinical features, 144
conditions to eliminate, 144
differential diagnosis, 143
epidemiology, 143
prevalence, 143
specific questions to ask, 144t
treatment, 145t
evidence base for OTC medication, 144
prescribing and product selection, 144
trigger points for referral, 144b
glandular fever, 20, 298, 302, 303t
glaucoma, 48, 48f–49f, 84
glottis, 1
glucosamine, acute low back pain treatment, 265
glue ear, 73
glutaraldehyde, warts and verrucas treatment, 225, 226t
Glutarol, 225, 226t
glycerin-based ear drops, 71
glycerol, constipation treatment, 165t, 167
Golden Eye Antibiotic Drops/Ointment, 50
Golden Eye ointment, 50–51
goosebumps, 195–196
gout, 275
griseofulvin
as a cause of insomnia, 91t
fungal skin infections treatment, 213–215, 214t
Grisol AF spray, 214–215, 214t
guaifenesin, 6–9, 10t
gums
inflammation *see* gingivitis
medicine-induced bleeding, 144
spontaneous bleeding, 144
guttate psoriasis, 200, 201f

H

H_2 antagonists, dyspepsia treatment, 148–150, 151t, 152–153
haematuria, 108
Haemophilus influenzae conjunctivitis, 45
haemoptysis, 7f
haemorrhage
subarachnoid, 84
subconjunctival, 45–46, 47f
see also bleeding
haemorrhoids, 172–177
aetiology, 173
background, 172–177
clinical features, 174
conditions to eliminate, 174
differential diagnosis, 173, 175f
epidemiology, 172–173
external, 173
internal, 173
medication-induced, 174
prevalence, 172–173
specific questions to ask, 173t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 175–176
prescribing and product selection, 176–177, 177t
trigger points for referral, 174b
hair, 196
growth cycle, 218
terminal, 218
vellus, 218
hair follicles, 195–196, 218
hair loss, 218–222, 221b
aetiology, 218
background, 218–221
clinical features, 218
conditions to eliminate, 219–220
differential diagnosis, 218–220, 219f
epidemiology, 218
medications causing, 220, 220t
postpartum, 219
prevalence, 218
specific questions to ask, 219t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 220–221
prescribing and product selection, 221, 221t
trigger points for referral, 220b
hamstring tears, 275
hard corns, 228
Harpagophytum procumbens, 264–265
hay fever, 25
headache, 79–89
aetiology, 81
background, 79
case studies, 100–105, 103b–104b
causes of, 80t, 83
classification, 79, 80t
clinical features, 81
cluster, 79–80, 81f, 83
differential diagnosis, 81, 86f
epidemiology, 80
medication overuse, 84
nausea and vomiting with, 95
pain location, 81f
prevalence, 80
specific questions to ask, 82t
tension-type, 79–82, 81f
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 85–87
prescribing and product selection, 87–89, 88t
trigger points for referral, 85b
see also migraine
Head and Shoulders shampoo, 207
head lice, 283–286, 286b
aetiology, 283–284
background, 283
case study, 308–311
clinical features, 284
conditions to eliminate, 284
differential diagnosis, 284
epidemiology, 283
prevalence, 283
specific questions to ask, 284t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 285
prescribing and product selection, 285–286, 285t
trigger points for referral, 285b
Head trauma, headache following, 84
hearing loss, 69, 72
heartburn, 6, 23–24
heart failure and coughs, 5
heat therapy, acute low back pain treatment, 265
heavy menstrual bleeding *see* menorrhagia
Hedrin, 286
Helicobacter pylori, 146
helminth infections *see specific worms*
heloma durum, 228
heloma molle, 228
helomas *see* corns and calluses
Hemocane, 177t
heparinoid, acute low back pain treatment, 264
hepatitis, 181
herbal remedies
acute low back pain treatment, 264–265
head lice treatment, 285
herpes simplex
cold sores *see* cold sores
complications, 293
mouth ulceration, 136
prevalence, 236
subtypes, 236

herpes zoster, 183, 254b–255b, 301f
herpetiform aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers), 136, 136f
hexetidine, gingivitis treatment, 145
hiatus hernia, 146–147
Hib vaccine, 300
histamine, 25
history taking
  central nervous system, 79
  children, 283
  dermatology, 196, 197t
  ear conditions, 67
  gastroenterology, 134
  musculoskeletal conditions, 259–260
  ophthalmology, 44
  women's health, 107
hordeola *see* styes
hormone replacement therapy (HRT), dry eye, 57t
house dust mites, 26–27
human papilloma virus (HPV), 222, 223t
hyaluronate, dry eye treatment, 58t
hyaluronidase, acute low back pain treatment, 264
hydrocolloid patch, cold sore treatment, 238
hydrocortisone
  bites and stings treatment, 326, 327t
  dermatitis treatment, 243, 243t, 245
  haemorrhoid treatment, 176
hydrocortisone sodium succinate pellets, 137–138
hydrogen peroxide, gingivitis treatment, 145
hyoscine
  irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 170
  motion sickness prevention, 313, 314t, 315
hyoscine butylbromide
  dysmenorrhoea management, 118–119, 119t
  irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 171–172
hypericum, 94b
hyperkeratoses, 227
hyperproliferative disorders, 197
hypersensitivity reaction to ear drops, 71b
hypnotherapy, irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 171b
hypothyroidism
  constipation in, 162
  and hair loss, 220
hypromellose, dry eye treatment, 57–59, 58t

I

IBS *see* irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)
ibuprofen
  dysmenorrhoea management, 119, 119t
  fever treatment, 298–299, 299t
  headache treatment, 85
  proprietary brands, 266t–268t, 270t
  topical, 270t
Iglu gel, 139
imidazoles
  Candida nappy rash treatment, 305
  fungal skin infections treatment, 213–214, 214t
  licence restrictions, 116t
  vaginal thrush treatment, 114–115, 115t
Imigran Recovery, 87–89, 88t, 105b
Immodium, 159–160
impetigo, 237, 300–301, 301f, 303t
Infacol, 290–291
infants
  nausea and vomiting in, 96
  seborrhoeic dermatitis *see* cradle cap
infections
  bacterial *see* bacterial infections
  in children, 300–302
  fungal *see* fungal infections
  viral *see* viral infections
  see also specific infections
infectious mononucleosis, 20, 298, 302, 303t
infective rhinitis, 26
influenza, 14
insect bites and stings, 230, 325–328
  aetiology, 325
  background, 325–327
  clinical features, 326
  epidemiology, 325
  prevalence, 325
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 326
    prescribing and product selection, 326–327, 327t
insecticides
  head lice treatment, 285, 285t
  malaria prophylactics this, 323
insect repellents, 323
insomnia, 89–94, 94b
  aetiology, 90
  background, 89–94
  causes of, 90f, 91–92
  in children, 91
  clinical features, 90–91
  conditions to eliminate, 91–92
  differential diagnosis, 90, 92f
  epidemiology, 90
  medicine-induced, 91, 91t
  prevalence, 90
  short-term, 90
  specific questions to ask, 91t
  transient, 90
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 92–93
    possible future deregulation, 333t
    prescribing and product selection, 93–94, 94t
  trigger points for referral, 92b
  underlying medical conditions, 91
International Headache Society (IHS) classification, 79, 80t
intervertebral disc herniation, 261
intestinal obstruction, 184
intracranial pressure, raised, 84
intranasal medication, rhinitis, 29
intraocular medication, rhinitis, 29–30
intraocular pressure, increased, 11, 33, 43, 48, 93, 327
intrinsic rhinitis, 26–27, 28f
iodine mouthwash, 145b
ipecacuanha, 6–8
iris, 43
iritis, 47–48
iron deficiency, hair loss, 219
irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), 148, 168–172, 171b, 177
  aetiology, 168
  background, 168–172
  clinical features, 168
  conditions to eliminate, 168
  constipation, 162
  definition, 168
  diarrhoea, 155
  differential diagnosis, 168, 170f
  epidemiology, 168
  pain, 183
  prevalence, 168
  specific questions to ask, 169t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 169–171
    prescribing and product selection, 171–172, 171t
  trigger points for referral, 169b
irritant contact dermatitis
  aetiology, 240
  clinical features, 240, 241f
  differential diagnosis, 288
  prevalence, 239–240
irritant nappy rash, 304, 304t

irritants
atopic dermatitis, 294
counter, 264, 269
dermatitis, 240t
Isogel, 165–166
isometheptene mucate, headache treatment, 86–87
isopropyl myristate, head lice treatment, 285–286, 285t
Isopto Alkaline, 58–59
Isopto Plain, 58–59
isotretinoin, dry eye, 57t
Ispagel, 165–166
ispaghula husk, constipation treatment, 165–166, 165t, 166b
itching
atopic dermatitis, 292–293
jock itch, 210, 212
nasal, 28f
perianal, 287

J

jet lag, 93
jock itch, 210, 212
joint(s), 259
types of, 259
see also individual joints
Joy-Rides, 314t, 315

K

kaolin and morphine, diarrhoea treatment, 158, 159t, 160
keratitis, 47
keratoconjunctivitis sicca *see* dry eye
keratolytics
psoriasis treatment, 202
warts and verrucas, 225
keratoses, actinic, 247
Kernig's sign, 84
ketoconazole
dandruff treatment, 206–207
fungal skin infections treatment, 213, 214t
kidney stones, 182
kinins, 25
knee, 259, 260f
anatomy, 274f
soft tissue injuries, 273–274, 274f
Koebner phenomenon, 198
Kwells, 314t, 315
Kwells Kids, 314t, 315

L

Lacri-Lube, 59
lactase enzymes, colic treatment, 290–291
lactic acid, psoriasis treatment, 202
Lactobacillus, irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 171
lactose intolerance, 157
lactulose, constipation treatment, 165t, 166b, 167
Lamisil range, 214, 214t
Lanacane, 326, 327t
lanolin containing products, atopic dermatitis treatment, 295b
laryngeal carcinoma, 21
laryngopharynx, 1
laryngotracheobronchitis, 4
larynx, 1
lateral collateral ligament, 273
lateral epicondylitis, 272
lauromacrogol, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
laxatives, 164–167, 165t, 166b
lens, 43
leukaemia, bleeding gums, 144
leukoplakia, 141, 141f, 193b–194b
leukotrienes, 25
levodopa, drug interactions, 122
Levonelle® One Step, 317, 317t
levonorgestrel, 316
lichenification, 198t
lichen planus, 140, 201
lidocaine
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138t, 139
bites and stings treatment, 326, 327t
cold sore treatment, 238, 239t
haemorrhoid treatment, 176
sore throat treatment, 21, 23, 24t
ligaments, 259
injuries *see* soft tissue injuries
Liposic, 59
liquid paraffin, constipation treatment, 167
Liquifilm Tears, 59
Liquivisc, 59
liver
anatomy, 133
enlargement, 181
local anaesthetics
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138–139, 138t
bites and stings treatment, 326, 327t
cold sore treatment, 238
haemorrhoid treatment, 176
sore throat treatment, 21, 23–24, 24t
lodoxamide, 33
loperamide, diarrhoea treatment, 158–160, 159t
loratadine
allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–30, 31t–32t, 32
teratogenicity, 30
low back pain, acute, 260–269
aetiology, 260
background, 260
case study, 280b–281b
causes of, 261t
clinical features, 261, 261f
conditions to eliminate, 261–263
differential diagnosis, 260
epidemiology, 260
prevalence, 260
specific questions to ask, 262t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 263–265
prescribing and product selection, 265–269
trigger points for referral, 263b
lower respiratory tract, 1–2
lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS), 331–333
lubricants, ocular, 57, 59
lungs, 2
abscess, 6
carcinoma, 6
collapsed, 6
Lyclear Creme Rinse, 286
Lyclear Dermal Cream, 231
Lypsyl cold sore cream, 238, 239t
Lypsyl cold sore gel, 239t

M

macrogols, 167
macules, 198t
madarosis, 53–54
magnesium hydroxide, constipation treatment, 165t
magnesium salts
constipation treatment, 167
dyspepsia treatment, 149, 151, 151t
malabsorption syndromes, 157
malaria
aetiology, 323
background, 322–325
clinical symptoms, 323
epidemiology, 323
prevalence, 323
prophylaxis, 322–325, 324b
chemoprophylaxis, 323–324
evidence base for OTC medication, 323
prescribing and product selection, 324–325, 324t
Malassezia ovale, 204, 207–208
malathion
head lice treatment, 285–286, 285t
scabies treatment, 231, 231t
malignancy
low back pain and, 262–263, 280t
see also specific malignancies

malignant melanoma, 245–249
ABCDE rule, 247
background, 245–249
clinical features, 246–247, 246f–247f
conditions to eliminate, 247–248
epidemiology, 246
prevalence, 246
7 point list, 246–247
massage therapy, acute low back pain treatment, 265
mast cell stabilisers
allergic conjunctivitis treatment, 51, 51t
allergic rhinitis treatment, 29, 31t–32t, 33
mastoiditis, 67
measles, 301–302, 303t
mebendazole, threadworm treatment, 288–289, 288t
mebeverine, irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 170, 172
mechanical irritants, vaginal thrush, 113
meclozine, motion sickness prevention, 313, 314t, 315
medial collateral ligament, 273
medial meniscus (knee) injuries, 273–274
medication overuse headache, 84
medicine-induced conditions
acne-like skin eruptions, 233
aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers), 136
constipation, 162, 163t
cough/wheeze, 5
cystitis, 109
diarrhoea, 154–155, 156t
dry eye, 57, 57t
dyspepsia, 148, 149t
fever, 298
gum bleeding, 144
haemorrhoids, 174
insomnia, 91, 91t
menstrual bleeding, 123, 123t
nausea and vomiting, 96
oral thrush, 140
photosensitivity, 249b
psoriasis, 201
rhinitis, 27
sore throats, 20, 21t
thrush, 113
Medijel, 139
Medinol, 299
meibomian gland dysfunction, 53–54
melanoma, malignant *see* malignant melanoma
melatonin, insomnia treatment, 93
meningitis, 84, 300
differential diagnosis, 303t
fever in, 298
menorrhagia, 118, 122–124, 124b
aetiology, 122–123
background, 122–124
causes of, 123, 123t
clinical features, 123
conditions to eliminate, 123
definition, 122
differential diagnosis, 123
epidemiology, 122
medicine-induced, 123, 123t
prevalence, 122
specific questions to ask, 123t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 123
prescribing and product selection, 123–124
trigger points for referral, 123b
menstrual cycle, 117
menstruation, 117
heavy bleeding *see* menorrhagia
pain *see* dysmenorrhoea
mental health disorders, 121
Metanium, 304–305
methylamphetamine, 18
methylcellulose, constipation treatment, 165–166, 165t
metoclopramide, possible future deregulation, 333t
miconazole, 114–115
acne vulgaris treatment, 234
fungal skin infections treatment, 214, 214t
oral thrush treatment, 141–143, 141t, 143b
warfarin interaction with, 142–143
middle ear infection, 77b
nausea and vomiting in, 96
Midrid, 86–87, 88t
migraine, 79–84, 81f, 89b
case study, 105b
classic, 83
common, 83
strategies to reduce, 83t
treatment, 85–89, 88t
triggers, 83t
Migraleve, 85, 87, 88t
minoxidil, hair loss, 220–221, 221t
MMR vaccine, 300
Molcer, 71
molluscum contagiosum, 224, 300, 301f, 303t
monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), 17–18, 87
Moraxella conjunctivitis, 45
morphine salts, diarrhoea treatment, 145, 159t, 160
mosquito nets, 323
Motilium 10/Instants, 96–97
motion sickness, 313–315, 315b
aetiology, 313
background, 313
case study, 337–338
epidemiology, 313
prevalence, 313
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 313–314
prescribing and product selection, 314–315, 314t
mouth, 134f
anatomy, 20f, 133
cancer, 137
conditions affecting, 134
gingivitis *see* gingivitis
thrush *see* oral thrush
ulceration *see* aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers)
mouthwashes, 144–145, 145b
Movicol, 167
mucociliary escalator, 2
mumps, 302, 303t
Murine, 33
muscle injuries *see* soft tissue injuries
musculoskeletal conditions, 259–281
background, 259–271
case studies, 279–281
history taking, 259–260
self-assessment questions, 277–278
see also specific conditions
musculoskeletal system
and abdominal pain, 178–180
anatomy, 259
Mycil, 214, 214t
mycobacterium tuberculosis, 5–6
Mycota, 214, 214t
myocardial infarction (MI), 182
myocardial ischaemia, 182

N

nails, fungal infection *see* onychomycosis
naphazoline
allergic conjunctivitis treatment, 51t, 52
allergic rhinitis treatment, 31t–32t, 33
nappy rash, 302–305, 305b
aetiology, 302
background, 302–305
clinical features, 304
conditions to eliminate, 304
differential diagnosis, 304, 304t
epidemiology, 302
prevalence, 302

treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 304
prescribing and product selection, 304–305
trigger points for referral, 304b
naproxen, dysmenorrhoea management, 119, 119t
Nasacort Allergy Nasal Spray, 33
nasal cavity, 1
blockage, 27
nasal discharge, 28f
nasal foreign body, 27
nasal itch, 28f
nasal medication, allergic rhinitis treatment, 29, 31t–32t, 33
nasal obstruction, 28f
nasal priming, 25
nasopharynx, 1
nausea and vomiting, 94–97
aetiology, 95
background, 94–97
in children, 96
clinical features associated with gastroenteritis, 95
conditions to eliminate, 95–96
differential diagnosis, 95–96
epidemiology, 95
headache-associated, 95
in infants, 96
medicine-induced, 96
motion sickness *see* motion sickness
in neonates, 96
in pregnancy, 96
prevalence, 95
specific questions to ask, 95t
treatment, 97t
evidence base for OTC medication, 96
prescribing and product selection, 96–97
trigger points for referral, 96b
Neisseria gonorrhoea, 109
neonates
nausea and vomiting in, 96
oral thrush in, 139
neuralgia, trigeminal, 84
neuroleptics, 21t
Nicorette, 319t, 320–321
nicotinamide, acne vulgaris treatment, 234
Nicotinell, 319t, 321
nicotine replacement therapy, 318–322, 322b
aetiology, 318
background, 318–322
epidemiology, 318
evidence base for OTC medication, 319
formulae, 320
prescribing and products action, 319–322, 319f, 319t
prevalence, 318
regimens, 320
side effects, 320
nifedipine, 144
Nightcalm, 93–94
NiQuitin, 319t, 321–322
nitrofurantoin, 109, 334
Nivaquine, 325
nizatidine, dyspepsia treatment, 149
Nizoral products, 207
Nocardia asteroides, 6
nocardiasis, 6
nodules, 198t
non-melanoma skin cancer (NMSC), 245–247
non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
acute low back pain treatment, 263, 265, 268–269
and coughs, 5
dysmenorrhoea management, 118, 119t
possible future deregulation, 333t
sore throat treatment, 23
topical
acute low back pain treatment, 264, 269
proprietary brands, 270t
Normacol, 166–167
Nupercainal, 177t
Nurofen, 299
Nytol, 93–94

O

obesity *see* weight loss/obesity
Occlusal, 226t
Ocimum gratissimum, 234
ocular medication, allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–30, 31t–32t, 33
oesophageal cancer, 146–148
oesophagitis, 146–147
oesophagus, 133
oestrogen deficiency, 109
olive oil ear drops, 70–71
omeprazole, dyspepsia treatment, 151t, 153
onychomycosis, 216–218
aetiology, 216
background, 216–218
clinical features, 216, 216f
conditions to eliminate, 216
differential diagnosis, 216
distal lateral subungual, 216, 216b, 216f, 217t
epidemiology, 216
prevalence, 216
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 217
prescribing and product selection, 217–218, 217t
trigger points for referral, 216b
types of, 217t
Opticrom Allergy, 33, 51
Optrex Allergy, 33, 51
Optrex Bloodshot Eyes Eye Drops, 33
Optrex Eye brightening Drops, 33
Optrex Infected Eye Drops/Ointment, 50
Orabase, 138–139
oral cavity *see* mouth
oral contraceptives
dysmenorrhoea management, 118
possible future deregulation, 333t
Oraldene, 145
oral hygiene, 144
oral rehydration solution (ORS)
diarrhoea, 158–159, 159t
rice-based, 158
oral thrush, 22f, 136, 139–143, 143b
aetiology, 139
background, 139–143
case study, 193b–194b
causes of, 140–141, 140t
clinical features, 139–140, 140f
conditions to eliminate, 140–141
differential diagnosis, 139, 142f
epidemiology, 139
medicine-induced, 140
prevalence, 139
specific questions to ask, 140t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 141
prescribing and product selection, 141–143, 141t
trigger points for referral, 141b
Oralyte, 159
orbital cellulitis, 54–55
orlistat, 331
oropharynx, 1
osmotic laxatives, 164, 165t, 167
osteoarthritis, 261–262, 265, 280t
osteomyelitis, 262, 280t
Otex, 71
otitis externa, 71–74, 73f
aetiology, 72
background, 71–74
causes of, 72–73, 72t
clinical features, 72
conditions to eliminate, 72–73
differential diagnosis, 72–73
epidemiology, 71–72
prevalence, 71–72
specific questions to ask, 72t

treatment, 74t
evidence base for OTC medication, 74
prescribing and product selection, 74
trigger points for referral, 73b
otitis media, acute, 13–14, 72–73
otorrhoea, 72
Otrivine Antistin, 33, 52
Ovex, 289
Oxy 10, 235t
oxygen, 1
oxymetazoline, common cold treatment, 17t, 18

P

paediatrics *see* children; infants; neonates
Paludrine, 325
pancreas, 133–134
pancreatitis, acute, 182
PanOxyl, 235t
papules, 198t
parabens, 242t
paracetamol
acute low back pain treatment, 263, 268
fever treatment, 298–299, 299t
headache treatment, 85–87
proprietary brands, 266t–268t
sore throat treatment, 23
parainfluenza virus, 4
paranasal sinuses, 13, 14f
Pariet Pharmacy, 153
parvovirus B19, 302
patches, 198t
peanut allergy, 71b
peanut oil ear drops, 70–71
Pediculus capitis see head lice
Pediculus corporis, 283
Pediculus pubis, 283
pellicle, 143
pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 118
penciclovir, cold sore treatment, 238, 239t
penicillamine, 21t
Pentrax shampoo, 203t
PepcidTwo, 152
peppermint oil, irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 170, 172
peptic ulceration, 147–148
pain in, 181
see also duodenal ulceration; gastric ulceration
Pepto-Bismol Liquid, 160
Periactin, 295
perianal itching, 287
perichondritis, 73, 73f
Perinal, 177t
periodontitis, 144
period pain *see* dysmenorrhoea
perioral dermatitis, 233, 234f
peritonitis pain, 185
permethrin
head lice treatment, 285–286, 285t
scabies treatment, 230–231, 231t
peroxide-based ear drops, 71
Peroxyl, 145
Peru balsam, 176
pharynx, 1
Phenergan, 94
Phenergan Elixer and tablets, 296
phenol, cold sore treatment, 239t
phenothrin, head lice treatment, 285
phenylephrine, common cold treatment, 17t, 18
phenylpropanolamine, 15
phenytoin, 144
pholcodine, 8, 10t, 11
phonophobia, 81, 83
photophobia, 46t, 81, 83
photosensitivity, medicine-induced, 249b
piles *see* haemorrhoids
Pinetarsol, 203t
pinna, 67, 68f
piperazine, threadworm treatment, 288–289, 288t
Pirinase Hayfever Nasal Spray, 32–33
Piriton, 295, 327
Piriton Allergy tablets and syrup, 32
pityriasis capitis *see* dandruff
pityriasis rosea, 201
pityriasis versicolor, 209
plane warts, 223, 224f
plantar fasciitis, 274
plaque, oral, 143
plaque psoriasis, 197–201, 199f–200f, 202f
Plasmodium sp., 322–323
pleural cavity, 2
pleural membranes, 2
pneumonia
community acquired, 5
fever in, 298
pneumothorax, spontaneous, 6
Pollenshield, 30
polycystic ovary syndrome, 234
Polytar/Polytar Plus, 203t
polyvinyl alcohol, dry eye treatment, 58–59, 58t
pompholyx, 230, 241
postnasal drip, 4
postpartum hair loss, 219
potassium citrate, cystitis treatment, 109–111
potassium salts, dyspepsia treatment, 149
pregnancy
antihistamines in, 30
constipation in, 162
nausea and vomiting in, 96
rhinitis of, 27
thrush in, 113
premenstrual dysphoric disorder, 120
premenstrual syndrome (PMS), 120–122
aetiology, 120
background, 120–122
clinical features, 120
common symptoms, 121t
conditions to eliminate, 120–121
differential diagnosis, 120
epidemiology, 120
prevalence, 120
specific questions to ask, 121t
treatment
evidence base for OTC medication, 121
prescribing and product selection, 121–122, 122t
trigger points for referral, 121b
Preparation H, 177t
Pripsen Mebendazole, 289
Pripsen Piperazine Phosphate Powder, 289
probiotics, irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 171
Prochaska & Diclemente Stages of Change Model, 319, 319f
prochlorperazine
headache treatment, 87
nausea and vomiting management, 95–97, 97t
proguanil, malaria prophylaxis, 323, 324t, 325
promethazine
atopic dermatitis treatment, 295t, 296
insomnia treatment, 92–94, 94t
motion sickness prevention, 313, 314t, 315
propamidine, 48–50, 51t
propamidine isethionate 0.1%, 50–51
Propionibacterium acnes, 234
prostaglandins, 25, 117
protectants, aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers) treatment, 138
protectorants, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
Proteus cystitis, 107–108
proton pump inhibitors (PPIs), dyspepsia treatment, 148–150, 151t

proximal subungual onychomycosis (PCO), 217t
pruritus, anal, 174
pseudoephedrine, common cold treatment, 17t, 18
Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 72
psoriasis, 197–204
  aetiology, 198
  background, 197
  clinical features, 199, 199f
  conditions to eliminate, 200–201
  differential diagnosis, 198–199, 202f, 209, 212, 241, 293
  epidemiology, 197–198
  erythrodermic, 200
  guttate (raindrop), 200, 201f
  medication-exacerbated, 201
  in nails, 216
  plaque, 197–201, 199f–200f, 202f
  prevalence, 197–198
  pustular, 200, 200f
  scalp, 198–199, 201
  seborrhoeic (flexural), 200
  specific questions to ask, 199t
  treatment, 203b
    evidence base for OTC medication, 201–203
    prescribing and product selection, 203–204, 203t
  trigger points for referral, 201b
psoriasisiform nappy rash, 304t
Psoriderm, 203t
PSORS1, 198
puberty and acne vulgaris, 232
pubic lice, 283
pupil, 43
pustular psoriasis, 200, 200f
pustules, 198t
pyelonephritis, 108
pyloric stenosis, 96
pyridoxine *see* vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)

Q

quadriceps tears, 275
Quinoderm, acne vulgaris treatment, 234, 235t

R

rabeprazole, dyspepsia treatment, 151t, 153
Radian B, 269
raindrop psoriasis, 200, 201f
Ralgex, 264, 269
ranitidine, dyspepsia treatment, 149, 152–153
Ranzac, 152–153
rectal bleeding, 173–174, 173t, 175f
rectal carcinoma, 174
red eye, 44–52
  aetiology, 45
  background, 44–45
  case study, 63b–65b
  causes, 45–48, 45t
  conditions to eliminate, 45–48
  differential diagnosis, 45, 49f
  epidemiology, 45
  prevalence, 45
  specific questions to ask, 46t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medicines, 48–50
    prescribing/product selection, 50, 51t
  trigger points for referral, 48b
Regaine, 221, 221t
Regulan, 165–166
regurgitation, 96
renal colic, 182
repetitive strain injury, 275
respiratory syncytial virus, 4
respiratory system, 1–42
  anatomy, 1–2
  case studies, 37–42
  cough *see* cough
  history taking, 2
  lower, 1–2
  physical exam, 2
  self-assessment questions, 35–36
  upper, 1–3, 12, 298
retina, 44
Reyes syndrome, 268b
rhinitis, 13
  allergic *see* allergic rhinitis
  infective, 26
  medicine-induced, 27
  of pregnancy, 27
  vasomotor (intrinsic), 26–27, 28f
rhinitis medicamentosa, 27, 37
Rhinolast Allergy, 33
rhinosinusitis, 14f
  acute, 13
rhinovirus, 4
RICE, 275–276
rice-based oral rehydration solution, 158
ringworm, 210
Robitussin, 9, 11
rofecoxib, 264–265
rosacea, 209, 233, 233f
  as a cause of dry eye, 57
roseola infantum, 298
Rotarix, 158
RotaTeq, 158
rotator cuff syndrome, 272
rotavirus
  gastroenteritis, 154
  vaccine, 158
roundworms, 287
rubefacients, acute low back pain treatment, 264, 269
rubella, 302, 303t
runners knee, 274
Rynacrom 4% Nasal Spray, 33

S

St John's wort, 94b
Salactol, 226t
Salatac, 226b, 226t
salbutamol, possible future deregulation, 333t
salicylic acid
  acne vulgaris treatment, 234
  dandruff treatment, 206
  psoriasis treatment, 202
  warts and verrucas treatment, 224–225, 226t
saline sprays, common cold treatment, 16
Salix alba, 264–265
Salmonella gastroenteritis, 154
salpingitis, 185
salt water gargles, sore throat treatment, 23
Sarcoptes scabiei, 229
Savlon Bites and Stings Pain Relief Gel, 326, 327t
scabies, 229–232
  aetiology, 229
  background, 229–231
  case study, 256b–257b
  clinical features, 229
  conditions to eliminate, 230
  differential diagnosis, 229–230
  epidemiology, 229
  prevalence, 229
  specific questions to ask, 230t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 230
    prescribing and product selection, 230–231
  trigger points for referral, 230b
scalp
  dandruff *see* dandruff
  fungal infection of the, 201
  psoriasis, 198–199, 201
Scholl Advance, 214, 214t
Scholl Athlete's Foot products, 214
sciatica, 261, 280t
sclera, 43
scleritis, 47
sclerosing agents, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
scopolamine, motion sickness prevention, 313
Sea Bands, 314
Sea-Legs, 314t, 315
sebaceous glands, 195–196

SebCo, 203t
seborrhoeic dermatitis, 201, 205, 207–210
  aetiology, 207–208
  background, 207–210
  clinical features, 208, 208f–209f
  conditions to eliminate, 208–209
  differential diagnosis, 208, 284, 293
  epidemiology, 207
  medications that trigger, 209
  nappy rash, 304, 304t
  prevalence, 207
  specific questions to ask, 208t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 209–210
    prescribing and product selection, 210, 210t
  trigger points for referral, 209b
seborrhoeic (flexural) psoriasis, 200
seborrhoeic wart, 224, 224f, 247
sebum, 196
sedating antihistamines, 32, 295–296, 327
selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
  as a cause of dry eye, 57t
  insomnia-causing, 91t
selenium sulphide, dandruff treatment, 206–207
Selsun, 206–207, 206b
senna, constipation treatment, 165t, 167
Senokot, 167
sensory conflict hypothesis, 313
sexually transmitted diseases, 109
shark liver oil, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
Shigella gastroenteritis, 154
shingles, 183, 254b–255b, 300, 301f
shin splint syndrome, 275
shoulder
  anatomy, 271, 271f
  frozen, 272
  injuries, 273f
  range of motion, 273f
  soft tissue injuries, 271–272
silver nitrate, warts and verrucas treatment, 226t, 227
simeticone, colic treatment, 290–291
Simple eye ointment, 59
simvastatin, 328, 330
sinuses, 13, 14f
sinusitis, 83
sixth disease, 298
Sjögren's syndrome, 56–57
skin
  anatomy, 195–196, 196f
  cancer *see* basal cell carcinoma; malignant melanoma; squamous cell carcinoma
  fungal infections *see* fungal infections, of the skin
slapped cheek disease, 302
sleep
  daytime, 91t
  disorders *see* insomnia
  hygiene, 92, 93t
  need for, 90
  patterns, 91t
small round structured virus (SRSV), gastroenteritis, 154
SMART cancer prevention, 248
smoking, 318
  cessation, 329t–330t (*see also* nicotine replacement therapy)
  and chronic bronchitis, 4
sneezing, 28f
Snellen charts, 44
Sno Tears, 59
sodium bicarbonate
  cystitis treatment, 109
  ear drops, 71
sodium citrate, cystitis treatment, 109
sodium cromoglicate
  allergic conjunctivitis treatment, 51, 51t
  allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–30, 31t–32t, 33
sodium hyaluronate, dry eye treatment, 59
sodium picosulphate, constipation treatment, 165t, 167
sodium salts, dyspepsia treatment, 149, 151, 151t
soft corns, 228
soft tissue injuries, 271–276
  aetiology, 271
  background, 271
  case study, 279–281
  clinical features, 271–275
  conditions to eliminate, 275
  differential diagnosis, 271
  epidemiology, 271
  prevalence, 271
  specific questions to ask, 272t
  sprains, 271
  strains, 271
  treatment, 275–276
  trigger points for referral, 275b
Sominex, 94
sore throats, 19–25, 23b
  aetiology, 19
  anatomy, 20f
  background, 19–24
  bacterial, 19–20, 21t
  case study, 38b–39b
  causes of, 19–21, 19t
  clinical features, 19
  conditions to eliminate, 19–21
  differential diagnosis, 19–21, 22f
  epidemiology, 19
  medicine induced, 20, 21t
  physical examination, 19
  prevalence, 19
  specific questions to ask, 20t
  streptococcal, 19–20
  trauma-related, 20, 22f
  treatment
    analgesia, 23
    antibacterial and antifungal agents, 21–23
    anti-inflammatories, 23–24, 24t
    aspirin and salt water gargles, 23
    evidence base for OTC medication, 21
    local anaesthetics, 21, 23–24, 24t
    prescribing/product selection, 23–24, 24t
  trigger points for referral, 21b
  viral, 19, 21t
space-occupying lesions, 84
Spasmonal
  dysmenorrhoea management, 118
  irritable bowel syndrome treatment, 172
specific product requests
  benign prostatic hyperplasia symptoms, 331–333
  bites and stings *see* insect bites and stings
  case studies, 337–338
  chlamydia treatment, 333–334
  coronary heart disease *see* coronary heart disease
  emergency hormonal contraception *see* emergency hormonal contraception
  malaria prophylaxis *see* malaria, prophylaxis
  motion sickness *see* motion sickness
  nicotine replacement therapy *see* nicotine replacement therapy
  possible future deregulations, 333t, 334
  self-assessment questions, 335–336
  weight loss *see* weight loss/obesity
spinal cord, 79
splenic enlargement/rupture, pain in, 180
sponging, fever treatment, 298

sports-related soft tissue injuries *see* soft tissue injuries
sprains, 271, 274, 279–281
sputum, 3–5, 3t, 7f
squamous cell carcinoma, 245–246
  oral, 141
  on the pinna, 73
squill, 6–8
Staphylococcus aureus
  diarrhoea, 154
  impetigo, 300–301
Staphylococcus sp.
  conjunctivitis, 45
  cystitis, 107–108
  otitis externa, 72
steam inhalation, common cold treatment, 16
steatorrhoea, 157
sterculia, 165–167, 165t
stimulant laxatives, 164, 165t, 167
stimulants, insomnia-causing, 91t
Stingose, 326–327
stings *see* insect bites and stings
stomach
  anatomy, 133
  cancer, 146–148
stool softeners, 164, 165t, 167
strains, 271, 275
Strefen, 24
streptococcal sore throat, 19–20
Streptococcus pneumoniae
  conjunctivitis, 45
  pneumonia, 5
Streptococcus pyogenes, 19
  impetigo, 300–301
  otitis externa, 72
stress
  and hair loss, 219
  and irritable bowel syndrome, 168–169
stress fractures, 275
Sturgeon 15, 314, 314t
styes
  aetiology, 53
  clinical features of, 54, 54f
  treatment, 55–56
subarachnoid haemorrhage, 84
subconjunctival haemorrhage, 45–46, 47f
Sudafed, 18
Sudocrem, 304–305
sulfasalazine, 21t
sulphites, 242t
sulphur, acne vulgaris treatment, 234
sulphur-containing antibiotics, 21t
sumatriptan, headache treatment, 87–89
sun exposure, 245–249, 249b
  aetiology, 246
  background, 245–249
  conditions to eliminate, 247–248
  differential diagnosis, 246
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 248
    prescribing and product selection, 248–249, 248t
  trigger points for referral, 248b
sun protection factor (SPF), 248
sunscreens, 248
  chemical, 248–249, 248t
  physical, 248t, 249
superficial white onychomycosis, 217t
suppositories, constipation treatment, 166b
sweat glands, 195–196
sympathomimetics
  allergic conjunctivitis treatment, 51, 51t
  allergic rhinitis treatment, 29–30, 31t–32t, 33
  common cold treatment, 15, 17–18, 17t
  drug interactions, 17–18
  headache treatment, 87
  systemic, 17t, 18
  topical/nasal, 17t, 18
Syndol, 264
synovial joints, 259

T

tamsulosin, 331–332, 332b
tapeworms, 287
tar-based products, psoriasis treatment, 203–204, 203t
tartar, 143
Tavegil, 295
tears
  composition, 56
  underproduction of *see* dry eye
tea tree oil
  acne vulgaris treatment, 234
  head lice treatment, 285
telogen effluvium, 219
temporal arteritis, 84
tendon injuries *see* soft tissue injuries
tennis elbow, 272
tension-type headache, 79–82, 81f
terbinafine, fungal skin infections treatment, 213–214, 214t
T/Gel, 203t
theophylline avoidance, 10b
thermoregulation, 296
thiamine *see* vitamin B1 (thiamine)
thigh strains, 275
threadworm, 287–289, 288b
  aetiology, 287
  background, 287–289
  clinical features, 287
  conditions to eliminate, 287
  differential diagnosis, 287
  epidemiology, 287
  prevalence, 287
  treatment, 288–289, 288t
  trigger points for referral, 288b
throat
  anatomy, 20f
  sore *see* sore throats
thrush
  oral *see* oral thrush
  vulvovaginal *see* vulvovaginal candidiasis
Tinaderm, fungal skin infections treatment, 214
tinea capitis, 201, 205, 210, 220
tinea corporis, 201, 210, 212, 212f
tinea cruris, 210, 212
tinea faciei, 212
tinea manuum, 212
tinea pedis, 210–211, 212f
tinea unguium, 210, 216f
  see also onychomycosis
toenails, fungal infection *see* onychomycosis
toki-shakuyaku-san, 118
tolnaftate, fungal skin infections treatment, 213–214, 214t
tonsillar carcinoma, 21
toothbrushing, 144
trachea, 2
traction alopecia, 220
tranexamic acid, heavy menstrual bleeding, 123–124
transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), dysmenorrhoea management, 118
trauma
  aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers), 136, 136f
  ear canal, 69
  head, 84
  nail, 216
  sore throats, 20, 22f
trauma-related sore throats, 20, 22f
traveller's diarrhoea, 158
travel sickness *see* motion sickness
triamcinolone, 31t–32t, 33, 137–138
triazoles, vaginal thrush treatment, 114
trichiasis, 53–54
trichomoniasis, 111, 113
Trichophyton sp., 216
trichotillomania, 220
trigeminal neuralgia, 84
trimethoprim, 109, 334
triptans, 87–88
tuberculosis (TB), 5–6
tympanic membrane, 67–68

U

ulcerative colitis, 155, 174
ulcers
  mouth *see* aphthous ulcers (mouth ulcers)
  peptic *see* peptic ulceration
ulipristal, 316
ultraviolet spectrum, 245–249
undecenoates, fungal skin infections treatment, 213, 214t
upper airways cough syndrome, 4
upper gastrointestinal tract bleeding, 174
upper respiratory tract, 1
  infection, 2–3, 12, 298
urea, cold sore treatment, 239t
urea hydrogen peroxide, 71
urinary calculi, 182
urinary tract infections (UTIs)
  in children, 290
  cystitis *see* cystitis
  fever in, 298
urticaria, 241, 242f
uterine bleeding, dysfunctional, 118
UVA, 245–249
UVB, 245–249
UVC, 245–249
uveitis, 47–48, 48f
UV light
  psoriasis treatment, 203b
  see also UVA; UVB; UVC

V

vaccines
  Hib, 300
  MMR, 300
  rotavirus, 158
vaginal discharge, 111–116
  background, 111–115
  causes of, 112t
  conditions to eliminate, 113
  differential diagnosis, 112
  epidemiology, 112
  prevalence, 112
  specific questions to ask, 112t
vaginitis, 109
  atrophic, 109, 113
vaginosis, bacterial, 111, 113
valerian, 93
Valoid, 314, 314t
vapour inhalation, common cold treatment, 16
varicella zoster virus, 300
vasomotor (intrinsic) rhinitis, 26–27, 28f
Veracur, 226t, 227
verruca plana, 223
verrucas, 222–227, 226b
  aetiology, 222
  background, 222–227
  case study, 252–257
  clinical features, 222–223, 223f
  conditions to eliminate, 223–224
  differential diagnosis, 222–224, 228
  epidemiology, 222
  prevalence, 222
  specific questions to ask, 223t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 224–225
    prescribing and product selection, 225–227, 226t
  trigger point for referral, 224b
Verrugon, 226t
vesicles, 198t
Vicks, 9
Vioxx, 264–265
viral infections
  bronchitis, 2–3
  common cold *see* common cold
  conjunctivitis *see* conjunctivitis
  cough, 3–4
  diarrhoea, 154
  meningitis, 300
  rhinitis *see* rhinitis
  sore throat *see* sore throats
Virasorb, 238, 239t
Viscotears, 58–59
vitamin B6 (pyridoxine), premenstrual syndrome management, 121–122, 122t
vitamin B1 (thiamine), dysmenorrhoea management, 118
vitamin C, common cold treatment, 15
vitamin D deficiency, 249b
voice box, 1
Voltarol Pain-Eze, dysmenorrhoea management, 119
vomiting *see* nausea and vomiting
vomiting centre, 95
vomiting reflex, 95
vulval itching, 112
vulvovaginal candidiasis, 111
  aetiology, 112
  case study, 130b–131b
  clinical features, 112
  differential diagnosis, 112, 114f
  epidemiology, 112
  medicine-induced, 113
  prevalence, 112
  recurrent, 113
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 114
    prescribing and product selection, 114–115, 115t
  trigger points for referral, 113b

W

warfarin
  interaction with miconazole, 142–143
  medicine-induced gum bleeding, 144
Wartex, 226t
warts, 222–227, 226b
  aetiology, 222
  background, 222–227
  clinical features, 222, 223f
  conditions to eliminate, 223–224
  differential diagnosis, 222–224
  epidemiology, 222
  prevalence, 222
  specific questions to ask, 223t
  treatment
    evidence base for OTC medication, 224–225
    prescribing and product selection, 225–227, 226t
  trigger point for referral, 224b
Wasp-Eze Spray, 326
Waxsol, 71
weight loss/obesity, 330–331, 331b
  aetiology, 331
  background, 330–331
  coronary heart disease prevention, 329t–330t
  epidemiology, 330–331
  evidence base for OTC medication, 331
  prescribing and product selection, 331
  prevalence, 330–331
Wessel's criteria, 289
wheeze, medicine-induced, 5
white willow bark, 264–265
Whitfield's ointment, fungal skin infections treatment, 213–214, 214t
women's health, 107–131
  abdominal pain, 185
  background, 107–111
  case studies, 127–131
  cystitis *see* cystitis
  dysmenorrhoea *see* dysmenorrhoea
  history taking, 107
  menorrhagia *see* menorrhagia
  period pain *see* dysmenorrhoea
  premenstrual syndrome *see* premenstrual syndrome (PMS)
  self-assessment questions, 125–126
  vaginal discharge *see* vaginal discharge
wool fats, dry eye treatment, 58t, 59

worm infections *see specific worms*
wound healing agents, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
WWHAM acronym, ix–x

X

Xenical, 331
xylometazoline, common cold treatment, 17t, 18

Y

yeast cell extract, haemorrhoid treatment, 176
yoghurt, vaginal thrush, 115b

Z

Zacin, 264
Zanprol, 153
Zantac, 152–153
zinc, cold sore treatment, 239t
zinc lozenges, common cold treatment, 15
zinc pyrithione
  dandruff treatment, 206–207
  seborrhoeic dermatitis treatment, 210
Zirtek Allergy, 30
Zocor Heart-Pro, 328
Zovirax, 238, 239t